TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

By

BIMALA CHURN LAW, M.A., B.L., Ph.D., D.Litt.

Griffith Prizeman and Sir Asutosh Mookerjee Gold Medalist, Calcutta University; Fellow, Royal Geographical Society of London; Fellow, Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal; Hony. Correspondent, Archaeological Survey of India; Hony. Member, Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute; President, Calcutta Geographical Society; Author, A History of Pali Literature, The Life and Work of Buddhaghosa, Geography of Early Buddhism, Geographical Essays, Vol. I, Some Kśatriya Tribes of Ancient India, Ancient Mid-Indian Kśatriya Tribes, Mahāvira: His Life and Teachings, The Buddhist Conception of Spirits, Concepts of Buddhism, Historical Gleanings, A Study of the Mahāvastu, A Manual of Buddhist Historical Traditions, Designation of Human Types, Debates Commentary, Women in Buddhist Literature, India as described in Early Texts of Buddhism and Jainism, Minor Anthologies of the Pali Canon (P.T.S.), Saundarananda-Kāvyā, Dāśkāvamśa, etc.; Editor, Buddhistic Studies, Thūpavamsa (P.T.S.), etc.; Joint Editor, Annual Bibliography of Indian Archaeology, published by the Kern Institute, Holland

FIRST EDITION

MEHARCHAND MUNSHIRAM
SANSKRIT & HINDI BOOK-SELLERS
Nai Sarak, Delhi

POONA

1943
The map of India showing the important kingdoms, towns, etc.
TO
THE SACRED MEMORY
OF
MY BELOVED SON
GOPAL CHUNDER LAW
(January, 1920—September, 1941)
PREFACE

The present book is the outcome of my continued study of the history of tribes of Ancient India. In past years I wrote some books on tribes which have been well received by scholars and the present treatise is an improvement of them and I have added many new tribes to it. The object of the volume is to present a comprehensive and systematic account of some tribes inhabiting different parts of India, viz. north, south, east, west and central, who played an important part in the early history of India.

In preparing the volume, I have utilised original works in Sanskrit, Pali, Prakrit, Tibetan and Chinese and I have also derived help from other sources, such as epigraphy, archaeology, numismatics, and the itineraries of the Chinese pilgrims. In a work of this kind, legends cannot altogether be ignored as they very often contain a substratum of truth. In my treatment I have spared no pains to make full use of the materials that may be gathered from our ancient literature. Modern literature on the subject, too, has been duly utilised. I have tried as far as possible to separate legends from authentic history. But the task is fraught with difficulties and it is not always easy to draw the dividing line. It must, however, be admitted that the history of India is not complete without a thorough knowledge of the history of tribes. Hence an attempt has been made here to present an exhaustive and careful study of the ancient Indian tribes without parti pris and in a spirit of scientific research. I believe that this work will remove a long-felt want and will prove to be of some use to scholars interested in the history of ancient India.

I am grateful to the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Poona, for having kindly included it in their series.

43 Kailas Bose Street,
Calcutta, September, 1943.

BIMALA CHURN LAW
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>The Kâmbojas</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>The Gandhāras</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>The Kurus</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>The Pañcālas</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>The Śūrasenas</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>The Cedis</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>The Madras</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>The Mālavas</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX</td>
<td>The Śālvās</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>The Uṣīnaras</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Vāhilīkas</td>
<td>Chapter XI</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Trigarttas</td>
<td>Chapter XII</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Yaudhevas</td>
<td>Chapter XIII</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Kēkayas</td>
<td>Chapter XIV</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ābhīras</td>
<td>Chapter XV</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Šibis</td>
<td>Chapter XVI</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Daradas</td>
<td>Chapter XVII</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Kārūṣas or Karūṣas</td>
<td>Chapter XVIII</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kulatás or Kulūtas</td>
<td>Chapter XIX</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Kulindas</td>
<td>Chapter XX</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Barbaras</td>
<td>Chapter XXI</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Murunās</td>
<td>Chapter XXII</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ārjunāyanas and The Prārjunas</td>
<td>Chapter XXIII</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>ix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE AMBAŚTHAS</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXIV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE NIŚĀDAS</td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE NIŚADBHAS</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXVI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE KĀŚIS</td>
<td>102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXVIII</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE KOŚALAS</td>
<td>117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXIX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE VATSAS</td>
<td>135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE VĀṬADHĀNAS—THE ÄTREYAS—THE BHARADVĀJAS—THE LAMPĀKAS</td>
<td>151</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXXI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE YONAS</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXXII</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE KALIŃGAS</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXXIII</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ANDHRAS</td>
<td>164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXXIV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE DAMIĻAS</td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXXV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ŠAVARAS</td>
<td>172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XXXVI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MŪTIBAS</td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PULINDAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XXXVII</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE KUNTALAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XXXVIII</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE RĀSTRIKAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XXXIX</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE NĀSIKYAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XL</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ĀSMAKAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLI</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MŪLAKAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLII</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE CŪLAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLIII</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PĀNDYAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLIV</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE KERALAS OR CHERAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLV</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MAGADHAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLVI</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE VIDEHAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLVII</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE JÑĀTRIKAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLVIII</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ŚAKYAS</td>
<td>CHAPTER XLIIX</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MALLAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER II</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE VAŃGAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER III</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE GAUḌAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER IV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE SUHMAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER V</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PUNḌRAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER VI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE KIRĀTAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER VII</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PRĀGJYOTIŚAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER VIII</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER IX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE LICCHAVIS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE UTKALAS AND UḌRAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE AVANTIS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XII</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE SINDHU-SAUVĪRAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER XIII</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE SURĀŚṬRAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>xi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ŚŪDRAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE LĀTAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ŚŪRPĀRAKAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE AUDUMBARAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE KĀKAS, KHAHARAPARIKAS AND SANAKĀNIKAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MATSYAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE RAMĀTHAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PĀRADAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE BHOJAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MEKALAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE DAŚĀRNAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE PĀRIYĀTRAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISCELLANEOUS TRIBES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Abhidhaṇacintāmaṇi (Hemacandra)
Abhidhaṇaratnamālā
Abhidhamakośa (Vasubandhu)
Adhyātma Rāmāyaṇa (Kāli Śāṅkar Vidyāratna ed.)
Ain-i-Akbari
Aitareya Āranyaka (Anecdota Oxoniensia)
Aitareya Brāhmaṇa
Alexander’s Invasion (McCrindle)
Altdindisches Leben (Zimmer)
Amarakośa
Ancient and Hindu India (V. A. Smith)
Ancient Geography of India by Cunningham (Ed. S. N. Majumdar)
Ancient India (E. J. Rapson)
Ancient India (S. K. Aiyangar)
Ancient India as described by Ptolemy (Ed. S. N. Majumdar)
Ancient India: its invasion by Alexander the Great (McCrindle)
Ancient Indian Historical Tradition (F. E. Pargiter)
Aṅguttara Nikāya (P.T.S.)
Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute
Antiquities of Kathiawar and Kacch (Burgess)
Apadāṇa (P.T.S.)
Archaeological Survey of India (Annual Reports)
Archaeological Survey of South India (Reports)
Arthaśāstra, Bārhaspatya (F. W. Thomas)
Arthaśāstra, Kaūṭilya (R. Sharna Śāstri Ed. and Tr.)
Asiatic Researches
Aśoka (V. A. Smith)
Aśoka (Woolner)
Aśokāvadāna
Aṣṭādhyāyī, Pāṇini
Atharva-Śamhitā (Whitney & Lanman—Harvard Oriental Series)
Atharvaveda
Atharvaveda-Śamhitā (Roth & Whitney—Harvard Oriental Series)
Atthasālinī (P.T.S.)
Avadāna Śataka
Avadānakaḷpaḷatā (Bibliotheca Indica Series)
Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra
Bālabhārata or Pracanaḍapāṇḍava of Rājaśekhara (Nirṇayasāgar Press ed.)
Bārāhasamhitā
Barbut (Barua)
Barbut Inscriptions (Barua & Sinha)
Baudhāyana Śrauta Sūtra
Bhagavadgītā
Bhagavatī Sūtra (Dhanpat Singh ed.)
Bhaṭṭikāvyam
Bombay Gazetteer
Book of the Kindred Sayings, The (P.T.S.)
Brhatsamhitā (Kern)
Buddhacarita (Cowell)
Buddhavamsa and Cariyāpiṭaka (J.P.T.S., 1882)
Buddhavamsa Commentary (P.T.S.)
Buddhism (Copleston)
Buddhist Conception of Spirits, The (B. C. Law, 2nd ed.)
Buddhist India (T. W. Rhys Davids)
Buddhist Records of the Western World (S. Beal)
Buddhist Suttas (S.B.E., Vol. XI)
Calcutta Review
Cambridge History of India, The, Vol. I, Ancient India
Carmichael Lectures, 1918 and 1921 (D. R. Bhandarkar)
Catalogue of Coins (V. A. Smith)
Chinese Buddhism (Edkins)
Chronicles of the Kings of Kāśmir (Stein)
Coins of India (Brown)
Coins of India (Cunningham)
Cōlas, The (Nilakanṭa Sāstri)
Corporate Life in Ancient India (R. C. Majumdar)
Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum
Cūlavamsa (P.T.S.)
Daśakumāracarita
Daṭhāvamsa (Ed. B. C. Law)
Der Vṛātya: Untersuchungen Über die nichtbrahmanische Religion Altindiens
(J. W. Hauer)
Dhammapada (Fausboll)
Dhammapada Commentary (P.T.S.)
Dharmaśāstra (Gautama)
Dharmasūtra
Dialogues of the Buddha, I-III (S.B.B., II-IV—P.T.S. publication)
Dictionary, Goldstucker
Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names, I and II (G. P. Malalasekera)
Die Sk. Pr. Handschriften der Berliner Bibliothek (Weber)
Die Sociale Gliederung (Fick)
Dīgha Nikāya (P.T.S.)
Dīpavamsa (Oldenberg)
Divyāvadāna (Cowell & Neil)
Dokumente der Indischen Kunst, Erstes Heft, Malerei, des Citra Laksana
(Berthold Laufer)
Dynasties of the Kali Age (Pargiter)
Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts (Fleet)
Early History of India, 4th Ed. (V. A. Smith)
Early History of Kausāṃbi (N. N. Ghosh)
Early History of the Dekkan (R. G. Bhandarkar)
Early History of the Vaiṣṇava Sect (H. C. Ray Chaudhuri)
Eastern India (Martin)
Epigraphia Indica
Essays, Analytical, etc. (Wilson)
Etude sur la Geog. Grecque (M. V. St. Martin)
Gārgī Samhitā
Gates of India (Holdich)
Gaudālekamāla (Yarendra Research Society)
Gaudavahā
Geographical Dictionary of Ancient and Mediaeval India (N. L. Dey)
Geographical Essays, I (B. C. Law)
Geography of Early Buddhism (B. C. Law)
Geschichte der Indischen Litteratur (M. Winternitz)
Geschichte des Buddhismus in Indien by Taranath (tr. into German by A. Schiefner)
Gokarnā-Bhāgavata
Gopatha Brāhmaṇa (Ed. R. L. Mitra.—Bibliotheca Indica Series)
Grammar (Pāṇini)
Great Epic of India, The (Hopkins)
Guide to Nālandā, A (A. Ghosh)
Guide to Taxila, A (Sir John Marshall)
Gupta Coins (Allan)

Harivamśa
Harṣacarita (Bāna)
Harsha (R. K. Mookerjee)
Heart of Jainism (S. Stevenson)
Hinduism and Buddhism, I-III (Sir Charles Eliot)
Hūranyakesī Śrauta Sūtra
Historical Gleanings (B. C. Law)
Historical Inscriptions of Southern India (Sewell)
History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature (Max Müller)
History of Fine Art in India and Ceylon (V. A. Smith)
History of India as told by her own Historians (Eliot)
History of Indian Architecture (G. Fergusson)
History of Indian Literature (Max Müller)
History of Indian Literature (Weber)
History of Indian Logic (S. C. Vidyābhūṣanā)
History of Pāli Literature, A, I & II (B. C. Law)
History of Sanskrit Literature (Macdonell)
History of the Bengali Language (B. C. Majumdar)

Iconographie Bouddhique de l'Inde (M. Foucher)
Imperial Gazetteers of India
Index to the names in the Mahābhārata (Sorensen)
India (Alberuni)
India as described in Early Texts of Buddhism and Jainism (B. C. Law)
India, What can it teach us? (Max Müller)
Indian Antiquary
Indian Coins (Rapsone)
Indian Culture
Indian Historical Quarterly
Indica (Arrian)
Indische Literatur und Cultur (Von Schroeder)
Indische Alterthumskunde (Lassen)
Indische Studien (Weber)
Indo-Aryan Races (R. P. Chanda)
Inscriptions of Aśoka (Bhandarkar and Majumdar)
Inscriptions of Bengal (Varendra Research Society)
Inscriptions of the Early Gupta Kings (J. F. Fleet)

Jaiminiya Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa
Jaina Sūtras I & II (Jacobi, Ś.B.E. Vols. XXII & XLV)
Jātaka (Cowell and Fausböll)—All the volumes
Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal (J.A.S.B.)
Journal of the Buddhist Text Society
Journal of the Department of Letters, Calcutta University
Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland (J.R.A.S.)
Journal of the U.P. Historical Society

Kalpasūtra and Nirayāvali sūtra
Kāmasūtra, Vātsāyana (Punjab ed.)
Karatoeyāmāhātmya
Karmaśatakaka (M. L. Peer)
Karpūramāṇjari (Sten Konow)
Kāthaka-Saṃhitā
Kathāsaritsāgara (Durgaprasad and Kaśināth)
Kathāvatthu (P.T.S.)
Kaśāmbi in Ancient Literature, M.A.S.I. No. 60 (B. C. Law)
Kaṇḍītakī Upaniṣad
Kāvyanimitāmsā (Rājaśekhara) (Gaekwad’s Oriental Series)
Khuddakapāṭha Commentary (P.T.S.)

Lalitavistara (Leffmann)
Lalitavistara (R. L. Mitra—Bibliotheca Indica Series)
L’art Graeco Bouddhique der Gāndhāra (J. Foucher)
Lāṭṭāyana Śrauta Sūtra
Laws of Manu, S.B.E. (Bühler)
Lé Mahāvastu (Senart)
Lé Nepal (S. Lévi)
Life and Work of Buddhaghosa, The (B. C. Law)
Life of Hiuen Tsang (Beal)
Life of the Buddha, The (Rockhill)
List of Southern Inscriptions (Keilhorn)

Mahābhārata (Vaṅgavāsi ed.)
Mahābhārata (M. N. Dutta tr.)
Mahābhārata, Vaṇaparva (Mahārājā Burdwan’s ed.)
Mahābhāṣya (Paññjali)
Mahābhodhivamsa (P.T.S.)
Mahāvamsa, P.T.S. (Geiger)
Mahāvamsa Śīkā (Sinhalese ed.)
Mahāvīra: His Life and Teachings (B. C. Law)
Majjhima Nikāya (P.T.S.)
Mānasī
Mānasī Dharmaśāstra (J. Jolly)
Manimēkhalai
Mañjuśrīmūlakalpa (Ganapati Śāstrī ed.)
Manorathapurāṇī (P.T.S. and Sinhalese eds.)
Manual of Buddhism (Spence Hardy)
Manual of Indian Buddhism (Kern)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Author and Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manusaṃhitā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa (Pargiter)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memoirs of Central India (Malcolm)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milindapañño (Trenckner)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor Anthologies of the Pāli Canon, The (B. C. Law—S.B.B., P.T.S. publication)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modern Review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mudrārākṣasa (Viśākhadatta)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mysore and Coorg from Inscriptions (Rice)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural History (Pliny)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nepāl Vaṃśāvalī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nīḍdesa (P.T.S.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nirukta (Yāśka)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numismatic Chronicle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Brāhmi Inscriptions in the Udayagiri and Khaṇḍagiri Caves (B. M. Barua)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On Yuan Chwang’s Travels in India (T. Watters)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Origin and Development of the Bengali Language, The (S. K. Chatterjee)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Origin of the Bengali Script, The (R. D. Banerjee)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāli Grammar by Kaccāyana (Ed. S. C. Vidyābhūṣana)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paṇḍīras and their capital Ahichchatra, M.A.S.I. No. 67 (B. C. Law)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paṇini (Goldstücker)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papaṇcasudanī (P.T.S.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paramatthadipani on the Petavatthu (P.T.S.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paramatthadipani on the Theragāthā (P.T.S.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paṭiśṭaparvan (Jacobi)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāṭaliputra (Manoranjan Ghosh)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periplus of the Erythraean Sea, The (Schoff)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed. (H. C. Ray Chaudhuri)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prabodhacandraya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prācīna Mudrā (R. D. Banerjee)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratījñāyaugandharāyana (Bhāsa)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms of the Brethren (P.T.S.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms of the Sisters (P.T.S.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Administration in Ancient India (P. N. Banerjee)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puṇḍāvīya (Sinhalese ed.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purāṇas—all.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions of King Milinda (S.B.E.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raghuvamśa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rājatarāṅgini (Stein)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rājagrha in Ancient Literature, M.A.S.I. No. 58 (B. C. Law)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rājgrīv and its neighbourhood (D. N. Sen)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rāmacarita</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rāmāyana (Bombay and Vaṅgavāsi ed.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rāmāyana (Griffith’s tr.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ratnāvalī and Priyadarśikā (Harṣa)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Records of the Buddhist Religion (I-tsing)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ṛgveda (Wilson’s tr.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ṛgveda Brāhmana (Keith)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romantic Legend of Śākya Buddha, The (Beal).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Samantapāsādikā (P.T.S.)
Saṁhitopaniṣad Brāhmaṇa
Saṁyutta Nikāya (P.T.S.)
Saṅkhāyaṇa Āraṇyaka (Keith)
Sanskrit-English Dictionary (Monier-Williams)
Sanskrit Texts (Muir)
Śāratḥapakāsini (P.T.S.)
Śaśanaṇamsa (P.T.S.)
Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (Eggeling, S.B.E.)
Saumarananda-Kāvyā (B. C. Law’s tr.)
Selections from the Mahābhārata (Johnson)
Śan-ḥsien-li
Śrīkalpasūtram (Bhavnagar ed.)
Social Organisation in North-East India in Buddha’s time (Fick)
Some Kṣatriya Tribes of Ancient India (B. C. Law)
South Indian Epigraphy, Annual Reports of
South Indian Inscriptions (Hültzsch)
Śrāvasti in Indian Literature, M.A.S.I., No. 50 (B. C. Law)
Śṭhavīrya-yaṭṭha-charita (Hemachandra)
Studies in Indian Antiquities (H. C. Ray Chaudhuri)
Study of the Mahāvastū, A (B. C. Law)
Successors of the Sātavāhanas (D. C. Sircar)
Sumanāgalavilāsini (P.T.S.)
Suttānīpāta (P.T.S.)
Suttanīpāta Commentary (P.T.S.)
Svāpnavāsavadattā (Bhāsa) (Sukhthankar’s tr.)
Taittrīya Brāhmaṇa
Taittrīya Saṁhitā
Thera-Therīgāthā (P.T.S.)
Therīgāthā Commentary (P.T.S.)
Thūpavānsa (P.T.S.)
Travels of Fā-Hien (Legge)
Travels of Fā-Hien and Sung-Yun (S. Beal)

Udāna (P.T.S.)
Udāna Commentary (P.T.S.)
Udāna-vānmanā (Siamese ed.)
University of Nālandā, Thë (H. D. Sankalia)
Upaniṣads—all
Uttarādhyāyana Śūtra (J. Charpentier)
Uvāsagadāśā (Hocnle) — .

Vaijāyantī (G. Oppert)
Vaiṣṇavism, Saivism and Minor Religious Systems (R. G. Bhandarkar)
Vaijāsaneśa-Saṁhitā
Vaiṣṇavopaniṣad (P.T.S.)
Vaiṣṇavopaniṣad (P.T.S.)
Vaiṣṇavopaniṣad (P.T.S.)
Vaiṣṇavopaniṣad (P.T.S.)
Veda of the Black Yajus’ School (Keith)
Vedic Index (Macdonell and Keith)
Vedic Mythology (Macdonell)
Vimānavaṭṭhū Commentary (P.T.S.)
Vinaya Piṭaka (Oldenberg)
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Vinaya Texts, I-III (S.B.E.)
Visṇudharmottara Mahāpurāṇa
Viṣṇupurāṇa (Wilson's ed.)
Vividha-tīrtha-kalpa (Singhce Jaina Granthamāla Series)

Zur Litteratur und Geschichte des Weda (Roth)
CHAPTER I

THE KĀMBOJAS

The Kāmbojas appear to have been one of the early Vedic tribes. The earliest mention of them occurs in a list of ancient Vedic teachers given in the Vamśa Brāhmaṇa of the Śāmaveda, where we find one of the teachers to be Kāmboja Aupamanyava, i.e., Kāmboja, the son of Upamanyu (Vamśa Brāhmaṇa, edited by Pundit Satyavrata Śāmaśrami). We are told that the sage Ananda received the Vedic learning from Śāmba, son of Śarkarākṣa, and also from Kāmboja, son of Upamanyu. It is interesting to note that he received this instruction from two teachers, whereas one teacher only was the usual rule. From the order in which the names are given, Śāmba appears to have been his first teacher, and the Kāmboja teacher must have been approached later, perhaps because he was distinguished for special pre-eminence in Vedic learning. We lay stress on this fact because it shows that the Kāmbojas, in early Vedic times, must have been a Vedic Indian people, and not Iranian, as has been supposed by several scholars. From the list of teachers we also find that both the teachers of Ananda had received their education in Vedic lore from the same sage, viz., Madra-gāra Śauṅgāyani, whose name shows that he belonged to the Madra people.\(^1\) This connection between the Madras and the Kāmbojas is natural, as they were close neighbours in the N.W. of India.

The Kāmbojas are not mentioned in the Rgveda itself, but indirect evidence may help to justify the assumption that they were included among the Vedic Aryans in the Rgvedic era. A sage Upamanyu is mentioned at Rgveda, I, 102, 9, and it is not unreasonable to conjecture that he may have been the father of the Kāmboja teacher of the Vamśa Brāhmaṇa list. Such a possibility is suggested by Zimmer.\(^2\)

The next important mention of the Kāmbojas is in a passage of Yāska’s Nirukta (II, 8), which shows that they spoke a dialect of the Vedic tongue differing in some respects from the standard language, which in Yāska’s time was apparently in language of the Madhyadesa, the region around the Ganges-Jumna Doab. The Kāmbojas appear from Yāska’s remarks to have been a Vedic people who had retained

---

1 Vedic Index, I, p. 138.
2 Altindisches Leben, p. 102.
the original sense of an ancient verb (śavati) while it was lost among other sections of the same people, who were separated from them by geographical barriers. Sir George Grierson, however, deduces from Vāska's remarks that, as śavati is an Iranian, not a Sanskrit, word, the Kāmbojas cannot have been Indo-Aryans. He holds that they either spoke Sanskrit with an infusion of Iranian words to which they gave Indian inflexions, or else spoke a language partly Indo-Aryan and partly Iranian.

Vāska also attempts a (pseudo-) philological explanation of the name Kāmboja, by connecting it with Kambala, 'blanket', and further with the root Kam, to love, enjoy. He suggests that the Kāmbojas may have been so called because they were Kamamiya-bhojas or 'enjoyers of pleasant things', and adds that a Kambala is a pleasant thing. Though we cannot take this etymology seriously, there can be no doubt that the warm blanket, Kambala, was a pleasant thing to a people living in the rigorous climate of the N.W. highlands.

The Kambalas or blankets manufactured by the Kāmbojas are referred to in the Mahābhārata, which tells us that at the great Rājasūya sacrifice, the Kāmboja king presented to Yudhisthira 'many of the best kinds of skins, woollen blankets, blankets made of the fur of animals living in burrows in the earth, and also of cats—all inlaid with threads of gold' (Sabhaparvan, Chap. 51, 3); and again, 'The king of Kāmboja sent to him hundreds and thousands of black, dark and red skins of the deer called Kadali, and also blankets (Kambala) of excellent texture' (Sabhaparvan, Chap. 48, 10).

The next mention of the Kāmbojas is made by Pāṇini. His Sūtra (IV, 1, 175) lays down the rule that the word Kāmboja denotes not only the Kāmboja country or tribe, but also the Kāmboja king.

With regard to the location of Kāmboja, Rhys Davids says that it was a country in the extreme N.W. of India, with Dvārakā as its capital. Dr. S. K. Aiyangar places it in the territory answering to the modern Sindh and Gujarat and Dr. P. N. Banerjee too in his Public Administration in Ancient India (p. 56) assigns Kāmboja to a country near modern Sindh. Both these writers agree with Prof. Rhys Davids in locating the capital at Dvārakā. Kāmboja is mentioned in Petavatthu (II, 9, 1), but from the commentary on that passage (PvA, 111) it appears that Dvārakā is not its capital. V. A. Smith seems to place the Kāmbojas among the mountains either of Tibet or of the Hindu Kush. He further says that they

---

2 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 28.
3 Ancient India, p. 7.
4 See also B. C. Law, 'Buddhist Conception of Spirits (2nd Ed.), p. 102.
are supposed to have spoken an Iranian tongue (Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 193 and f.n. 1). According to McCrindle, Kamboja was Afghanistan, the Kaofu (Kambu) of Hsiüan Tsang (McCrindle, Alexander’s Invasion, p. 38). In the Vedic Index, it is stated that the Kambojas were settled to the N.W. of the Indus and were the Kambujya of the old Persian inscriptions (see also D. R. Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures, 1918, pp. 54-5). According to Sir Charles Eliot (Hinduism and Buddhism, Vol. I, p. 268), the Kambojas were probably Tibetans; in another volume of the same work, he calls them an ambiguous race who were perhaps the inhabitants of Tibet or its border lands. M. Foucher in his Iconographie Baudhique (p. 134) points out that the Nepalese tradition applies the name Kambojadeśa to Tibet. Doubtful would be the attempt to connect Cambyses (O.P. Kamboja) with the frontier people of Kāmboja. Dr. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri points out that from a passage of the Mahābhārata we learn that a place called Rājapura was the home of the Kambojas (Mbh., VII, 4-5, ‘Karna Rājapurāṃ gataḥ Kambojā nirjītāṣṭyayā’). The association of the Kambojas with the Gandhāras enables us to identify this Rājapura with Rājapura of Hsiüan Tsang (Watters, On Yuan Chwang, Vol. I, p. 284), which lay to the S. or S.E. of Pūnach.

Pāṇini belonged to the north-west quarter of India and hence had an accurate knowledge of the customs and dress of the Kambojas. The Mayūravamśakūdīgana of Pāṇini speaks of the Kambojas as munḍa or shaven-beaded.Apparently the Kambojas were in the habit of completely shaving their beards, as would also appear from a passage quoted by Raghunandana from the Harivamśa and pointed out by Max Müller: ‘The Sakas (Scythians) have half their head shorn, the Yavanas (Greeks?) and Kambojas the whole, the Pāradas (inhabitants of Paradene) wear their hair free, and the Pahlavas (Persians) wear beards’.

Coming to the Pāli Buddhist literature we find the Kamboja country spoken of several times in the canonical texts as one of the sixteen great States (Mahājanapadas) that were most prominent in India about the time of the Buddha (see, e.g. Aṅguttara Nikāya, Vol. I, p. 213; Vol. IV, p. 252-5).

2 Cambridge History of India, Ancient India, p. 334, f.n.
3 Political History of India from the accession of Parikshita to the coronation of Bimbisāra, p. 77.
4 R. D. Banerjee refers to a Kāmboja or Cambodia on the east side of Samatata (Bengal), which must be identical with Sir Charles Eliot’s Kamboja, as distinct from Kamboja.
5 History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, p. 28.
In the Harivamsa, we find that the people of Kâmboja were formerly Kṣatriyas. It was Sâgara who caused them to give up their own religion (Harivamsa, i.4). From verses 43 and 44 of Chap. X of the Manusmriti, we find that the Kâmbojas, Sakas, Yavanas, and other Kṣatriya tribes were gradually degraded to the condition of Śûdras on account of their omission of the sacred rites, and of their not consulting the Brahmins. Kautilya’s Arthasastra states that the corporations of warriors (kṣatriya-pravâna) of Kâmboja and other countries lived by agriculture, trade and profession of arms (Vârtâsastropajîvin).

The horses of Kâmboja were famous throughout all periods of Indian history. In the Sunaṅgatavilāsinî, Kâmboja is spoken of as the home of horses (Kâmbojo assânam âyatânam). The Mahâbhârata is full of references to the excellent horses of Kâmboja. In the Sakhâparvan (51, 4), we read that the king of Kâmboja presented to Yudhîṣthira three hundred horses of variegated colours, speckled like the partridge and having fine noses like the suka bird. In the great battle of Kurukṣetra, the fast and powerful horses of Kâmboja were of the utmost service.3

The Jaina Ullârâdhya-yâna Śûtra 4 tells us that a trained Kâmbojan horse excels all other horses in speed, and no noise can frighten it. In the Campeyya Jåtaka 5 we read that a king of Kâsi, being requested by a Nâga king to visit his abode, ordered well-trained Kâmbojan horses to be yoked to his chariot.6 Viśnûvardhana, who later became ruler of Mysore, owned Kâmbojan horses, which were evidently much coveted for their speed.7 The Atthakathâ on the Kunâla Jåtaka furnishes us with the interesting piece of information that the Kâmbojas were in the habit of capturing horses in the forest by tempting them into an enclosed space by means of aquatic plants which they smeared with honey.8

In the Raghuvamsa, Kâlidâsa makes Râghu meet the Kâmbojas after defeating the Hûnas on the bank of the Vâṅkû or the Oxus. The Kâmbojas, being unable to meet the prowess of Râghu, bowed low before him, just as their walnut trees were bent down on account of Râghu’s elephants being tied to them. An immense treasure including excellent horses was offered as tribute to Râghu by the Kâmbojas.9

---

1 Arthasastra, trsl. by Shâma Shâstri, p. 455. 2 I, 124.
3 See, e.g. Mbh., Bhishma-parvan, 71, 13; 90, 3; Droṇaparvan, 22, 7; 22, 22-3; 22, 42; Karna-parvan, 38, 13; Sautkîparvan, 13, 12.
5 Jåtaka (Fausbøll), Vol. IV, p. 464.
6 S. K. Aiyangar, Ancient India, p. 236.
7 Jåtaka, V, 446. 8 Râghuvamsa, IV, 69-70.
The Kāmbojas occupy a prominent place among the Kṣatriya tribes of the *Mahābhārata*. In the geographical enumeration of the peoples of India, the Kāmbojas are located in the north. They were the allies of Duryodhana, and by their bravery, and especially through the prowess of their king Sudakṣiṇa, they rendered great service to the Kurus in the Kurukṣetra war. Sudakṣiṇa was one of the few Mahārathas or great heroes in the field.

Drupada advised Yudhiṣṭhira to ask the Kāmbojas and other tribes on the western frontiers for their assistance, but the Pāndavas were not able to obtain their alliance. Duryodhana was more successful, perhaps through his kinship with the neighbouring Gāndhāras, and later boasted to the Pāndavas of his alliance with the Kāmbojas and other northern peoples. He gives an important place to the Kāmbojas by mentioning them together with the greatest heroes on his side (see *Mbh.*, Chap. 160, 40). Bhīṣma too extols the prowess of the Kāmboja king, Sudakṣiṇa, of whom he says, 'In my opinion Sudakṣiṇa of Kāmboja is equal to one Ratha. The best of the chariot-warriors under him are strikers with fierce force. The Kāmbojas, O great king, will cover the land like a swarm of locusts' (*Mbh.*, *Udyogaparvan*, Chap. 165, 1–3).

When the Kaurava army took up their position on the field, the Kāmbojas occupied the van of Duryodhana's army, along with the home forces of the Pauravas themselves. We are told: 'The Pauravas, the Kaliṅgas and the Kāmbojas with their king Sudakṣiṇa and Ksemadhanvā and Śalya took up their positions in front of Duryodhana' (*Mbh.*, *Bhīṣmaparvan*, Chap. 17, 26-7).

The Kāmbojas appear to have been consistently in the thickest of the fight. Their king Sudakṣiṇa was eventually killed in a duel with Arjuna. The verses which describe him as being slain on the battle-field are worth quoting for their poetic imagery: 'Like a charming Kārṇikāra tree,—which in the spring grows gracefully on the top of a hill, with beautiful branches,—lying in the grove when uprooted by the tempest, the prince of the Kāmbojas, accustomed to sleep on the most precious bed, lay lifeless on the bare ground. Adorned with precious ornaments, graceful, possessing eyes of coppery hue, wearing around his head a tiara of gold radiant like the flames of fire, the mighty armed Sudakṣiṇa, prince of the Kāmbojas, felled by Partha with his arrows, and lying dead on the ground, appeared beautiful like a charming hill with a flat summit'.

---

4 See *Bhīṣmaparvan*, Chap. 45, 66–8; Chap. 56, 7; Chap. 75, 17; Chap. 87, 10; also *Dronāparvan*, Chap. 7, 14; 19, 7.  
5 *Mbh.*, *Dronāparvan*, Chap. 92, 61–75.
In the fierce battle that ensued, when Sātyaki, urged on by Yudhīṣṭhira, was following in the track of Arjuna, the Kāmbojas arrested his progress. Then, we are told, Sātyaki slew thousands of the Kāmbojas, worked havoc among them, and pressed onward.\(^1\)

Again, when Karna assumed the leadership of the Kuru army, the Kāmbojas were there taking an active part by his side\(^2\); and even after Sudākṣiṇa's younger brother had laid down his life for the cause,\(^3\) we still hear of the Kāmbojas delivering an attack on Arjuna.\(^4\)

We thus find the Kāmbojas leading a large army to the field of Kurukṣetra and laying down their lives like the valiant Kṣatriyas. Afterwards it appears from the later sections of the Mahābhārata, viz. the Śānti and Ānūṣāsanika parvans, that their country had been overrun by barbarous hordes, so that the ancient Kṣatriya population was overwhelmed, and we find the Kāmbojas ranked with the Yavanas and looked down upon as one of the barbarous peoples. Thus a verse of the Śānti-parvan enumerates the Kāmbojas along with many peoples not included in what we may call 'Indo-Aryan society',\(^5\) and in another chapter they are placed among the barbarous peoples of the Uttarāpatha (northern regions).\(^6\) The Ānūṣāsanika-parvan (33, 21) speaks of the Kāmbojas as having been degraded to the rank of Sudras for want of Brāhmaṇas in their country. These passages go to show that at the time when these parvans were added to the Epic, the Kāmbojas were losing touch with Brahmanical society, probably owing to admixture with uncivilised invaders from the North.

Turning to the other great epic, we read in the Ādi Kānda of the Rāmāyana that the Kāmbojas were created by the divine cow Sahalā, at the request of Vashīṣṭha (20–24). The Kiṣkindhyā Kānda (Chap. 43) tells us that Śugrīva sent a monkey named Sugrīva to North India in search of Kāmboja and other countries (II–I2).

The Vāyupurāṇa informs us that after killing the Haihayas, King Sagara was engaged in annihilating the Kāmbojas, Śakas, Yavanas, Pahlavas and others. All these tribes, however, secured the aid of Vashīṣṭha, Sagara's spiritual preceptor. Listening to the words of Vashīṣṭha, Sagara set the Kāmbojas free after having completely shaven their heads (Vaṅgavāsī Edition, Chap. 88). It is stated in the Harivamśa that the Ikṣvāku King Vāruṇa was dethroned by Kāmbojas and others (Chaps. I3, I4).

---

In the Jātakas we read that the Kambojas were a N.W. tribe who were supposed to have lost their original Aryan customs and to have become barbarous. In the Bhuridatta Jātaka we find that many Kambojas who were not Ariyas falsely held that peoples were purified by killing insects, snakes, frogs, etc. It is stated in the Sāsanavamsa that in the 235th year of the Buddha's Parinibbāna, the Thera Mahārakkhita went to the Yonaka province and established the Buddha's doctrine in Kamboja and other places. In other passage of the Sāsanavamsa, we find the son of the king of Kamboja referred to as a Buddhist monk, Tāmalinda, who sailed from Ceylon to India with the Thera Uttarājīva. Also in the Sāsanavamsa, we read of Srihamsya, who came from Kamboja and conquered the city of Ratanapura. Fearing the increasing power and influence of the Buddhist monks, which might become a danger if they turned their minds to secular objects, he determined on a wholesale slaughter. He invited all the great theras of Jeyyapura, Vijayapura and Ratanapura together with their disciples, to meet him in the forest Ton-bhi-luh; and there he caused them, to the number of 3,000, to be surrounded and slain by his army. Many shrines were demolished and books burnt at the same time.

The Emperor Aśoka sent missionaries to the nations on the borders of his empire, viz. the Kambojas, Vavanas, etc., with the object of converting them to Buddhism. He celebrates their conversion to the true Dhamma in Rock Edict XIII (see V. A. Smith, Aśoka, p. 168); while Rock Edict V tells us that Censors were created by Aśoka for the establishment of the law of piety, for the increase of the law, and for the welfare and happiness of the Kambojas, Gaṇḍhāras and others living on the W. frontier of his dominions.

In the ninth century A.D. the Kambojas are said to have been defeated by Devapāla, the great king of the Pāla dynasty of Bengal. But during the latter part of the 8th century the tables were turned, and the rule of the Pāla kings of Bengal was interrupted by the Kambojas, who set up one of their chiefs as king. In a place called Vānagarth in Dinājpur, Bengal, mention is made of a certain king of Gauda, born in the Kamboja family. It is probable that the Kambojas first attempted to conquer Gauda during the reign of Devapāla, but were defeated at that time. R. P. Chanda surmises

---

1 Jātaka (Fausboll), VI, p. 208; Ibid. (Cowell), VI, p. 110, l.n. 2.
3 Sāsanavamsa, P.T.S. Ed., 49.
5 Ibid. (P.T.S.), p. 790.
6 R. D. Banerjee, Vānagarth Itihāsa, p. 182.
7 V. A. Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 414.
that in the middle of the tenth century A.D., the Kâmbojas again attacked North Bengal, and that its present inhabitants (of Koch, Mech, and Palia) are descended from them.¹ The Kâmboja rulers were expelled by Mahipâla I, the ninth king of the Pâla line, who is known to have been reigning in A.D. 1026, and may be assumed to have regained his ancestral throne about A.D. 978 or 980.²

¹ Banerjee, Vângâlîr Itihâsa, p. 205.
CHAPTER II

THE GANDHĀRAS

Gandhāra formed an integral part of India from the earliest epoch of Indo-Aryan civilisation, and is unique among the countries of India, in that its history may be traced in unbroken continuity from Rigvedic times down to the present day. The Gandhāris or people of Gandhāra are mentioned in the hymns of the Rgveda, while the name Gandhāra occurs in the other Vedas, and in the Epics and Purāṇas as well as the Buddhist books.

Gandhāra was on the N.W. frontiers of India in the neighbourhood of the Kambojas, Madras and similar other tribes, but there are differences of opinion among scholars with regard to its exact boundaries. It is generally accepted that Gandhāra denotes the region comprising the modern districts of Peshawar in the N.W. Frontier Province and Rawalpindi in the Punjab; but in the Old Persian inscriptions it seems to include also the district of Kābul in Afghanistan (see Rapson, Ancient India, p. 81). Rhys Davids (Buddhist India, p. 28) says that Gandhāra (modern Kandahar) was the district of E. Afghanistan, probably including the N.W. Punjab. Vincent Smith apparently concurs with this view, saying that Gandhāra was equivalent to the N.W. Punjab and the adjoining regions. Dr. S. K. Aiyangar holds that Gandhāra was equivalent to E. Afghanistan, extending from the Afghan mountains to the district somewhat to the East of the Indus (Ancient India, p. 7). According to Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar, Gandhāra included the western Punjab and E. Afghanistan. Its capital was Takshaśila where ruins are spread near Sarāfikālā in the Rawalpindi District of the Punjab. In the Ain-i-Akbari, Gandhāra forms the district of Pukely lying between Kashmir and Attock. Gandhāra, says N. L. Dey, comprised the modern districts of Peshawar and Hoti Murdan or what is called the Eusofzai

---

1 Rapson, Ancient India, 81.
2 Gandhāri is the Vedic form, later supplanted by Gandhāra.
3 There is no proved etymological connection between the names Kandahar and Gandhāra. See McCrindle, Ptolemy, p. 116.
4 V. A. Smith, Aṣoka, 170.
5 Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 54.
Cunningham, relying on the narratives of the Chinese pilgrims, Fa Hien and Hsüan Tsang, gives the following boundaries to Gandhāra (Chinese Kien-to-lo): Laghmān and Jalālābād on the west, the hills of Swāt and Bumir on the N., the Indus on the E., and the hills of Kālabāgh on the South (Ancient Geography, p. 48; and see McCrindle, Ancient India as described by Ptolemy, p. 116). According to Strabo, the country of the Gandarai, which he calls Gandaritis, lay between the Khoaspes (Kunar) and the Indus, and along the river Kophes (Kabul). The name is not mentioned by any of the historians of Alexander, but it must have been known to the Greeks as early as the time of Hekataios, who calls Kasparyros a ‘Gandaric city’. Herodotus mentions the Gandarioi. Rennell placed them to the west of Baktia in the province afterwards called Margiana, while Wilson took them to be the people south of the Hindu Kush, from about the modern Kandahar to the Indus, and extending into the Punjab and to Kashmir (Ancient India as described by Ptolemy—McCrindle, pp. 115-6). In some books, the name ‘Cave country’ was applied to Gandhāra (Watters, On Yuan Chwang, Vol. I, p. 200).

From the above observations, and also from the various references to Gandhāra in Indian literature, it appears that the boundaries of the country varied at different periods in its history. At one time it appears to have included the Afghan District round Kandahar, but afterwards it receded to the mountains on the Indian frontier.

In the Rgveda the long wool of the sheep reared by the Gandhāris is referred to by Lomāśa, the queen of King Bhāvyā or Bhavayavya, who ruled on the banks of the Sindhu (Indus); she says to her husband, ‘I am covered with down like a ewe of the Gandhāris’ (Rgveda, I, pp. 126, 7; Wilson's Trans., II, p. 78). From the facts that the verse is brought in very abruptly and that it is in a metre different from the rest of the hymn, Wilson observes that it is ‘probably a fragment of some old popular song’ (Trsl., p. 19). This would, therefore, attribute a knowledge of the Gandhāris to the Vedic Aryans in very ancient times.

A hymn in the Atharvaveda consigns Takman or fever to the Gandhāris along with other people like the Mujavants, the Āṅgas and the Magadhas. The authors of the Vedic Index explain this mention of two northern peoples (the Gandhāris and Mujavants)

---

1 Discoveries have been made in this district of Buddhist architecture and sculpture of the time of Kanishka (first century A.D.). See N. I. Dey, Geographical Dictionary, p. 23.

2 Book III, c. xci. He describes them as being clad in cotton garments, and bearing bows of reed, and arrows tipped with iron. See Rapson, Ancient India, p. 87; and McCrindle, p. 116.
with two eastern tribes (Aṅgas and Magadhās), by noting that ‘the latter two tribes are apparently the Eastern limit of the poet’s knowledge; the two former the Northern’.  

In the Brāhmaṇa literature also we find mention of the Gandhārīs (e.g. Chāndogya Upaniṣad, 6, 14—the familiar example of the man who is led blind-folded from the land of the Gandhāras, and has to find his way back by asking directions from village to village).

The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VII, 34) mentions Nagnajit, a king of Gandhāra, among the Vedic teachers who propagated the Śoma-cult,—so it is evident that Gandhāra was not excluded from Vedic ‘Aryandom’. In the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (VIII, 1, 4, 10) also we find King Svarjīt Nagnajita or Nagnajit of Gandhāra referred to,—though in this case his opinion on a point of ritual is treated with scant respect as he was merely a Rājanya-bandhū, i.e. belonging to the princely order, and not a Rṣi. But this King Nagnajit is mentioned with great regard and respect in later literature from the great Epic onwards, and in a technical book on painting he is quoted as the originator of that art.

Coming to the next period of Vedic literature, viz. the period of the Sūtras, we find the people of Gandhāra mentioned in the Śrauta-Sūtras of Baudhāyana, Āpastamba and Hiranyakesī, along with other Aryan peoples of the east and the west.

The Mahābhārata contains many legends about Gandhāra. In the Adi-parvan we find that Dhṛtarāṣṭra, king of the Kurus, married the daughter of Suvala, King of Gandhāra, and 100 sons were born to them (Chap. 10, p. 118; Chap. 63, p. 72). A princess of Gandhāra was one of the wives of Ajamīḍha who was the originator of the Kuru family. Gandhāra, it is said, was named after this Gāndhārī (Adi-parvan, Chap. 95, p. 105). In the Udyogaparvan we find that King Yayeṇa sent his son Yadu into exile in Gandhāra, because he began to disregard his Kṣatriya superiors, becoming vain on account of his strength (Chap. 149, p. 771). In the Dronaparvan it is said that Karṇa brought Gandhāra under the sway of Duryodhana (Chap. 4, p. 997); while in the Asvamedhaparvan we read that Arjuna went to the Punjab (Pāñcanada), where he had a hard fight with the son of Śakuni, King of Gandhāra. The Gandhāran army

1 Vedic Index, I, p. 219.
2 In the Kumbhakāra Jātaka, for example, it is said that he ruled over Gandhāra and Kashmir, and later became a monk.
3 Dokumente der Indischen Kunst, Erstes Heft, Malerei, des Cilā Laṅksāṇa, edited by Berthold Laufer.
4 Baudhāyāna Śrauta Sūtra, XXI, 13; Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra, XXII, 6, 18; Hiranyakesī Śrauta Sūtra, XVII, 6.
5 Suvala is also mentioned in the Suśravaparvan (Chap. 34, p. 245).
was put to flight, but Arjuna spared the life of Sakuni's son (Chaps. 83-4, pp. 2093-4).

It would be wearisome to recount in detail all the references from the Mahabharata to the actions of the Gandharas in the long-drawn-out battle of Kuruksetra. We may note, however, that the Gandharas, led by their King Sakuni, made up a powerful division of the Kuru army. When at the commencement of the battle Duryodhana came out in procession at the head of his vast army, Sakuni's contingent of hill troops (pārvatiya) surrounded him on all sides. This would seem to indicate that the warriors from the hills of Gandhara were the most trusty of Duryodhana's soldiers, for they were chosen to form his bodyguard. After various adventures (Bhīṣmaparvan, Chap. 46, p. 76; Chap. 51, p. 14; Chap. 58, pp. 7-10), the Gandharas on the 5th day of the battle, together with the Kāmhojas, Madras and other peoples of the N.W. frontier made an onset against Arjuna, under the lead of Sakuni (Bhīṣmaparvan, Chap. 71, pp. 13-17). The Gandharas and their princes further distinguished themselves throughout the battle (see Bhīṣmaparvan, Chap. 90; Droṇaparvan, Chap. 20; Chap. 29, pp. 2-27; Chap. 48, p. 7; Chap. 85, pp. 16-17; Salyaparvan, Chap. 8, p. 26). Evidently great reliance was placed on their prowess, and perhaps especially on their fast horses; for it appears that, like their neighbours, the Kāmhojas, the Gandharas reared a large number of horses in their country, and their troops fought for the most part on horseback. References which do not give them credit are, e.g. Karnaparvan, Chap. 44, p. 46 and Chap. 45, p. 8, where Karna says that the Gandharas along with the other races on the N.W. frontier are men of disgusting practices and customs; and ibid., Chap. 95, p. 6, where it is said that Sakuni cravenly fled from the field, surrounded by thousands of the Gandharas (Cf. also Dronaparvan, Chap. 29, pp. 2-27).

Gandhara is also mentioned in the Purāṇas. According to the Māyā, Vāyu and Viṣṇu Purāṇas, a certain Gandhāra was born in the family of Druhyu, one of the sons of Yayāti, and the kingdom of Gandhāra was named after him. According to the Bhāgavata and Brahma Purāṇas, Gandhāra was fourth in the line of descent from Druhyu. Gandhāra had four children, namely, Dharma, Dhrīti, Durgam and Pracetā. Pracetā had 100 sons who, being the kings of the Mleccha country, conquered the north (Viṣṇupurāṇa, 4th

1 Bhīṣmaparvan, 20, 8; see also ibid., Chap. 16, p. 28.
2 Māyāpurāṇa, 48; Vāyu-purāṇa, 99; Viṣṇupurāṇa, 4th Aṇka, Chap. 17.
3 9th Skandha, Chap. 23 (Bhāgavata); Chap. 13 (Brahma).
4 According to the Māyāpurāṇa, three children: Dharma, Vidusa and Pracetā.

Turning from legend or semi-legend to fact, we note that in the days of Aśoka and some of his immediate successors, Gandhāra was one of the most flourishing seats of Buddhism. We learn from Rock Edict V that Aśoka appointed Dharma-mahāmātrās (high officers in the department of dharma or religious conduct) to further the welfare and happiness of the Gandhāras.1 Fā-Hien, the Chinese pilgrim, who visited India at the beginning of the fifth century A.D., relates that Gandhāra was the place where Dharmavivardhana, son of Aśoka, ruled. Here the Buddha, when a Bodhisattva, was supposed to have given his eyes for another man.2 Buddhist scholastic philosophy reached its culmination in the fifth century A.D., at the time when two famous Gandhārans, Aśāṅga and Vasubandhu, flourished. Aśāṅga, at first an adherent of the semi-orthodox Mahisāsakas, later became a great teacher of Yogācāra. Vasubandhu likewise became a convert to Mahāyānam; he was celebrated as the author of the Abhidharmakośa. Other notable Buddhist scholars who made Gandhāra, and particularly its capital Takṣasālī (Taxila) famous throughout India were Dhammapāla,3 Yasadatta,4 and Āngulimāla.5 For legendary accounts of Gandhāra as associated with Buddhism, see, e.g. Gandhāra Jātaka, Sāsana-vamsa (P.T.S., p. 12), Divyāvadāna (Cowell and Neil, pp. 60-1).

Hsūan Tsang, who visited India in the seventh century A.D., has left an interesting account of Gandhāra. He records the ruined state of monasteries and shrines which two centuries before showed no traces of decay. The kingdom of Gandhāra, according to him, was about 1,000 li from north to south. On the east it bordered on the river Sin (= Sindhu). The capital was called Po-lu-sha-pu-lo, i.e. Purusāpura, and was about 40 li in circuit. The royal family was extinct, and the kingdom was governed by deputies from Kapiṣa. The towns and villages were deserted; but the country was rich in cereals, producing a variety of flowers and fruits, and abounding in sugarcane. The Chinese pilgrim goes on to say: 'The climate is warm and moist. The disposition of the people is timid and soft; they love literature, and while most of them belong to heretical schools, a few believe in the true law (i.e. Buddhism)'. In the town of Pi-lo-tu-lo (i.e. Salātula), he observes, Panini was born (see Buddhist Records of the Western World (Beal), Vol. I, pp. 97-8; p. 114).

---

1 Cf. Chapter on Kāmbojas.
2 Legge, Travels of Fa-Hien, pp. 31-2.
3 Psalms of the Brethren, p. 149.
4 Ibid., p. 201.
5 Ibid., pp. 319 et seq.
6 One li = approx. 576 metres.
The early capital cities of Gandhāra (each being the centre of its own kingdom) were Puṣkalāvatī or Puṣkarāvatī, and Takṣaśīlā (Taxila),—the former being situated to the west and the latter to the east of the Indus. It would appear that in early times the Gandhāra territory lay on both sides of the Indus, but was later confined to the western side (McCridle, p. 115). As we have just seen, Hsüan Tsang knew Purusāpurā (= Peshawar) as the capital; and yet another city, namely, Kāpiša, was a Gandhāran capital during the days of Greek rule.1

According to Cunningham, the most ancient capital of Gandhāra was Puṣkarāvatī, which is said to have been founded by Puṣkara, son of Bharata and nephew of Rāma.2 Puṣkalāvatī's antiquity is undoubted, as it was the capital of an Indian Prince named Hasti (Greek Astes) at the time of Alexander's expedition (326 B.C.). It is called Peukelaotis by Arrian and Peukalei by Dionysius Periegetes. Together with Takṣaśīlā, Puṣkalāvatī came under the Śaka rule during the reign of Maues 3 (c. 75 B.C.). Tārānātha mentions the town as a royal residence of Kaniska's son (Vincent Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 277, f.n. 1).

Shi-shi-ch'eng, the Chinese name for Takṣaśīlā, the Eastern capital of Gandhāra, means 'severed head'. The legend goes that when the Buddha was a Bodhisattva in this city, he gave his head away in charity, and the city took its name from this circumstance.4 The city as described by Arrian was great, wealthy and populous. Strabo and Hsüan Tsang praise the fertility of its soil. Pliny calls it a famous city, and states that it was situated on a level whete the hills sank down into the plains. About 80 years after Takṣaśīlā's submission to Alexander, it was taken by Aśoka; while by the early part of the second century B.C. it had become a province of the Graeco-Baktrian monarchy,—only to be conquered in 126 B.C.5 by the Indo-Skythian Sus or Abars, who retained it until it was taken from them by a different tribe of the same nationality, under Kaniska (c. 78 B.C.). About the middle of the first century A.D. it is said to have been visited by Apollonius of Tyana and his companion Damis, who described it as being about the size of Nineveh, walled like a Greek city, with narrow but well-arranged streets. Takṣaśīlā must have been destroyed long before the Muhammadan

---

1 Rapson, Ancient India, pp. 133, 141-2.
4 Legge, Fa-Hien, p. 32.
5 But note discrepancy in dates of conquest.
invasion, for it is not mentioned by any Muhammadan author who has written upon India.\(^1\)

Cunningham says that the site of Takṣaśīlā is found near Shah-Dheri just one mile to the N.E. of Kāla-ka-sarāi, in the extensive ruins of a fortified city around which he was able to trace no less than 55 stupas (of which two are as large as the great Mānīkyāla tope), 28 monasteries and 9 temples. Now the distance from Shah-Dheri to Ohind is 36 miles, and from Ohind to Hashtnagar another 38, making 74 miles in all,—which is 19 in excess of the distance between Taxila and Peukelaotis (Puskaravāti) as recorded by Pliny. To reconcile the discrepancy, Cunningham suggests that Pliny's 60 miles or LX should be read as 80 miles or LXXX, which is equivalent to 73\(\frac{1}{2}\) English miles or within half a mile of the actual distance between the two places (Cunningham, Ancient Geography, p. 105). Dr. Bhandarkar says\(^2\) that in Aśoka's time Takṣaśīlā does not appear to have been the capital of Gandhāra, for from his Rock Edict XIII it seems that Gandhāra was not in his dominions proper, but was feudatory to him; while from the Kālīṅga Edict I, we learn that Takṣaśīlā was directly under him, as one of his sons was stationed there. The deduction that Takṣaśīlā was not the capital of Gandhāra at that time is confirmed by Ptolemy's statement that the Gandarai (Gandhāra) country was situated to the west of the Indus with its city Proklais, i.e. Puskaravāti.\(^3\)

Takṣaśīlā was visited by Hsiian Tsang in the seventh century A.D. (when it was a dependency of Kashmir).\(^4\)

Takṣaśīlā figures prominently in Buddhist and Jain stories. It was associated with Mahāvīra, the founder of Jainism\(^6\) (see Heart of Jainism by Mrs. Sinclair Stevenson, p. 80, f.n.), and with traditions regarding the Buddha. It is stated in the Dipavamsa that a Kṣatriya prince named Dipanakara, and his sons and grandsons governed their great kingdom in Takṣaśīlā (Pāli Takkhasilā). In the Dutiyapalāyī Jātaka we find that King Gandhāra (= the Gandhāran) of Takṣaśīlā attacked and surrounded Benares with his four-fold army, and boasted that nobody would be able to defeat him. But the King of Benares said to him: 'I shall destroy your army like mad elephants destroying a nalavana (bamboo grove)'. King Gandhāra forthwith

---

1. See McCrindle, Ancient India as described by Ptolemy, pp. 119 et seq.
2. Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 54, f.n.
3. See also Fā-Hien's Travels (Legge's Ed.), pp. 31-2 where the traveller distinguishes Takkhasilā from Gandhāra.
5. S. Stevenson, Heart of Jainism, p. 80, f.n.
fled, terrified, to his own kingdom.\(^1\) But we find the situation reversed in the *Pālīyi Jātaka*: Brahmadatta, King of Benares, leads an army to Takṣaśilā, but is so struck by the splendour of the city gate, which he mistakes for a palace, that he does not dare to make an attack on so mighty a king (the king being pictured as the Bodhisattva), and returns baffled to his own country.\(^2\)

Takṣaśilā was a great seat of learning in Ancient India. Various arts and sciences were taught there, and pupils from different parts of India would flock to the city for instruction.\(^3\) Here also magic charms \(^4\) and spells for understanding the cries of animals \(^5\) were taught. According to *Jātaka* (IV, 391), only Brahmins and Kṣatriyas were admitted to the university. The details of Taxila's importance as a seat of learning have been given by me elsewhere,\(^6\) and a brief notice is all that is necessary here.

As regards the authentic political history of Gandhāra itself, as distinct from that of its capitals, we find that in the Buddha's time Pukkusāti, King of Gandhāra, is said to have sent an embassy and a letter to King Bimbisāra (Skt. Bindūsāra) of Magadha.\(^7\) Prof. Rapson states \(^8\) that Gandhāra was in all probability conquered by Cyrus (558–530 B.C.), and remained a Persian province for about two centuries. After the downfall of the Persian empire in 331 B.C., it came under the sway of Alexander the Great, together with the Persian province of 'India' or 'the country of the Indus'. Through Gandhāra and the 'Indian' province was exercised the Persian influence which so greatly modified the civilisation of N.W. India. Later, as we have seen, Gandhāra was feudatory to Āsoka, but it declared its independence shortly after his death, only to fall very soon under the sway of the Greek kings.\(^9\) According to Whitehead,\(^10\) it was Euthydemos (circa. 230–195 B.C.) who conquered Gandhāra. R. D. Banerjee, however, presumes \(^11\) that the conqueror was Diyaḍāta (Diodotos) II, as some gold coins of his reign have been discovered by Sir John Marshall in the ruins of Taxila. Whitehead's supposition is the more probable, if we are to assume that Gandhāra was subject to the Maurya Empire until

---

\(^{1}\) *Jātaka* (Fausböl), Vol. II, pp. 219–21.

\(^{2}\) Ibid., pp. 217–8.

\(^{3}\) See, e.g. *Psalms of the Brethren*, p. 136.

\(^{4}\) *Jātaka*, II, No. 185, p. 100.

\(^{5}\) Ibid., III, No. 416, p. 415.


\(^{7}\) Rhys Davids, *Buddhāṅk India*, p. 28.

\(^{8}\) Rapson, *Ancient India*, pp. 87–82.

\(^{9}\) R. D. Banerjee, *Vāṇgālār Ithāsā*, pp. 31-2.


\(^{11}\) Prācina Mudrā, p. 27.
Aśoka’s death in 227 B.C., for the house of Diodotos was supplanted by Euthydemos in 230 B.C.

A rival Greek prince, Eucratides (circa. 175–155 B.C.) wrested Gandhāra, with other territories, from Demetrios, the 4th Bactrian king. The family of Eucratides was supplanted in its turn by Śaka satraps in Kāpiśa and Taxila, but continued to hold the Kabul Valley until finally overpowered by the Kushānas. At the end of the fifth century A.D., Gandhāra was occupied by the Hūnas. After this, information is scanty until we come to the late 9th century, when Lalitāya founded the Hindu Shāhiya dynasty, with its capital at Ohind, on the Indus. In the 11th century (1021 A.D., according to Vincent Smith) Trilocanapāla, the last king of the Shāhiya dynasty, was defeated on the banks of the river Toṣi by Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni, and after his reign no account is available of the Hindu rule in Gandhāra, apart from the fact that his son Bhīmapāla regained his independence for five years.

We may close this chapter by making one or two remarks on the trade relations of Gandhāra, and by giving some references for the further study of the celebrated school of art which takes its name from this country. The Jātakas testify to the existence of trade relations between the Kashmir-Gandhāra kingdom and the north-eastern kingdom of Videha (see, e.g. Gandhāra Jātaka and Fick, The Social Organisation in N.E. India in Buddha’s Time, p. 272). Horse-dealers figure prominently amongst the Gandhāran traders, and we learn from the Vāyuśūraṇa that the Gandhāran horses were considered the best of all (Chap. 99). We find references to the production of valuable blankets or woollen shawls (kambala) in the Vessantara Jātaka (Fausböll, Jātaka, Vol. VI, pp. 500-1), and also in the Suttanipāta Commentary (II, 487). In later times (9th and 10th centuries) it was in Gandhāra that the finest ‘double-dice’ coins were struck.

The story of Gandhāra art is a complete study in itself, and all we can do here is to give some references to authorities on the subject, for example, Vincent Smith’s History of Fine Art in India and Ceylon; James Fergusson’s History of Indian and Eastern Architecture (2nd Edition, London, 1910); A. Foucher, L’Art gréco-bouddhique du Gandhāra; Sir John Marshall, A Guide to Taxila; and contributions to A.S.I. (Annual Reports) by J. Ph. Vogel, D. B. Spooner, Sir John Marshall and A. Cunningham.

1 See Rapson, Ancient India, p. 133; Brown, Coins of India, pp. 23-4.
2 Ibid., pp. 133 and 142.
3 V. A. Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 328.
6 See Brown, Coins of India, p. 53.
The Kurus form one of the most ancient and prominent of the Indo-Aryan Ksatriya tribes. In one of the verses of a Rigvedic hymn (X, 33, 4) occurs the word, Kurusrasaña, which is interpreted by some scholars either as 'the glory of the Kurus', or as 'the hearer of the praises of the Kurus'; but is more generally taken to be the name of a particular king, a ruler of the Kuru tribe. In the hymn which follows this one, the charities of the prince Kurusrasaña are praised, and there can be no doubt that 'Kurusrasaña' is here the name of a particular sovereign, especially as some of his ancestors are also mentioned (see Rgveda, X, 33, 1 and 4-9; Wilson, Rgveda, Vol. VI, pp. 89-90). The seer mourns the death of his generous donor, and, in the last four verses, it seems that he consoles Upamaśravas, the son of Kurusrasaña, and mentions Mitrātithi, grandfather of Upamaśravas. But the Brhaddevata (supported by Kātyāyana's Sarvanukramaṇī) states that it was for the death of his grandfather Mitrātithi that Upamaśravas is being consoled in these verses.

In the same hymn, Kurusrasaña is also called Trasasyava or 'descendant of Trasasyu'. Trasasyu is well known in the Rgveda (IV, 38, 1; VII, 19, 3, etc.) as a king of the Pūrus. Trasasyu's people, the Pūrus, were settled on the Sarasvatī (see Vedic Index, I, 327), a locality which accords well with the later union of Pūrus and Kuru. According to the Vedic Index, 'it is likely that the Trtsu-Bharatas who appear in the Rgveda as enemies of the Pūrus, later coalesced with them to form the Kuru people', for there is evidence that the Bharatas, like the Pūrus, occupied the territory in which the Kuru were later found. Two of them are spoken of in a hymn of the Rgveda (III, 23) as having kindled fire on the Drsadvati, the Āpaya and the Sarasvatī—that is to say, in the sacred places of the later Kurukṣetra.2

Professor Keith also urges this view of the incorporation of the Bharatas with the Kurus in his chapter contributed to the Cambridge History of India (p. 118, Cam. Hist.), while Prof. Rapson concurs with him, observing that the Bharatas who were settled in the

---

1 Vedic Index, I, 167.
2 For further evidence of the merging of the Bharatas in the Kurus, see Vedic Index, I, 167-8.
country of the Sarasvatī in Rigvedic times were later merged in the Kuru; and that their whole territory, the new together with the old, became famous in history under the name ‘Kurukṣetra’—the field of the Kuru’. This was the scene of the great war of the descendants of Bharata, and the centre from which Indo-Aryan culture spread, first throughout Hindusthan, and eventually throughout the whole sub-continent.1

Another king, whose glories as a generous donor are sung in a hymn of the Rgveda (VIII, 23), namely Pākasthāman, is given the designation Kaurayāna,—most probably a patronymic; while in the Atharvaveda (XX, 127, 8) a man called Kauravya is described as having enjoyed prosperity under the rule of King Parīkṣit. Evidently, therefore, the name Kuru was already applied in the early Vedic age to a prominent tribe of Indo-Aryan Kṣatriyas.

It is, however, in the Brāhmaṇa literature that the Kurus acquire the greatest prominence among the Kṣatriya tribes of ancient India. In the Brāhmaṇa literature, the Kuru are often connected with the Paṇcālas and from the way in which the Kuru-Paṇcālas are mentioned, there is no room for doubt that it was in the country inhabited by them that some of the most famous Brāhmaṇa works were composed. Thus the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa in its chapter on the Mahābhīṣeka of Indra states: ‘Then in this firm middle established quarter the Śādhyas and the Āptyas, the gods, anointed him (i.e. Indra) . . . for kingship. Therefore in this firm middle established quarter, whatever kings there are of the Kuru-Paṇcālas with the Vaśas and Uśīnaras, they are anointed for kingship’ (Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, VIII, 14, Tr. Keith, Rgveda Brāhmaṇas, p. 331). From the way in which mention is made of the country of the Kuru-Paṇcālas, it is evident that the author of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa was a native of that region. The authors of the Vedic Index2 are of the opinion that the great Brāhmaṇas were composed in the Kuru-Paṇcāla country, though Weber3 would suggest a different locality for the Tāṇḍya Mahābrāhmaṇa of the Sāmaveda, and the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa of the White Yajurveda.

Eliot points out that at the time when the Brāhmaṇas and earlier Upaniṣads were composed (circa 800–600 B.C.), the principal political units were the kingdoms of the Paṇcālas and Kuru in the region of Delhi.4 The Kurus are comparatively seldom mentioned alone, their name usually being coupled with that of the Paṇcālas; and the Kuru-Paṇcālas are often expressly referred to as a united

1 Cambridge History of India, I, 47.
2 I, 165.
3 History of Indian Literature, pp. 68 and 132.
nation. Speech is said to have its particular home in the Kuru-Pañcāla land; and the mode of sacrifice of the Kuru-Pañcālas is proclaimed to be the best. The Kuru-Pañcāla Brahmins are famous in the Upaniṣads: for example, in the last kāṇḍa of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa we find mention of the Brahmans of the Kuru-Pañcāla country being invited and given huge largesses by Janaka, king of Videha (cf. Bhādūranyaka Uṇ., III, 1, 1, foll.).

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (XII, 9, 3, 3) speaks of a Kauravya King Balhika Prātipīya (Kauravya and Kaurava being interchangeable variants); while Yāska's Nīrūkta 1 also asserts that Devāpi Ārṣīśena and Śāntanu were Kauravyas. The Kuru kings are mentioned by the name Kauravya in the Pāli Buddhist literature, as we shall show below.

The Chāndogya Upaniṣad, which is the remnant of an ancient Brāhmaṇa work belonging to the Sāmaveda, contains an account of the destruction of crops in the Kuru country by locusts or by a hailstorm, and it further recounts the story of how a famished Rṣī (Uṣasti Cākrāyaṇa) of the Kuru land was forced to partake of food that was unclean, and how in spite of this temporary impurity under the stress of famine, the Rṣī was successful in winning for himself the highest functions at the subsequent sacrifice performed by the king at Ibhyagrama (Chāndogya Upaniṣad, I, 10, 1–7; Sacred Books of the East, Vol. I, pp. 18–19).

We have seen that the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa speaks of the country of the Kuru-Pañcālas as belonging to the ‘dhruvā madhyamā dīk’, i.e., to what is known in later literature as the Madhyadesa or middle country. Prof. Rapson points out that the territories occupied by the Kurus extended to the East far beyond the limits of Kurukṣetra. The Kuru must have occupied the northern portion of the Doab, or the region between the Jumna and the Ganges, having as their neighbours on the east the North Pañcālas, and on the south, the South Pañcālas, who held the rest of the Doab as far as the land of the Vatsas, the corner where the two rivers meet at Prayāga (Allahabad). 2

The great law-giver Manu speaks of the country of the Kurus and other allied peoples (Matsyas, Pañcālas and Śūrasenakas) as forming the sacred land of the Brahmarshīs (Brahmanical sages), ranking immediately after Brahmāvarta (Manu, II, 17–19). He indirectly praises the prowess of these peoples by saying that they should be placed in the van of any battle-array (Manu, VII, 193).

In the first verse of the Bhagavadgītā, the only book in India which is revered by people of all kinds of religious belief, the land

---

1 II, 10.  
2 Rapson, Ancient India, p. 165.
of Kurus is called Dharmakṣetra, or the holy land. In other parts of the Mahābhārata, too, Kurukṣetra is mentioned as a land which was especially holy. Thus the Vānaparva (Chap. 129, pp. 394-5) tells us that Kurukṣetra was the holy spot of the righteous Kurus. It was here that Nahusa’s son, Yayāti, performed many religious ceremonies, that divine and royal sages performed the Śārasvata Vajña, and that Prajāpati performed his Vajña. In the Brāhmaṇa texts also, Kurukṣetra is regarded as a particularly sacred country, for within its boundaries flowed the sacred streams Drśadvatī and Śarasvatī, as well as the Āpayā.¹

The ‘field of the Kurus’, or the region of Delhi, was the scene of the war between the Kurus and Pāṇḍus, in which all the nations of India were ranged on one side or the other, according to the Epic in its present form. It has been the great battle-field of India ever since, as it forms a narrow strip of habitable country lying between the Himalayas and the Indian Desert through which every invading army from the Punjab must force its way. Because of this strategical importance, Delhi became the capital of India under the Mughal emperors who came into India by land from the N.W. (Rapson, Ancient India, p. 173).

Besides the Kurus of the Madhyaadeśa, we find references to another Kuru people, viz. the Uttara-Kurus. The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa mentions the country of the Uttara-Kurus in its chapter on the mahābhīṣeka of Indra (Ait. Br., VIII, 14; Tr. Keith’s Rgveda Brāhmaṇas, pp. 330-1). The authors of the Vedic Index are of the opinion that the Uttara-Kurus were a historical people at the time when this passage of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa was written. They observe: ‘The Uttara-Kurus, who play a mythical part in the Epic and later literature, are still a historical people in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, where they are located beyond the Himalaya (phereṇa Himavantāni). In another passage, however, the country of the Uttara-Kurus is stated by Vaśītha Sātyahavya to be a land of the gods (deva-kṣetra), but Jānmatapi Atyarāti was anxious to conquer it, so that it is still not wholly mythical. It is reasonable to accept Zimmer’s view that the northern Kurus were settled in Kaśmir, especially as Kurukṣetra is the region where tribes advancing from Kaśmir might naturally be found.’²

In Buddhist literature, Uttara-Kuru is very often mentioned as a mythic region, but there are some passages which go to show that there was a faint memory of a country that once had a historical existence [see, e.g. the reference to ‘Kurudipa’, Dipavamsa, p. 16; and the statement in the Sāsanavamsa (p. 12) that the place of the

¹ Vedic Index, I, p. 169.
² Ibid., I, p. 84.
inhabitants of Uttaradvipa is called the kingdom of Kurus (Kuru-
raṭṭhāmi)].

The Southern Kurus are mentioned in the *Papañcasūdana* (P.T.S. edition, p. 225), while the *Aṅguttara Nikāya* tells us that Kuru was one of the sixteen mahājanapadas or prominent countries of Jambudīpa (= India), having abundant food and wealth, and the 'seven kinds of gems'. In Buddhist literature, as in the Brāhmaṇa literature, the Kurus are comparatively seldom mentioned alone, their name being usually coupled with that of the Pañcālas. We read in the *Papañcasūdana* that there was no vihāra for the Buddha's habitation in the Kuru kingdom, but that there was a beautiful forest outside the town of Kammāsadhamma where he used to dwell. We are told further that the inhabitants of the Kuru kingdom enjoyed good health, and their mind was always ready to receive instruction in profound religious truths, because the climate was bracing at all seasons, and the food was good. The Buddha delivered some profound and learned discourses to the Kurus, e.g. the Mahānīdana and Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Suttantas of the *Dīgha Nikāya*. (For fanciful stories of the Kurus' meditation on Satipaṭṭhāna, see further *Papañcasūdana*, P.T.S., pp. 227-9.)

The Buddhist literature is full of stories in which the land of Kuru and its princes and people play a leading part. For instance, the Thera Ratṭhapāla, who contributed some verses to the Theragāthā, was born in the town of Thullakotthika in the country of the Kurus, and we are told that he converted the King 'Koravya' to Buddhism. The Dhammapada Commentary relates the story of Aggidatta, the chaplain of the king of Kosala (Mahākosala, predecessor of Pasenadi). After his retirement, Aggidatta dwelt on the borders of the Kuru country and Anga-Magadha, together with his 10,000 disciples; and the inhabitants of these countries used to supply the whole company with food and drink. Eventually Aggidatta and all his followers were converted by the Buddha.

In the Theragāthā commentary (p. 87) we read that a therī named Nanduttarā was reborn in a Brahmin family in the city of Kammāsadhamma (or Kammāsadhamma) in the kingdom of the Kurus. She first became a Jain, but was later converted by Mahākaccayana, accepted ordination from him, and attained arahantship. In the *Paramatthadīpani* (pp. 201-4) we have an account of the miseries suffered after death by a certain Serini, a heretical woman of the Kuru capital.

---

2 *Psalms of the Brethren*, pp. 302-7; *Majjhima Nikāya*, II, pp. 65 et seq.
Returning to the history of the tribe itself, we find that the authors of the *Vedic Index* consider that the Kurus represent a comparatively late wave of Aryan immigration into India. ‘The geographical position of the Kuru-Pańcālas’, they say, ‘renders it probable that they were later immigrants into India than the Kosala-Vidchas or the Kāsis who must have been pushed into their more eastward territories by a new wave of Aryan settlers from the west’.  

In the *Papańcasūdani*, there is a fanciful story of the origin of the Kurus. Mahāmandhātā, king of Jambudīpa, was a cakravartin, and therefore subject to no restrictions of place. He conquered Pubbavideha, Aparagoyāna and Uttara-Kuru, besides the Devalokas. When he was returning from Uttara-Kuru, a large number of the inhabitants of that country followed Mahāmandhātā to Jambudīpa, and the place where they settled became known as Kururaṭham.  

The ancient capital of the Kurus was Hastināpura which was situated on the Ganges in what is now the Meerut district of the United Provinces. *Indraprastha*, the modern Indraprat near Delhi, was the second capital. According to the Epic story, the blind king Dārtrāśṭra continued to rule at the old capital Hastināpura on the Ganges, while he assigned to his nephews, the five Pāndus, a district on the Jumna where they founded Indraprastha. While the ancient capital of the Kurus sank into insignificance, the new city erected by the Pāndavas has not only come down to our time, but has acquired a fresh lease of life as the seat of the central government of the British Indian Empire. Another city of the Kuru country, according to the Prākrit legend given in the commentary on the *Uttarādhyayana Sūtra*, was Ishukāra (Prākrit Usuyāra or Isuyāra), ‘a wealthy and famous town, beautiful like heaven’.  

We have already referred to the town of Kammāsadhamma, which must have been well known in the Buddha’s time. It is also called Kammāsadamma,—derived by popular etymology from Kammāsa (a prince) and damma (from dam, to tame), because Kammāsa was brought under control by the Bodhisattva when he was born as a son of King Jayaddisa of Pańcāla (*Papańcasūdani*, pp. 226-7). The story of Kammāsa is narrated in full in the *Jayaddisa Jātaka*, in which we find that the Bodhisattva was born as the son of King Jayaddisa of Pańcāla. One of the King’s other sons was carried away by a Vakkhini (ogress) who brought him up, and taught him cannibalistic habits. After many attempts to capture him had failed, he was at last brought under control by the Bodhisattva. He was

---

TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

called Kammāsa (‘spotted, blemished’) because of a boil which appeared on his leg. It is apparent that this story is simply a variation of the Purānic story of Kalmāśapāda.

The Epic and Purānic tradition regarding the origin of the Kurus is as follows: Pūru, the son of Yayāti by Viśaparva’s daughter Śarmiṣṭhā, and grandson of Nahuṣa, was fifth in descent from Pururavā, son of Ilā, daughter of Manu, the father of mankind (Mānava-vamśa); and the dynasty which sprang from this Pūru was celebrated as the Pururavā dynasty. Tenth in descent from Pūru was Samvarana. When his kingdom was conquered by the king of the Pañcalas, Samvarana fled in fear, together with his wives, children and ministers, and took shelter in a forest on the banks of the Sindhu (Indus). He eventually regained his kingdom, with the help of his priest, the sage Vaśiṣṭha; and a son named Kuru was born to him, by Tapati, daughter of Śūrya. The people were charmed by the manifold good qualities of Kuru, and anointed him king. After the name of this king, the plain became famous as Kurukṣetra or the field of Kuru.

In the Epic period, the Kurus became the most powerful Kṣatriya tribe in northern India, after the downfall of the Magadha empire of Rājagṛha when Bhīmasena, who belonged to the younger branch of the Kauravas, killed the Saṃrāṭ (Emperor) Jarāsandha. Bhīmasena’s grandson, Pratīpa, had three sons, Devāpi, Vāhlika and Śāntanu. The eldest son, Devāpi, was a leper, and for this reason King Pratīpa was prevented by his subjects and by the advice of wise men from placing him on the throne. Devāpi became an ascetic, while Vāhlika went to rule over his maternal uncle’s land, and, after Pratīpa’s death, granted permission to his brother Śāntanu to reign over the Kuru country.

After Śāntanu came his sons Citrāṅgada and Vicitrāvīrya, both of whom died childless. However, in a semi-miraculous manner, two sons (Dhṛtarāṣṭra and Pāṇḍu) were born posthumously to Vicitrāvīrya’s wives. Dhṛtarāṣṭra married Gāndhāri, daughter of Suvala, king of the Gandhāras, and had by her one hundred sons, known as the Kurus or Kauravas, of whom the eldest was Duryodhana who could work miracles by the power of mantras.

1 Jātaka (Fausboll), V, pp. 21 et seq.
2 Mahābhārata, Droṇaparvan, Chap. 61, p. 1035.
3 Adiparvan, Vaṅgavāśī Ed., Chap. 75, pp. 86–8; Chap. 85, p. 96; Chap. 94, p. 104.
4 Udyogaparvan, Chap. 149, p. 771.
5 Ibid., Chap. 61, p. 707 (Vaṅgavāśī Ed.); and Śāntiparvan, Chap. 4, p. 1378, for further details about Duryodhana. For detailed (largely legendary) genealogies of the descendants of Kuru, see Viṣṇupurāṇa, IV, Chap. 20; and Bhāgavata Purāṇa, Skandha 9, Chap. 22.
As Dhṛtarāṣṭra was blind from birth, Pāṇḍu, though younger, was placed on the throne left vacant by the death of Vicitravirya. Matters grew complex when sons were born to both the brothers, and the difficulty was not lessened when Dhṛtarāṣṭra took over the government on the premature death of Pāṇḍu, had his five nephews brought up with his own sons, and finally appointed his eldest nephew, Yudhīśṭhira, to be heir-apparent. Dhṛtarāṣṭra's own sons, consumed with jealousy, set various plots on foot against their cousins, and eventually the old king decided on a compromise, giving Hastināpura to his sons, and to his nephews a district where they built the city of Indra-prastha. Here the Pāṇḍavas, in the words of Prof. Macdonell, 'ruled wisely and prospered greatly'. Duryodhana's jealousy being aroused, he resolved to ruin his cousins, with the aid of his uncle Śakuni, a skilful gamester. Yudhīśṭhira was thereupon challenged to a game of dice with Śakuni,—a challenge which he could not refuse, as this was a matter of honour among Indian Kṣatriyas in those days. Owing to dishonest tricks on Śakuni's part, Yudhīśṭhira was defeated, and lost everything, his kingdom, wealth, army, brothers, and finally Draupadī, the joint wife of the five Pāṇḍavas. In the end it was arranged that the Pāṇḍavas should go into banishment for twelve years, and to remain incognito for a thirteenth, after which they might return and regain their kingdom. They passed their period of banishment in the forest, and remained incognito for the thirteenth year at the court of King Virāṭa of the Matsyas.

The Matsya king and his people honoured Yudhīśṭhira and his brothers, and were grateful to them for preventing the predatory excursions of the Trigarttas and Kurus against their cattle. The bond with the Matsyas was further cemented by the marriage of Virāṭa's daughter with Abhimanyu, the son of Arjuna. The Pāṇḍavas were further related through Draupadī with the powerful king of Pañcāla; and they had a firm friend in Kṛṣṇa, the hero of the Yādavas. It was felt, accordingly, that a successful attempt might be made to recover the dominions out of which they had been cheated. The King of Pañcāla suggested that they should resort to war, and kings of other neighbouring countries were invited to help the Pāṇḍavas. But before the war began the brothers made a last unsuccessful attempt to negotiate peace, sending Kṛṣṇa Vāsudeva as their emissary to the Kuru court.

After the failure of negotiations, allies were invited from far and near; even the kings of the south contributed their quota, for by that

---

time the Kṣatriyas had spread over the whole of India, and, according to the Epic account, all of them were ranged on one side or the other. Dhrṣṭadyumna was made generalissimo of the Pāṇḍava forces, Arjuna being the greatest hero on their side, with Kṛṣṇa Vāsudeva as his chief, so to speak. Being prevented by a vow from taking up arms in the battle, Kṛṣṇa took upon himself the duty of driving his friend’s chariot.

The Indian army in those days, as in later times, consisted of four divisions, viz. foot-soldiers, elephants, chariots, and horses. Arriving at Kurukṣetra, the Pāṇḍavas encamped with their troops on the western part of the field, facing the numerically much stronger force of Duryodhana and his allies (Mbh., Udyogaparvan, Chap. 198; Chap. 151, Chap. 154). Of the 18 aksauhinis or regiments that assembled on the battle-field, 11 were on Duryodhana’s side, and 7 on that of his cousins. In individual heroes also Duryodhana’s army was apparently much stronger. But the Kurus, in spite of their preponderant strength, felt misgivings on the eve of the battle, while the Pāṇḍavas were buoyed up with the righteousness of their cause. The commander of Duryodhana’s army was the old warrior Bhīṣma, and the allies of the Kurus included the peoples of Kośala, Videha, Aṅga, Vaṅga, Gandhāra, Sindhu, and many other States. Duryodhana caused his camps to be made to look like a second Hastināpura, and into these camps he made soldiers with their horses enter in groups of a hundred each, arranging names and emblems for all of them so that they might be recognised in the battle.

When the two powers were thus ready to fight, the Kurus and the Pāṇḍavas were bound to follow the traditional rules of a fair fight among the Kṣatriyas of India. Only men equally situated or matched could fairly fight one another. Combatants armed with the same kind of weapons should be ranged against one another. Those that left the battle-field should never be killed, a fleeing enemy was not to be pursued, and one devoid of arms should never be struck. A chariot-warrior should fight only with another chariot-warrior, and, similarly, with horse and foot-soldiers, and those riding on elephants. One engaged in a personal combat with another, one seeking refuge, one retreating, one whose weapon was broken, and one clad in armour should never be struck; neither should non-combatants on the field of battle, such as charioteers, attendants engaged in carrying weapons, players on drums and blowers of conches, be smitten.  

1 Mbh., Bhīṣmaparvan, Chap. I.
This was the tacit understanding between the two armies, and the rules were generally not violated except under very special circumstances.

The Kuru army with Bhīṣma at its head advanced first, then the Pāṇḍava army led by Bhīmasena. The soldiers of both sides rushed upon one another with loud yells and a simultaneous blowing of conches. The fight raged furiously for ten days, at the end of which Bhīṣma fell, and both forces were withdrawn for a lull.

On Bhīṣma’s death, Drona was made commander of the Kaurava troops, and the fight raged for a further eight days, until finally Abhimanyu, Drona, Karna, and Śalya were all slain, and a great disorder prevailed, especially in the Kuru army, now consisting only of a few scattered soldiers. Sahadeva, one of the Pāṇḍu princes, killed the gamester Śakuni, and Duryodhana himself was killed by Bhīmasena after making a last desperate rush at the enemy. With Duryodhana’s death, the victory in the Kurukṣetra war fell to the Pāṇḍavas; but only a handful of their followers came out of the fray alive.

With the death of the hundred sons of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, the Kuru line through him became extinct, and the Pāṇḍavas now became lords of the Kuru kingdom, Yudhiṣṭhira being acclaimed king. The Pāṇḍus were reconciled to the aged Dhṛtarāṣṭra who retired to the forest after remaining at Hastināpura for fifteen years, and he and his queens finally perished in a forest conflagration. Yudhiṣṭhira himself did not reign long. When he heard of Kṛṣṇa’s accidental death, and of the destruction of the Vṛṣṇis, he determined to leave the world, and he and his brothers retired to the forest, leaving the young prince Parīkṣit, grandson of Arjuna, to rule over Hastināpura.

Parīkṣit was learned in the science of the duties of kings, and is credited with having possessed all noble qualities. He is described as a highly intelligent ruler, and a great hero, who wielded a powerful bow, and never missed his aim. One day he was lost in the forest, having been led astray by a deer whom he had struck but failed to kill. While roaming about, he met a sage and asked him whether he had seen a deer running that way. The sage was observing a vow of silence, and did not reply. Angered at this, the king took up a dead snake with the end of his bow, placed it around the sage’s neck, and went away. The son of the sage, hearing of this, cursed the king, saying that within a week he would be reduced to ashes by the bite of Taḵṣaka, king of the snakes. Hearing of the curse, the

---

1 So called because he was begotten at the time of the decrease (parīkṣiṇa) of the Kuru race.
sage was sorry, and warned the king; but in spite of elaborate precautions, the curse was fulfilled, and Parikṣit died of snake-bite.

Parikṣit's son, Janamejaya, now ascended the throne, and resolved to avenge his father's death by holding a snake sacrifice. Rṣis by the force of their mantras caused the snakes in their thousands to fall into the sacrificial fire. However, Taksaka's nephew, Āstika, son of a snake princess and the rṣi Jaratkāru, won the king's favour, caused him to suspend the sacrifice, and saved the snakes from total destruction.

Here the kernel of the Epic account ends. It will be readily seen that it is a mixture of history and legend; but the historicity of the battle itself, and of the Kuru kings who ruled shortly afterwards, need not be doubted.

Turning once more to the Buddhist literature, we find numerous stories of kings of the Kuru land. For instance the Bodhisattva is described in the Dhammapada commentary as having once been born to the chief queen of the Kuru king (Dhananijaya, according to the Kurudhamma Jātaka, Fausbøll, Vol. II, pp. 366 foll.), in the capital city, Indapatta (Indraprastha). He went to Taxila 'to complete his education, and was then appointed a viceroy by his father. When he came to the throne, he, together with his family and his chief officials, used to obey the 'Kuru-dhamma'. This Kurudhamma consisted in the observance of the five 'silas' or rules of moral conduct, and it possessed the mystic virtue of bringing prosperity to the country. At this time the king of Kālidga was troubled by a dearth of rain in his kingdom. The Bodhisattva, king of the Kurus, had a royal elephant named Aţjanavasabha, which was brought to the kingdom of Kālidga in the belief that its mere presence would bring rain. This device not having the expected result, it was concluded that rain did not fall in Kālidga because the Kurudhamma was not observed there; and Brahmans were sent to the kingdom of Kuru to make themselves acquainted with the Kurudhamma, and write it out for the king of Kālidga. Thereupon, King Kālidga observed the Kurudhamma faithfully, and forthwith the longed-for rain poured down in showers in his kingdom, and his crops were saved.¹ The Kurudhamma Jātaka, cited above, also narrates this story, and there are further references to King 'Dhananijaya Koravya' in other Jātakas (Cowell, Vol. IV, pp. 227–231; Vol. V, pp. 31–7; and ibid., p. 246). In the latter passage we are told that the kingdom of Kuru extended over three hundred leagues. The king's chief minister is called Sahiṇīttra in one story,²

¹ Dhammapada Commentary, IV, pp. 88-9.
² Jātaka (Fausbøll), V, p. 57.
and Vidhūra in another. In each case the king is said to have been very righteous and charitable. In yet another Jātaka version of the story, we are told, as usual, that there reigned in the city of Indapattana, in the kingdom of the Kurus, a king named Dhanañjaya, of the race of Yudhiṣṭhila (Yudhiṣṭhira). The Bodhisattva was born in the house of his family priest (not in the king's own family in this case). After learning all the arts at Taxila, he returned to Indapattana and after his father's death he became family priest and adviser to the king. He was called Vidhūrapāṇḍita.  

The story of King Dhanañjaya-korabha and his wise minister appears to have been very popular in Jātaka times, for its events find repeated mention in the tales. The Jātaka contains an account of further incidents concerning Dhanañjaya and Vidhūra, notably the defeat of Dhanañjaya at dice, and the meditation of Vidhūrapāṇḍita in a friendly rivalry between the king and Sakka (Indra).  

Though the Buddha principally confined his ministering activity to N.E. India, the Buddhist Pali texts show that he travelled widely over regions in Northern India; and the Kuru country too appears to have been favoured by his discourses (see, e.g. Anguttara Nikāya, Vol. V, pp. 29–32; Samyutta Nikāya, Vol. II, pp. 92–3; Ibid., pp. 107–9; Majjhima Nikāya, Vol. I, pp. 55 et seq.; Ibid., pp. 501 et seq.; Vol. II, pp. 261 et seq.; pp. 54 et seq.; Dhammapada Commentary, Vol. I, pp. 199–203 and cf. Ibid., Vol. III, pp. 193 et seq.; Digha Nikāya, Vol. II, pp. 55 et seq.; Ibid., pp. 200 et seq.). It is in nearly every case that the town of Kammāsadhamma is mentioned as the scene of the Buddha’s discourses.

Some time before the fourth century B.C., the monarchical constitution of the Kurus gave place to a republic, for we are told by Kauṭilya  that the Kurus were ‘rāja-sabda-upajīvinah’, or ‘enjoying the status of rājā’,—i.e. all citizens had equal rank and rights.

The Kurus appear to have played some part in Indian politics as late as the ninth century A.D., for when Dharmapāla installed Cakrāyudha on the throne of Kanauj, he did so with the consent of the neighbouring powers, amongst whom the Kurus are specifically mentioned.  

---

1 Jātaka (Fausboll), IV, p. 361.  
2 Ibid., VI, pp. 255 foll.  
3 Ibid., Vol. VI, pp. 255 foll.  
4 See Shāma Shāstrī’s translation of the Arthasastra, p. 455. Shāma Shāstrī renders ‘rāja-sabda-upajīvinah’ by ‘lived by the title of a rājā’, but this is too vague to convey the meaning. For a fuller discussion on the subject, see Chapter on the Licchavis.  
5 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 413.
CHAPTER IV

THE PANČĀLAS

The Pañcālas, like the Kūras, are most intimately connected with the Vedic civilization of the Brāhmaṇa period. The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa 1 tells us that they were called Krīvis in ancient times. In an enumeration of the ancient monarchs who had performed the Āśvamedha sacrifice, a king Kraivya Pañcāla is mentioned, and it is definitely stated that Krīvi was the ancient name of the Pañcāla tribe. Krīvi appears as a tribal name in the Rgveda. 2 Zimmer is of the opinion that the Krīvis resided in the region near the Sindhu and the Asiknī in the Punjab, and the authors of the Vedic Index express the same view. 3 But the only piece of evidence in favour of this hypothesis is that Krīvi is mentioned in a verse of a Rgvedic hymn, in which the names of those rivers occur in a subsequent verse (VIII, 20, 25). The Rgveda does not clearly testify to any connection between the rivers and the people.

Zimmer 4 hazards another (more far-fetched) conjecture, viz. that the Pañcālas with the Kūras made up the Vaikarṇa people; and the Vedic Index 5 lends its support to this theory. But the only evidence in support of this view is that the word Vaikarṇa appears in the dual in a verse of the Rgveda, 6 and the Kūru-Pañcālas appear combined as a dual people in the Brāhmaṇa literature. We are hardly justified in assuming any connection between these two facts, and moreover, it is doubtful whether ‘Vaikarṇayoh’ in the Rgveda passage referred to, is a tribal name at all. Wilson following Śāyaṇa translates ‘Vaikarṇayoh’ by ‘on the two banks (of the Paruṣṇi)’. 7 This meaning agrees very well with the context, as the subject-matter of the hymn is the crossing of the Paruṣṇi by King Sudās.

In the later Vedic Śaṃhitās and the Brāhmaṇa literature, the Pañcālas are frequently referred to, and often combined with the Kūras. The Kāṭhaka Śaṃhitā (XXX, 2) speaks of the Pañcālas as being the Vaṃśa or people of Keśin Dālḥhya, and says that, as a result of certain rites performed by him, they were divided into

---

1 XIII, 5, 4, 7.  
2 Yābbirdaśasyathā Krivim, Rgveda, VIII, 20, 24; Yābhīhp Krivim vāṃdhuh, Rgveda, VIII, 22, 12.  
3 Vedic Index, I, 198.  
4 Vedic Index, I, 198.  
5 Wilson, Rgveda, Vol. IV, p. 59.  
6 Altindisches Leben, 103.  
7 Vaikarṇayoh, Rgveda, VII, 18, 11.
three parts. The same Śamhitā (X, 6) refers to the celebration of the Naimiṣāya sacrifice in the country of the Kuru-Paṇcālas. Here a discussion between Vaka-Dālbhya and Dhṛtarāṣṭra Vaicitravirya is narrated, but there is nothing to justify Weber’s conjecture of a quarrel between the Paṇcālas and the Kurus. In the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, the Paṇcālas are mentioned along with the Kurus as one of the peoples in the Madhyamā dik or midland. Similarly, the Kuru-Paṇcālas are mentioned in the Kāśyapa recension of the Vājasaneyi Śamhitā (XI, 3, 3). In the Jaiminīya Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa, the Kuru-Paṇcālas are mentioned many times, and in the Gopatha Brāhmaṇa (I, 2, 9), they are referred to as a dual group beside other similar groups, such as the Aṅga-Magadhās, Kāśi-Kośalās, Śālva-Matsyās, etc. The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa assures us that ‘speech sounds higher here among the Kuru-Paṇcālas,’¹ and also informs us that the kings of the Kuru-Paṇcālas performed the rājasūya or royal sacrifice. The Tañtrīya Brāhmaṇa (I, 8, 4, 1, 2) says that the kings of the Kuru-Paṇcālas marched forth on raids in the dewy season and returned in the hot season.² The Kauṣitakī Upaniṣad (IV, 1) also speaks of the Kuru-Paṇcālas, and in the Brhadārānyaka Upaniṣad they are repeatedly mentioned,—as, for instance, when we read³ that the Brāhmaṇas of the Kurus and the Paṇcālas flocked to the court of Janaka, king of Videha. A Vedic teacher, Paṇcāla-Çanda by name, is mentioned in the Aitareya and the Sānkhyāyaṇa Āranyakas,⁴ and most probably this sage belonged to the Paṇcāla country, as his name suggests.

The Brhadārānyaka (VI, 1, 1) and Chāndogya Upaniṣad (V, 3, 1) tell how Śvetaketu Aruṇeya went to the assembly (pārīṣad) of the Paṇcālas where the Kṣatriya, Pravāhāna Jaivali, put to him several questions which neither Śvetaketu nor his father was able to answer. Śvetaketu’s father, though a Brāhmaṇa, was glad to learn the answers to these questions from Pravāhāna Jaivali, although the latter was a Rājanya or Kṣatriya.⁵

Several of the Paṇcāla kings are mentioned in the Vedic literature. For instance, Durmnkha was a great and powerful king of the Paṇcālas, who, according to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VIII, 23) made extensive conquests in every direction. Another powerful Paṇcāla king who performed the horse sacrifice was Śona Sātrāsāha, about whom several gāthas are quoted in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa.⁶

The name Paṇcāla has given rise to much speculation, it being supposed that the first part, Paṇica (‘five’), has something to do with

five tribes that were merged together into a united nation. The evidence in favour of this hypothesis is not very clear. It has been suggested that the five peoples are the five tribes of the \textit{Rgveda}, but, as the \textit{Vedic Index} (I, 469) points out, the suggestion is not very probable. The problem of the origin of the name Pañcāla and its probable connection with Pañca, five, struck the authors of the Purāṇas. Many of them traced the name to five princes, whose names vary slightly in different works. In the \textit{Bhāgavatapurāṇa}, 9th Skandha, Chap. 21, we learn that King Bharmaśva, born in the family of Dusmanta, had five sons, Mudgala, Yavīnara, Vṛhadviśa, Kāmpilya, and Sañjaya. As these five sons were capable of guarding the five countries, they were named Pañcāla (alam = sufficient for, capable of). Then in the \textit{Vāyu-purāṇa}, Chap. 19, Aṅka 4, we are told that Haryaśva, born in the family of Kuru, had five sons, Mudgala, Sañjaya, Vṛhadisu, Pravira and Kāmpilya. He was under the impression that his five sons were competent to protect five provinces, and they became famous as Pañcālas. The \textit{Vāyu-purāṇa} (Chap. 99) tells us that Rkṣa, born in the family of Dvīmidha, had five sons, Mudgala, Sañjaya, Vṛhadisu, Yavīyāna and Kāmpilya. The provinces of these five afterwards became famous as Pañcālas. Similarly, in the \textit{Agni-purāṇa} (Chap. 278) we read that Vāhyāśva, born in the family of Kuru,\(^1\) had five sons, Mukula, Sañjaya, Vṛhadisu, Yavīnara and Krimila, who were known as Pañcālas. In the \textit{Samhitopaniṣad Brāhmaṇa}, there is a reference to the Prācyā Pañcālas.\(^2\)

In the Epic, the Pañcāla country is divided into a northern and a southern part, so that evidently the Pañcālas had spread and added to their country by conquest since the Vedic period. There is a Jātaka story about the foundation of Uttara-Pañcāla, which seems to show that a Cedi prince went to the north and formed the Uttara-Pañcāla kingdom with colonists from the Pañcāla and Cedi countries. The \textit{Cetiya Jātaka} tells us that the king of Ceti (Cedi) had five sons. Kapila, the family priest, said to the fourth prince: ‘You leave by the north gate and go straight on till you see a wheel-frame all made of jewels: that will be a sign that you are to lay out a city there and dwell in it, and it shall be called Uttara-Pañcāla’.\(^3\)

The \textit{Mahābhārata} gives a different story of the division of the Pañcāla country. There, in the \textit{Adi-parvan}, we read that the Brahmin Drona and Prince Drupada had been friends in their boyhood. But their friendship changed to enmity in their manhood when Drupada, on being raised to the throne, treated the poor

---

\(^2\) \textit{Vedic Index}, I, p. 469.
\(^3\) \textit{Jātaka} (Fausboll), III, pp. 460-1.
Brahmin’s son with contempt. Drôna, bent upon taking revenge, taught the science of war to the youths of the rival clan of the Kurus and, when their education was completed, he one day called all his pupils together and bade them seize Drupada, King of Pâncâla, in battle, and bring him captive. That, said Drôna, would be the most acceptable teacher’s fee (daksînâ) for him. A great battle ensued, in which the Pâncâlas were defeated and their capital attacked. Drupada was seized and offered to Drôna by his disciples. Drôna asked Drupada whether he would desire to revive old friendship, and told him that he would grant him half his kingdom as a boon. Drupada accepted the offer. Drôna then took the northern half of the kingdom which came to be known as Uttara-Pâncâla; while Drupada ruled over the other half, known as Southern Pâncâla. That is to say, the country extending from the river Bhâûgratthi to the river Carmâvatî in the south, with its capital at Kâmpîlya, fell to Drupada’s share, and the northern half with its capital at Ahicchatra was taken over by Drôna.¹

The plain of the Kurus, the (country of the) Matsyas, Pâncâlas and Śûrasenakas—these, according to Manu, formed the land of the Brahmarshis, ranking immediately after Brahmavarta.²

One of the earliest cities of Pâncâla was Parivakrâ or Paricakrâ, where King Kraivya Pâncâla performed his horse sacrifice.³ Another city, Kâmpîla, appears to have been mentioned in the Yajurveda Samhitâ, where the epithet Kâmpîla-vasîni is applied to a woman, perhaps the mahisî or chief wife of the king, whose duty it was to sleep beside the slaughtered animal of the horse sacrifice (Âsvamedha). The exact interpretation of the passage is very uncertain, but both Weber and Zimmer agree in regarding Kâmpîla as the name of the town known as Kâmpîlya in the later literature, and the capital of Pâncâla in Madhyadesa.⁴ The Vişnupûrâna (Chap. II) and the Bhûgavatapurâna (Chap. 22) say that Kâmpîla, son of King Haryaśva, was celebrated as Pâncâla. Among the hundred sons of Nîpa of the Ajamida dynasty, Samara is mentioned as the king of Kâmpîlya.⁵ We have seen that Kâmpîlya became the capital of King Drupada when he was invested with the sovereignty of the

¹ Mbh., Adîparvan, Chap. 140. Rapson (Ancient India, p. 167) says: ‘In history, they (i.e. the Pâncâlas) are sometimes divided into two kingdoms—South Pâncâla, the country between the Jumna and Ganges to the east and south-east of the Kurus and Sûrasenas, and North Pânchâla, districts of the United Provinces lying east of the Ganges and north-west of the Province of Oudh . . . ’ Cunningham (Ancient Geography, p. 360) says: ‘The great kingdom of Pâncâla extended from the Himalaya mountains to the Chambal river’.
² Manuśamhitâ, II, 19.
³ Vedic Index, Vol. I, 149.
⁴ Vidya ante.
⁵ Vişnupûrâna, IV, 19.
southern Pañcāla country. In the Ādikāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa (Sarga 33) we are told that King Brahmadatta used to live in the city of Kāmpilya. Cunningham identifies Kāmpilya with Kampil, on the old Ganges between Budaun and Farokhabad. According to N. L. Dey, it was situated at a distance of 28 miles north-east of Fatgarh in the Farokhabad district. It was the scene of the svayamvara of Drupada’s daughter, Kṛṣṇa or Draupadi, who became the wife of the five sons of Pāṇdu. Drupada’s palace is pointed out as the most easterly of the isolated mounds on the bank of the Bur-Gaṅgā.

Ahicchatra, where Drona established his capital, as we have seen, was another notable town of the Pañcālas. When the Kuru army was marshalled on the field, it is stated that their rear extended as far as the city of Ahicchatra; so that northern Pañcāla was contiguous with the Kuru land, and not very far from the Kurukṣetra battle-field. According to Cunningham, the history of Ahicchatra goes back to 1430 B.C. The name is written Ahikṣetra, as well as Ahi-cchatra, but the local legend of the Ādī-Rājā and the Nāga suggests that Ahi-cchatra is the correct form, for Ahicchatra means ‘Serpent Umbrella’. This grand old fort is said to have been built by Rājā Adi, an Ahir, whose future elevation to sovereignty was foretold by Drona, when he found him sleeping under the guardianship of a serpent with expanded hood. The fort is also called Ādikot, but the more common name is Ahicchatra. The form of the name in Ptolemy by a slight alteration becomes Adisadra, which has been satisfactorily identified with Ahicchatra. According to V. A. Smith, Ahicchatra City is the modern Rāmnagar in the Bareilly district. It was still a considerable town when visited by Hsiian Tsang in the seventh century. The name of the city, it appears, was extended to the whole of the country of Uttara-Pañcāla, for we find the Chinese pilgrim giving a description of the ‘country’ of Ahicchatra. He observes that it was about 3,000 li in circuit and the capital about 17 or 18 li. It was naturally strong, being flanked by mountain crags. It produced wheat, and there were many woods and fountains. The climate was agreeable and the people sincere and truthful. They loved religion, and applied themselves to learn-

2 Geographical Dictionary, p. 33.
3 N. L. Dey, op. cit., p. 33. See also Mahābhārata, Ādi-parvan, Chap. 94, pp. 181-2.
4 Mahābhārata, V, Chap. 19.
5 Cunningham, Ancient Geography, p. 360.
6 McCrindle, Ancient India as described by Ptolemy, p. 133.
ing. There were about 10 saṅghārāmas and some 1,000 priests who studied the Hīnayāna; and also some 9 deva temples with 300 sectaries. They sacrificed toĪśvara and belonged to the company of ‘ashes-sprinklers’ (Pāṣupatās). Outside the chief town was a Nāga tank by the side of which was a stūpa built by King Aśoka. It was here that the Tathāgata (Buddha) preached the law for the sake of a Nāga-rāja for seven days. By the side of it were four little stūpas.¹

In modern times, Ahicchatra was first visited by Capt. Hodgson, who describes it as the ruins of an ancient fortress several miles in circumference, which appears to have had 34 hastions, and is known in the neighbourhood by the name of the Pāṇḍu’s fort.²

In the kingdom of Pāṇcāla there also existed the city of Kānyakubja.³ R. D. Banerjee, on the authority of a copper plate discovered at Khalimpura, points out that the kings of the Bhojas, Matsyas, Kurus, Yadus and Yavanas were forced to acknowledge Cakrāyudha as the king of Kānyakubja.⁴

Many are the stories told about the Pāṇcālas and their dealings with the Kurus. In the Ādi-parvan we read that there was a king named Sambarana, father of Kuru, of the Puru dynasty, who was the ruler of the world. At one time his kingdom was much afflicted, his subjects died, and disorder prevailed everywhere. The kingdom was afterwards conquered by the King of Pāṇcāla, and Sambarana fled with his wife and children to a forest on the hanks of the river Sindhu.

In connection with the expedition resulting in the victory of Bhīmasena, we note that Bhīmasena went to the east, attacked the Pāṇcāla country and brought it under his sway.⁵ At the outset of his expedition, Karna also attacked Pāṇcāla, defeated Drupada, and exacted tribute from him and his subordinate kings.⁶

During the Kurukṣetra war, Drupada, king of the Pāṇcālas, helped the Pāṇḍavas with his son, Dhrṣṭadyumna, and an aksauhini of troops;⁷ and Dhrṣṭadyumna was made the commander-in-chief of the entire Pāṇḍava force. Various kinds of horses are described as having been used by the famous heroes of Pāṇcāla during the war.⁸ In the Udyogāparvan we read that Yudhāmanyu and

---

² McCrindle, Ancient India as described by Ptolemy, p. 134.
³ Epigraphia Indica, Vol. IV, p. 246.
⁵ Chap. 94, p. 194.
⁶ Sahāparvan, Chap. 29, p. 241.
⁸ Udyogāparvan, Chaps. 156-7, pp. 777-8.
Uttamañjā, two other princes of Pañcāla, went to the battle-field.\(^1\) They were killed by Dhṛtarāṣṭra's army. Mitravarmā and Kṣatra-
dharma, the Pañcāla heroes, were killed by Droṇa; and Kṣatradeva, son
of Śikhaṇḍi, was killed by Laksmaṇa, son of Duryodhana.\(^2\)

Pañcāla continued to be one of the great and powerful countries
of Northern India, down to the time when the Buddha lived. The
Anguttara Nikāya mentions it as one of the sixteen maññanapadas
of 'Jambudīpa', having an abundance of the seven kinds of gems,
etc.\(^3\) Pañcāla had a large army consisting of foot-soldiers, men
skilful in fight and in the use of steel weapons.\(^4\)

We read in the Kumbhakāra Jātaka\(^5\) that in the kingdom of
Uttara-Pañcāla, in the city of Kampilla, there was a king named
Dummukha, who became a Pacceka-buddha. We have seen before
that Dummukha was the name of one of the powerful Pañcāla
sovereigns in the Vedic period. A Pañcāla monarch of the same name
is also mentioned in the Jaina works.

In the Gandatindu Jātaka we read that during the reign of
Pañcāla, king of Kampilla, the people were so much oppressed by
taxation that they took their wives and families and wandered in the
forest like wild heasts. By day they were plundered by the king's
men and by night by robbers.\(^6\)

The Samyutta Nikāya narrates that once while the Buddha was
staying at Vaiśālī, Visākha of the Pañcālas was in the meeting hall
where he distinguished himself by his pious discourse.\(^7\) Visākha
was the son of the daughter of the king of the Pañcālas, and afterwards
became known as the Pañcāli's son. After the death of his
father, he succeeded to his title, but when the Buddha came to his
neighbourhood, he went to hear him, believed, and left the world.\(^8\)

Pañcāla and its princes also figure in the Jaina literature. It is
stated in the Uttarādhayayana Sūtra that 'the king of the Pañcālas
did no fearful actions.' The Jain writers also refer to Brahmadatta,
king of the Pañcālas,\(^9\) and to Dvimukha of Pañcāla, who was a
Pratyekabuddha.\(^10\)

---

\(^1\) Udyogaparvan, Chap. 198, pp. 807-8. See also Bhishmaparvan, Chap. 19, p. 830.
\(^2\) Karna-parvan, Chap. 6, p. 1169.
\(^3\) Vol. I (P.T.S.), 213; IV, 252, 256, 260.
\(^4\) Jātaka (Fausboll), VI, p. 396.
\(^5\) Ibid., III, p. 379.
\(^7\) The Book of the Kindred Sayings, II, p. 190.
\(^8\) Psalms of the Brethren, pp. 152-3; vide also Therā-theri-gāthā, P.T.S., p. 27.
\(^10\) Ibid., p. 61.
\(^11\) Ibid., p. 87.
In the post-Asoka period Pañcāla was invaded by the Greeks, as we infer from the Gārgī Saṁhitā, which is dated about the second or third century A.D. ¹

In the sixth and fifth centuries B.C., the Pañcālas were a monarchical clan, but became a saṅgha (probably an oligarchy) in the fourth century, when Kauṭilya lived. In Kauṭilya’s Arthaśāstra we read that the corporation of Pañcāla ‘lived by the title of rāja’.² The change was very probably brought about in the following way. Members of the royal family were often given a share in the administration of a country, and in proportion as this share became less and less formal, the state organization would lose the form of absolute monarchy and approach that of an oligarchy.³

Sir Charles Eliot notes that the kingdom of Pañcāla passed through troublous times after the death of Haraśvaradhana, but from about 840–910 A.D. under Bhoja and his son, it became the principal power in Northern India, extending from Bihar to Sind. In the twelfth century, it again became important under the Gaharwar dynasty.⁴

In the district of Bareilly in the United Provinces, many old copper coins have been discovered amongst the ruins of ancient Ahicchatra. The word ‘mitra’⁵ occurs at the end of the names of the kings engraved on the coins. In many places of the United Provinces, coins of this kind are discovered every year. There are three symbols above the names of the kings. Carlyle of the Archaeological Dept. explains the symbols as Bodhi tree, Śivalingam surrounded by snakes, and stūpa covered by fungus. Such coins are found in large numbers at Ahicchatra, so Cunningham calls them Pañcāla-mudrā. They generally weigh 250 grs., the smaller ones weighing not less than 16 grs.⁶ According to the Cambridge History,⁷ several Pañcāla coins have on the obverse Agni, with head of flames, standing between posts on railing, on the reverse, in incuse, Agnimitra; above, three symbols. Whether Agnimitra whose coins are found in North Pañcāla and who was, therefore, presumably king of Ahicchatra, can be identified with the Śunga king of that name, is uncertain.⁸

1 See Max Müller, India, What can it teach us? 1883, p. 298.
2 ‘Rājaśabdopajīvinah’—Arthaśāstra, Śāma Sāstrī’s Translation, p. 455.
3 Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 165.
4 Hinduism and Buddhism, Vol. I, p. 27.
5 For a detailed discussion, see B. C. Law, Pañcālas and their Capital Ahicchatra, M.A.S.I., No. 67, pp. 12 foll.
8 Ibid., p. 520.
The method of striking the early coins was peculiar, in that the die was impressed on the metal when hot, so that a deep square incuse, which coins the device, appears on the coin. A similar incuse appears on the later double-die coins of Pañcāla, Kauśāmbī, and on some coins of Mathurā. This method of striking may have been introduced from Persia, and was perhaps a derivative from the art of seal-engraving. Brown says that there is little foreign influence traceable in the die-struck coins, all closely connected in point of style, which issued during the first and second centuries B.C. from Pañcāla, Ayodhyā, Kauśāmbī and Mathurā. A number of these bear Brāhmi inscriptions and the names of ten kings, which some would identify with the old Śuṅga dynasty, have been recovered from the copper and brass coins of Pañcāla, found in abundance at Rāmnagar in Rohilkhand, the site of the ancient city, Ahicchatra.

1 Brown, Coins of India, p. 19.
2 Ibid., p. 20.
CHAPTER V

THE ŚURASENAS

The Śūrasenas are not mentioned in the Vedic literature, but in the Mānavadharma-śāstra they are spoken of in high terms as belonging to the Brāhmaṛṣi-deśa, or the country of the great Brahmanical seers, whose conduct was an example to all Aryans.¹ Accordingly at the time of Manu’s Code (between the second century B.C. and the second century A.D.), the Śūrasenas were among the tribes who occupied a rank in Indo-Aryan society second only to that of the small population of the narrow strip of Brahmāvarta. Therefore they must have belonged to the Vedic people, though probably they had not acquired sufficient political importance in very early times to find a mention in the Rgveda or the subsequent Vedic literature. They claimed descent from Yadu, a hero whose people are repeatedly referred to in the Rgveda ²; and it is probable that the Śūrasenas were included among the Rgvedic Yadus.

Manu also pays a high tribute to the martial qualities of the Śūrasenas, inasmuch as he advises a king when arranging his troops on the battle-field, to place the Śūrasenas in the very front line.³

In an enumeration in the Mahābhārata ⁴ of the various peoples of Bhāratavarṣa, the Śūrasenas are mentioned along with the Śālavas, Kuru-Paṇcālas and other neighbouring tribes; and we read in the Viṣṇuparvan (Chaps. I and V) that the Pāṇḍavas passed through the Śūrasena country on their way to Viśātanagara, from the Dvaitavana forest, where they had sojourned during their exile. It is easy to locate the Śūrasenas, inasmuch as their capital, Mathurā, has been a great city from the early times of Indo-Aryan history down to the present day. They must have occupied ‘the Muttra district and possibly some of the territory still farther south’,⁵ according to the Cambridge History of India. Prof. Rhys Davids says⁶: ‘The Śūrasenas, whose capital was Madhurā, were immediately south-west of the Macchas, and west of the Jumna’.

In the Rāmāyana,⁷ we read that Sugriva, when sending out his monkey generals in search of Sītā, told those who were going towards

¹ Manusamhitā, II, 19; and see Matsya chapter. ² Vedic Index, II, 185. ³ Manusamhitā, VII, 193. ⁴ Mābh., Viṣṇuparvan, Chap. 9, p. 522. ⁵ Cambridge History of India, Vol. I, p. 316. ⁶ Budāhist India, p. 27. ⁷ Kiskindhāya Kāvya, 11-12, 43rd sarga.
the north to search the country of the Śūrasenas. In the Bhagavadgītā section of the Mahābhārata, the Śūrasenas are mentioned as forming part of the army of Duryodhana in the Kurukṣetra war. They guarded Bhīma, and took a prominent part in the battle, to the point of having their army destroyed. Elsewhere in the Mahābhārata, we read that Sahadeva, while proceeding southwards in the course of his conquests before the Rājasūya sacrifice, conquered the country of Śūrasenas.

In the Pāli Buddhist Tripiṭaka, Śūrasena is mentioned as one of the sixteen 'mahājanapadas' which were prosperous and had an abundance of wealth. One of the Jātaka stories narrates how the Śūrasenas, along with the Pañcālas, Matsyas and Madras, witnessed a game of dice between Dhanaṇjaya Korabba and Punnaka Yakkha.

The capital of the Śūrasenas, as we have seen, was Mathurā on the Jumna, at present included in the Agra division of the United Provinces. It lay on the upper Jumna, about 270 miles in a straight line north-west of Kauśāmbī. In the Pāli Buddhist literature, the name is Madhurā; Rhys Davids in his Buddhist India (p. 36) says that it is tempting to identify it with the site of the modern Mathurā, in spite of the difference in spelling. In the Lalitavistara, the city of Mathurā is mentioned as having been suggested as a possible locality for the birth of the Bodhisattva, when various places were being discussed by the gods in the Tusita heaven. From this it is evident that at the time that the Lalitavistara was composed, that is, in the early centuries of the Christian era, Mathurā was one of the most prominent cities of India.

The Greek historians make mention of Mathurā. It was noticed by Arrian, on the authority of Megasthenes, as the capital of the Śūrasenas; and Ptolemy also mentions it. The town was surrounded by numbers of high mounds, one of which has since yielded numbers of statues and inscribed pillars, which prove that it represented the remains of at least two large Buddhist monasteries dating from the beginning of the Christian era.

In the fifth century A.D., Mathurā was visited by the Chinese pilgrim Fā-Hien, who passed through a succession of monasteries.

---

2 Sabhāparvan, Chap. 31, pp. 242-3.
3 Anguttara Nihāya, I, p. 213; Ibid., IV, pp. 252, 256 and 260.
5 Ibid., Lefmann, pp. 21-2.
6 Cunningham, Ancient Geography, (Majumder's Ed.), p. 429. The Greek writers also make mention of another city of the Śūrasena country, named Cleisobora (= Kṛṣṇapūr = Byrūdāman).
7 Cunningham, Ancient Geography, p. 374.
filled with a number of monks. It was also visited later by Hsüan Tsang who described the country as being above 5,000 li in circuit, the capital being above twenty li in circuit. The soil, according to him, was very fertile, and agriculture was the chief industry: mango trees were grown there in orchards. The country also produced a fine striped cotton cloth, and gold. Its climate was hot, the manners and customs of the inhabitants were good. There were Buddhist monasteries, and deva-temples, and the professed adherents of the different non-Buddhist sects lived pell-mell.

Buddhism was predominant in Mathurā for several centuries. The king of Mathurā in the Buddha's time bore the title of Avanti-putto, and was therefore related to the royal family of Ujjayini in Avanti. In the Majjhima Nikāya (II, pp. 83ff.) we read that king Avanti-putto went to Mahākaccāna, one of the Buddha's most influential disciples, and discussed with him the pride of the Brāhmaṇas, and their view that they were vastly superior to all other castes. Mathurā was the residence of Mahākaccāna, 'to whom tradition attributes the first grammatical treatment of the Pāli language, and after whom the oldest Pāli grammar is accordingly named'. In Kaccayana's Pāli Grammar we read that the distance from Mathurā to Saṅkassa was 4 yojanas. A famous stūpa was built at Mathurā in honour of Moggaliputta Tissa (Cambridge History of India, Vol. I, p. 506).

Mathurā was visited by the Buddha, but we do not find many references to the city in his time; whereas it is mentioned in the Milindapañha as one of the most famous places in India; so that the time of its greatest growth must have been between these dates.

Besides Buddhism, the Jaina cult was also practised at Mathurā which was one of the few centres of the cult in the centuries immediately before and after the Christian era. The Jains seem to have been firmly established in the city from the middle of the second century B.C.; while many dedicatory inscriptions prove that they were a flourishing community at Mathurā in the reigns of Kaniska, Huvisa and Vasudeva.

---

1 Legge, Travels of Fa-Hien, p. 42.
4 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 36.
6 Anguttara Nikāya, II, 57; Vinānavatthu Comm., pp. 118-9.
7 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 37.
8 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 18; and Rapson, Ancient India, p. 174.
Mathurā was also known in the time of Megasthenes (300 B.C.) as the centre of Kṛṣṇa worship; it was well known as the birthplace of the hero Kṛṣṇa. Cunningham points out that Śūrasena was the grandfather of Kṛṣṇa, and after him Kṛṣṇa and his descendants, who held Mathurā after the death of Kaṁsa, were called the Śūrasenas.

Another cult which arose in Mathurā was the Bhāgavata religion, the parent of modern Vaiṣṇavism; but in the Śaka-Kushan period, the city had ceased to be a stronghold of Bhagavatism. The paucity of Bhāgavata inscriptions at Mathurā probably indicates that Bhagavatism did not find much favour at the royal court, because from the first century B.C. to the third century A.D., the people were usually Buddhists.

Mathurā, then, was a city in which many divergent religious sects flourished side by side. To the Hindus its sanctity was, and still is, very great. As the birthplace of Kṛṣṇa, it was and is one of the seven holy places of Hinduism.

In the semi-legendary accounts of the Purāṇas, we find some details regarding Mathurā. In the Viṣṇupurāṇa for instance, we read that Lavana, son of the monster Madhu, was killed by Śatrughna who founded the city of Mathurā. The demons attacked Mathurā, the home of the Vṛṣnis and Andhakas; and the Vṛṣnis and Andhakas, being afraid of the demons, left Mathurā and established their capital at Dvārāvati. Mathurā was also besieged by Jarāsandha, king of Magadha, with a huge army of 23 aṁśauhinīs. At the time of his 'great departure' (mahāprasthāna), Vudhiśṭhila installed Vajraṇābha on the throne of the city.

The earlier rulers of Mathurā find a place in the Purāṇas, but only in the general summary of those dynasties which were contemporary with the Purus. On the eve of the rise of the Gupta power, says the Vaiṣṇupurāṇa (Chap. 99), seven nāga kings reigned in Mathurā. They were followed by Magadha kings.

---

3 Ancient Geography, p. 374.
6 Ibid., p. 100.
8 4th Aṁśa, Chap. 4.
9 Brahmapurāṇa, Chap. 14, sloka 54.
10 Harivamśa, Chap. 37.
11 Ibid., Chap. 195, sloka 3.
12 Skanda-purāṇa, Viṣṇukhaṇḍa; Bhāgavata Māhātmya, Chap. I.
14 Viṣṇupurāṇa, 4th Aṁśa, Chap. 23.
As regards Buddhist semi-historical records, we read in the *Lalitavistara*¹ of a king of the Śūrasenas named Svāhū, who had his capital at Mathurā. He is said to have been a heretic, but a great king of Jambudīpa (India).² Mathurā is also mentioned in the earliest chronicle of Ceylon, the *Dīpavamsa*,³ where we are told that sons and grandsons of Prince Sādhina reigned ‘over the great kingdom of Madhurā, the best of towns’.

In the *Ghata Jātaka* we read that in Upper Madhurā there reigned a king named Mahāsāgara, who had two sons, Sāgara and Upasāgara. On his death the elder son became king and the younger Viceroy (= heir-apparent?). Upasāgara quarrelled with Sāgara and went to Uttarāpatha in the Kamsa district, to the city of Asitaṇjana which was ruled over by King Mahākamsa, who had two sons, Kamsa and Upakamsa, and one daughter, Devagabbhā. It was foretold that this daughter would bear a son who would kill his maternal uncles. Believing this prediction, on the death of King Mahākamsa the two brothers kept their sister in a separate round tower specially built for her, so that she should remain unmarried. But despite their precautions, Devagabbhā and Upasāgara saw each other, fell in love, and contrived to meet. When her brothers discovered the intrigue, they gave Devagabbhā in marriage to Upasāgara, and a daughter was born soon afterwards. The two brothers were pleased, and allotted to their sister and brother-in-law a village named Govaḍḍhamāna. In course of time, Devagabbhā gave birth to ten sons, and her serving woman Nandagopā to ten daughters. Devagabbhā, however, secretly exchanged her ten sons for the ten daughters of her maid. When the boys grew up, they became plunderers and their fosterfather, Andhaka-Venhu, was often rebuked by King Kamsa. At last Andhaka-Venhu told the king the secret of the birth of the ten sons. An arena was prepared for a wrestling match in the city. When the ten sons entered the ring and were about to be caught, the eldest of the ten, Vāsudeva, threw a wheel which cut off the heads of Kamsa and Upakamsa, and himself assumed the sovereignty of the city of Asitaṇjana.⁴ The Jātaka story ends with the accession of Vāsudeva to the throne of Mathurā. The *Petavathīhu* Commentary gives a different story of the adventure of the ten sons who were born to the king of Uttara-Madhurā.⁵

---

¹ Ed. Lefmann, pp. 21-2.
² *Romantic Legend of Sākya Buddha*, p. 29.
³ Oldenberg, *Dīpavamsa*, p. 27.
⁴ *Jātaka* (Fausboll), Vol. IV, pp. 79 foll.
A king of Mathurā named Brahmamitra was probably con-
temporary with king Indramitra of Ahicchatra, for both names are
found in the dedicatory inscriptions of queens on pillars of the railing
at Buddhagayā, which is generally assigned to the earlier part of the
first century B.C.\(^1\) Rapson points out\(^2\) that in the second century
B.C. Mathurā was governed by native princes whose names are known
from their coins; and it passed from them into the possession of one
of the families of Śaka satraps, c. 100 B.C. Menander (Milinda),
king of Kabul and the Punjab, presumably occupied Mathurā,\(^3\) and
many of his coins have been discovered there.\(^4\) Numismatic evidence
seems to prove\(^5\) that the Hindu kings of Mathurā were finally
replaced by Hagāna, Hagāmāsha, Rājuvula, and other Śaka Satraps
who probably flourished in or about the first century A.D. In the
second century A.D. Mathurā was under the sway of Huvishka, the
Kushān king. This is evidenced by a splendid Buddhist monastery
which bears his name.\(^6\)

The epigraphic evidence that in the first century B.C. the region
of Mathurā had passed from native Indian to foreign (Śaka) rule is
confirmed and amplified by the evidence of coins. A Muttra (i.e.
Mathurā) inscription, according to R. Chanda, records the erection
of a toraṇa, vedikā and catuhśāla at the Mahāsthāna of Vāsudeva,
in the reign of the Mahāśatrapa Soḍāsa.\(^7\) The Mathurā nāga
statuette inscription is evidence of serpent worship in Mathurā,
which is important in view of the story of Kāliya nāga and his
suppression by Kṛṣṇa, recorded in the Purāṇa compiled during the
Gupta period.\(^8\)

Brown\(^9\) says that cast coins were issued at the close of the third
century by the kingdoms of Mathurā, Ayodhyā and Kauśāmbi,
some of which bear the names of local kings in the Brāhmi script.
In the ruins of Mathurā, many ancient copper coins along with many
coins of the Greek and Śaka rulers were discovered.\(^10\) Among the
coins discovered in this region, those of the Arjunāyanaśas are of
special interest.\(^11\)

The Pre-Kushān sculptures of Muttra are the most instructive,
because they all emanate from the same school. These sculptures
may be divided into three main classes, the earliest belonging approxi-

---

\(^1\) Cambridge History of India, Vol. I, p. 526.  
\(^2\) Ancient India, p. 174.  
\(^3\) Smith, Early History of India, p. 199.  
\(^4\) R. D. Banerjee, Prācina Mudrā, p. 50.  
\(^5\) Smith, op. cit., p. 227.  
\(^6\) Ibid., p. 271.  
\(^7\) Early History of the Vaiṣṇava Sect, pp. 98-9.  
\(^8\) Ibid., p. 100.  
\(^9\) Coins of India, p. 19.  
\(^10\) Prācina Mudrā, pp. 105, 106.  
\(^11\) Cunningham, Coins of India, pp. 89-90; see also R. D. Banerjee’s Prācina Mudrā, p. 109.
mately to the middle of the second century B.C., the second to the following century, and the last being associated with the rule of the local Satraps. The sculptures of the third class are more exceptional. Their style is that of the early school in a late and decadent phase, when its cut was becoming conventionalised and lifeless. A little before the beginning of the Christian era, Muttra had become the capital of a satrapy either subordinate to, or closely connected with, the Scytho-Parthian kingdom of Taxila. As a result, there was an influx there of the semi-Hellenistic Art, too weak in its environment to maintain its own individuality, yet still strong enough to interrupt and enervate the older traditions of Hindusthan... As an illustration of the close relations that existed between Muttra and the north-west, the votive tables of Loṇa-śobhikā is particularly significant, the stūpa depicted on it being identical in form with the stūpas of the Scytho-Parthian epoch at Taxila, but unlike any monument of the class in Hindusthan.¹ Sir Charles Eliot points out ² that we need not feel surprise if we find in the religious thought of Muttra elements traceable to Greece, Persia or Central Asia, because we know that the sculptural remains found at Mathura indicate the presence of Graeco-Bactrian influence.

Smith remarks ³ that Mathurā was probably the original site of the celebrated iron pillar at Delhi, on which the eulogy of a powerful king named Chandra is incised. As Rapson says, we possess a most valuable monument of the Saka Satraps of Mathurā, which was discovered by Bhagavānlāl Indraji, who bequeathed it to the British Museum. ‘It is in the form of a large lion carved in red sandstone and intended to be the capital of a pillar. The workmanship shows undoubted Persian influence. The surface is completely covered with inscriptions in Kharoṣṭhī characters which give the genealogy of the Satrapal family ruling at Muttra. These inscriptions show that the Satraps of Muttra were Buddhists’.⁴

² Hinduism and Buddhism, Vol. II, p. 158.
³ Early History of India, p. 386.
⁴ Rapson, Ancient India, pp. 142-3, 158.
CHAPTER VI

THE CEDIS

The Cedis formed one of the most ancient tribes among the Kṣatriyas in early Vedic times. As early as the period of the Rgveda, the Cedi kings had acquired great renown by their munificent gifts at sacrifices, and also by their great prowess in battle. Rṣi Brahmātithi of the family of Kāṇya sings the praises of King Kaśi, the Caidya, in a hymn addressed to the Aśvins (Rgveda, VIII, 5, 37–9). From this account, even making allowances for some exaggeration, which is inevitable in these Dānastutis or laudatory verses for munificence and charity, one may conclude that the Cedi king was very powerful, for he is described as making a gift of ten Rājás or kings as slaves to a priest who officiated at one of his sacrifices.

The Cedis are not expressly mentioned in the later Vedic literature, but it would be wrong to suppose that they had become extinct, for they appear in the Mahābhārata as one of the leading powers of Northern India. It is probable that they were not so prominent in their sacrificial rites, or their political power, in the Brāhmaṇa age as they had been in the earlier era of the Rgvedic hymns; but there were ups and downs in the history of every great Kṣatriya power in India.

Another well-known Cedi monarch of ancient times, Vasu, who acquired the designation of Uparicara, is glorified in the Mahābhārata, and traditions about him and his successors are also recorded in the Jātakas. This Cedi king appears to have been characterised by great religious merit. Himself a Paurava, he is recorded to have been, through his daughter Satyavati, the progenitor of the Kauravas and the Pāṇḍavas.

In the Adiparvan of the Mahābhārata, we read that Vasu, the Paurava, conquered the beautiful and excellent kingdom of the Cedis on the advice of the god Indra, whose friendship he had acquired by his austerities, and who, pleased with his asceticism, presented him with a great crystal car.\(^2\) Because of his riding on it and moving through the upper regions like a celestial being, he came to be known as Uparicara. King Uparicara Vasu had one son and one daughter by an apsara named Adrikā. The daughter,

---

1 M. N. Dutt, Mahābhārata, p. 83.
2 Ibid., p. 84.
3 Ibid., p. 85.
who was named Satyavati, became the mother of Kṛṣṇadvaipāyana and others, and was the queen of King Śāntanu. The son afterwards became a virtuous and powerful monarch named Mātasya. We further read that Uparicara Vasu Caidya had a few other sons, namely, Brhadratha, Pratyagagraha, Kuśāmba and others, who founded kingdoms and cities which were named after them.¹ The Vayupurāṇa (Chap. 99) also confirms the story of the conquest of the Cedi country by Vasu the Paurava. We read there that Vayāṭi had a chariot which used to move according to his desire. This chariot came into the hands of Vasu, king of the Čedis. According to another account, Vasu, a descendant of Kuru, conquered the Yādava kingdom of Čedi, and established himself there, whence he was known as Caidya-Uparicara. His capital was Sūktimati on the river of the same name. He extended his conquests eastwards as far as Magadha and apparently also north-west over Mātasya. He divided his territories of Magadha, Čedi, Kuśāmbi, Karuṣa and apparently Mātasya among his five sons. His eldest son Brhadratha took Magadha with Girivraja as his capital, and founded the famous Bṛhadratha dynasty there.²

Another section of the Mahābhārata³ also speaks of the greatness of the Čedi monarch, Uparicara Vasu, and describes an Aśvamedha sacrifice which he performed.

In the Cetiya Jātaka,⁴ we find a dynastic list of the ancestors of Upacara or Apacara, who was the ruler of Sotthivatānagara⁵ in the kingdom of Ceti. King Upacara had five sons one of whom went to the east, and founded Hatthipura; while the second son went to the south, and founded Assapura; the third to the west, and founded Shapura; the fourth to the north, and founded Uttarapānicāla; and the last son went to the north-west, and founded Daddarapura.

The next Čedi monarch who appears to have acquired considerable power in the Epic period is Śiśupāla who is called Damaghoṣasuta (Mbh., I, 7029) or Damaghoṣātmaja (II, 1394; III, 516). He allied himself with the great Jarāsandha and on account of his heroism was appointed generalissimo of the Magadhan emperor.⁶ His conduct appears to have roused the displeasure of many of the Kṣatriya tribes of his time, but he was looked upon with such fear that he was considered as an incarnation of the great Daitya Hiraṇya-Kaṭipu,⁷ and the Epic tells us that he bore a charmed

---

¹ M. N. Dutt, Mbh., p. 84; Mbh. Adiparvan, Chap. 63, pp. 69-71.
³ Mbh., Sāntiparvan, Chaps. 136 and 137, pp. 1802-4.
⁴ Jātaka (Fausboll), Vol. III, pp. 454-461. See also Pañcāla chapter.
⁵ Evidently identical with Šuktimati.
⁶ Mbh., II, 14, 10-11.
⁷ Adiparvan, 67, 5.
life unassailable by any ordinary mortal.\textsuperscript{1} He was related on his mother’s side to the Satyavats or Vādavas, but he allied himself with Kamsa and Jarāsandha, enemies of the Vādavas, destroyed their city, Dvārakā, and molested them in other ways.

The Vādava hero, Kṛṣṇa, had been awaiting a suitable opportunity to remove this great enemy of his family. Such an opportunity was afforded him at the Rājaśīya sacrifice of Yudhiṣṭhira who, by his conquests, had acquired the position of a suzerain among the Kṣatriya monarchs of Northern India. Yudhiṣṭhira, finding it incumbent upon him, according to the procedure of the sacrifice, to make an arghya (offering) to the most honoured and worthy individual present in the assemblage gathered at his court on this occasion, was advised by Bhīṣma to offer the arghya to Kṛṣṇa. This aroused the ire of Śiśupāla who strongly protested against this decision, and succeeded in securing the support of a large number of other kings. Śiśupāla challenged Kṛṣṇa, being desirous to slay him with all the Pāṇḍavas. Kṛṣṇa related all of Śiśupāla’s misdeeds, and then thought of his magic discus which came into his hand; therewith he instantly cut off the head of Śiśupāla; the kings beheld a fiery energy issuing out of the body of Śiśupāla and entering Kṛṣṇa’s body; the sky, though cloudless, poured showers of rain. Yudhīṣṭhira caused his brothers to perform the funeral rites of Śiśupāla, the son of Damaghoṣa; then he, with all the kings, installed the son of Śiśupāla in the sovereignty of the Cedis.

The Purāṇas corroborate the Epic story of Śiśupāla. We read in the Agniṣṭhōra (4, 14) that Damaghoṣa, king of the Cedis, married Srutasravā, sister of Vasudeva; and Śiśupāla was their son.\textsuperscript{2} Further details from the Mahābhārata may be summarised as follows. Damaghoṣa’s son, Śiśupāla, king of the Cedis, attended the Svayamvara of Draupadi.\textsuperscript{3} Bhīmasena went to the kingdom of Cedi and easily subdued Śiśupāla.\textsuperscript{4} Karna conquered the son of Śiśupāla, and other neighbouring kings.\textsuperscript{5} Dhrṣṭaketu who, after the death of his father, had been placed upon the throne of the Cedis by Yudhīṣṭhira, became a friend of the Pāṇḍavas, and when the great war broke out, he was appointed leader of the Cedi army which marched to the battle-field to help the Pāṇḍavas.\textsuperscript{6} The Cedis must have been very powerful at the time, for we are told that Dhrṣṭaketu led one complete akṣauhini to the field.\textsuperscript{7} Dhrṣṭaketu went to the battle-field on a Kambojian horse which had variegated

\begin{footnotes}
\item[1] II, Chaps. 42 and 43.
\item[2] Vāyu P., Chap. 96; Brahma P., Chap. 14.
\item[4] Ibid., Sādhanparvan, Chap. 29, p. 241.
\item[5] Ibid., Chap. 253, pp. 513-4.
\item[6] Ibid., Udyogaparvan, Chap. 156, p. 777; Chap. 198, pp. 807-8.
\item[7] V, 19.
\end{footnotes}
The Cedi king along with Bhima and others was placed in the front of the Pândava army. He and his brother Suketu were killed in the Kurukṣetra war. Bhima mentioned eighteen kings who by their great strength ruined their friends and relations, and among them was Sahaja of the Cedi dynasty. From the Āṣvamedhaparvan of the Mahābhārata, we learn that Arjuna fought and defeated Sarabha, the son of Śiśupāla, at the city of Sukti in the kingdom of Cedi.

The Viṣṇupurāṇa (4–12) and the Agnipurāṇa (275) tell us that the descendants of Cedi, son of Kauśika, were known as Caidyas. The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa (Chaps. 129–31) refers to a Cedi princess, Suśobhanā by name, who was one of the many queens of King Maru. It is recorded in the Viṣṇupurāṇa (4, 12) that Vidarbha, son of Jyāmagha, had three sons of whom Kauśika was one. Cedi was a son of Kauśika, and the descendants of this Cedi were known as Caidyarājās. In the Mācyupurāṇa (Chap. 44), Cedi is written as Cidi. The Kūrmapurāṇa (Chap. 24) tells a similar story of the origin of the name of Cedi. King Vidarbha, it says, had a son named Cidi, and after him, his descendants came to be known as Caidyas. Dyutimān was the eldest of his sons, the others being Vapusmān, Brhatmedha, Śrideva and Vitaratha. Pargiter observes that Cedi and other kingdoms, e.g. Vatsa, did not come under the rule of the Pauravas; but we may note that the famous king Vasu Uparicara was a Paurava by birth. Pargiter suggests that Pratyagāraha may have taken Cedi.

In the Mahābhārata, we find the Cedis allied in a group with such western tribes as the Paṇcālas, Matsyas and Karuṣas, and also with peoples who lived in the east, such as the Kāsīs and Kośalas. We read of the Cedi-Karuṣakāh bhūmipālāh, or rulers of the Cedis and Karuṣakas, who espoused the cause of the Pândavas. Elsewhere the Cedi-Paṇcāla-Kaikeyas are grouped together. Again, we are told that Dhrṣṭaketu was the leader of the Cedi-Kāśi-Karuṣa peoples; and we find the group Cedi-Kāśi-Karuṣa fighting together. Sometimes the Cedis are grouped together with the Karuṣas and the

1 Dronaparvan, Chap. 22, pp. 1012-3.
2 Bhīṣma-parvan, Chap. 19, p. 830. See also Chap. 59, p. 935.
3 Mbh., Karna-parvan, Chap. 6, p. 1169.
5 Chapters 83-4, pp. 2093-4.
6 Vāyupurāṇa, Chap. 95.
7 Agnipurāṇa, Chap. 275.
8 Ancient Indian Historical Tradition, p. 293.
9 Ibid., p. 118.
10 V, 22.
11 V, 144.
12 V, 196.
13 VI, 47; VI, 106; VI, 115; VI, 116.
TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

Matsyas ¹; or with the Karuṣas, Matsyas, and Pañcālas ²; or with the Karuṣas and Kośalas. ³ These examples could be further multiplied; but we can gather from those already quoted that the Cedis are found combined with the Matsyas in the majority of cases, and it seems that the Matsyas were their immediate neighbours on the west, and the Kāsis on the east.

The capital of the Cedi king, Dhrṣṭaketu, is called Śuktimati, and is described as named after Śukti or oyster. ⁵ This city appears to have stood on the river Śuktimati which, we are told, flowed near the capital of the Cedi king, Vasu Uparicara, and which is also described in the geographical chapter of the Bhīṣmaparvan (VI, 9) as one of the rivers in Bhāratavarṣa.

The Viṣṇudharmottara Mahāpurāṇa (Chap. 9) mentions Cedi as a janapada or country, and so does the Padmapurāṇa (3rd chapter). Cedi (Ceti) is also mentioned in the Jaina and Buddhist literatures as one of the sixteen mahājanapadas. ⁷ The Cetis, says Rhys Davids, were probably the same tribe as that called Cedi in older documents, and had two distinct settlements. One, probably the older, was in the mountains in what is now called Nepal. The other, probably a later colony, was near Kauśāmbi to the east, and has been confused with the land of the Vaṁsa (Vatsa). ⁸ S. Krishnaswami Aiyangar in his Ancient India ⁹ agrees with Rhys Davids that one branch of the Cedis had their local habitat in Bundelkhand, the other being located somewhere in Nepal. D. R. Bhandarkar says that Ceta or Cetiya corresponds roughly to the modern Bundelkhand; while Rapson says that in the post-Vedic period the Cedis occupied the northern portion of the Central Provinces. ¹⁰ In the Cambridge History of India (p. 84), we read that the Cedis dwelt in Bundelkhand to the north of the Vindhayas; while Pargiter says ¹¹ that Cedi lay along the south of the Jumna. The following is a summary given by N. L. Dey in his Geographical Dictionary (p. 14): According to Tod, Chanderi, a town in Malwa, was the capital of Śiṣupāla who was killed by Kṛṣṇa. According to Dr. Führer, Dahala Maṇḍala was the ancient Ćedi. Some are of opinion that Cedi comprised the southern portion of Bundelkhand and northern portion of Jabalpur. Kālaṇjara was the capital of Cedi under the Gupta kings. Cedi was also called Tripuri.

Cunningham remarks that in the inscriptions of the Kalachuri or Haihaya dynasty of Cedi, the Rājās assumed the titles of ‘Lords of Kalanjarapura and of Tri-Kalinga’. Kalanjar is the well-known hill-fort in Bundelkhand; and Tri-Kalinga or the ‘three Kalingas’ must be the three kingdoms of Dhanaka or Amarāvati on the Kistnā, Andhra or Warangal, and Kalinga or Rājamahendri.1

It is stated in the Vessantara Jātaka that Cetaraṇṭha (i.e. Cedi-rāṣṭra, kingdom of the Cedis) was 30 yojanas distant from Jetuttara-nagara, the birthplace of King Vessantara. It was inhabited by 60,000 Khattiyas (Ksatriyas) who are also described as Cetiya-rājās. Vessantara with his wife and children started from Jetuttara at breakfast-time and reached the capital of Cetaraṇṭha in the evening. The Cedis’ hospitality to strangers is illustrated by this story; for we read that the Cedis offered food and hospitality to Vessantara who had been banished from the kingdom of his father Śivi; and when the prince proceeded to Vaṅkapabbata, the ‘60,000 Khattiyas’ followed him to a certain distance as a kind of bodyguard.2

In the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, we read that the kingdom of Cedi was full of riches, gems and precious stones, and contained much mineral wealth. The cities in the kingdom were full of honest, virtuous, and contented people. Here sons were mindful of their parents’ welfare; here lean kine were never yoked to the plough or to the cart engaged in carrying merchandise,—they were all well-fed and fat. In Cedi, the four castes were engaged in doing their respective duties.3

In the Vedabbha Jātaka, we read that in a village in Benares there was a brāhmin who was acquainted with a charm called Vedabbha. He went to the Cetiya country with the Bodhisattva, who was his pupil. Five hundred robbers caught them in a forest on the way, took the brāhmin prisoner, and told the Bodhisattva to fetch a ransom for him. By repeating his charm, the brāhmin caused money to shower from the sky; whereupon the robbers took the money and released him. But the first band of robbers was attacked by another band of the same number; and eventually the brāhmin and all the robbers were destroyed, so that when the Bodhisattva returned with the ransom money, he found none there.4 This account shows that the way from Benares to Cedi was frequented by robbers and was unsafe for travellers.

---

1 Ancient Geography, p. 518.
2 Jātaka (Fausböll), Vol. VI, pp. 514-5.
3 M. N. Dutt, Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan, p. 84.
TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

In the Aṅguttara Nikāya,¹ we read that on several occasions Mahācunda, an eminent disciple of the Buddha, dwelt in the town of Sahajātī among the Čedis. The same Nikāya ² further tells us that Anuruddha (first cousin and disciple of the Buddha) dwelt among the Čedis in the Deer-Park of Pācinavamsa. In the Dīgha Nikāya,³ we read that the Buddha went to the Čedis and other tribes while out preaching; while the Samyutta Nikāya ⁴ informs us that many theras were dwelling among the Čedis in the Sāhācānika.

The Čedis of the Vedic period, like other tribes, e.g. the Purus, were a group of families, says Dr. V. A. Smith, and in each family the father was master. The whole tribe was governed by a Rājā whose power was checked to an undefined extent by a tribal council. The details recorded suggest that the life of the people was not unlike that of many tribes of Afghanistan in modern times, before the introduction of fire-arms.⁵

The later kings of Čedi used an era according to which the year I was equivalent to A.D. 248-9. This era, also called the Traikūṭaka, originated in Western India, where its use can be traced back to the fifth century. The reason for its adoption by the kings of Čedi is not apparent.⁶ Rapson remarks that each of certain eras, e.g. the Traikūṭaka, Čedi, or Kalacuri era of 249 A.D., the Gupta era of 319 A.D., and the era of King Harśavardhana of 606 A.D., marks the establishment of a great power in some region of India, and originally denoted the regnal years of its founder.⁷

Kokalladeva I of the Čedi dynasty helped Bhojadeva II (c. 907-910 A.D.) to ascend the throne of Kanouj; and it is evident from the stone inscription of the kings of the Čedi dynasty discovered at Vishari that Kokalladeva I erected two wonderful monuments.⁸ During the reign of Mahipāladeva of Bengal (c. 978-1030), Gāngeyadeva of the Čedi dynasty attacked Gauda and occupied Mithilā.⁹ Towards the close of the eleventh century, Kānyakubja (Kanouj) came under the sway of Kanadeva (c. 1040-1070), son of Gāngeyadeva.¹⁰

Numismatists suppose that Gāngeyadeva issued a new coinage in Uttarāpatha.¹¹ Only coins of this monarch of the Čedi dynasty of

---

⁵ Ancient and Hindu India, p. 23.
⁶ V. A. Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 409.
⁷ Ancient India, p. 23.
⁹ Ibid., p. 224.
¹⁰ Prācīna Mudrā, p. 215.
¹¹ Ibid., p. 211.
Dāhala have been discovered, and no coins of the kings prior or posterior to him in the dynasty are known to us.¹ Gold, silver and copper coins of Gāngeyadeva have been discovered. On one side is the name of the king in two lines, and on the other a figure of a four-armed goddess.²

Coins of one king of the Cedi or Kalacuri dynasty of Kalyāṇapura have also been discovered. On one side of the coins is engraved the figure of the boar-incarnation, and on the other is written ‘Murāri’ in Nāgari characters. Murāri, as R. D. Banerjee says, is perhaps another name of Someśvaradeva, the second king of the above-mentioned Cedi dynasty.³

¹ Prācīna Mudrā, p. 212.
² Ibid., p. 212.
³ Ibid., p. 184.
CHAPTER VII

THE MADRAS

The Madras were an ancient Kṣatriya tribe of Vedic times. They are not mentioned in the early Vedic Śamhitās, but the Vamśa Brāhmaṇa of the Śāmaveda mentions an ancient Vedic teacher, Madragāra Saungāyani, from whom Aupamanyaya, the Kāmbojan, received the Vedic lore (cf. chapter on Kāmbojas). From the name Madragāra, scholars infer that Saungāyani belonged to the Madra tribe, and the fact that Vedic learning had spread so much among the Madras as to give one of them a prominent place in a list of ancient teachers would seem to show that the Madras belonged to the Vedic Aryandom before the age of the Brāhmaṇas. Their Vedic learning in Brāhmaṇa times is testified to by the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa where we find that sages of N. India, most probably of the Kuru-Paṇcāla district, repaired to the Madra country to receive their education in Vedic learning. In the Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad (III, 7, 1), Uddalaka Aruni tells Yājñavalkya: ‘We dwelt among the Madras’ in the houses of Patañcala Kāpya, studying the sacrifice’. And again, Bhuju Lāhāyani says, ‘We wandered about as students, and came to the house of Patañcala Kāpya’ (Brh. Up., III, 3, 1).

In the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VIII, 14, 3), we find the mention of a section of the Madra people, the Uttara or N. Madras who lived beyond the Himalayas (paraṇa Himavantam) in the N. regions close to the Uttara-Kurus. Uttara-Madra is supposed by scholars to have been located in Kashmir.

In the Rāmāyana, we read that Sugrīva sent monkeys to the Madrakas and other tribes in quest of Sītā. In the Viṣṇupuruṣa (2, 3, 17), mention is made of Madra together with Ārāma, Pārasīka, etc. and in the Matsya-puruṣa (II4, 41) together with Gāndhāra, Yavana, etc. In the same Puruṣa (208, 5), King Aśvapati of Sākala in the kingdom of the Madras is referred to. Madra (Pāli Madda) is not mentioned in the list of sixteen Mahājanapadas in Buddhist literature. It has been supposed by some that Madra is to be identified with Vāhlika (see Chapter on Vāhlikas). The Madras

---

1 Mr. H. C. Ray has contributed a paper to the J.A.S.B. (New Series, Vol. XVIII, 1922, No. 4) on the same subject.
2 Vedic Index, II, p. 123.
3 Zimmer, Allindisches Leben, p. 102.
4 Rāmāyana (Griffith’s translation), Additional Notes, p. 43.
5 N. L. Dey, Geographical Dictionary, p. 49.
held the central portions of the Punjab; they appear in the Epic period to have occupied the district of Sialkot, between the rivers Chenab and Ravi, or, according to some, between the Jhelum and the Ravi. The Madra tribe or kingdom is mentioned in the Bhāṣmaparvan of the Mahābhārata (Chap. IX), in Varāhamihira's Bhṛatsamhitā, and in Pāṇini's grammar (II, 3, 73; IV, 4, 67). It is evident from the Allahabad Pillar Inscription that the Madra territory was contiguous with that of the Yaudheyas.

The capital of the Madras was Sāgala (Pāli) or Śākala (Sanskrit), which has been identified by General Cunningham with Sanglawala-Tība, to the west of the Ravi (Ancient Geography of India, p. 180). According to Cunningham, Śākala is still known as Madrādesa or the district of the Madras. It lay about 32 N. by 74 E.

It appears from Hwui-lih that the pilgrim Hsūan Tsang visited Śākala. The old town of Śākala (She-ki-lo), according to the great pilgrim, was about 20 li in circuit. Although its walls had been thrown down, the foundation was still firm and strong, and in the midst of it a town of 6 or 7 li in circuit had been built. There was in Śākala a Sanghārāma (monastery) with about 100 priests of the Hinayāna school, and N.W. of the Sanghārāma was a stūpa about 200 feet high, built by Aśoka; while a stone stūpa of about the same height, also built by Aśoka, stood about 10 li to the N.E. of the new capital.

The Milinda Pañko gives a splendid description of the Madra capital: 'There is a great centre of trade called Śāgala, the famous city of yore in the country of the Yonakas. Śāgala is situated in a delightful country, well-watered and hilly, abounding in parks and gardens, groves, lakes and tanks, a paradise of rivers and mountains and woods. Wise architects have laid it out. Brave is its defence, with many strong towers and ramparts, with superb gates and entrance archways, and with the royal citadel in its midst, white-walled and deeply moated. Well laid out are its streets, squares, cross-roads and market places. Its shops are filled with various costly merchandise. It is richly adorned with hundreds of alms-halls of various kinds and splendid with hundreds of thousands of magnificent

---

1 V. A. Smith, Early History of India (4th Ed.), p. 302.
2 Cambridge History of India, Ancient India, pp. 549-550.
3 Cunningham, Ancient Geography, p. 185; and see also ibid., pp. 5-6.
4 Kern, Brhatsamhitā, p. 92.
5 R. C. Majumdar, Corporate Life in Ancient India, p. 272.
6 Mbk., II, 1196; VIII, 2933.
7 Cunningham, Ancient Geography of India, p. 185; Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 39.
mansions..." The passage goes on to describe the traffic of elephants, horses, carriages and pedestrians; the welcome given to teachers of all creeds, and the rich produce, precious metals, and delicacies which are to be found in the city. It is described as rivalling Uttara-Kuru in wealth and Ajakamandā, the city of the Gods, in glory (Milinda Pañho, pp. 1 and 2, and Trsl. S.B.E., Vol. 35, pt. I, pp. 1–3).

According to the evidence of the Sanskrit Epics and Pāli Jātakas, the Madras were Kṣatriyas, and they entered into matrimonial alliance with the Kṣatriya dynasties of the Gangetic kingdoms (see the account of the marriage of Pāṇḍu, the Kuru king, and a Madra princess; cf. also Mahābhārata, Adiparvan, Chap. 95 (marriage of Parikṣit and Madravati).

The Jātakas bear ample testimony to the fact that the Madra princesses were sought in marriage by the great Kṣatriya houses of N. India. Thus we read in the Kusa-Jātaka that a certain king of Madra had seven daughters of great beauty. The eldest of them, Pabhāvatī, was given in marriage to Kusa (or Kuśa), son of King Okkāka, and the kingdoms of Madra and Kuśavatī were thus united by matrimonial alliance.¹

The same story of the union of Prince Kuśa of the great Ikṣvāku family with a Madra princess is told in the Mahāvasu-Avadāna, with some variations. At Benares, we are told, there was a king named Kuśa belonging to the Ikṣvāku family. His ministers, in quest of a beautiful bride for the king, reached the city of Kānyakubja in the kingdom of Śūrasena where the Madra king Mahendra ruled. Seeing his beautiful daughter, they approached the king who readily consented to give her in marriage to King Kuśa of Benares. But King Kuśa’s appearance was repulsive, and his wife Sudarṣanā, discovering the defects in him, left Benares and returned to Kānyakubja. When he discovered his wife’s absence, Kuśa immediately set out in pursuit. Arriving at his father-in-law’s palace, he tried by various means to regain his wife’s favour, but in vain. Finally he disguised himself as a cook and prepared some delicious soup through which he won the king’s favour. In the meantime, seven Kṣatriya kings from neighbouring countries came to win Sudarṣanā, but they were refused. Then Kuśa, practically single-handed, drove all the seven kings away, and having saved his father-in-law’s kingdom, returned with his wife to his own country. The Madra king, Mahendra, on the advice of his son-in-law, gave his remaining seven daughters in marriage to the seven

¹ Jātaka (Fausboll), Vol. V, pp. 284 foll.
kings who had come to attack him, and thereby strengthened his position.\(^1\)

From the *Kāliṅga-Bodhi Jātaka* we observe that even a prince of the royal house of Kāliṅga in the far east sought the hand of a princess of the Madra country. A daughter was born to the king of Madra in the city of Sāgala. It was foretold that the girl should live as an ascetic but that her son would be universal monarch. The kings of India heard of this prediction and surrounded the city with the object of seeking the princess's hand. The king of Madra could not give his daughter in marriage to any one of them without incurring the wrath of the others. So he fled to a forest with his wife and daughter. The prince of Kāliṅga, who was also in the forest, happened to meet the Madra princess, and fell in love with her. Learning that she was a Kṣatriya like himself, he obtained her parents' consent to their marriage, and a matrimonial alliance was thus established between the royal houses of Madra and Kāliṅga.\(^2\) In the *Chaddanta Jātaka*, we find that the royal houses of Benares and Madra were allied with each other through matrimony \(^3\) (see also *Jātaka*, Vol. VI, p. 1). The great Ceylonese chronicle (*Mahāvamsa*, 8, 7) records an alliance between a Madra princess and a prince of Eastern India.

The Madras, according to the *Arthaśāstra* of Kautiliya (p. 455), were a corporation of warriors, and enjoyed the status of rājās (rājaśabdopajīvinaḥ). The *Mahābhārata* \(^4\) tells us that it was a family custom of the Madras to receive a fee from the bridegroom when they gave their daughters in marriage. The marriage proposal was first made by the bridegroom's party to the bride's party. When Pāṇḍu, the Kuru prince, won the hand of Kunti, the daughter of a Bhoja king, in a Svayamvara (the ceremony of a woman's choosing her husband), Bhīṣma wished him to take a second wife as well. Bhīṣma accordingly set out with a retinue and coming to the city of the Madra king named Śalya of the Vāhlika dynasty, asked the king to give his sister in marriage to Pāṇḍu. Śalya told him of the custom of receiving a fee; Bhīṣma consented and having given the Madra king much wealth as fee for the bride, he brought her to Hastināpura, where the marriage ceremony was performed.\(^5\)

In the Great Epic, we have further details of Śalya, king of the Madras. On the eve of the Kurukṣetra war, Yudhiṣṭhira sent messengers asking Śalya for his assistance. The king set out with his brave sons and a huge army. When on the march, this army

---

\(^1\) [Mahāvastu, II, p. 440 et seq.](#)

\(^2\) [Jātaka (Pamsboll), Vol. IV, pp. 228 foll.](#)

\(^3\) [Ibid., Vol. V, pp. 37 foll.](#)

\(^4\) [Adīpārva, Chap. 113.](#)

\(^5\) [Ibid., see also Chap. 95.](#)
occupied the space of half a yojana. Hearing of the Madra king’s might, Duryodhana decided to seek his alliance, and received him on the way, giving him a great ovation. Śalya was highly pleased with his reception, and offered Duryodhana a boon. Thereupon Duryodhana solicited his help in the ensuing Kurukṣetra war; and King Śalya consented, subsequently asking Yudhīśthira to release him (on certain conditions) from his previous promise. After severe fighting, and many vicissitudes, the Madra soldiers were killed by Arjuna.¹

The legend of Sāvitrī and Satyavān, so popular all over India, is connected with the Madra country, for Sāvitrī was the daughter of Aśvapati, king of Madra. This story is too well-known to require repetition here.²

As far as authentic history is concerned, we learn that the Madra dominions, including the capital, Śakala, came under the sway of Alexander the Great (326 B.C.) who placed them under the Satrap of the adjacent territory between the Jhelum and the Chenab.³

In the course of the centuries following the death of the Buddha, the Buddhist religion spread from the N.E. districts of India to the extreme West,—no doubt largely owing to the powerful proselytising zeal of the great Maurya Emperor Asoka. About 78 A.D., we find Menander (Milinda), a powerful Greek king, ruling at Śakala, and the Pāli ‘Milinda Pañho’ gives a full account of this king’s conversion to Buddhism.⁴ During Menander’s reign, the people knew of no oppression, since all their enemies had been conquered. Even before Menander’s time, Śakala seems to have come under Buddhist influence (see, e.g. Mrs. Rhys Davids’ Psalms of the Sisters, p. 48; Psalms of the Brethren, p. 359).

In the fourth century A.D., the Madras are recorded as having paid taxes to Samudragupta.⁵

At a later date, in the early part of the sixth century A.D., Śakala became the capital of the Hūṇa conqueror, Mihirakula.⁶ From the records of the travels of Hsüan Tsang, the Chinese pilgrim, we read that some centuries before his time there was in the town of

---

¹ Mbh., Udyogaparvan, Chaps. 8 and 19; Dronaparvan, Chap. 103; Bhīṣmaparvan, Chaps. 51; 105-6; Karnaparvan, Chaps. 5-6.
⁴ Questions of King Milinda (S.B.E.), Pt. I, p. 6; Rapson, Ancient India, pp. 128-131.
Saṅkala a king named Mo-hi-lo-kiu-lo (Mahirakula), who established his authority in that town, and subdued all the neighbouring provinces. This king was of a cruel nature, and, becoming enraged by the conduct of certain Buddhist priests, ordered his men to destroy all the priests ‘through the five Indies’, to overthrow the law of the Buddha and to leave nothing remaining.

Balāditya, king of Magadha, heard of Mahirakula’s cruel persecutions, and, after strongly guarding the frontiers of his kingdom, refused to pay tribute to him. Hearing that Mahirakula was marching against him, Balāditya fled, followed by his soldiers, to the islands of the sea. Mahirakula forthwith left his army in the charge of his younger brother, and himself put out to sea to attack Balāditya, but was captured by the latter’s soldiers. Balāditya, however, took pity on the captured sovereign and released him. Finding that his kingdom had meanwhile been usurped by his brother, Mahirakula went to Kashmir, where he was received with honour by the king, and given some territory over which to rule. After some years he betrayed his trust, killed the king, and placed himself on the throne. He then plotted against the kingdom of Gāndhāra, killed all the members of the royal family, and the chief minister, destroyed all Buddhist topes and temples, and appropriated the wealth of the country. However, retribution soon followed, for he was dead before the year was out.¹

It appears that the kingdom of Madra was still intact in the ninth century A.D., when we find the Madras as the allies of Dharmapāla, the monarch of Bengal, who with the help of the Madras and other northern powers dethroned Indrarāja, king of Paṅcāla.²

² V. A. Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 413.
CHAPTER VIII

THE MĀLAVAS

The Mālava tribe played an important rôle in the history of Ancient India. First settled in the Punjab, they gradually spread themselves over considerable portions of N. India and established their settlements in Rajputana, Central India, in different localities of the modern United Provinces, in the country known in ancient days as Lāta-deša (comprising Broach, Cutch, Vadnagar and Ahmedabad), and finally in modern Malwa. They successfully maintained their tribal organisation from the time of Pāṇini till at least as late as the time of Śamudragupta (fourth century A.D.).

The earliest definite mention of the Mālāvās is made in the writings of Alexander’s historians who refer to them as Malloi, Malli or Mallai, associated with the Oxydrakai, Sudracae, Hydrakai or Sydracae. These two tribes have long been identified with the Mālāvās and Kṣudraṇās of Śanskrit literature.1 Pāṇini does not actually mention them by name, but his sūtra V, 3, 117, speaks of certain tribes as ‘āyudhājñī samghas’, or tribes living by the profession of arms, and the Kāśika says that amongst these Samghas were the Mālāvās and Kṣudraṇās. The Mālava tribe is actually mentioned in the Mahābhāṣya of Patañjali (IV, 1, 68).2

In the time of Alexander (and probably also earlier), the Mālāvās were settled in the Punjab, but it is difficult to locate exactly the territory they occupied. Smith thinks that they (the Malloi) occupied the country below the confluence of the Hydaspes (Jhelum) and Akesines (Chenah), that is, the country comprising the Jhang district and a portion of the Montgomery district.3 According to McCrindle, they occupied a greater extent of territory, comprising the modern doab of the Akesines and Hydraotes (= Chenah and Rāvi)

2 According to the Jain Bhagavati Sūtra, Mālava is included in the list of the sixteen Mahājanapadas along with Mālava. The Mālava country of the Bhagavati is probably identical with Avanti of the Aṅguttara Nikāya (P.H.A.I., p. 82, 4th Edn.). According to Weber, Apiśali (according to Jayaswal, Kātyāyana) speaks of the formation of the compound—‘Kṣudraṇa-Mālava’. Smith points out that the Mahābhārata couples the tribes in question as forming part of the Kaurava host in the Kurukṣetra war. Curtius tells us that the Sudracae and the Malli had an army consisting of 90,000 foot-soldiers, 10,000 cavalry, and 900 war-chariots (ibid., pp. 156-7).
and extending to the confluence of the Indus and Akesines—identical with the modern Multan district and portions of Montgomery. Ray Chaudhuri locates them in the valley of the lower Hydraotes (Rāvī) on both banks of the river.

While sailing along the Hydaspes, Alexander heard that the Malloi and the Oxydrakai had combined together and prepared themselves ‘to give him hostile reception’. But it is difficult to ascertain from the mass of contradictory information of the Greek authorities whether the two tribes were able to give the conqueror a united opposition. While Curtius tells us that their combined army was led by a Kṣudraka hero, Diodorous says that the Syraknsoi (Kṣudrakas) and Malloi could not agree as to the choice of a leader, and consequently did not take the field together. According to Arrian as well, the Malloi had agreed to combine with the Oxydrakai against Alexander, but the conqueror had advanced so suddenly that their design was thwarted, and the two tribes could hardly have had the opportunity to unite against the common enemy. The Malloi were certainly taken by surprise by Alexander’s army, and suffered a defeat which was, however, not final. More than once the brave tribe offered determined opposition from their fortified cities which fell one by one to the sword of Alexander and his general Perdikas. The men deserted their cities, and preferred to make the desert and jungle their home rather than submit to the conquering hordes. Alexander then sent two of his generals, Peithon and Demetrius, against the largest city of the Malloi. But the Malloi had already abandoned that city, and crossed the Hydraotes, where they stood to offer further opposition. Eventually, however, when they saw that they were in danger of being surrounded by the Greek cavalry, they repaired to their capital city nearby, and made a last effort to resist the foreign invader. But they could not achieve any success. Their city-walls were razed to the ground and the citadel captured; but in the course of the heavy fighting Alexander himself was seriously wounded. He took revenge on the enemy by ordering all the inhabitants of the city, including women and children, to be put to the sword. This city has wrongly been assigned by Diodorous and Curtius to the Oxydrakai; but both Arrian and Plutarch definitely state that the city belonged to the Malloi and not to the Oxydrakai. Even after this defeat and massacre, the Malloi do not seem to have been completely annihilated;

1 Invasion of India, App. Note, p. 357.
3 McCrindle, Invasion of India, p. 236, f.n. 1; p. 150.
for Arrian tells us that the leading men from the Malloi and Oxydrakai came to Alexander to discuss the terms of a treaty which was eventually concluded.

Indeed, the Mālavas seem to have occupied their territory in the Punjab for some time afterwards. We have already referred to the reference to the tribe in the Mahābhāṣya; and it is not improbable that the Mahābhārata locates the tribe in the same place when it couples them with the Trigarttas, as well as with the Śivis and Amhaṣthas. But before long they seem to have migrated southwards and settled somewhere in Rajputana, where the tribes seem to have held their ground at the time of Samudragupta. A large number of coins found at Nagar, about 45 miles north of Koṭa, have on them the legend ‘Mālavānām Jayah’ (‘victory of the Mālavas’) in characters ranging in General Cunningham’s opinion from perhaps B.C. 250 to 250 A.D. ‘These coins’, he says, ‘show that the Mālavas existed as a recognised and important clan, long before the time when their tribal constitution which led to the establishment of their era, took place’. Some of these coins, which are very small, have on them a legend that has been read as Magaya, Magojaya, Majupa, Mayojapa, Mapaya and so forth. ‘Some scholars have taken these legends as denoting so many names, but the probability is that these letters constitute not names so much as abbreviations. In fact it was suggested to me long ago by Prof. D. R. Bhandarkar that the three letters Ma ga ja which occur, e.g. on coins 82-4 of Smith’s Catalogue of Coins in the Indian Museum, Vol. I, and which had been taken to be the name of a king, look like an abbreviation of the legend: ‘Mālavā-ganasya jayah’, which occurs for instance on coins Nos. 58-61 . . . What looks like the letter pa in Mapaya may be la; and Mapaya might thus stand for Mālaya, equal to Mālava. Mr. Douglas has pointed out that the tribal name is sometimes written Mālaya instead of Mālavas. Similarly Ma pa ya may he explained as equivalent to Mālajaya, equal to Mālava-jaya. Again, Ma go ya sa may be equivalent to ‘Mālavagaṇasya yaśah’. That the Mālavas had migrated to the Jaipur region of Rajputana from the Punjab is supported by the fact that the legend on some of the Mālavas coins found in Rajputana has to be read from right to left as in Kharoṣṭhī, which was the prevalent script in the Punjab and the north-west from very early times.

1 Draviparvan, Chap. 10, p. 17.
2 Sabhaśparvan, Chap. 32, p. 7.
The Mālava occupation of the Nāgar area near Jaipur in Rajputana is also upheld by the Nasik Cave Inscription of Uṣavadāta, the Śaka, son-in-law of the Kṣatrapa Nahapāna. The power of Nahapāna and his allies seems to have been threatened by the Malayas (= Mālavas) who had already besieged the Uttamabhadrās, allies of the Śaka king. Nahapāna sent Uṣavadāta, and the Malayas fled at the very sound of his approach, and were taken prisoner by the Uttamabhadrās. Uṣavadāta afterwards went to Puskarā, six miles west of Ajmēra.¹ The Scythic invasions and conquests could not, however, destroy the tribal organisation of the tribe, for in the Allahabad Pillar inscription of Samudragupta they are included in the list of tribal states of the western and south-western fringe of Ārayavarta. Among them the most important were the Mālavas, Ārjunāyanas, Vaudheyas, and Abhiras, all of whom were settled in Rajputana at this time. The Bijayagādh inscription (J.R.A.S., 1897, p. 30) definitely locates the Vaudheyas at this time in the Bharatpur State of Rajputana. The Abhiras also occupied some region in Western Rajputana, the place called Abiria in the Periplus of the Erythrean Sea.

According to the Purāṇas, the Mālavas are associated with the Saurāṣṭris, Avantis, Abhiras, Śūras, and Arbudas,² and are described as dwelling along the Pāriyātra mountains. Thus it seems that they occupied other territories besides the Punjab or Rajputana. After Samudragupta’s time when, as we have seen, the tribe was settled in Rajputana, the Mālavas seem to have migrated to the Mandasor region in the north-west part of Central India, where most of the records connected with the successors of Samudragupta have been found. This region is certainly to be identified with the ancient Mahājānapadā of Avanti (mentioned in the Ānguttara Nikāya), as well as Avanti of the Junāgdh Rock inscription of Rudradāman, and Malaya (= Mālava) of the Jain Bhagavatī Sūtra referred to above whose capital was Ujjayinī. This tract of country along with the region round Bhilsa comprises what is now known as Malwa (Mālava). It is well-known that the years of the Vikrama Era in the Gupta epoch were known as Kṛta; and the Mālavas were associated with them (cf. Mandasor Inscr. of Naravarman, C.I.I., Vol. III); and wherever the Kṛta years are specified in the inscriptions of the Gupta period, the name of the Mālavas almost invariably occurs. We find the princes of Mandasor using the Era

¹ Ep. Ind., Vol. VIII, p. 44.
² Bhag., XII, I, 36; Viṣṇu, Bk. II, Chap. III; Brahma, Chap. XIX, śloka 17. The Rāmāyanā (Kīṣk. Kānda, Canto XLII) locates the tribe in the east; but the Bengal recension does not know of them.
(commencing 58 B.C.) traditionally handed down by the ‘Mālavagāna’. And it is not only in the Mandasor region that inscriptions have been found associating the Mālavas with the Kṛta Era; they have also been found among other places at Kāṃsuvām in the Kotah State and Nāgari in Udaipur State.

In the period following that of Skandagupta and his successors (i.e. after about 550 A.D.), the Mālavas seem to have migrated further to the east so as to cover the region from Bhilsa (Eastern Malwa) to Prayāg. In the Harsacarita of Bāna, Kumāragupta and Mādhavagupta, two sons of King Mahāsenagupta (of the line of Kṛṣṇagupta), who were appointed by Prabhākaravardhana to wait upon his sons, Rājyavardhana, and Harsavardhana respectively, are referred to as ‘Mālavarājaputrau’. It follows that Mahāsenagupta was a king of Mālava. He was most probably succeeded by a king named Devagupta, who is referred to in the Madhuvan and Banskhera inscriptions of Harsavardhana, and who must be identical with the ‘wicked Mālava King’ who cut off Grahavarman Maukhari in battle, but was himself defeated by Rājyavardhana. It is difficult to identify the Mālava Kingdom of Mahāsenagupta and Devagupta, but it was most probably identical with Pūrva-Mālava which lay between Prayāga and Bhilsa. It could not be the Mo-la-po (= Mālava) of Hsüan Tsang, for Mo-la-po was then under the Maitrakas of Valabhi; nor could it be the Mālava country whose capital was Ujjayini, for Ujjayini was at that time ruled by a brahmin dynasty, and the Guptas were not brahmins. Moreover, according to Vātsyāyana, Ujjayinideśa was called Apara-Mālava or Western Mālava; where only Mālava, without any prefix, is referred to, it should be taken to mean Eastern (Pūrva) Mālava.

Just about this time, the celebrated Chinese pilgrim Hsüan Tsang in the course of his Indian travels visited the kingdom of ‘Mo-la-po’; its capital was on the south-east of the river Moha (= Mahi). Mo-la-po was a country whose learning was much prized. This Mo-la-po must now be identified with Mālavaka or Mālavaka-āhāra, referred to in a number of Valabhi grants as included in the kingdom of the Maitrakas of Valabhi. The Mālavaka-āhāra lay between Bhrgukaccha or Broach, Cutch, Valabhi, and Vadugar (Smith), and corresponds roughly to the modern districts of Kaira and Ahmedabad, together with parts of the Baroda State and some adjoining territories. That the Mo-la-po of Hsüan Tsang cannot be

---

4 Ibid., II, p. 341.
identified with Mālava (i.e. Western Mālava) whose capital was Ujjayini is also proved by the fact that the pilgrim describes the former as being included within the territory of Valabhi. ‘The diminutive suffix Ka also indicates that it was then known as Lesser Mālava to distinguish it from Mālava proper’ (C.A.G.I., Mazumdar’s Notes, p. 728). The Mālavaka country is also referred to in the Gurvāvali Sūtra of Dharmasāgaragani, where Śrī Devendrasundari is represented as having gone from Mālavaka to Gurjaratā or Gujrat;¹ and it is also mentioned in the Tewar Stone Inscription of the region of Jayasimhadeva of the Cedi year 928.² The Mālavas and their country,—evidently meaning the region around Ujjayini and Bhilsa, i.e. modern Malwa, are mentioned in a number of later epigraphic records, e.g. in the Sagartal inscription of the Gurjarara Pratiharas, the Paithana Plates of Rāṣṭrakūṭa Govinda III, and a host of others.

We have seen that the Mālavas migrated eastwards as far as Prayāga, probably in the second half of the sixth century A.D. During the rule of the Pālas of Bengal and Bihār they seem to have migrated still further east; for in the copper-plates of the Pāla kings (excepting Dharmapāla), reference is made not only to the Kulikas, the Khasas and Hūnas, but also to the Mālavas who seem to have migrated to Bengal as mercenary troops.

The name of the tribe survives to this day not only in the modern province of Malwa (which is a transformation of the word Mālava), but also in those of two Brāhmaṇa castes called ‘Mālavis’ or ‘Mālavikas’. They are the Brāhmaṇas of Mālava proper and the adjoining country, but are not only found in their special habitat, but also in Gujrat on the one hand, and Central and United Provinces on the other.³

³ See Ann. B.O.R.I., Vol. XIII, parts III-IV, 1931-2, p. 229.—‘In Ep. Ind., V, 229, the Dandanāyaka Anantapāla, a feudatory of Vikramāditya VI, is said to have subdued the Saptā Mālavā countries up to the Himālaya mountains. This proves that there were as many as seven countries called Mālava. These were probably (1) Mo-la-po (Mālavaka-āhāra of Valabhi grants) on the Mahi, governed by the Maitrakas, (2) Aṇandī ruled by a Brāhmaṇa family in the time of Hsian Tsang, (3) Purva Mālava (round Bhilsa), (4) District round Prayāga, (5) Patchpur District, in U.P., (6) Cis-Sutlej districts of the Punjab, (7) Some Himalayan territory’ (P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 492, l.n. 4).
CHAPTER IX

THE ŚĀLVAS

The Śālavas were an important people of Ancient India, and are referred to in Pāṇini's Astādhyāyī, in the Epics, and in the Purāṇas. But they do not seem to have been able to maintain their integrity until the beginning of the historical period, for they are scarcely referred to in inscriptions or in later Sanskrit or Pāli literature.

Perhaps the earliest mention of the Śālavas as a tribe is found in the Gopatha Brāhmaṇa (i, 2, 9), where they appear in connection with the Matsyas. The Matsyas were inhabitants of the region identical with the kingdom of King Virāṭa of the Mahābhārata, and the Matsya capital has been identified with Virāṭ in the Jaipur State; and the Śālavas probably occupied the territory now occupied by the native state of Alwar. According to the Mahābhārata, the Śālva country was situated near Kurukṣetra and was the kingdom of the father of Satyavān, husband of Sāvitrī. The capital of the Śālavas seems to have been Śālavapura, which is also called Saubhaganagara. King Śālva's kingdom or territory was also known as Mārttikāvata or Mṛttikāvati. Śālva is said to have attacked Dvāravatī, but to have been killed by Kṛṣṇa.

In the great Kurukṣetra war the Śālavas along with the Matsyas, Kekeya, Ambaśṭhas, Trigarttās, and others, lent their support to the army of Duryodhana against the Pāṇḍavas, and, along with the Ambaśṭhas and Trigarttās, formed a unit of the army led by Bhīṣma. In the Udyogaparvan (54, 18) they are associated with the Pāṇcālas, Kekeya, and Śārasenas; and (56, 18) with the Mālavas. In the Bhīṣmaparvan, the Śālavas, Matsyas, Ambaśṭhas, Trigarttās, Kekeya, Sauvīras, and six other tribal states are said to have arrayed themselves by the side of Bhīṣma. The mighty Śālva king is said to have been laid low on the battle-field by Bhimasena

---

1 Cunningham, An. R.A.S.I., XX, p. 120; Mātsyapurāṇa, Chap. 113.
2 Virāṭaparvan, Chap. I.
3 Vanaparvan, Chap. 282.
5 Pargiter, A.I.H.T., p. 279. 'Mārttikāvata must be distinguished from Mṛttikāvati. Mārttikāvata existed before, e.g. according to the story of Śāma Jāmadagnya' (Mbū., III, 116, 11076; VII, 70, 12430) — Ibid., f.n. 7.
6 Vanaparvan, Chap. 14.
7 Bhīṣmaparvan, Chap. 20, 10, 12, 15.
8 Chap. 18, 13-4.
The Śālvas are several times referred to in the Mahābhārata as Dānavas and Daityas, i.e. demons,—probably because of their fabled enmity to Viṣṇu who is termed 'Śalvārī', foe of Śalva.

The Vāyu and Matsya-purāṇas locate the Śalvas amongst the central peoples (i.e. Madhyadeśa); but the Viṣṇupurāṇa places them in the extreme west, along with the Sauvīras, Sāindhavas, Hūṇas, Śākalas, Madras, etc.; and the Brahma-purāṇa (Chap. 19, 16–18) also locates them in the Aparānta or western country. In the Bengali recension of the Rāmāyaṇa (Kiṣk. Kāṇḍa, XLIII, 23) also they are classed among the western nations.

Commenting on Śālvāvayava in the śloka 'Śālvāvayava pratya-grathakalakūtaśmakādi' (4, 1, 173), the Kāśika on Pāṇini's Aṣṭādhyāyi names Udumbara, Tilakhala, Madrakāra, Yugandhara, Bhuliṅga, and Saradatta as the six avayavas or parts of the Śalvajanapada. Bhuliṅga here is probably the same as 'Bolingai' of Ptolemy. In the śloka 'na prācya Bhargādi Yaudheyādhibhyah' (4, 1, 178), the Kāśika includes the Karūsas, Kaṃsāras, and Śalvas. The Kāśika on another sūtra (4, 2, 76) refers to a city of the Śalvas named Vaidhumāgni, built by Vidhumāgni; and elsewhere the Kāśika includes the Śalvas among the Kacchādi-gana, along with the Kaṃsāras (4, 2, 133; 4, 1, 109).

1 According to Mbh., XII, 234, 8607 and XIII, 137, 6267, Dyutimant was a certain king of the Śalvas who gave his kingdom to Rṣīka.

2 III, 14, 633-4; 17, 695, 710; 885-6.


4 McCrindle's Ptolemy, p. 163.
CHAPTER X

THE USINARAS

The Usinaras were an ancient, petty tribe dwelling to the north of the Kuru country. The Gopatha Brāhmaṇa (II, 9) tells us that the Usinaras and Vasas (Vatsas) were regarded as northerners. In the Rgveda (X, 59, 10) the tribe is alluded to in a passage which refers to their queen Usinarani. Panini, the grammarian, also refers to the Usinara country. The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa contains a geographical passage (VIII, 14) which assigns the Kurus and Pañcālas, together with the Vasas and Usinaras, to the Middle Country, the later Madhyadesa. In the Kausitaki Upaniṣad (IV, 1) too, the Usinaras are associated with the Kuru-Pañcālas and the Vasas.

Zimmer thinks that the Usinaras earlier lived farther to the north-west. This theory is based on the fact that the Anukramaṇi of the Rgveda ascribes one hymn (X, 179) to Śivi Ausinara; and that the Śivis were known to Alexander the Great’s followers as the Siboi, living between the Indus and Akesines (Chenab). The authors of the Vedic Index do not accept Zimmer’s view, and observe: ‘This is in no way conclusive, as the Sibis, at any rate in Epic times, occupied the land to the north of Kurukṣetra, and there is no reason whatever to show that in the Vedic period, the Usinaras were farther west than the Middle Country’. Pargiter, however, holds that Usinara and his descendants occupied the Punjab. Usinara established separate kingdoms on the eastern border of the Punjab, viz. those of the Vaudheyas, Ambaśthas, etc., and his famous son Śivi Ausinara originated the Śivis in Śivapura and, extending his conquests westwards, founded, through his four sons, the kingdoms of the Vṛṣadārības, Madras, Kekayas and Suviras, thus occupying the whole of the Punjab except the north-west corner. According to tradition, King Usinara was descended from the Anavas. He had five wives, Mrgā, Kṛmi, Navā, Darvā and Dṛśadvali, who respectively had five sons, Mrgā, Kṛmi, Nava, Suvrata and Śivi. The city of Mrgā was Vaudheya; and the Harivamśa connects the Vaudheyas with Usinara.

1 Cambridge History of India, Vol. I, p. 84.
2 Sūtras, II, 4, 20; IV, 2, 118.
3 Ancient Indian Historical Tradition, p. 109.
4 Ibid., p. 264.
5 Ibid., p. 88.
6 Ibid., p. 88.
The story of Usinara’s offering to sacrifice himself for a pigeon, and his subsequently being granted a boon by Indra, is one of the favourites of Indian mythology, and is too well-known to repeat here. In the *Śāntiparvan* of the *Mahābhārata*, we read that Nārada said to Sānjaya: ‘Usinara Śivi was dead. He encircled the whole world like a skin’. Elsewhere in the same *parvan* it is stated that Usinara became the sole emperor of the world, a patent exaggeration.

In the *Śrīmadbhāgavatam* we read that a famous king of Usinara named Suyajña was killed in battle.

The Buddhist Jātakas refer more than once to King Usinara. For instance, in one Jātaka we read that there once reigned a king named Usinara. His people were wicked and followed unrighteousness. During his reign, the religion of the Buddha began to disappear. Sakka (Sakra) observed the miserable plight of the people, due to the decadence of the religion of the Buddha. He turned the god Mātali, his charioteer, into the shape of a huge black hound and entered the city with him. The people were terrified by the loud barking of the hound. Sakka said that it was hungry; but even when all the food in the city was given to the hound, it did not stop barking. The king said that it must be a goblin, not a hound. Sakka then explained that he had come with the hound to revive the religion of the Buddha, and thus to establish the people in the virtues of liberality.

A mountain named Usiragiri or Usiraddhaja is referred to in the *Divyāvadāna* (p. 22) and elsewhere; and Dr. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri points out that this may be identical with the Usinaragiri mentioned in the *Kaihāsaritsāgara* (Ed. Durgāprasad and Kāśināth, 3rd Edn., p. 5). Usinaragiri is placed near Kanakhala, and Usiraddhaja is mentioned in the *Vinaya Piṭaka* as forming the northern boundary of the Middle Country; accordingly, it is possible that the two are identical and associated with the Usinara country.

1 *Mbh., Vanaprastha, Chaps. 130, 131.*
2 *Ibid., 40; and see 41-3.
3 *Ibid., 40; and see 41-3.

---

1 *Ibid., 40; and see 41-3.*
2 *Chap. 29, 39.*
3 *Chap. II, śloka 28, 7th Skandha, p. 393.*
4 *See, e.g. Nimi Jātaka (Fausbøll), VI, p. 99; and Mahānāradakassapa Jātaka, ibid., Vol. VI, p. 251.*
5 *Ibid., Vol. IV, pp. 181 foll.*
6 *Jātaka, (Fausbøll), Vol. IV, pp. 181 foll.*
7 *Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., p. 55.*
8 *Vinaya, I, p. 197 (Oldenberg).*
CHAPTER XI
THE VÄHLIKAS

Vählika, Vāhlika and Valhika are variant names of a people who lived in the northern division of India from very early times. A king of the tribe, Bāhlīka Prätīpya, is referred to in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (XII, 9, 3, 1–3 and 13), and is represented as having opposed the restoration of Duṣṭarītu, king of the Śrūjayas (Vedic Index, II, pp. 470–1). Bāhlīka (or Vāhlīka) Prätīpeya (or Prätīpiya), son (or descendant) of this Pratīpa, as Pargiter points out (A.I.H.T., p. 166, f.n. 2), is mentioned in the Mahābhārata (Adīparvan, Chap. 95, verse 44; Udyogaparvan, Chap. 47, verse 6). In the Sabhāparvan (Chap. 27, verse 22), mention is made of Vālheka, which is evidently another name for Vāhlīka.

According to the Vāyu-purāṇa as well as the Kāvya Mīmāṃsā of Rājasekhara, the Vāhlīka country is placed in the northern division. In the Bengal recension of the Rāmāyaṇa (see, e.g. Kiskindhyā Kānḍa, 44, verse 13) the Vāhlīkas are associated with the people of the north, and sometimes (e.g. ibid., 43, verse 5) with those of the west. We may conclude, then, that the Vāhlīka country should be identified with some region beyond the Punjab. A reference in the Udyogaparvan to its having been famous for its horses seems to connect the Vāhlīka country with Kāmboja; this, together with the difficulty of approach to the country which is referred to in the account of Arjuna’s digvijaya may perhaps justify us in assuming that the tribe had its habitat somewhere in the neighbourhood of Gandhāra and Kāmboja. That the Vāhlīkas were settled beyond the Indus is definitely proved by the Mehrauli Iron Pillar Inscription of Chandra, where the mighty King Chandra is described as ‘one...by whom having crossed in warfare the seven mouths of the Indus the Vāhlīkas were conquered’. Accordingly, the country of the Vāhlīkas may perhaps be identified with the region now known as Balkh; in other words, the Vāhlīkas should be identified

1 Also mentioned in Śiva Purāṇa, VII, 60, 20.
2 Sabhāparvan.
3 Chandra has been identified by some with Candravarman of the Allahabad Pillar Inscription of Samudragupta, as also with the king of the same name mentioned in the Susunia Rock Inscription.
with the 'Baktrioi' occupying the country near Arachosia in the time of
the geographer Ptolemy.  

The Uttarakāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa (Chap. 100, verse 3) refers
to a dynasty of kings who are said to have descended from one
Kārdama or Kardameya. They were related to the Aila race, and
were associated with Vālhi or Vālikā over which they seem to have
held sway. In another chapter of the Uttarakāṇḍa (103, verse 21)
the Vālikā or Vālikas country is said to have been situated outside
the Madhyadeśa, which must have extended as far as the Sarasvati
in the west. A Kārdamaka Vamaśa or dynasty is referred to in the
Kanheri Inscription of the minister (amātya) Sateraka. In his
Political History of Ancient India (4th Edn., p. 423), Dr. H. C. Ray
Chaudhuri makes the illuminating suggestion that this Kārdamaka
Vamaśa probably derived its name from the river Kārdama in
Pārasīka or Persia.  In that case Vālikā, the home of the Kārdama
or Kārdamaka kings, should be sought for somewhere in Persia;
and we have a further justification for identifying the country of the
Vālikas with Balkh in Iran.  

The Vālikas or Vālikēs should not be identified with the
Vālikas, who seem to have lived between the Sutlej and the Indus.
A passage in the Karṇaparvan (Chap. 44) seems to describe their
position:

'Sākalam nāma nagaramāpagā nāma nimnagā
Jartīlikā nāma Vālikāstēsāṁ Vrttaṁ sunindilam' (verse 10).
'Saladrukāṁ nadīn tīrttvā tāṁca ramyāṁ Iravatīṁ' (verse 17).

This passage states that the Vālikas were also known as Jartīkās
(= Jāti?) and Arattas, and that their capital was at Sākala, modern
Silkot, west of the Rāvi. Another portion of the same
passage suggests that in the Arattā countries religion was in dis-
repute; it was thus an impure region, and the Aryans of Mid-India
were forbidden to go there. This is also reflected in the Vārttikas
of Pāṇini by Katyayana who derives the word Vālikē from 'vahī'
or 'bahi', meaning 'outside',—suggesting those who were outside the
pale of Aryandom. According to Pāṇini and his scholiast Patanjali,
Vālikē was another name for the Punjab (IV, 2, 117; V, 3, 114);

1 Dr. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri, P.H.A.I., 4th Edn., p. 449, f.n.; and Ind. Ant.,
1884, p. 408.
2 Comm. on Arthaśāstra, II, 11: Pārasthēṣu Kārdamā nāma nadē.
3 For fuller details of the Kārdamaka kings and their association with Vālikē,
see Ray Chaudhuri's paper on 'The Kārdamaka kings' in I.H.Q., Vol. IX. No. 1,
4 The Arattas were the Arattai of the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea, p. 41.
5 It will be remembered that Sākala was King Milinda's capital.
That the Vāhīkas were held in disrepute is also proved by verse 41 of the Kārnāpārvana, which says:

'Vaḥiṣca nāma Hīkaśca Vipāśayāṁ Piśacakau
Tayorāpaṭyāṁ Vāhikā naisā syṣṭiḥ prajāpateh.'

According to this verse, Vahi and Hika were names of two Piśacas (demons) of the Vipāśā river (Beas). Their descendants, the Vāhīkas, were not (worthy of being called) ‘a creation of Prajāpati’ (the Creator).
CHAPTER XII

THE TRIGARTTAS

The earliest mention of the Trigarttas to which a fairly definite date can be assigned is made in the Aṣṭādhyāyī of Pāṇini, the celebrated grammarian, who flourished in the middle of the sixth century B.C. at the latest. Besides a direct reference to the tribe or country of the Trigarttas in a certain Sūtra,¹ there are indirect references to the tribe in at least two other Sūtras, according to the scholiast on Pāṇini. In ‘na prācyā Bhargādi Yaudheyādibhyah’ (Sūtra IV, 1, 178) Bhargādi is said to stand for the regions (janaśyādha) of the Bhargas, Karūsas, Kaśmīras, and Śālvas, whereas Yaudheyādi is taken to include the country or tribe of the Trigarttas as well as of the Yaudheyas (see chap. on Yaudheyas). The other reference to ‘Yaudheyādi’ is in Sūtra, V, 3, 117, which mentions the Yaudheyas (and Trigarttas implicitly) as forming an ‘Ayudha-jīvī Samgha’. We may infer, then, that the Trigarttas, like the Yaudheyas, were a Kṣatriya tribal republic depending mainly on arms. This close association of Trigarttas and Yaudheyas probably means that their territories were contiguous.

In the Mahābhārata, also, these two tribes are often associated, both having rallied on the side of Duryodhana.² Two Trigartta heroes famous as Samsaptakas (bound by an oath to kill others) seem to have played an important part in the Kurukṣetra war.³ The Trigarttas along with the Śālvas, Ambaṣṭhas, and other tribes were included in the army of Bhīma.⁴ In the course of the war the Trigarttas seem to have had a hard fight with Nakula, the fourth Pāṇḍava,⁵ while on another occasion their King Susarma fought a stiff battle with Arjuna.⁶ As a result of the war, the Trigarttas along with the Kaśmīras, Mālavas, Śivis, Yaudheyas, Ambaṣṭhas, and other tribes were totally defeated, and they all paid homage to Yudhiṣṭhira.⁷

¹ V, 3, 116: Dāmanyādi Trigarttasāsthadhāraḥ.
² Sabhāparvan, Canto 52, 14-15; Dronaśparvan, Canto 18, 16.
³ Udyogapaśvan, Canto 57, 18. Before the actual war, five Trigartta brothers acted as agents of Duryodhana in harassing the Pāṇḍavas while they were living incognito in the Virāḍa country (Udyogapāśvan, Canto 165, 9).
⁴ Bhīmaśparvan, Canto 20, 10, 12, 15; Canto 81, 3; Canto 82, 13.
⁵ Ibid., Canto, 72, 7.
⁶ Ibid., 96, 17; 102, 22; 104, 8.
⁷ Sabhāparvan, 34, 7-12; 52, 14-15.
The Trigarttas, as described in the Mahābhārata, seem to have been a Punjah tribe. This is borne out not only by Hemachandra’s Abhidhānacintāmaṇi, which speaks of Trigartta and Jālandhara (modern Jullundur) as synonymous, but also by a reference in the Rājatarangini (V, 144), which implies that the tribe inhabited a region not far from Kashmir. Epigraphic evidence* as well points to the fact that modern Jullundur was the ancient Trigartta country. In the Purāṇas, the Trigarttas are reckoned among the mountain tribes. Cunningham identifies the Trigartta country with Kangra, which is situated in Jullundur between the mountains of Chamba and the upper course of the Beas. ‘Trigartta’ is interpreted to be the land watered by the three rivers—the Ravi, the Beas, and the Surlej. It is also explained as the country of the three strongholds, and is identified by some scholars with the modern hill-state of Kotoch, which is still called ‘Trigartaka Mulk’, or the region of the Trigarttas (Prof. Johnson’s Selections from the Mahābhārata, p. 64, f.n. 8).

The Trigartta tribe or country (janapada) is also mentioned in the Daśakumāraccaritam in connection with Mitragupta’s travels. Not very much is known of the authentic political history of Trigartta, but it seems certain that from about 700 to 1150 A.D., the country was practically a dependency of one or other of the Kashmir dynasties. From the Rājatarangini (V, 130–50), for instance, we learn that Kārkoṭa Sankaravarman, King of Kashmir (c. 883–902 A.D.), set out on a series of expeditions to recover the lost possessions of his father Avantivarman. Then Prthvicandra, King of Trigartta, who had previously given his son Bhavacandra as a hostage, came towards Sankaravarman to do homage; hut fearing capture, fled far away. Kalhāna’s description does not show that Trigartta was actually conquered, and Stein is probably right in assuming that no material success was achieved by Sankaravarman in the hills, east of the Ravi. The Trigartta country is said to have acknowledged the supremacy of the King of Kashmir during the reign (in Kashmir) of Ananta of the line of Ahhinava (1028–63 A.D.).

---

1 IV, 24—‘Jālandharās-trigarttāḥ syuh’.
3 Mārkaṇḍeya P., 57, 57; Mātsya P., 114, 56. The Brāhmaṇapurāṇa (14, 46) refers to a daughter, Jījīsā by name, of a certain Trigartta king, who was married to Śisirayāni.
6 According to Nundolal Dey, North Canara was also called Trigartta in ancient times (Gokarna-Bhāgavata, X, Chap. 79).
7 B.S.S., p. 108.
THE YAUDHEYAS

The Yaudheyas were a republican tribe of the Punjab known as early as the time of Panini, the celebrated grammarian (c. sixth century B.C.), whose Sutras contain what are probably the earliest reference to this people. In ‘na prācyā Bhargādī Yaudheya-ādi’ (IV, 1, 178) the term Yaudheya-ādi includes the two tribes, Yaudheyas and Trigarttas (according to Scholiast). Elsewhere in the Sutras (V, 3, 117) the Yaudheyas (counting the Trigarttas with them) are referred to as forming an ‘Ayudha-pūl Samgha’, or a tribal republican organisation depending mainly on arms (cf. the name ‘Yaudheya’ = warrior).

The historical tradition of the tribe, however, goes back still farther than Panini’s time. The Purāṇas refer to the Yaudheyas as having been descended from Usinara, while the Harivamśa too connects the Yaudheyas with the Usinaras. According to Pargiter, King Usinara established the Yaudheyas, Amhaśthas, Navarāṣṭra, and the city of Kṛmila, all on the Eastern border of the Punjab; while his famous son Śivi Ausinara originated the Śivas or Śhis in Śivapura. In the Mahābhārata, the Yaudheyas are described as having been defeated by Arjuna, along with the Mālavas and Trigarttas; while in the Sabhāparvan (Chap. 52, 14-5), the Yaudheyas, together with the Śibis, the Trigarttas, and the Ambaṣthas, are represented as having paid homage to Yudhīṣṭhira. Elsewhere in the Great Epic (Drona-parvan, Chap. 159, 5) the tribe is mentioned along with the Madrakas and Mālavas.

The Byhatsamhitā places the Yaudheyas along with the Ārjunāyanas in the N. division of India. According to Ray Chaudhuri, they may have been connected with the Pándounoi or Pāṇḍava tribe mentioned by Ptolemy as settled in the Punjab.

1 Brahmanda Purāṇa, III, Chap. 74; Vāyu P., Chap. 99; Brahma P., Chap. 13: Mutsya P., Chap. 48; Viṣṇu P., Chap. 17, etc.
2 Harivamśa, Chap. 32; cf. also Pargiter, Märk. P., p. 380.
3 A.I.H.T., p. 264.
4 Drona-parvan, Chap. 18, 16; Karṇa-parvan, Chap. 5, 48.
5 ‘Yaudheya-ādrijān rājan Madrakān Māḷavāṇāpi’. Here ‘Ādrijān’ has been interpreted by some as signifying a tribe, the ‘Ādrijas’ (possibly = the Adraistai of the Greeks); but it seems more likely that it is simply an epithet qualifying the Yaudheyas (‘mountain-born’). There is no mention in Sorensen’s Index to the names in the Mahābhārata of ‘ādrijā’ used as the name of a tribe.
6 Ind. Ant., XIII, 331, 349.
for Yaudheya appears in the Mahābhārata (Ādi-parvan, Chap. 95, 76) as the name of a son of Yudhīṣṭhīra.¹

Cunningham identifies the Yaudheyas with the Johiya Rajputs, and the country of the Yaudheyas with Johiyabar (= Yaudheyavāra), the district around Multan. The Johiyas, he points out, are divided into three tribes; and he finds a strong confirmation of his identification in the fact that in the coins of the Yaudheya clan there can be traced the existence of three different tribes. These coins are of three classes, of which the first bears the simple inscription: ‘jaya-Yaudheya-ganasya’, i.e. ‘(money) of the victorious Yaudheya tribe’. The second class has ‘dvi’ at the end of the legend, and the third has ‘tri’, which are taken by Rapson to be contractions for ‘dvitiyasya’ and ‘tritiyasya’, or second and third, as the money of the second and third tribes of the Yaudheyas. As the coins are found to the West of the Sutlej, it is almost certain that they belong to the Johiyas who now occupy the line of the Sutlej.²

The Yaudheyas are known from the Bijayagadh (Bijegarh?) Stone Inscription³ (C.I.I., Vol. III, pp. 250-1) to have occupied the Bijayagadh region of the Bharatpur State, and we may assume that they had extended their rule quite far to the South by about 150 A.D., the date of the Junāgarh (Kathiawar) Inscription of Rudradāman,⁴ which contains that monarch’s boast of having ‘rooted out the Yaudheyas’. The tribe was not entirely extinguished, however, for in the Allahabad Pillar Inscription of Samudragupta (fourth century A.D.) the Yaudheyas are included in the list of tribal states who paid him homage (Mālavas, Ārjunāyanas, Yaudheyas, Madrakas, Ābhiras, Prārjunakas, Kākas, and Kharaparakas).⁵

¹ Ray Chaudhuri, P.H.A.I., 4th Edn., p. 457.
³ Paleographically the inscription is of an early date, the characters being of the so-called Indo-Scythic form. The leader of the Yaudheya tribe who is referred to in the inscription is styled Mahārāja and Mahāsenāpati.
⁵ Ray Chaudhuri, P.H.A.I., 4th Edn., p. 457.
CHAPTER XIV

The Kekayas were a well-known tribe of Ancient India, and played an important part not only in the events recorded in the Rāmāyana, but also in the great Kurukṣetra war of the Mahābhārata. They were known as early as the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa and the Čhandogya Upaniṣad, and continued for some considerable time to be one of the important tribes of the Punjab. The territory of the Kekayas, according to the Rāmāyana, lay beyond the river Vipāśa (Beas) and extended up to the borders of the ancient Gandhāra kingdom. According to the Puranic tradition, the Kekayas were descended from the (non-Aryan) Aṃi tribe or the family known as the Anāvas, who appear from the Rigveda (8, 74) to have dwelt in the same territory of the Punjab as that later occupied by the Kekayas (according to the Rāmāyana). Rājaśekhara in his Kavyanitiṇīmāṇasā places the Kekaya country in the northern division (Uttarāpatha) of India, along with the Śakas, Hūnas, Kambojas, Vāhlikas, etc. In the Mahābhārata they are associated with the Vāhlikas, while in the Purāṇas more emphasis seems to be laid on their association with the Madras.

The earliest known king of the Kekayas was Āśvapati. He was a theologian who is said to have instructed a number of Brāhmaṇas. The name of a Kekaya king several times referred to in the Rāmāyana was also Āśvapati; but it is difficult to say whether the two were identical. King Āśvapati of the Rāmāyana was the father of Kālkeyī, second queen of Daśaratha, and maternal grandfather of Bharata (Ayodhyākānda, Chap. 70). The capital city of King Āśvapati, according to the Rāmāyana, was Rāja-grhā or Girivraja, identified by Cunningham with Jalālpur on the Jhelum (= Giriyak: Cunningham’s Arch. Sur. Rep., II). We learn from

2 Brahmāṇḍa P., III, 74; Vāyu P., Chap, 99; Brahma P., Chap, 13; Harivamśa (Chap. 31); Matsya P., Chap, 48; Viṣṇu P., IV, Chap, 18; Gauḍa P., I, Chap, 139; and Bhāgavata P., IX, Chap, 23.
3 Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, X, 6, 1, 2; Čhandogya U.P., V, 11, 4 et seq.
4 Adikānda, Cantos XII, LXXIV, LXXXVII; Ayodhyākānda, Cantos II, XXXIV, XXXVII, etc.
5 Rām., II, 67, 7; II, 68, 22. This Girivraja or Rāja-grhā is not to be confused with the Girivraja or Rāja-grhā of Magadha (S.B.E., XIII, p. 150).
Jaina sources that one-half of the Kekaya kingdom was Aryan, and the Kekaya city was known as Seyaviya.¹

The Kekayas fought on Duryodhana’s side in the Kurukṣetra war. They seem from the Purāṇas ² to have been intimately related to the Usīnaraś and the Śivis, for they were traditionally descended from one of the four sons of Śivi Usīnara. The latter is said to have originated the Śivis in Śivapura and extending his conquests westwards, to have founded through his four sons the kingdoms of the Vṛṣadarbhas, Madras, Kekayas or Kaikeyas, and Suviṣas or Sauviṣas.³ In the Viṣṇupurāṇa mention is made of a king of Kekaya or Kaikeya named Dhrṣṭaketu (Bk., IV, Chap. XIV).

A branch of the Kekayas seems in later times to have migrated as far south as the Mysore country, where they established a settlement. They were probably an ancient ruling family of Mysore, and were connected by marriage with the Ikṣväkus, a famous royal dynasty, known from inscriptions discovered from the ruins of the Jagayyapeta stūpa in the Kṛṣṇa district,⁴ as well as from Nāgārjunikonda.⁵

¹ Ind. Ant., 1891, 375.
² Vāyu P., Chap. 99; Matsya P., Chap. 48; Viṣṇu P., IV, Chap. 18; Agni P., Chap. 276, etc.
³ Pargiter, A.I.H.T., p. 264. See also Chap. on Yaudheyaś, for further information about Śivi and his father Usīnara.
CHAPTER XV

THE ABHĪRAS

The Abhīras as a tribe are well-known in the history of ancient India. Probably coming into prominence for the first time during the age roughly covered by the Epics, at a later period they came to occupy an independent kingdom, and establish more centres than one in the country. The tribe can still be traced in the present Ahirs (Ahir being the Prakrit form of the Sanskrit word Abhira) who, in tribal groups, abound largely in the United Provinces, Bihar, Nepal and some portions of Rajputana. They are a band of simple, sturdy people, mostly cowherds and agriculturists.

According to the Mahābhārata (Subhāpūrṇa, Chap. 51), the Abhīras were located in the western division of India (Aparantaka). The Epic evidence is supported by that of the author of the Periplus of the Erythrean Sea, a Greek record of commercial geography of the first century B.C., as well as by Ptolemy, the Greek geographer who flourished in the middle of the second century A.D. Later epigraphic evidence also definitely places the Abhīras in the west, but the Purāṇas seem to locate them in the northern division or Uttara-patha. 'The fact seems to be', says Wilson, 'that the people along the Indus, from Surat to the Himalayas, are often regarded as either western or northern nations, according to the topographical position of the writer'.

A more definite location of the tribe is provided by a sloka in the Mahābhārata, which places them in West Rajputana, 'where the Sarasvati disappears'.

The Mahābhāṣya of Patañjali (second century B.C.) is perhaps the earliest authority that introduces the Abhīras into Indian history. At 1, 2, 3 of that work, the Abhīras are associated with the Śudras, who are most likely identical with the Sodrai or Sogdoi of Greek historians of Alexander's time. The tradition of their association with the Śudras is upheld not only by the above-mentioned sloka of the Mahābhārata (IX, 37, 1), but also by the Purāṇas. The Viṣṇupūrāṇa places them in the extreme west along with the Surāṣṭras, Śudras, Arbudas, Kāruṣas, and Mālavas, dwelling along the Pāripātra mountains. The Mārkandeya Purāṇa (Chap. 57, verses 35, 36) groups the Abhīras with the Vāhlikas, Vatadhānas, Śudras,

---

1 Wilson, Viṣṇu Purāṇa, II, 168, f.n. 4.
2 Mbh., IX, 37, 1.
3 Some scholars read Śūra for Śudra.
Madrakas, Surāṣṭras, and Sindhu-Sauvīras, all of whom are said to have occupied tracts of country that are included in the Aparāntaka or western country. According to Pargiter, the Abhiras who are referred to in the Mahābhārata had something to do with the events following the great Kurukṣetra war. 'Some years after the battle, the Yādavas of Gujarata were ruined by fratricidal strife, and Kṛṣṇa died. Under Arjuna's leadership they abandoned Dvārakā (on which the sea encroached) and Gujarata and retreated northwards, but were attacked and broken up by the rude Abhiras of Rajputana'.

Both Ptolemy and the Periplus stress the close association of the Abhiras and the Surāṣṭras. The Periplus mentions the country of Aberia (doubtless identical with Abhīra) and its seaboard Syrastrene (= Surāṣṭra); while Ptolemy speaks of Abiria (= Aberia = Abhīra) as having been included in Indo-Scythia, by which was meant practically the whole of the country along the lower course of the Indus. Indo-Scythia in Ptolemy's time was divided into three parts, viz. Syrastrēnē (Surāṣṭra), Patalene (= Skt. Pātāla), and Abiria (Skt. Āblīra), Abiria being identified with the region east of the Indus, above the insular portion formed by its bifurcation.

By the middle of the second century B.C. the Abhiras and their country must have been overpowered by the Bactrian Greeks who, not long after the expedition of Antiochus the Great (Antiochus III of Syria, 223—187 B.C.), had planned to extend their kingdom to the south of the Hindu Kush. It seems that these Bactrian Greeks occupied the whole of the country which Ptolemy designates as Indo-Scythia, and which included Aberia or Abiria. In Ptolemy's time, however, the Abiria or Abhīra country was ruled over by the Śaka rulers or Kṣatrapas of W. India, who seem to have held sway over the entire realm of Indo-Scythia (cf. the Junāgadh Inscription of the Śaka ruler Rudradāman who flourished in the second century A.D.; Ep. Ind., Vol. VIII, pp. 36ff.). The Gunda Inscription of the Śaka king Rudra Simha (A.D. 181), who was third in succession from Rudradāman, refers to an Abhīra general named Rudrabhūti who excavated a tank in his realm. Shortly afterwards we find a certain Īśvaradatta, who was probably a native of Abhīra, holding the office of Mahākṣatrapa. It is likely that Īśvaradatta was the same person as Īśvarasena, an Abhīra king (son of

1 A.I.H.T., p. 284.
2 See Chap. on Surāṣṭras, and McCrindle's Ptolemy, pp. 136, 139-40.
3 188—90 A.D., according to Prof. Bhandarkar; but Rapson assigns Īśvaradatta to the period after 236 A.D.
4 It is also suggested that this dynasty of Īśvarasena is identical with the Traikūṭaka line of Aparānta, and that the establishment of the Traikūṭaka era in A.D. 248 marks the date at which the Abhiras succeeded the Sātavāhanas in the
Śivadatta), who became Mahāksatrapa of W. India and wrested from the Sātavāhanas, probably in the third century A.D., portions at least of Mahārāṣṭra, which was ruled over by them up till the reign of Yajñāśrī Sātakarnī.

The Ābhīras are next mentioned in the celebrated Allahabad Iron Pillar Inscription of Samudragupta (2nd quarter of the fourth century A.D.) as one of the tribal states of W. and S.W. India who paid homage to the great Gupta emperor, and who were thus a semi-independent people living outside the borders of his empire.

If the traditional and legendary history of Nepal as contained in the Vamśāvalis has any historical value, the Ābhīras or Āhīrs had a settlement in Nepal in very early times. The traditional history of Nepal as recorded in the Vamśāvalis begins with a long line of legendary kings, after which the country was taken possession of by a line of Kīrāta pretenders, whose passing away probably marks the entry of Nepal into the domain of fairly precise historical tradition. These Kīrātas were succeeded by eight princes belonging to the Gopāla dynasty. The Gopālas in their turn were supplanted by the Ābhīras.

The tribe seems to have had another settlement in the South or Daksīṇāpatha. According to the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, the Ābhīras are classed with the Puṇḍrakas, Keralas, Kaliṅgas, Pulindas, Andhias, Vidaṛbhias, Kuntalas and others, all of whom are said to be Daksīṇāpatha-vāsinah, or dwelling in the southern country. The Vāyu-purāṇa also records the same tradition (Chap. 45, 126), and describes the Ābhīras, Atabyas, Šabaras, Pulindas, Vidaṛbhias and Dandaṇkas as ‘Daksīṇāpatha-vāsinah’.
CHAPTER XVI

THE SIBIS

The Sibis (or Sivas) seem to have been a very ancient people. They were a petty tribe occupying some tract in the Western Punjab, whence they seem later to have migrated or sent offshoots south-westwards to Sind and Rajputana and southwards as far as the Chola country.

They are probably alluded to for the first time in the Rgveda (VII, 18, 7) where the Sivas, doubtless the same people as the Sibis, are grouped together with four other minor tribes, viz. the Aśīnas, Pakhtas, Bhalanāsas and Viśāṇins, who were all defeated by the combined army of King Sudāś. But whatever the fate of the other four tribes after their defeat, the Sivas seem to have maintained their independent existence for some considerable time, for they are referred to not only by the Greek geographers and historians of Alexander’s time, but also by the Scholiast on Pāṇini (IV, 2, 109). Their King Śivi, son of Uśinara, is mentioned in Baudhāyana’s Śrauta Sūtra (III, 53, 22). There can hardly be any doubt as to the identity of the Rgvedic Sivas with the Sibai or Siboi of the Greeks who dwelt between the Indus and the Akesines (= Asikni of the R.V.; mod. Chandrabhāgā or Cbenab) in Alexander’s time.

‘When the army of Alexander’, states Arrian, ‘came among the Sibai, an Indian tribe, and noticed that they wore skins, they declared that the Sibai were descended from those who belonged to the expedition of Herakles, and had been left behind; for besides being dressed in skins, the Sibai carry a cudgel, and brand on the backs of their oxen the representation of a club, wherein the Macedonians recognised a memorial of Herakles.’ (Arrian, op. cit.) He continues: ‘If any one believes all this, this must be another Herakles, not the Theban, but either the Tyrian or the Egyptian, or even some great king who belonged to the upper country which lies not far from India’. It seems reasonable to suppose, from the above description of their dress and weapons, that the tribe belonged to a racial group not distinctly Aryan. They are said to have had 40,000 foot-soldiers at the time of Alexander.

1 The ‘war of the ten kings’ is sometimes interpreted as a struggle between the Aryans (under Sudāś) and the pre-Aryans; in which case the Śivas or Sibis were not Aryans, but probably Sumerians.

2 Arrian, Indica, V, 12; Diodorus, XVII, 96.
An earlier reference to this people is found in the Aitareya Brâhmaṇa (VIII, 23, 10), where mention is made of Amitratapana, a king of the Śīvis. A place called Śivapura or ‘town of the Śivas’ is mentioned by the Scholiast on Pāṇini as situated in the northern country. Śivapura must be identical with Śibipura, mentioned in a Shorkot Inscription (Ep. Ind., 1921, p. 16); and Dr. Vogel takes the mound of Shorkot to be the site of the city of the Śībis. Another scholar points out that local tradition also connects Shorkot with Śiva. Thus we may conclude that the Śivas or Śībis were a people inhabiting the Shorkot region in Jhang in the Punjab, lying between the Iravati and the Chandrabhāgā, and therefore included in the northern region or Uttarāpatha.

The Śivas or Śībis seem to have migrated, or rather sent one or more of their offshoots southwards to Rajputana. It is difficult to say exactly when this movement took place, but early references to a geographical location of the tribe other than in the Punjab are found in the Jātakas and in the Mahābhārata. The Jātakas mention a Śivi king and his country with two of its cities, Arijāhāpura and Jetuttara. Arijāhāpura (Skt. Arisāpura) is probably identical with Ptolemy’s Aristobothra in the north of the Punjab and may perhaps be the same as Dvāravati. Jetuttara or Jetuttara is identified by N. L. Dey with Nāgari, a locality 11 miles north of Chitore. It is evidently the Jattararur of Alberuni, the capital of Mewar. That the Śībis had a habitat near Chitore is attested by other sources as well; a number of coins inscribed with the legend Majhamikāya Sivijananapadasa have been discovered in the territory near Nāgari, indicating that the janapada or country of the Śībis was located in Madhyamikā, near Chitore in Rajputana. On the testimony of these coins we also learn that the Śībis formed a gana-rāṣṭra or some sort of republican state. This seems to have some support from the Vessantara Jātaka, where we read that the king of the Śībis was compelled to banish prince Vessantara in obedience to the demand of his people, indicating that if not an absolute republic, this community at least had what we may call democratic institutions.

1 See Patañjalii, IV, 2, 2; Vedic Index, II, pp. 381-2.
3 Śivis Jātaka, No. 499; Ummadantī Jātaka, No. 527; Vessantara Jātaka, No. 547.
4 N. L. Dey, Geographical Dictionary, p. 11.
5 Jātaka (Fausboll), VI, p. 421; cf. Dey, p. 187.
8 Cf. also Sivikarāja, which was the Tathāgata’s name in a previous birth, referred to in Beal’s Records of the Western World, I, pp. xvi-cvii, 125.
The Sivas or Sibis were intimately associated with the Usinaras, who are assigned by the Aitareya Brahmana to the Madhyadesa or ‘Middle Country’, together with the Kurus, the Pañcālas, and the Vasas or Vatsas. The Amukramāṇī of the Rgveda ascribes one hymn (X, 119) to Śivi Ausinara, i.e. the Śivi who is descended from Uśinara; while the Mahābhārata refers not only to a king Uśinara Śibi (Mbh., Śāntiparvan, Chap. 29, 39) but also to a Śibi-rāstra or kingdom of the Sibis ruled by King Uśinara (III, 130-1). It is, therefore, likely that the Uśinara country was at one time the habitat of the Sibis. According to the tradition as recorded in the Epics and Purāṇas, Śivi was one of the five sons of King Uśinara, each of whom founded a city. The city of Śivi was known as Śivapura. Śivi had four sons who came to be known as Śivis, giving their name to the tribe to which they belonged. According to Pargiter, Śivi Ausinara not only originated the Śivis in Śivapura but, extending his conquests westwards, founded through his four sons (Viṣadarbha, Suviṇa, Kekaya, and Madraka) the kingdoms of the Viṣadarbhas, Suviṇas (or Sauviṇas), Kekayas, and Madras, thus occupying the whole of the Punjab except the north-western corner.1

King Śivi Ausinara bears a legendary name for piety and humanity. The well-known and very popular fable of the hawk and the pigeon immortalises this king’s spirit of self-sacrifice.2

In the Mahābhārata description of the tribes, kings, and princes, who were ranged on Duryodhana’s side in the Kurukṣetra war, the Śivis are grouped with the foreign tribes, Śakas, Kirātas, Yavanas and Vasātis. As the Yavanas and Śakas did not appear in Indian history before the fifth and second centuries B.C. respectively, the passage in which the mention of these tribes occurs, must be regarded as a later interpolation; but however that may be, the fact that the Śivis are grouped with the ‘foreigners’ is significant, and it is not unlikely that the tradition has a historical foundation.

Still later, the Śivis seem to have migrated to the extreme south of India. The Daśakumārācaritam (Madhya, Chap. VI) refers to a settlement of the Śivis on the banks of the Kaverī. The southern

1 See Chap. on Uśinaras; and Pargiter, Ancient Indian Historical Tradition, pp. 41 and 264.
2 Mbh., III, Chap. 196; Chap. 297; XIII, Chap. 67; XIV, Chap. 90. In the Dronāparvan version (Chaps. 130-131) Śivi’s father, Uśinara, is the hero of the fable. Both Fa-Hien and Hsüan Tsang place the scene of the story in Udyāna now called the Swat Valley where a steatite relief (now in the British Museum) representing the fable as given in the Mbh. has been discovered. It is, therefore, probable that the present Swat Valley represents the ancient kingdom of Śivi. But according to the Mahā-Ummaga Jātaka the Śivi country was situated between the kingdoms of Videha and Pañcāla (Dey, Geographical Dicty., pp. 187-8).
Śivis, according to Dr. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri,¹ are probably to be identified with the Chola ruling family.² The Śivi country of the south may be identical with the Śivikā country which is placed among the southern countries by Varāhamihira in his Brhatasamhitā (Chap. XIV, verse 12).

¹ Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., p. 205, f.n. 5.
² Keilhorn, List of Southern Inscriptions, No. 685.
CHAPTER XVII

THE DARADAS

The Daradas were a tribe of N.W. India, well-known both to indigenous and to foreign traditions. They are referred to in the Mahābhārata as having joined the Kaurava forces, and as having been defeated by Vāsudeva, along with the Khaṣas, Śakas, Yavanas, Trigarttas, Mālavas and others.¹ The Viṣṇupurāṇa associates them with the Ābhīras and Kaśmīras²; while in the Mātṣyapurāṇa³ the country of the Daradas is linked with Gandhāra, Śivapura, Urja, Aurasa and other districts forming the basin of the Sindhu (= Indus). The Epic and Puranic traditions seem therefore to locate the Daradas in the north-west along the north-west frontier of Kashmir, and contiguously with the realm of the Khasas in the upper Punjab. They were probably a mountainous tribe, for ‘mountain is the commonest meaning of the word darad from which they appear to have derived their name’.

The Greek writers knew this people by various names. Strabo mentions them as Derdai, Pliny as Dardaev; while in Dionys. Periēg. (V, 1138) their name is given as Dardanoi. Ptolemy refers to the same people as Daradrai, the additional r evidently being inserted by mistake. He locates them east of the Lamhatai (= Lampāk or Lamghan) and of Sonestane (= basin of the Swat river), and to the north of the uppermost course of the Indus. The mountains in the country of the Daradas, he says, are of surpassing height.

The Daradas were an important factor in the history of Kashmir, and are often referred to in the Rājatarāṅgini.

The country once inhabited by the Daradas still retains clear traces of the ancient name, being known as Dardistan, the district of the Dardo.

¹ Dronaparvan, Chap. 10, 18.
³ CXXI, 45-51.
CHAPTER XVIII

THE KĀRŪṢAS OR KARŪṢAS

The Kārūṣas or Karūṣas were a well-known tribe of ancient India, who are often referred to in the Epics, particularly in the *Mahābhārata* and the Purāṇas. Throughout the whole range of early and later Vedic literature they are scarcely mentioned, and their sudden emergence in the period of the Epics and Purāṇas suggests that they had been an insignificant tribe inhabiting a region included in or continuous with the janapada of the Cedis, with whom they are constantly associated in the *Mahābhārata*.1

The *Padmapurāṇa* (IV, Chap. 274, 16-17) moreover, tells us that Dantavakra, King of Karūsa, was of Caidya lineage. The evidence as recorded in the *Mahābhārata* and the Purāṇas seems to point to the fact that Dantavakra and his father Vṛddhasarman had been reigning in the time of the Pāṇḍavas.2 According to the *Viṣṇupurāṇa* (Bk., IV, Chap. XIV) Vṛddhasarman married Sṛutadevi, who bore him the fierce Asura Dantavakra. The *Vāyu purāṇa*, however, does not call him an Asura, but King of the Karūṣas. According to the *Padmapurāṇa* (*Pātala*, Chap. 35) Dantavakra was killed by Kṛṣṇa in Mathurā (vide also N. L. Dey, *G.D.A.M.I.*, p. 2). King Dantavakra is said to have had a foster-daughter named Pṛthā, who was married to Pāṇḍu.3 Their contemporaries in the contiguous territories were Dāmaghoṣa, his son Śiśupāla Śunītha, and grandson Dhrṣṭaketu, kings of Cedi; and Virāta, king of Matsya.4 The Kārūṣa royal family was connected by marriage not only with that of the Cedis but also with those of the Yādavas (i.e. Vāsudeva, Kṛṣṇa and all his relations, and the Pauravas).5

We must turn to the *Purāṇas* for the legendary account of the origin of the Kārūṣas. All the *Purāṇas* agree in saying that Vaivasvata Manu had nine sons6: namely Ikṣvāku, Nābhāga

---

1 Bhīṣma Parvan, Chap. 47, 4; Chap. 54, 8; Chap. 56, 9; Drona Parvan, Chap. 8, 28; Chap. 20, 23; Karna Parvan, Chap. 56, 2, etc.
2 Mah., II, Chap. 13, 575, 577; Vāyu Purāṇa, Chap. 96, 255; Viṣṇu P., IV, Chap. 14, 11; Brahmāṇḍa P., III, Chap. 71, 156, etc.
3 Brahma P., Chap. 14, 122.
5 Ibid., 166-7, f.n. 1; Vāyu Purāṇa, Chap. 96, 148-159; Matsya P., Chap. 46, 3-9; Viṣṇu P., IV, Chap. 14, 10-13, etc.
6 According to the *Mahābhārata*, I, Chap. 75, Manu had fifty other sons, all of whom perished through mutual dissensions.
TRIBES

The Brahmandapurdna in (A) Shahabad supported the etc.,

Moreover, Cunningham, J.A.S.B., For Karashadesa.*

from southern inroads as Pargiter suggests (A.I.H.T., p. 255 and f.n. 14). 2

The Kărůṣas had different settlements at different periods; the location of the principal ones may be described as follows:

I. (A) In the Mahābhārata they are often mentioned along with the Matsyas, Kāsīs, Cedis, and Paṅcālas (Bhīṣma-parvan, Chap. 47, 4; Chap. 56, 13; Chap. 54, 8; Droṇa-parvan, Chap. 8, 28; Chap. 20, 23, etc.). The Visunpurāṇa mentions them together with the Matsyas, Cedis, and Bhojas (Wilson, II, pp. 156–90). Pargiter therefore suggests that the country of the Kărůṣas lay to the south of Kāsī and Vatsa, between Ćedi on the west and Magadha on the east enclosing the Kaimur hills,—i.e. it was equivalent to the country of Rewa, from the Ken river in the west to the confines of Bihar in the east. 3

(B) The Bālakānda (XXVII, 18–23) of the Rāmāyaṇa would seem to indicate a slight difference of locality; it seems to locate the tribe in the district now known as Shahabad (Bihar),—whence they probably migrated south-west to the region indicated by the Mahābhārata. According to tradition, the southern district of Shahabad between the river Son and Karmanāśā was called Karukhadesa or Karushadesa. 4 This tradition is supported by a modern local inscription found at Masār in the Shahabad district, designating the territory as Karuṣadeśa. 5 Moreover, Vedagarbhapuri or modern Buxar is referred to in the Brahmanḍapurāṇa (Purvakhanda, Chap. 5) as being situated in Kărūṣa.

II. The Kărūṣas probably had another settlement in the territory known in ancient times as Pundra, or Pundravardhana, roughly identical with N. Bengal; for according to the Bhāgavata-purāṇa (X, Chap. 66) Karuṣa seems to have been another name for Pundra.

III. In the Vāyu (Chap. 45), Matsya (Chap. 114, 54), and Mārkaṇḍeya (Chap. 57, 53–5) Purāṇas, the Kărūṣas are said to have occupied the ridge of the Vindhyan (Vindhapyṛṣṭha-nivāsinah). In the

1 Vāyu P., Chap. 85, 3–4; Brahma P., Chap. 7, 1–2; Śiva P., VIII, Chap. 60, 1–2; Kūrma P., I, Chap. 20, 4–6, etc.

2 For references to Kărūṣas, see Vāyu P., Chap. 86, 2–3; Garuda P., Chap. 142, 4; Vāyu P., IV, Chap. I, 14; Śiva P., VII, Chap. 60, 31; Bhāgavata P., XX, 2, 16.


Markandeya Purâna, they are mentioned along with the Keralas and Utkalas, and in the Brahmanandapurâna with the Mâlavaś, Utkalas, and Daśārṇas (all dwelling in the Vindhya region); while in the Viṣṇupurâna (Bk. II, Chap. III) they are associated with the Arbudas and Mâlavaś. Further, the Viṣṇupurâna definitely refers to them as dwelling along the Pâripâtra hills. In the Bālakânda of the Râmâyana (XXIV, 18) the Karuṣas and the Maladaś are named together; the Maladaś are probably the Molindae of Pliny, whereas the Karuṣas may be identified with the Chrysei.¹

The Karuṣas figure in the Kurukṣetra war along with the Kekayas, Pañcâlas, Matsuśas, Cedîś and Kosalas, who rallied on the side of the Pândavas.² At one time during the war, the Cedî, Kâśî, and Karuṣa peoples seem to have been led by Dhîṣṭaketu, King of the Cedîś.³ Another King of the Cedîś was Vasu, a descendant of Kuru, who having conquered the Yadvâva kingdom of Cedî, extended his conquests eastwards as far as Magadha, and apparently north-west also, over Matsuśa. He divided his territories of Magadha, Cedîś, Kauśâmbi, Karuṣa, and Matsuśa among his five sons (see Chap. on Cedîś).

² See Udyoga, Bhîśma and Drona Parvans.
³ Udyogaparvan, Chap. 198, 2; Bhîśma-parvan, Chap. 56, 13.
CHAPTER XIX

KULĀṬAS, OR KULŪṬAS

The Kurmanivēsa section of the Mārkandeya Purāṇa (LVII, 49) mentions a tribe called Kulātas, and another named Kūrūṭas (LVII, 51). Both seem to be results of a confusion with the well-known tribe or people known in history as the Kulūtas. The Karnaparvan of the Mahābhārata refers to the latter which seems to be identical with the Kolūta or Kolūka of the Kiśkindhyā Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyana (XLIII, and annotations). Pargiter (Mark., p. 382, note) long ago identified the land of the Kulūtas with the modern Kulu near the source of the Beas which is upheld by a reference to them in later literature of more reliable historical import.

The Kulūtas seem to have been a tribal republic. Inscriptions and coins testify to the existence of many such republics even in the days of Scythian invasions, among whom the Mālavas, Vaudheyas and Ārjunāyanas were the most important, the Audumbaras Kulūtas, Kunindas and the Uttamabhadradas being only second in rank (Camb. Hist. of India, Vol. I, pp. 528-9).

Yuan Chwang, the celebrated Chinese pilgrim, refers to a country named Ku-lu-to (Watters, I, p. 298) which place he reached from Jālandhara after having travelled north-east, across mountains and ravines, by hazardous paths, for above 700 li. The region, says he, was entirely surrounded by mountains. Its capital was 14 or 15 li in circuit. It had a rich soil and yielded regular crops, and it had a rich vegetation. The climate grew gradually cold and there was little snow. There were in the country twenty Buddhist monasteries with above 1,000 brethren of whom the most were Mahāyānists, a few adhering to the Hinayāna school. Of Deva temples, there were fifteen, and the professed non-Buddhists lived pell-mell. Cunningham long ago identified this Ku-lu-to country of Yuan Chwang ‘with the position of the Kullu district in the Upper valley of Byās river’. The position is roughly identical with the modern Kangra district.

Another important reference to the Kulāṭa people is also found in the introduction of Bālabhārata or Pracandapāṇḍava of Rājaśekhara wherein the poet describes the victories of Mahipāla of the Pratihāra dynasty. Mahipāla is there credited with having defeated the Kulāṭas along with the Muralas, Mekalas, Kalīngas, Keralas, Kuntalas and the Ramathas (Nirṇayasāgar Press Ed. of Bālabhārata, I, 7-8).
CHAPTER XX

THE KULINDAS

The Kulindas were a small N. Indian tribe, sometimes confounded with the Pulindas. They are mentioned in the Mahābhārata along with the Paiśācas, Ambaṣṭhas and Barbaras, who are all described as mountainous people. McCrindle informs us that in another passage of the Mahābhārata they are mentioned in a long list of tribes ‘dwelling between Meru and Mandāra and upon the Sailodā river, under the shadow of the Bambu forests, whose kings presented lumps of ant-gold at the solemnity of the inauguration of Yudhisthira as universal emperor’. 2

The country of the Kulindas is referred to by Ptolemy as Kulindrine. He locates it near the mountainous region where the Vipāśa, Śatadru, Yamunā and Gaṅgā have their sources. Cunningham identifies Kulindrine with the kingdom of Jālandhara (Jullundur), but this is not accepted by Saint-Martin. A territory of the name of Kuluta, which was formed by the upper part of the Vipāśa basin, and which may be included in Ptolemy’s Kulindrine, is mentioned in a Varāha Samhitā list. It was visited by the Chinese pilgrim Hsüan Tsang, who calls it K’in-lu-to. The name still exists under the slightly modified form of Koluta. 4

The Kulindas were probably identical with the Kunindas, a tribe known from coins, and located in the W. Punjab along with the Mālavas, Yaudheyas, Ārjunāyanas, Udumbaras, Kulūtas and Uttamabhadras.

1 Dronaparvan, Chap. 119, 14.
2 McCrindle’s Ptolemy, p. 110.
4 McCrindle, Ptolemy, p. 110.
5 Cambridge History of Ancient India, I, pp. 528-9.
CHAPTER XXI

THE BARBARAS

The Barbaras, a 'barbarian' tribe, are associated in the Mahābhārata with the Ambaśṭhas, Paśācas, Kulindas, etc., and also with the Yaunas, Kāmbojas, Gandhāras and Kirātas, in a passage which definitely states that these tribes were located in the Uttarāpatha or northern country. The Matsyapurāṇa associates them with the Tuśāras, Pahlavas, Pāradas, Śakas, Urjās, Aurasas and other tribes whose countries are said to have been watered by the Caksu stream of the Ganges before it entered the sea (CXXI, 45–51). The Markandeya Purāṇa (LVII, 39) places them in the Sindhu country, and the Brḥatsaṃhitā refers to them as a north or north-west tribe.

The commentary on Kauṭilya's Arthaśāstra has some interesting remarks on the Barbara country, and its river Srotasi, which was a source of pearls. Alakanda, a city famous for its pearls, stood on this river. There was also a lake named Śrighanta in a corner of the sea of Barbara. S. N. Mazumdar sees in Alakanda a remnant of Alexander's name, and he identifies the city with Alexander's Haven. V. A. Smith (Early History of India, p. 110, 4th Ed.) points out that the large lake at the mouth of the river where Alexander's Haven stood (near Karachi) still exists. This lake may be identified with the lake Śrighanta mentioned in the Arthaśāstra commentary.

Mazumdar remarks that Barbara is mentioned in an Ayurvedic work called Rājanighantu; and Barbarika, evidently a city of the Barbaras, in another Ayurvedic work, Dhanvantarīyanighantu. This Barbarika (the Barbarei of Ptolemy) is evidently the Barbaricum or Barbaricon emporium mentioned in the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea (prob. circa 80 A.D.). It was at that time a market town and port, was situated on the middle mouth of the Indus, and included in the Šaka country whose metropolis was Minnagar. Barbarika and Patala (the latter identified by V. A. Smith with Bahmanābād) formed the two towns of the islands of the Indus delta.

1 Sabhāparvan, Chap. 31, 199, etc.; Droṇapravvan, Chap. 119, 14.
2 Mbh., XII, 207, 43. 'Uttarāpatha-jamānāh kālāyāvīyāmān tān api Yauna Kāmboja Gándharāsāh Kirāṭā Barbaraiḥ saha.'
3 Arthaśāstra, Eng. Trsl., p. 86, f.n. 7, 8; p. 90, etc.
5 Ibid., pp. 694–5.
6 McCrindle's Ptolemy, p. 148.
CHAPTER XXII

THE MURUNDAS

The Murundas were probably a foreign tribe. They are mentioned for the first time by Ptolemy (second century A.D.), under the name Moroundai. Ptolemy's description would place them on the western border of the 'Gangaridai'. They seem to have occupied an extensive territory, probably the whole of N. Bihar on the east of the Ganges, as far as the head of the delta. They had six important cities, all to the east of the Ganges: Boraita, Koryagaza, Kondota, Kelydna, Aganagora and Talarga. These places are difficult to identify, but to Saint-Martin Kelydna appeared to have some relation with the Kalinadi or Kalindi river, and Aganagora with Aghadip (Agradyipa) on the eastern bank of the Ganges, a little below Kâtwâ (Ptolemy's Ancient India by McCrindle, pp. 215-6).

According to Cunningham, the name of the Marundai is still preserved in the country of the Mundas, a hill-tribe scattered over Chota-Nagpur and Central India. He says: 'The name of Munḍa is found in the Viṣṇupurāṇa as the appellation of a dynasty of eleven princes who succeeded the Tushāras or Tokhari. In the Vāyupurāṇa, however, the name is omitted, and we have only Marunḍa'. 1 (= Murunḍa, the Sanskrit name for Ptolemy's Marundai). Cunningham also suggests that the Moroundai of Ptolemy are identical with the Moredes of Pliny who are mentioned in conjunction with the Surari or Savaras. It may, however, he mentioned that the Marundas are referred to in the Vāyupurāṇa as one of the Mleccha tribes.

Ptolemy also speaks of a city called Morounda as an inland town of the Aioi. The country of the Aioi was probably some region south of the Kerala country, but the city Morounda has not been identified. It is probable, however, that it was a city of the Moroundai = Murundas; and in that case the Moroundai had another settlement in the farthest south.

The Abhidhānacintāmanī of Hemacandra (IV, 26) 2 identifies the Murundas with the Lampākas, the Lambatai of Ptolemy. The latter were located near the source of the modern Kabul river in the region around Laghman, and it, therefore, follows that the Murundas had a settlement in this region as well.

2 Lampākāstu Marundāh syuh.
Among the foreign potentates who came of their own accord to offer allegiance to Samudragupta (fourth century A.D.) were the ‘Śaka-Murundas’; while a ‘Murunda-Svāmini’ is mentioned in a Central Indian inscription of the sixth century A.D.

1 According to Dr. Sten Konow, ‘murunda’ is the later form of a Śaka word meaning ‘lord’ or ‘master’. The term ‘Śaka-Murundas’ possibly stands, therefore, for those Śaka lords or chieftains who were ruling in the regions of Surāstra and Ujjain at the time of Samudragupta. (Cf. Allahabad Pillar Inscription of Samudragupta.)
CHAPTER XXIII

THE ĀRJUNĀYANAS AND THE PRĀRJUNAS

The Allahabad Pillar Inscription of Samudragupta (fourth century A.D.) (i, 22) refers to a host of tribes—Mālavas, Ārjunāyanas, Vaudheyas, Madrakas, Ābhīras, Prārjunas, Sanakānikas, Kākas, Kharaparikas, and others—that obeyed the imperial commands and paid all kinds of taxes. Research has ascertained that all these tribal states were located along the north-western, western and south-western fringes of the N. Indian kingdom of Samudragupta. The Mālavas, Vaudheyas, Madrakas and Ābhīras are more or less well-known, but very little is known about the other tribes.

The names of the two tribes, Ārjunāyanas and Prārjunas, apparently have some connection with the name of the Epic hero, Arjuna, though this is not certain. The Allahabad Pillar Inscription, as we have seen, connects the Ārjunāyanas with the Vaudheyas, which is significant, inasmuch as the Ādiparvan (95, 76) of the Mahābhārata gives the name of one of Yudhiṣṭhira's sons as Vaudheya; so that the connection of the Vaudheyas and Ārjunāyanas appears to be warranted by the Epic.

The author of the Brāhatsamhītā also connects these two tribes, and locates them both in the northern division of India. Ray Chaudhuri 1 locates the Vaudheyas in the Bharatpur State of Rajputana; and the Ārjunāyanas may have occupied a contiguous position. The Ārjunāyanas are also known from coins, which do not, however, give any clue to their geographical location.

Vincent Smith 2 places the Prārjunas in the Narasimhapur district of the Central Provinces, but a more plausible location is Narasimhagarh in Central India, 3 inasmuch as three other tribes which are coupled with the Prārjunas, the Sanakānikas, Kākas and Kharaparikas, seem to have occupied regions more or less within the bounds of Central India.

---

2 J.R.A.S., 1897, p. 892.
CHAPTER XXIV

THE AMBAŚTHAS

The Ambaśthas as a tribe existed at least as early as the time of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, when they were probably settled in the Punjab; and they can be traced up to the present day in parts of Bengal and Bihar, whether they migrated in later times. In the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VIII, 21–3), King Āmbaśṭhya (= 'of Ambaśtha') is mentioned as having been consecrated with the Aindra Mahābhiseka along with nine other kings. The Mahābhārata 2 mentions the Ambaśthas along with the Śivas, Kṣudrakas, Mālavas and other north-western tribes. In the Bhūṣma (Chap. 20, 10) and Drona (Chap. 119, 14) Parvans, the Ambaśthas are referred to as having taken part in the Kurukṣetra war, on the side of the Kurus; while in the Karna-parvan, Śrutāyuḥ, the valiant Kṣatriya, who was killed by Arjuna, is described as a king of the Ambaśthas. The Ambaśthas were also once defeated by Nakula, the fourth Pāṇḍava, along with the Śivas, Trigarttas and Mālavas; and Śrutāyuḥ was among those who did homage to Yudhīṣṭhira after the defeat.5

In the Purāṇas, the Ambaśthas are represented as Āṇava Kṣatriyas, and are said to have originated from Śuvrata, son of Uśīnara; they were thus intimately related to the Vāṇideyas and the Śivas, and were settled on the eastern border of the Punjab.7 The country is mentioned in the Bārhaspatya Arīhasāstra, where it is associated with Sind (Kāśmīra-Hūna-Ambaśtha-Sindhavāḥ); while the tribe is included in the list derived by Colonel Wilford 9 from the Varāha Sambhāta.

The Purāṇas seem to represent the Ambaśthas as Kṣatriyas, descended as they were from Uśīnara; and, as we have seen, the Mahābhārata refers to their King Śrutāyuḥ as 'the best of Kṣatriyas'. But the evidence of Smṛti literature seems to point to their mixed origin. According to the Gauḷaṇa-Dharmasūtra (IV, 16), children born of wives of the next, second or third lower castes become

---

1 According to Goldstücker, the older denomination of the tribe was probably Āmbaśtha, not Ambaśtha.
2 II, 52, 14-15.
3 Sabhāpurvan, Chap. 32, 7.
5 Ibid., Chap. 52, 14-15.
Sabarnas, Ambaṣṭhas, Ugras, Niṣadhas, Daśyantias or Pāraśarās. The Ambaṣṭhas would thus be descendants of Brāhmaṇas by Kṣatriya, Vaiṣya or Śudra wives. In the Ambaṭṭha Sutta, an Ambaṭṭha (= Ambaṣṭha) is called a Brāhmaṇa; but, according to the Jātakas, the Ambaṣṭhas were farmers, while Manu describes them as a people who practised the art of healing. S. N. Mazumdar thinks that 'they were a tribe of Brāhma Kṣatriyas' (i.e. Brahmmins by descent but warriors by profession); while Ray Chauhduri is of the opinion that they were a tribe who were at first mainly a fighting race, but some of whom took to other occupations, viz. those of priests, farmers, and, according to the Smṛti writers, physicians.

The Ambaṣṭhas are the same as the Abastanai (Arrian), Sambastai (Diodoros), Sabarcae (Curtius) or Sabagreae (Orosius) of Alexander's historians. In Alexander's time the tribe was settled on the lower Akesines (Asikni), and had a democratic government, and an army consisting of 60,000 foot, 60,000 cavalry and 500 chariots. The Ambaṣṭhas are referred to by Ptolemy as Ambastai, a tribe which is described as settled in the east of the country of the Paropanisadai, being 'a collective name for the tribes that were located along the southern and eastern sides of the Hindukush'. Lassen thinks that the Ambastai may have been connected in some way with the Ambastai, another tribe mentioned by Ptolemy as dwelling 'along the country of the Bettignoi' and the mountain range of the same name (i.e. southern portion of the Western Ghats).

The Ambaṣṭhas seem to have migrated in later times to some place near the Mekala hill which is the source of the Narmadā (see Mekala chapter). In the Kūrmavibhāga of the Bhāskaraṇī (XIV, 7) they are associated with the Mekalas who dwell on the Mekala hill; and the mention of Mekhalāmuṣṭa (which is in all probability a misreading for Mekalāṁbaṇṭha) in the Mārkandeyava Purāṇa (LVIII, 14) would seem to prove that the two were neighbouring tribes. The tribe seems to have migrated eastwards as well, however, for even today a class of Kāyasthas known as Ambaṣṭha Kāyasthas can be traced in Bihar; while the Vaidyas of Bengal claim to be designated as Ambaṣṭhas.

---

1 Digka, I, p. 88; Dialogues of the Buddha, I, p. 309.  
2 Jātaka, IV, No. 363.  
3 Manu, X. 47: 'Ambaṣṭhaṁ cikitsitām'.  
5 P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 207.  
6 McCrindle’s Invasion of Alexander, pp. 292ff.  
7 Ibid., p. 252.  
8 McCrindle, Ancient India as described by Ptolemy, Majumdar’s Ed., pp. 311-12.  
9 Indische Alterthumskunde, pp. 159, 161.  
10 They are described as such in Bharata Mallika’s commentary on the Bhāṭṭikāvyava.
The Nişādas are referred to for the first time in the later Samhitās and the Brāhmaṇas. The word Nişāda 'seems to denote not so much a particular tribe, but to be the general term for the non-Aryan tribes who were not under Aryan control, as the Sudras were...'

(Vedic Index, Vol. I, p. 453). This is supported by the evidence supplied by Aupamānyava who distinguishes the Nişādas from the other four varnas or 'colours' (castes). The word Nişāda (Nişāda) of the Vājasaneyī Samhitā (XVI, 27) is explained by the commentator Mahidhara to mean a Bhil or Bhilla, a tribe that still exists in the hills of Central India and the Vindhyan tracts. Macdonell and Keith point out that 'a village of the Nişādas is mentioned in the Lāḍyāyana Śrāuta Sūtra (VIII, 2, 8), and a Nişāda Sthāpati, a leader of some kind of craft, is referred to in the Kātyāyana Śrāuta Sūtra (I, I, 12; Weber, Indische Studien, 10, 13) and in a Brāhmaṇa cited by the scholiast on that passage'.

According to Weber, the Nişādas were settled aborigines. In the opinion of the authors of the Vedic Index, this view is supported 'by the fact that the ritual of the Viśvajit Sacrifice (Kauśitaki B., XXV, 15; Lāḍ. S. S., VIII, 2, 8; Pañ. B., XVI, 6, 8, etc.) requires a temporary residence with the Nişādas; for the Nişādas who would permit an Aryan to reside temporarily amongst them must have been partially amenable to Aryan influence. But the name might easily be applied to the whole body of aborigines outside the Aryan organisation. (Vedic Index, Vol. I, p. 454). The Law-giver, Manu, however, explains the origin of the Nişādas as 'the offspring of a Brāhmaṇa father and a Śudra mother'. In his chapter on Mixed Castes, Manu says that the son of a Nişāda by a Śudra female becomes a Pulkasa by caste, but the son of a Śudra by a Nişāda female is declared to be a Kukkuṭaka. The social duty enjoined on the Nişādas was to kill...
and provide fish for consumption by the people. According to the Pāli texts as well, they were wild hunters and fishermen. That they were a tribe ‘of rude culture or aboriginal stock’ (A.I.H.T., p. 290) and outside the Aryan organisation is also attested by the Rāmāyana story of Guha, king of the Niṣādas who are described as a wild band.

During the period represented by Epic and Paurāṇic traditions the Niṣādas seem to have had their habitat among the mountains that form the boundary of Jhalwar and Khandesh in the Vindhya and Satpura ranges. This is proved by a reference in the Mahābhārata to a Niṣāda rāṣṭra in the region of the Sarasvatī and the Western Vindhya, not very far from Pāriyātra or Pāripātra. The Mahābhārata seems to connect the Niṣādas with the Vatsas and Bhargas or Bhaggas:

'Vaisabhūmiṃca Kauntayo vijigye balavān balāt
Bhargānāmadhipaṇcaīva Niṣādādhipalīm lathā.'

The Niṣādas seem also to have had a settlement in the east. The Bhatsamhitā of Varāhamihira (XIV, 10) seems to recognise a kingdom or ‘rāṣṭra’ of the Niṣādas in the south-east of the Madhyadesa. A Niṣāda kingdom whose capital was Śṛṅgaverapura (on the north side of the Ganges opposite Prayāga) is also referred to in the Rāmāyana (II Canto, 50, 33 to Canto, 52, 11); and it is not improbable that this Niṣāda kingdom is identical with the one referred to in the Bhatsamhitā.

The first epigraphic mention of the tribe is found in the Junāgadh Rock Inscription of the year 72 of Mahākṣatrapa Rudradāman (i.e. 150 A.D.). Rudradāman is there credited with having conquered the Niṣāda country along with E. and W. Malwa, the ancient Māhismati region, the district round Dwārka in Gujrat, Surāstra, Aparānta, Sindhu-Sauvira and others. Thus the Niṣāda country in the middle of the second century A.D. was under the suzerainty of the Western Kṣatrapas.
CHAPTER XXVI

THE NIŚADHAS

The Niśadhas were a different race from the Niśādas with whom they are often confounded; and we may conclude that they belonged to the Aryan fold. According to the Epic and Paurāṇic tradition, the Niśadhas are said to have sprung from the primeval King Prthu, son of Vena.¹ The tribe seems to have derived its name from Niśada who is described in the Purāṇas and Bhagavad-gītā to have been the son of Atithi, grandson of Kuśa, and father of Nala.² According to the Viṣṇupurāṇa (IV, Chap. 24, 17), the ten kings of the Mekala country and nine of the Sapta Kośala country are said to have been succeeded by the nine kings of the Niśadhas, while, according to the Vāyu-purāṇa, the kings of the Niśadha country held sway till the end of the days of Manu. They were all descendants of King Nala, and lived in the country of Niśadha (Vāyu P., Chap. 99, 376). This King Nala of the Purāṇas must be identical with the King Nala whose story is referred to in the Mahābhārata (III).³

But notwithstanding the celebrity of the Niśadha country as the kingdom of Nala, it is difficult to ascertain exactly where it was situated. It is, perhaps, permissible to conjecture that it was not very far from Vidarbha, the country of Nala’s queen, Damayanti. From the directions given by Nala to Damayanti, Wilson thinks ⁴ that it was near the Vindhya and Payosnl river, and that it was near the roads leading from it across the Rksa mountain to Avanti and the south, as well as to Vidarbha and to Kośala. Lassen places Niśadha, the kingdom of Nala, along the Satpura hills to the north-west of Berar. Burgess also places it to the south of Malwa.⁵

The Purāṇas locate the Niśadhas in the upper and lower regions of the Vindhya ranges.⁶ According to the Mahābhārata, the capital of the Niśadhas was Giriprastha (III, 324, 12).

¹ Vāyu P., 62, 137-48; Brahmanda P., II, 36, 158-73; Kūrma P., I, 1, 6; Ibid., 14, 12; Śiva P., VII, 56, 39-71; Mbh., XII, 59, 2233-4, etc.
² Kūrma P., 21, 58; Bhagavad-gītā, 9, 12; Saura P., 30, 69; Śiva P., Dharma, 61-9; Brahma P., 8, 88.
³ The Nala story itself seems to have been much older than the Mahābhārata, for it is referred to by Sītā in the Rāmāyana (Ray Chaudhuri, Studies in Indian Antiquities, Chap. on Interrelation of the two Epics).
⁵ Antiquities of Kathiawar and Kacch, p. 131.
⁶ Brahmanda P., 49; Vāyu P., 45; Vāmana P., 13, etc.
The Nisadhas seem to have played a prominent part in the Kurukṣetra war in which they ranged themselves on the side of the Pāṇḍavas, along with the Mekalas, Kośalas, Madras and Daśārṇas.¹ They were at one time defeated by Karṇa.²

¹ Karṇaparvan, Chap. 22, 3; Bhāṣmaparvan, Chap. 54, 8.
² Karṇaparvan, Chap. 8, 19; Dronaparvan, Chap. 4, 8.
CHAPTER XXVII

THE KĀŚIŚ

Kāśi was the ancient name of the kingdom of which the chief
city was Bārānāśī, the modern Benares, which is situated 80 miles
below Allahabad on the north bank of the Ganges, at the junction
between that river and the river Baraṇā. 1 From the joint name of
the two streams which bound the city to the north and the south,—
the Baraṇā and the Asi,—the Brāhmaṇas derive Varāṇaśī or Bāra-
ṇaśī. 2 The Baraṇā or Varāṇa is a considerable rivulet which rises
to the north of Allahabad and has a course of about 100 miles; while
the Asi is a mere brook. The former is probably identical with the
river Varanavati, the water of which is said in the Atharvaveda
(IV, 7, 1) to have had the property of removing poison. We agree
with Macdonell and Keith that, though Kāśi is a late word, it is quite
possible that the town is older, as the river Varanavati may be con-

1 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 34.
2 Cunningham, Ancient Geography of India (S. N. Majumdar), p. 500.
4 Jātaka (Fausboll), IV, p. 104.
5 Ibid., IV, p. 110; V, p. 177.
6 Ibid., IV, p. 110; V, p. 312.
7 Ibid., VI, p. 131.
8 Ibid., IV, p. 15.
9 Ibid., IV, p. 15.
11 Buddhist India, p. 34.
of the city mentioned as 12 yojanas. Nowadays, Benares extends four miles along the bank of the river, which here descends to the water with a steep brink. Down this brink are built flights of steps known as ghats, at the foot of which pilgrims bathe and dead bodies are burnt.

Although the capital of Kāśi (Pāli, Kāśi) is generally given as Bārānāsa, it is said that when Aśoka was king of Kāśi, his capital was in Potali; and another king, Udaya Bhadda, had his seat of government in Surundha. It is possible that these cities did not form part of the regular kingdom of Kāśi, but became annexed to it during the reigns of some of the more powerful kings.

The little kingdom of Kāśi, whose extent is given in the Jātaka (V, 41; III, 394, 391) as three hundred leagues, was bordered by Kośala on the north, Magadha on the east, and Vatsa on the west. It was a wealthy and prosperous country, having 'an abundance of the seven gems', and the Bhojājāniya Jātaka (J., I, 178) tells us that 'all the kings around coveted the kingdom of Benares'. It often served as a bone of contention between its three powerful neighbours, as we shall see.

Kāśi is mentioned several times in Vedic literature and in the Epics. The Sāṅkhâyana Śrauta Sūtra mentions Kāśya, the king of Kāśi, and Jala, son of Jātukarni, who became the king's chaplain. Kāśya was a warrior, as the Bhadārayyaka Upaniṣad (III, 8, 2) informs us. From the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (XIII, 5, 4, 19) we learn that Satānīka, son of Satrājita, took the horse of King Kāśya and performed the Govinata Yajña. Afterwards, the king too performed this sacrifice. The Bhadārayyaka and Kauśitakī Upaniṣads speak of Ajatasastru, another king of Kāśi; while the Bādāhāyana Śrauta Sūtra tells us that Āyu, son of Purūravas, renamed the world and wandered in the countries of Kāśi, Kuru and Pañcāla.

Purūravas is mentioned in the Rāmāyana as king of Kāśi. Mitradeva said to the nymph Urvaśi: 'Go to Purūrava, king of Kāśi. He will be your husband'. In the same kānda (59, 19), Puru, son of Yayāti, is represented as residing in Pratīsthāna and ruling over the kingdom of Kāśi. We are told in the Ādiśānta (13th sarga) that

---

1 Jātaka, VI, p. 160; IV, p. 377; Majjhima Nikāya Comm., II, p. 608; B. C. Law, India as described in early texts of Buddhism and Jainism, pp. 41 foll.
3 Jātaka, II, p. 155.
4 Ibid., IV, pp. 104ff.
5 Malalasekera, Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names, Vol. I, article on 'Kāśi'.
8 XVI, 29, 5.
9 Bh. Up., II, 1, 1; Kauś. Up., IV, 1.
10 XVIII, 44.
11 Uttarakāṇḍa, 56th sarga, sl. 25.
Vaśiṣṭha asked Sumantra to invite many pious kings, including the king of Benares, together with one thousand Brahmins, Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras. In the *Kiskindhāvākanda* (40th sarga) we read that Sugriva sent the monkey king Viṇāta to Kāśi, among other countries, in quest of Sītā.

Kāśi figures even more prominently in the *Mahābhārata*. Haryana, king of Benares, was killed by the relations of king Viṭahavya in a battle fought on the land between the Ganges and the Jumna. His son Sudeva was then installed on the throne of Kāśi. Sudeva ruled righteously, but he also was defeated by the Viṭahavyas, and his son Divodāsa became king. Divodāsa built the city of Benares which became populated by people of the four castes. The city lay between the north bank of the Ganges and the south bank of the river Gomati. Big markets were opened, and the city seemed likely to prosper, but the Viṭahavyas again attacked, and a great war ensued, lasting for a thousand days. Divodāsa was defeated, and fled to a forest, taking shelter in the hermitage of the sage Bharadvāja, eldest son of Bhāspati. This sage assured the king that he would perform a sacrifice so that Divodāsa might be blessed with a son who would kill thousands of the Viṭahavyas. This son was duly born, and was named Pratardana. He studied the Vedas and archery, and was sent in due course to conquer the Viṭahavyas. A fierce fight ensued, in which the Viṭahavyas were defeated.¹

Another passage of the *Mahābhārata* tells us that Divodāsa, the son of Bhīmasena, king of Kāśi, had a son named Pratardana by Mādavī, daughter of Yayāti.² When Pratardana came to the throne of Kāśi, he established his capital in Benares and acquired great fame by offering his own son in charity to a Brahmin.³

We have yet another version of Divodāsa's life story in the *Purāṇas* and the *Harivamsa*. Saunihotra, a certain king of Kāśi, had a son named Dhanvantari who studied the Ayurveda with Bharadvāja,⁴ and later became king of Kāśi. He is celebrated as the author of the Ayurveda and killer of all diseases.⁵ Divodāsa was the great-grandson of this Dhanvantari. It is said that in his time, Benares, owing to a curse, was deserted, and infested by a Rākṣasa named Kṣemaka. Divodāsa left Benares and founded his kingdom on the banks of the river Gomati.⁶ Once Bhadraśrenya

---

¹ *Anuśāsanaparvan*, Chap. 30, pp. 1899-1900.
² *Udyogaparvan*, Chap. 117, p. 746.
⁴ *Harivamsa*, Chap. 31.
⁵ *Vāyu Purāṇa*, Chap. 92.
son of Mahishmān 1 and king of the Yadu dynasty, acquired Benares. His sons were defeated by King Divodāsa who recovered the city, sparing the life of Bhadrāśraya’s youngest son, Durdama. Later, however, this Durdama again took Benares which was then recovered by Pratardana, son of Divodāsa. Elsewhere,6 we read that Alaka Saumati (grandson of Pratardana) re-established the city of Benares, after killing the Rāksasa Ksemaka.

We return to the Mahābhārata references to Kāśī. A certain king of Kāśi gave his daughter Sārvasenī in marriage to Bharata, son of Duśmanta (Dusyanta), king of the Kuru dynasty, and Śakuntalā, daughter of Viśvāmitra.3 Kāśya, another king of Kāśi, had three daughters, Ambā, Ambikā and Ambālikā, who were won by Bhīṣma for his brother Vicitravīrya in a Svayaṃvara.4 Sūvāhu, a king of Kāśi, was conquered by Bhīṣma.5 On the occasion of the marriage ceremony of Abhimanyu, the king of Kāśi and others were invited by Yudhiṣṭhira to a city named Upaplavya near Virāṭa.5 The king of Kāśi was an ally of Yudhiṣṭhira, and helped the Pāṇḍavas in the Kurukṣetra war.7 In battle he rode horses decorated with gold and garlands; Śaivya and he guarded the centre of the Pāṇḍava army with 30,000 chariots.9 The king of Kāśi is mentioned as the best archer.10 Kāśi, Karuṣa and Cedi armies were under the leadership of Dhṛṣṭaketu.11

The Purāṇas contain several stories about kings of Kāśi. We have mentioned the account of Divodāsa. Another king mentioned in the Vāyu Purāṇa12 is Kāśa who was the son of Dharmavrddha of the Nahuṣa family. The sons of Kāśa were Kāśara, Raṣṭrā and Dirghatapas, and Dirghatapas’ son was the learned Dharna. According to the Harivamsa (Chap. 29), the sons of Kāśa, a king of the Anēnā dynasty, were known as Kāsīs. Dirghatamas (= Dirghatapas?) was the eldest son.

Benares, the capital of Kāśi, figures in the story of Kṛṣṇa’s quarrel with Pūṇḍva. King Pūṇḍva, aided by the king of Benares, fought with Kṛṣṇa Vāsudeva who defeated and killed Pūṇḍva, and burnt the city of Benares.13

According to the Jānas, Pārśvanātha was born in Benares about 817 B.C. His father Aśvasena was the king of Benares, and

1 Padma Purāṇa, Saṭṭhi, Chap. 12.
2 Adi Purāṇa, Chap. 95, p. 105.
5 Udyoga Purāṇa, Chap. 72, p. 714.
6 Bhīṣma Purāṇa, Chap. 50, p. 924.
7 Udyoga Purāṇa, Chap. 198, p. 807.
8 Vāyu Purāṇa, 5th Amīśa, Chap. 34.
9 VIṣṇu Purāṇa, Chap. 93.
10 Virāṭaparvan, Chap. 72, sl. 16.
11 Drodparvan, Chap. 22, sl. 38.
12 Ibid., Chap. 25, p. 834.
13 Chap. 92.
he himself attained perfect knowledge (kevala-jñāna) seated under a
certain tree near the city. 1

Kāśī also figures in the stories of Mahāvīra and his disciples. 2
For example, there lived in Benares a householder named Culanipiyā
who was prosperous and had no equal. His wife was called Samā.
At a certain time Mahāvīra came and a congregation went out from
Benares to hear him preach. Culanipiyā lived in conformity with
the teaching which he received from Mahāvīra. 3 Among other
disciples of Mahāvīra who were connected with Benares were
Sūrādeva, a prosperous householder, 4 Áryaraksita 5 and Jayaghoṣa. 6
We are told also that the king of Kāśī named Nandana, the seventh
Baladeva, son of King Agniśikha, abandoned all pleasures and hewed
down his karma like a forest, as it were. 7

On the night in which Mahāvīra died, the king of Kāśī instituted
an illumination, it being a day of fasting (Posadha); for he said,
‘When the light of intelligence is gone, let us make an illumination
of material matter’. 8

There is a reference in Kauṭilya’s Arthaśāstra to the poisoning
of a king of Kāśī by his own queen.

Although, as we have seen, Kāśī and Benares feature fairly
prominently in Hindu and Jain sources, it is the Buddhist books, and
particularly the Jātakas, which give us fuller information on the
subject. In the Purāṇas, Kāśī is mentioned as a janapada or country.
In the Pāli canon, 9 however, it is referred to as one of the sixteen
‘Mahājanapadas,’ and its capital, Bārāṇāsi, was one of the four
places of pilgrimage for the Buddhists, and was included in the list
of great cities suggested by Ānanda as suitable places for the
parinibbāna of the Buddha. 10

Although Kāśī was no longer an independent kingdom in the
Buddha’s day, the memory of its independence seems to have been
still fresh, for it is frequently mentioned as such in the Jātakas and
elsewhere. To begin with, it is said that Kāśī was once ruled by the
Bhāratas one of whom, Dhataratthā, was its king in the time of Reṇu. 11
The traditional name of the king of Kāśī was evidently Brahmadatta,
and references to kings of that name abound in the Jātakas.

1 S. Stevenson, Heart of Jainism, pp. 48-9.
2 B. C. Law, Mahāvīra: His Life and Teachings, sec. I.
4 Ibid., p. 100. 6 Heart of Jainism, p. 78.
5 Jaina Sūtras, S.B.E., II, pp. 136-7. See also ibid., p. 50, for the story of the
Jaina monk Bala, and Bhadrā, daughter of King Kauṭalika,
6 Sutrakrānga, Jaina Sūtras, II, p. 87. 8 Jaina Sūtras, I, p. 266.
7 Áṅguttara Nikāya, I, pp. 213, etc.
8 Dhāra Nikāya, II, 146.
9 Ibid., II, 135f. Here (Mahāgovinda Sutta) the foundation of Bārāṇāsi is
attributed to Mahāgovinda, its first king being Dhataratthā.
Brahmadatta was probably the dynastic name of the kings of Benares; for instance, in the Gaṅgāmālā Jālaka (J., III, 452) Udaya, king of Benares, is addressed as Brahmadatta. Elsewhere in the Jālaka (III, pp. 406ff.), we read that a certain prince Brahmadatta became king of Benares. He married the exquisitely beautiful daughter of the king of Kośala, and made her his chief queen. He held a parasol festival, and the whole city was decorated so splendidly as to seem like a city of the gods. The king went around the city in procession, and then mounted his throne on the dais in the palace. The throne was surmounted by a white parasol. Brahmadatta looked down on all the persons who stood in attendance, 'on one side the ministers, on another the Brahmans and householders resplendent in the beauty of varied apparel, on another the townspeople with various gifts in their hands, on another troupes of dancing girls to the number of sixteen thousand, like a gathering of the nymphs of heaven in full apparel', and reflected that all his splendour was due to 'an alms-gift of four portions of gruel given to four pacceka-buddhas'.

One King Brahmadatta told the inhabitants of Kāśi that there would be a famine lasting for twelve years, and that only those inhabitants might remain who had provision for that period. Many people died at Benares on account of this famine. One very wealthy person, however, gave alms to a pacceka-buddha who granted three boons in return. The almsgiver himself prayed that his granary should always be filled with paddy; his wife prayed that one pot of rice cooked by her would be sufficient for hundreds of thousands of people; and their son prayed that his treasure-house should always be full of wealth.¹

There seem to have been frequent wars between the two kingdoms of Kāśi and Kośala, first one side being victorious, and then the other. We are told,² for instance, that a certain Brahmadatta was a wealthy king of Benares. He was rich in treasure, revenue, troops and vehicles. The king of Kośala at that time, named Dighiti, was not so wealthy as he was. Brahmadatta waged war against Dighiti, defeated him, and took possession of his treasuries and storehouses. The king of Kośala and his consort escaped, went to Benares, and lived there in disguise in a potter's house. The queen bore a son, Dighāyu (or Dighāvu), who was sent away for safety. The king of Kāśi some time afterwards learnt that the king and queen of Kośala were dwelling in his kingdom, and they were captured, and were being led to the place of execution when Dighāyu, who was on a

¹ Divyāvadāna, 132ff.
TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

visit to the city, saw them. Dighiti gave out his dying advice to his son: 'Look not too far nor too near.' Understanding this advice, Dighayu entered the service of the king of Kāśi. One day the king ascended a chariot driven by Dighayu. Travelling at high speed, he left the royal retinue far behind. The king became tired, stopped the chariot, and fell asleep. Dighayu thought of killing him, but remembering his father's advice he desisted. When Brahmadatta awoke, however, Dighayu revealed his identity, and promised the king his life. His father's kingdom was restored to him, and he married Brahmadatta's daughter.

On another occasion, the king of Benares attacked the kingdom of Kośala and took its king prisoner. He set up royal officials as governors in the conquered country, and himself having collected all their available treasure, returned with his spoils to Benares. The king of Kośala had a son named Chatta who fled when his father was taken prisoner, and went to Taxila to complete his education. On his way back from Taxila, Chatta came to a wood where dwelt five hundred ascetics. Chatta joined them, and eventually became their leader. He came to Benares with the ascetics, and spent a night in the king's garden. The next morning the ascetics, in their quest for alms, came to the door of the palace. The king was charmed with their deportment, and particularly with Chatta, who answered all his questions to his satisfaction; and he asked the ascetics to stay in his garden. Chatta knew a spell whereby he could bring to light buried treasure. He repeated this spell, and discovered that the treasure which had belonged to his father was buried in that very garden. He then told the ascetics that he was the son of the king of Kośala, and they agreed to help him. Chatta removed the treasure which was taken to Sravasti by the ascetics. He then had all the king's officers seized, recovered his kingdom, made the city invincible against invasion, and took up his residence there.¹

In the Mahāsilava Jātaka we read that the kingdom of Benares was once seized by the king of Kośala who buried the king of Kāśi (Mahāsilava) and his soldiers alive, up to the neck. The king of Kāśi managed to get out of the pit, and to rescue his soldiers; and by the magic power of two yakṣas who happened to be there disputing over a corpse, he secured his sword of state, and went to the usurper's bedside at dead of night and frightened him. On being told the story of the king of Kāśi's escape, the usurper praised him, begged his pardon, and on the morrow gave back his kingdom, and himself with his troops and elephants returned to his own country.²

¹ Jātaka, III, pp. 115ff.
² Ibid., I, pp. 262 et seq.; see also I, 409; Udāna Comm., 123.
In the Asāvatāra Jātaka, we read that the kingdom of Benares was once seized by the king of Kośala who marched with a great force against Benares, killed the king, and carried off his queen. But the king's son escaped, and later collected a mighty force and came to Benares. He pitched his camp close to the city, and sent a message to the king of Kośala, demanding that he should surrender the kingdom or else give battle. The king informed him that he would give battle. But the young prince's mother sent word to her son advising him not to fight, but to blockade the city on every side, so that the citizens would be worn out for want of food and water. The prince acted on this advice, and the citizens were famished and on the seventh day they beheaded their king and brought his head to the prince. Thus the prince succeeded in regaining his paternal kingdom. On another occasion the kingdom of Benares was seized by a king of Sāvatthi (Srāvasti) named Vañka, but was soon restored.

There seems to have been friendly intercourse between the chieftains of Benares and the kings of Magadha, as instanced by the fact that King Bimbisāra sent his own physician Jivaka to attend the son of the Treasurer of Benares, when the young man had twisted his internal organs through practising acrobatics.

The Cambridge History of India (p. 316) informs us that at different periods Kāśī came under the sway of the three successive suzerain powers of N. India—the Purus of Vatsa, the Ikṣvākus of Kośala and the kings of Magadha; but it seems to have enjoyed independent power between the decline of Vatsa and the rise of Kośala, when King Brahmadatta conquered Kośala, possibly about a century and a half before the Buddha's time.

As we have seen, in the early days, Kāśī and Kośala are represented as two independent countries whose kings fought with each other. Kāśī and Kośala are frequently mentioned together in literature (e.g. Anguttara Nikāya, V, 59). In the Buddha's time, Kośala was already the paramount power in India. We have seen how several successful invasions of Kāśī had been carried out by the kings of Kośala. Kāśī's absorption into Kośala was an accomplished fact before the accession of Pasenadi, for Pasenadi's father Mahā-kośala gave his daughter a village of Kāśī (Kāsimāma) as 'bath money', on the occasion of her marriage with King Bimbisāra of Magadha.

---

1 Jātaka, I, p. 409.
3 Vinaya Texts, Pt. II, pp. 184-5 (Mahāvagga, VIII, 1).
5 Jātaka, IV, 342; II, 403.
After Bimbisāra’s death, Pasenadi withdrew the gift from Ajātaśatru, and this led to a war between Kośala and Magadha. Pasenadi was defeated in three campaigns, but in another battle he avenged his defeat, and took possession of Kāśī. However, Pasenadi treated Ajātaśatru generously, giving him his daughter in marriage, and even bestowing the disputed village on her as a wedding gift.  
In the Dīgha Nikāya we read that Pasenadi, king of Kāśī, used to collect taxes from the inhabitants of these two countries. He used to share the income with his subordinates. The Mahāvagga, however, mentions a Kāśika-rājā (king of Kāśī) who sent a robe to Jivaka. Buddhaghosa says that this was a brother of Pasenadi and son of the same father. He was probably a sub-king of Pasenadi. Later, when Ajātaśatru succeeded in establishing his sway over Kośala, Kāśī too was included in his dominions (see Chapter on Kośala).

The Sumaṅgalavilāsini, referring to the more ancient period of Kāśī, mentions a certain Rāma, king of Kāśī, who had an attack of leprosy, in consequence of which he became distasteful to the members of his harem, and the dancing girls. Being much distressed, he left his kingdom in charge of his eldest son, went to a forest, and was soon cured of the disease by living on leaves and fruits. His body now appeared like gold. He dwelt in a tree-hole, and later married the daughter of King Okkāka (Skt. Iksvāku). Thirty-two sons were born to him; and these sons afterwards built the city named Kola, and became known as Koliyas. There were inter-marriages between the Koliyas and the Sākyas (other descendants of Okkāka) down to the time of the Buddha Gautama.

The names of several other kings of Benares are mentioned in the Jātakas, among them being those of Aṅga, Uggasena, Udaya, Dhanañjaya, Vissasena, Kalābu (Jātaka, III, 39), and Samyama. The Suttanipāta Commentary on the Khaggavisāṇa Sutta contains the names of several kings of Benares who renounced the world and became pañcakabuddhas. The Ceylon Chronicles mention the names of others who reigned in Benares, e.g. Duppasaha and sixty of his descendants; Aśoka, son of Samañkara, and 84,000 of his descendants; also sixteen kings, ancestors of Okkāka. Sometimes the king is referred to merely as Kāśi-rājā. In the Jātaka (III, p. 28) we are told that a king of Benares used to learn Vedic hymns from his family priest (purohita).

1 Samyutta Nikāya, I, pp. 82-5.
2 I, pp. 228-9.
3 Vin., I, 281.
4 Vinaya Texts, II, 195, n. 2.
5 Mahāasekera, Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names, s.v. Kāśī.
6 Sumaṅgalavilāsini, Pt. I, pp. 260-2; vide also chapter on Koliyas.
7 Mahāvaṃsa Tīkā, 127, 129, 130.
The king of Benares at the time of the Buddha Kassapa is said to have been Kiki. When Kassapa Buddha arrived in Benares, the king, having listened to his sermons, entertained the Buddha and his monks at the palace. One of Kiki's daughters was Uracchadā, who attained arahatship at the age of sixteen. He had seven other daughters, and a son Pathavindhara, who succeeded him (Divyāvadāna; 22, Sujāla). During the life of the Buddha Kassapa, Kiki waited on him with many kinds of gifts, and at his death built one of the four gates outside the Buddha's cetiya. This gate was a league in width. In the Sanskrit books he is called Kīki, and is mentioned as owning a palace called Kokanada.

From the Jātakas we learn that Benares was ruled with justice and equity. The ministers of the king were just; no false suit was brought to court, and sometimes true cases were so scanty that ministers had to remain idle for lack of litigants. The king of Benares was always on the alert to know his own faults. Once a certain king of Benares went outside the city to find out whether there was anyone who might know anything against him. The king of Kośala was out on a similar mission, and the two kings met at a place where the road was too narrow for two carriages to pass. Each of the drivers spoke of the virtues of his king, and finally the king of Kośala and his driver gave place to the king of Benares.

There was a belief current amongst the people of Benares that when kings rule with justice and equity, when they reign peacefully, all things retain their respective nature and character; but that when kings rule with injustice and inequity, when their reign becomes one of terror and tyranny, all things lose their respective nature. Oil, honey, molasses and the like, and even the wild fruits lose their sweetness and flavour.

In spite of good government, the country was not entirely free from crime. For instance, a physician named Cakkhpala in anger gave one of his women patients, who had tried to cheat him out of his promised reward for curing her, a drug which made her blind. There were also instances of highway robbery and house-breaking. In the Sātipatī Jātaka (Jātaka, II, pp. 387-8) we read that the Bodhisattva in a former life gathered 500 robbers together and became their chief, living by highway robbery and house-breaking.

---

1 Majjhima Nikāya, II, pp. 49ff.
2 Suttanipāta Comm., I, 281, 283.
3 Ibid., 194.
4 E.g. Mahāvastu (ed. Senart), I, 325; Divyāvadāna, 221; Avadāna Sūtaka, I, 338, etc.
5 Jātaka, II, pp. 1-5.
6 Ibid., III, pp. 110-11.
Kāśi was evidently a great centre of trade and industry, and a most populous and prosperous country. Frequent mention is made of caravans leaving Kāśi to travel for trade. One highway went through Kāśi to Rājagaha, and another to Śrāvasti; and there was also direct trade between Kāśi and Takṣaśīla. We read of a trader of Benares who went with 500 carts to a frontier country and bought sandal wood; and of another trader who was going to Śrāvasti with five hundred carts full of red cloth, but could not cross the river as it was in flood, and had to stay on the near side to sell his goods. The merchants of Benares used to go about hawking goods, which were carried by donkeys. Horse dealers from northern districts used to bring horses to Benares for sale. Sindh horses were available in Benares, and were used as the royal horses of ceremony.

In Benares, too, there were skilled elephant trainers and corn merchants.

In Benares fine cloths widely known as Kāśi cloths were manufactured, and Kāśi robes were most highly esteemed as gifts, each robe being valued at one hundred thousand. Mention is also made of the perfumes of Kāśi (Kāśi-vilepana—Jātaka, I, 355; and Kāśicandana—Anguttara Nikāya, III, 391; Udāna Comm. (P.T.S.), 332).

At Benares there was a rich banker named Mahādhana Sānthā. His parents taught him dancing and music, and he married the daughter of another rich banker, and of similar education. Mahādhana became addicted to drink and gambling, with the result that he lost his own wealth as well as his wife's, being finally reduced to begging for alms.

In general, however, the merchants of Benares must have been highly respected, for we read in the Divyavadāna (p. 100) that after the death of Priyasena, the chief merchant, Brahmadatta, king of Kāśi, appointed Supriya chief merchant of the royal court; and after Brahmadatta's death, the ministers anointed Supriya king (p. 121).

There was in Benares a market known as the ivory workers' bazar, where ivory articles were sold. There were also stone cutters or experts in working stone-quarrying and shaping stones.

1 Vinaya, I, 213.  
2 Ibid., II.  
3 Dhammapada Comm., III, 445.  
7 Jātaka, II, p. 287.  
8 Ibid., II, p. 221.  
10 Ibid., III, p. 198.  
11 Jātaka, VI, 151, 450.  
13 Ibid., I, p. 478.
Five hundred carpenters lived in a village in Kāśī. There was in Benares a great carpenter-quarter containing a thousand families. These carpenters avowed publicly that they could make a bed or a chair or a house; but when they took a large advance from the people, they proved themselves to be liars. They were then so much harassed by their customers that they had to leave the town. A certain carpenter of Benares prepared mechanical wooden birds (airships), by means of which he conquered a tract of land in the Himalayas. His capital was known as Kaṭṭhavāhananagara. He sent valuable presents to the king of Benares who in return sent him the news of the advent of the Buddha Kassapa in Benares.

In Benares, there was a village of hunters on the banks of the river (=Ganges), and another on the farther side. Five hundred families dwelt in each. The Nesāda of the Māra Jātaka (II, 36), who was ordered by the king to catch a golden peacock, practised the profession of a hunter in a Nesāda village near Benares.

There were snake-charmers in Benares (Jātaka, III, p. 198). An elephant festival was held in the city, in which Brahmins had to chant elephant lore (Hastisūtram). In this festival five score elephants with pure white tusks were used. There was also a time-honoured drinking festival, at which people used to drink strong liquor and quarrel with one another. Sometimes their legs and arms were broken, crowns were cracked, and ears were torn off.

From the Jātakas it is evident that the people of Benares were charitable, especially to hermits. A great merchant of Benares, bad alms-halls built at the four city-gates, besides one in the heart of the city and one at the door of his own house. He distributed alms at these six points, and everyday 600,000 men came there to beg. In the Lalitavistara there is a reference to Ratnacūḍa (Ratna-śikhī), a charitable king of Kāśī.

Enthusiastic young men of Benares used to go to Taxila for their education. We read in the Dhammapada Commentary (I, 251ff.) how a certain king of Benares paid 1,000 kahāpanas to a young Brahmin for teaching him a mantra (spell) which afterwards proved the means of saving his life, when his barber and senāpati (general) plotted to kill him; and how another king of Benares paid

---

1 Jātaka, II, p. 18.  
2 Ibid., IV, p. 159.  
3 Suttanipāta Comm., II, pp. 575ff.  
4 Jātaka, VI, p. 71.  
5 Ibid., II, p. 48.  
6 Ibid., IV, p. 115.  
7 Ibid., I, p. 361; p. 239 (Fausboll).  
8 Ibid., III, p. 129. Cf. the almost identical stories of Saṅkha, Jātaka, IV, p. 15; Jātaka, I, p. 262; and of Prince Jarāsandha, Jātaka, IV, p. 176.  
9 Lefmann, p. 171.  
10 Dhammapada Comm., I, pp. 250-51; Jātaka, II, 47.
1,000 kākāpanas to a young Brahmin for a spell which enabled him to read people's evil thoughts, so that he could learn whether any of his subjects spoke ill of him. There seem to have been educational institutions at Benares also, some of which were even older than those of Taxila (Khuddakapāṭha Comm., 193). We find for instance that Saṅkha, a Brahmin of Taxila, sent his son Susīma to Benares to study.¹

A knowledge of spells formed an important part of a young man's education in the days when Kāśi was an independent kingdom; and it is natural that we should read of numerous superstitions which were current in Benares. We read in the Jātakas of the skill of the Brahmins of Benares in 'Lakkhanamantam', or charms for discovering the auspicious signs of various creatures.² In Benares there was a Brahmin who professed to be able to tell whether the swords (of warriors) were lucky or not.³ There was a superstitious belief current in Kāśi, as in other countries, that it was an evil omen if the wind touching the body of a candaṭa (outcaste) touched that of a person of another caste.⁴ Slaughter of deer, swine and other animals for offerings to goblins was in vogue in Benares.⁵

Besides those already referred to, names of places mentioned in literature as belonging to Kāśi are Vāsabhagāma, Macchikāsāṇḍa, Kitāgiri and Dhanapālagāma.⁶ The place which was most intimately associated with the several visits that the Buddha paid to Benares was Isipatana Migadāvā, a famous Deer Park near the city. It was eighteen leagues from Uruvelā, and it was there that the Buddha preached his first sermon after his enlightenment, to his friends the Paṇcavaggya monks.⁷ There also the Buddha spent his first rainy season; and he mentioned Isipatana as one of the four places of pilgrimage which his devout followers should visit.⁸ Isipatana was so called because sages, on their way through the air (from the Himalayas) alight here or start from here on their aerial flight.⁹ Several other incidents connected with the Buddha, besides the preaching of his first sermon, are mentioned in the texts as having taken place in Isipatana.¹⁰

Some of the most eminent members of the Buddhist community seem to have resided at Isipatana from time to time; among recorded conversations at Isipatana are several between Śāriputta and Mahākotthita,¹ and one between Mahākoṭṭhita and Citta-Hatthi-sāriputta.²

According to the Mahāvamsa, there was a large community of monks at Isipatana in the second century B.C. For we are told that at the foundation ceremony of the Mahā Thūpa in Anurādhapura, twelve thousand monks from Isipatana were present.³ Isipatana was still a monastic centre in Hsüan-Tsang's time, for he found 1,500 monks studying the Hinayāna there.⁴ He quotes the Nigrodhamiga Jātaka (Jāt., I, 145ff.) to account for the origin of the Migadāya or Deer Park at Isipatana. According to him, the Deer Park was the forest which was given by the king of Benares for the deer to wander in it unmolested.

Isipatana is identified with the modern Saranath, six miles from Benares. Cunningham⁵ found the Migadāya represented by a fine wood, covering an area of about half a mile, extending from the great tomb of Dhammek on the north to the Chaukundi mound on the south.

Near Benares, too, was a grove of seven sīrisaka-trees where the Buddha preached to the Nāga-king Erakapatta;⁶ and also the Khemiyambavana where Udena met Ghoṭamukha.⁷ On the other side of the river was Vāsabhagāma, and beyond that another village called Cundaṭṭhila.⁸ The Buddha is several times spoken of as staying in Benares, where he preached several sermons,⁹ and converted many people, including Yasa, whose home was in Benares,¹⁰ and his friends Vimala, Subāhu, Pūṇḍaji and Cavampati, all members of eminent families.¹¹

In the Buddha's time, the Santhāgārasāla (Council-Hall) of Benares was no longer being used so much for the transaction of public business as for public discussion on religious and philosophical

---

¹ Samyutta Nikāya, II, pp. 112-14; III, pp. 167-9, 173-7; IV, pp. 384-6.
² Anguttara Nikāya, III, p. 392f.
³ Mahāvamsa, XXIX, p. 31.
⁴ Beal, Records of the Western World, II, pp. 45ff.
⁵ Arch. Reports, I, p. 107.
⁸ Pulakatthe Comm., p. 168; B. C. Law, India as described in early texts of Buddhism and Jainism, p. 42; see also Barua and Sinha, Barhat Inscriptions.
¹⁰ Vinaya Pīṭaka, I, p. 15.
¹¹ Ibid., p. 19.
questions. Ascetics who came to the city found lodging for the night in the Potters' Hall.

Many venerable Buddhist monks, e.g. Sāriputta, Mahāmoggallāna, Mahākaccāna, Mahākoṭṭhita, Mahācunda, Anuruddha, Revata, Upāli, Ānanda and Rāhula journeyed through the country of Kāśī. The Buddha's converts in Benares included Aḍḍhakāsi, the daughter of a rich banker of Kāśī, who became a courtesan, whose fee was fixed by the king at half of the daily income of Kāśī (this explains her name, Aḍḍhakāsi). After her conversion by the Buddha, Aḍḍhakāsi is said to have become an arahat. For other references to nuns who were connected with Kāśī, see, e.g. Therīgāthā Comm., p. 106 and pp. 151-2. Elsewhere in the same work (pp. 71-2) it is said that Bhaddā Kapilānī became the chief queen of the king of Benares on account of her approving the offering of cloth to the Buddha in a previous birth.

1 E.g. Jātaka, IV, p. 74.  
2 E.g. Dhammapada Comm., I, p. 39.  
3 Vinaya Texts, Pt. II, pp. 359-60.  
4 Therīgāthā Comm., pp. 30-1. See also Vinaya Texts, III, p. 360, n. 3; II, pp. 195-6, n. 3.
In the earliest Vedic literature, no mention is made of Kosala as the name of a people. It is only in some of the later Vedic works, like the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa and the Kalpasūtras, that we find Kosala referred to as a country. Kosala is also mentioned in the Pāli Buddhist literature as one of the sixteen great countries (Mahājanapadas) of Jambudīpa or India.1 Pāṇini, too, mentions Kosala in one of his Sūtras.2 In the Aṭṭhasāliṇī,3 mention is made of Kosala as one of the great Kṣatriya tribes in Buddha’s time.4

Kosala lay to the east of the Kūrṣas and Pāṇcīlas, and to the west of the Videhas, from whom it was separated by the river Satadhanī, probably the great Gaṇḍak.5 In the Cambridge History of India,6 we read that the northern frontier of Kosala must have been in the hills in what is now Nepal; its southern boundary was the Ganges; and its eastern boundary was the eastern limit of the Sākyas territory. According to Macdonell and Keith, Kosala lay to the north-east of the Ganges, and corresponds roughly to the modern Oudh.7 Rhys Davids states that the Kosalas were the ruling clan in the kingdom whose capital was Śāvatthī (Śrāvasti), in what is now Nepal, seventy miles north-west of the modern Gorakhpur. He thinks that it included Benares and Sāketa, and probably had the Ganges for its southern, the Gaṇḍak for its eastern, and the mountains for its northern boundary.8

In the Cambridge History of India,6 we read that the Kosalans were almost certainly of the Aryan race, in the main at least. They belonged to the solar family, and were supposed to have derived directly from Manu through Ikṣvākū. A family of princes bearing this name is known from Vedic literature, and it is quite possible

---

2 VI, I, 17.
4 Aṭṭhasāliṇī (P.T.S.), p. 305.
5 Cambridge History of India, Vol. I, p. 308; cf. ibid., p. 117, and Rapson, Ancient India, p. 164; also Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, 1. 4, 11.
8 BuddhistIndia, p. 25.
that the solar dynasties of Kośala and other kingdoms to the east of the middle country were descended from this family. If so, Ikṣvāku must be regarded as an eponymous ancestor; and as his superhuman origin had to be explained, a myth founded on a far-fetched etymology of his name was invented, viz. that he was so called because he was born from the sneeze of Manu. Vedic literature points out that the Ikṣvākus were originally a branch of the Purūs. Kośala is known to the Buddhists as the land of the Kośala princes, tracing their descent from Ikṣvāku. The descent of those ruling princes of Kośala from Ikṣvāku is borne out by the genealogies in the Rāmāyaṇa as well as the Purāṇas. Buddhaghosa narrates an anecdote giving a fanciful origin of the name of Kośala, from ‘kuśala’ (well, healthy, in good condition).

In the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa (I, 4, 11), the Kośala-Videhas appear as coming later than the Kuru-Pañcālas under the influence of Brahmanism. In the same work, the Kausalya or Kośala king, Para-āṭnāra Hiranyanābha, is described as having performed the great Āśvamedha or horse sacrifice. Hiranyanābha Kauṣalya and Āśvalāyana Kauṣalya figure in the Praśna Upaniṣad (I, I) as two contemporary seekers of truth belonging to Kośala. The connection between Hiranyanābha of the Praśna and Para-āṭnāra Hiranyanābha of the Satapatha is uncertain. A passage in the Śāṅkhyāyana Śrautī Śūtra (XVI, 9, 13) shows the connection of Kośala with Kāśi and Videha.

It is in the Epic period that Kośala emerges into importance. The scene of action of the Rāmāyaṇa is in Kośala, the princes of which country carried Aryan civilisation to the south as far as the island of Ceylon. Pargiter observes that it is remarkable that in the Rāmāyaṇa the friendliest relations of Kośala were with the eastern kingdoms of Videha, Aṅga and Magadha, the Punjab kingdoms of Kekaya, Sindhu and Sauvira, the western kingdom of Surāśṭra, and the Dākṣiṇāyka kings, for these are especially named among the monarchs who were invited to Daśaratha’s sacrifice, and no mention is made of any of the kings of the middle region of N. India except Kāśi. Pargiter is of the opinion that it was under

---

2 Ibid., p. 308.
3 Sumangalavilāsini, I, p. 239.
4 Ray Chandhuri’s Political History, 4th Ed., p. 86.
5 Sumangalavilāsini, I, 239.
6 XIII, 5, 4, 4.
7 In the dynastic list of kings, occurring in the Purāṇas of doubtful authority, Hiranyanābha is mentioned as the immediate predecessor of Prasenajit (Pasenadi) who was a contemporary of Buddha. According to Buddhist tradition, Mahā-kosala was the father and immediate predecessor of Pasenadi.
8 Ancient Indian Historical Tradition, p. 276.
King Dilipa II and his immediate descendants that the country acquired the name of Kosala.¹

We may form some idea of the extent of the Kosala country in the Epic period from the story of the exile of Rāma. Therein we find that, after setting out from Ayodhyā (then the capital of Kosala), the young princes accompanied by Sītā proceeded in a chariot. Evidently, then, there were good roads in the Kosala country, as we may also gather from the Jātaka stories, where we read that merchants loading as many as 500 wagons with their merchandise went from Magadha and the Licchavi countries through Kosala up to the western and northwestern frontiers of India. Rāma made his first halt at the river Tamasa (the modern Tons). On the other side of the Tamasa, his chariot reached the Mahāmārga or the ‘great road’, which was evidently a trade-route. Following this, the party reached the river Śrīmatī Mahānādi. After crossing the river Vedaśruti, Rāma turned his course towards the south. After proceeding a long distance, he crossed the Gomati and the Śyandikā. Having crossed the Śyandikā, Rāma pointed out to Sītā the wide plain given by Manu to Iksvāku. This region was evidently considered by the people of Kosala as the cradle of their race, the country with which Iksvāku began his career of conquest. This country was highly prosperous (ṣṭhita) and populous (ṛstrāntyta). Proceeding through the extensive Kosalan plains, Rāma left behind him the country of the Kosalas, and reached the Ganges, up to which river the Kosala dominion evidently extended. Here he arrived at Śṛngaverapura which was the seat of the Nisāda king Guha. Sir Alexander Cunningham has identified Śṛngaverapura with the modern Sīngor or Sīgor on the left bank of the Ganges and 22 miles to the north-west of Prayāga or Allahabad.²

In the Adīpāvan of the Mahābhārata³ we read that Janamejaya, one of the earliest kings of the Paurava family, was the son of Puru and Kauśalyā. Most probably this Kauśalyā was the daughter of a king of Kosala. When Vudhiśṭhira was about to perform his Rājasuya sacrifice, setting himself up as paramount sovereign over the whole of N. India, and his brothers went out on their expeditions of conquest, it is said that Arjuna, Kṛṣṇa and Bhīma started from the Kuru kingdom and reached Mithilā after crossing pūrva (eastern) Kosala.⁴ Afterwards, the second Pāṇḍava brother, Bhīmasena, conquered Brḥadbala, king of Kosala,⁵ and this Brḥad-

¹ Ancient Indian Historical Tradition, p. 273.
² Arch. Survey Report, Vols. XI, 62 and XXI, ii. For further geography of Rāma’s exile, see Pargiter, J.R.A.S., 1894, pp. 231 et seq.
³ Chap. 95, p. 105.
⁴ Sābhāpāvan, Chap. 25, p. 240.
⁵ Ibid., Chap. 30, pp. 241-2.
bala attended the Rājasūya sacrifice.\(^1\) Karna, too, conquered Kosala and proceeded southwards after exacting tribute from the country.\(^2\) Evidently the conquest of Kosala by Karna was later than that by Bhimasena, for we find the Kosala king Brhadbala, led by Duryodhana, marching against the Pāṇḍavas.\(^3\) Perhaps it was because the Kosalas were smarting under the defeat inflicted on them by Bhimasena that they embraced the Kaurava side in the Kurukṣetra war, in the course of which we find ten warriors including King Brhadbala of Kosala fighting in the van of the Kuru army.\(^4\) Bhadabala fought with Abhimanyu against whom the greatest leaders of the Kuru army led a united attack; and in the Karna-parvan\(^5\) we read that Brhadbala was killed by Abhimanyu. Śukṣetra, the son of the king of Kosala, also fought in the great war between the Kuru and the Pāṇḍavas.\(^6\) After the war was ended, Kosala was again attacked and conquered by Arjuna before the performance of the Aśvamedha by Yudhiṣṭhira.\(^7\)

As in the Epics, so also in the Purāṇas, the Kosalas are given great prominence among the Aryan Kṣatriya tribes of N. India. According to Purāṇa and Epic accounts, the Kosala line of kings derived from Iksvāku produced a large number of sovereigns who held the glory of the family very high, and some of them, like Mandhātā, Šagara, Bhagiratha and Raghu, occupied the highest position amongst the kings of ancient India.

Most of the Purāṇas\(^8\) state that Iksvāku had a large number of sons who divided the whole of India amongst themselves. The Viśṇupurāṇa says that Iksvāku had a hundred sons of whom fifty, with Šakuni at their head, became the protectors of N. India, and forty-eight established themselves as rulers over S. India.\(^9\) The Vāyu-purāṇa says that it was not the sons of Iksvāku who divided the country among themselves; but the children of Iksvāku’s son Vikuṣā. Though the number of Iksvāku’s immediate descendants as given in the Purāṇas is obviously fanciful, yet it seems worthy of credence that the family sprung from Iksvāku spread their rule far and wide over India, as many of the ruling families of India trace their descent to him.

\(^1\) Subhāparvan, Chap. 34, p. 545.
\(^2\) Vanaparvan, Chap. 253, p. 513.
\(^3\) Udyanaparvan, Chap. 97, p. 807.
\(^4\) Bhīṣma-parvan, Chap. 10, pp. 827-8.
\(^5\) Ibid., Chap. 45, p. 916. See also ibid., Chap. 57, pp. 924-5; Chap. 87, p. 957.
\(^6\) Chap. 5, pp. 1167-8.
\(^7\) Dronaparvan, Chap. 22, pp. 1012-13.
\(^8\) Aśvamedharpurvan, Chap. 42, p. 2093.
\(^9\) E.g., Viṣṇupurāṇa, IV, 2, 3; Vāyu-purāṇa, 88, 8-11.
\(^10\) Viṣṇupurāṇa, IV, 2, 3.
The Purāṇas state that Vikuksi incurred the displeasure of his father, Ikṣvāku, by the violation of some ceremonial rule, but later ascended the throne and reigned according to law and custom (dharma). A mythical story is related of the next king, Paraṇjaya. It is said that his aid was sought after by the Devas who were hard pressed by the Asuras; but the king imposed the condition that he would do so if borne on the shoulders of Indra himself. The king thus obtained the name of Kakutstha.

Sixth in descent from Kakutstha was King Śrāvasta, the founder of the city of Śrāvasti which afterwards became the capital of northern Kośala. Śrāvasta’s grandson, Kuvalayāśva, is credited with the overthrowing of an Asura, Dhumdhū, which seems to signify the control of a natural phenomenon. According to the account given in the Purāṇas and the Mahābhārata, the Rṣi Utañka complained to king Bhadasva that his hermitage, which was situated on the sea-coast in the west, was disturbed by the Asura Dhumdhū, who caused him much trouble, from a subterranean retreat (antarbhūmi). From the description that follows, it is manifest that this subterranean retreat (asura) was really a small volcanic pit near the western sea-coast which occasionally caused earthquakes and emitted smoke, ashes and fire. The old king Bhadasva sent his son Kuvalayāśva to destroy the ‘asura’. The prince went to the spot with an army of 21,000 men, who are said to be his sons, and whom he set to dig up the earth all around. After the excavation had proceeded for a week, the flaming body of Dhumdhū became visible to all, but with disastrous consequences to the soldiers, who perished in the smoke and flames, only three surviving. The excavation, however, appears to have opened a subterranean channel or reservoir of water, which rushed into the volcanic pit and extinguished it for ever; for we read that after Dhumdhū had reduced to ashes the 21,000 sons of Kuvalayāśva, streams of water flowed out of his body, and by means of this water the prince put out the fire, and acquired the appellation of Dhumdhumāra for this achievement.

A few generations after Kuvalayāśva came the great monarch, Māndhātā, who became a cakravartin or emperor exercising suzerain sway. In Māndhātā’s dominions, it was said, the sun never set: ‘From where the sun rises to where it sets, all this is the land of Māndhātā, the son of Yuvanāśva.’ As in the cases of Ikṣvāku and Kakutstha, fanciful stories based on a literal derivation of the name are narrated in the Purāṇas, which state that the name Māndhātā was

---

1 Vishnu Purāṇa, IV, 2, 12.  
2 Vanaparvan, Chaps. 201-3.  
3 Vāyu Purāṇa, Chap. LXXXVIII.  
4 Vishnu Purāṇa, IV, 2, xviii.
due to what Indra said ¹ when the prince was born. The Bhāgavata-

purāṇa adds that Māndhātā acquired the designation of Trasadasyu

on account of the fear that be struck into the minds of the Dasyus.

Māndhātā's daughters were given in marriage to the Rṣi Sauvāri,

and Purukutsa, one of the king's sons, married a Nāga girl (evidently

a girl of a non-Aryan tribe).

Trasadasyu, the son of this Nāga queen, ascended the throne

on his father's death. His son Anaranya is said to have been killed

by Rāvana. Several generations after this, Prince Satyavrata, son

of the Kōsala king, Trayyārūṇa, was in disfavour with his father as

well as with the family priest Vaśiṣṭha, and was given the name of

Triśaṅku. Vaśiṣṭha's rival, Viśvāmitra, however, espoused his cause,

and placed him on the throne of Kōsala. Triśaṅku's son Hariścandra

was a very great monarch of the Kōsala; he celebrated a Rajasūya sacrifice and became famous as a saṁrāṭ or emperor.² The story of how Hariścandra promised to sacrifice his son to Varuṇa, and how finally Śumāśēpa, a Brāhmaṇ lad, was sacrificed instead, is told in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and Bhāgavatapurāṇa. The latter also adds that there was a long-standing quarrel between Vaśiṣṭha and Viśvāmitra over this Kōsala king, Hariścandra. The Mahābhārata³ also speaks of the surpassing glories of King Hariścandra of Kōsala.

With Vāhu, who came to the throne of Kōsala several genera-

tions after Hariścandra, the Kōsala power suffered a great reverse.

Vāhu was defeated by his enemies, a confederacy of the Haihayas,

Tālajānghas and other allied Kṣatriya tribes, and was forced to

abdicate. He repaired to the forest where after his death his wife

gave birth to a son, who was reared with great care by Rṣi Aurya,

near whose hermitage the king had taken refuge and built his wood-

land home. This young prince, Sagara, had in him the making of a

great king, and when he came of age he sought to revive the glories

of Kōsala and place it once more in the high position of suzerain

power in India. Sagara almost exterminated the Haihayas. A

fanciful Purāṇa story says that Sagara had one son Asamañjas by

one of his queens, and sixty thousand sons by another. Abandoning

Asamañjas on account of his bad conduct; Sagara employed the sixty

thousand sons to defend against all aggressors the horse of the Aśvamedha in its unbridled career over the earth. In the course of their journey, they insulted Rṣi Kapila, and, as a result, they were reduced to ashes by him. Sagara then sent Asamañjas' son,

¹ 'Mām āhātā', 'he will suck me'.
² Vāyu purāṇa, Chap. 88, verse 118.
³ II, Chap. 12. See also Mbh., Amuśāsanaparvan, XIII, 65; XII, 20, XIII, 3.
Amśumān, in quest of the horse; he appeased the wrath of Kapila, succeeded in bringing back the horse, and obtained a promise from the Rṣi that his uncles would be purged of their sins when his grandson would bring down the heavenly Ganges to the pit which the uncles had excavated in their search for the horse. Thus the sacrifice was completed by Sagará who, pleased by the achievements of Amśumān, made over the Kośala throne to his son Asamāñjas.

The grandson of Amśumān was the great Bhagiratha who made his prowess felt far and wide and became a cakravartin, as the Mahābhārata tells us. A pretty story is told of him, in connection with the origin of the Ganges. Coming to know of his duty of rescuing his ancestors from their evil fate, Bhagiratha left the government of his vast empire in the hands of his ministers and succeeded by the severest penances in bringing the divine river down from the Himalayas, and thus filled up the pit excavated by his ancestors. The holy stream thereby acquired the designation of 'Bhagirathī'.

Further down in the list of Kośala sovereigns, we meet with Rituparna who was a contemporary of the celebrated Vidarbha monarch, Nāla. Rituparna employed Nāla as his charioteer when the latter suffered a reverse of fortune, and taught Nāla the secret art of dice-playing, acquiring from him in exchange the science of training horses. Rituparna’s son was Sudāsa who is identified by some with the king of the same name in the Rgveda. Sudāsa’s son was Mitrasaha Saudāsa, who became famous afterwards as Kalmāsapāda.

It is said in the Purāṇas that when Parasurāma was carrying out his terrible vow of exterminating the Kṣatriyas, Valīka, grandson of Saudāsa, was saved from his wrath by being surrounded by a number of naked women. He thus became known as Nārikavaca, i.e. ‘protected by women,’ and, as he was the source (mūla) from which future generations of Kṣatriyas sprang up, he also acquired the designation of Mūlaka (see Mūlaka chapter).

In the fourth generation after Mūlaka, we come to a Kośala sovereign Khaṭvāṅga who is spoken of as a samrāṭ whose great prowess led to the gods asking him to help them in their fight with the Asuras. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa (IX, 9) adds that Khaṭvāṅga, within the remaining short period of his life, devoted himself to meditation on the supreme spirit with such zeal as to obtain liberation

1 III, 108.
2 Rāmāyaṇa (I, 39-44) and Mahābhārata (III, 106-9) give the story at great length.
3 Mahābhārata, III, 71ff.
4 See Aśmaka chapter.
5 Vīṣṇupurāṇa, IV, 4, 39.
TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

(mokṣa). Khaṭvāṅga’s grandson was the great Raghu, and Raghu’s grandson was Daśaratha, the father of Rāma, in whom the glory of the Kośalan royal house reached its culmination.

After Rāma, the extensive Kośalan empire is said to have been divided amongst the sons of himself and his three brothers. The sons of the youngest brother, Śatrughna, ruled at Mathurā; the sons of Lakṣmīmaṇa established two kingdoms in the far north, in the neighbourhood of the Himalayas, while Bharata’s sons founded the cities of Takṣaśilā and Puskarāvati in the Gandhāra country, as the Vāyupurāṇa¹ tells us. The Kośala country proper is said to have been divided into two. In southern Kośala, Kuśa, the elder of the two sons of Rāma, became king, and transferred his capital from Ayodhyā to Kuśasthāli which he built on the Vindhyā range.² Lava, the younger, became the ruler of the northern Kośala country and set up his capital at the city of Saravasti or Sravasti which was still the seat of the Kośala sovereigns in the Buddha’s time.

Among the kings that followed Kuśa in the main line of the Kośala monarchs we do not meet with any great name until we come to Hiranyanābha Kauśalya who is said to have been a disciple of Rṣī Jaimini, from whom he learnt the science of Yoga, and imparted it in its turn to Vaiśṇavalkya.³ This distinction of proficiency in the Yogaśāstra is, however, transferred by some of the Purāṇas to Hiranyanābha’s son, whom the Vāyupurāṇa⁴ calls Vasīśṭha, and the Viṣṇupurāṇa,⁵ Puṣya. The fifth in descent from Puṣya was Maru or Māmi who is said to be living in the village of Kalāpa in a state of yoga, waiting to be the progenitor of the Kṣatriyas in the next cycle. Several generations down from this monarch was Brhadbala who led the Kośala troops to the Kurukṣetra war.

Many of the Purāṇas end their enumeration of the Kośala kings with Brhadbala, while some others, like the Brāhava,⁶ add a few more names of men who are called the future kings of the Ikṣvāku family. The Vāyupurāṇa also in a later chapter (Chap. 99) gives a list of the kings in the Ikṣvāku line after Brhadbala, whom it calls here Brhadratha. Five generations after this Brhadratha, the Vāyupurāṇa says that Divākara ‘is at present ruling the city of Ayodhyā’, and after Divākara it speaks of the so-called future kings of the line. This list is substantially the same as the one in the Brāhava, and one peculiar feature of these lists is that they

¹ 88, 189-90.
² Vāyupurāṇa, 88, 198: ‘Vināhyā-parvata-sānuṣu.’
³ Brāhava, IX, 12.
⁴ 88, 207-8.
⁵ IV, 4, 48.
⁶ IX, 12, 10.
include Śuddhodana and Rāhula, of Buddhist fame. The list in the Mātysyapurāṇa (Chap. 12) from Kuśa to the Bhārata war is considerably shorter than the others already referred to. It speaks of Śrutaya as the king who fell in the Bhārata war.

The history of Kośala in later times is known chiefly from Jaina and Buddhist literature. In the Jaina Kalpasūtra we read that on the death of Mahāvīra, the eighteen confederate kings of Kāśī and Kośala, the nine Mallakis and nine Licchavis, on the day of the new-moon instituted an illumination on the Posada (fasting day)¹. Jacobi observes²: 'According to the Jainas, the Licchavis and the Mallakis were the chiefs of Kāśī and Kośala. They seem to have succeeded the Aiksvākas who ruled there in the time of the Rāmāyana.'

The Pāli Buddhist literature is full of information about Kośala, which occupied a very prominent position at the time of the Buddha, though it was already being eclipsed by the growing power of Magadha.

The Pāli legends preserve the memory of kings of Kośala such as Kālasena, Dighiti, Dīghāyu, Mallika and Vatika. One of these had his capital at Ayodhya, some at Sāketa and the rest at Śrāvasti.³ No connected chronology of Kośalan kings can as yet be made out of these stray names; but the legends are nevertheless important, first, as clearly indicating a succession of three capitals in the kingdom of Kośala, Ayodhya, Sāketa and Śrāvasti; and, secondly, as broadly outlining the four main stages in the historical process which culminated at about the time of the rise of Buddhism in the unquestioned supremacy of Kośala over Kāśī.

With regard to the first of these questions, we have already seen that Ayodhya is mentioned in the Rāmāyana as the earlier capital of Kośala, and Śrāvasti as its later capital.⁴ Ayodhya was an unimportant town in Buddha's time, while both Sāketa and Śrāvasti stood out prominently among the six great cities of India.⁵

The story of the rivalry between Kāśī and Kośala has already been treated at some length in our chapter on the Kāśīs, so that a summary will suffice here. In the first stage, as brought out in the canonical legend of Dighiti and his son Dīghāyu Kumāra, King Brahmadatta appears as the powerful king of Kāśī invading the kingdom of Kośala, led by a love of conquest, easily defeating the Kośalan king Dighiti, and ordering the execution of the Kośalan

² Jaina Sūtras, Pt. II, p. 321, n. 3.
⁴ Ibid., p. 99. Cf. Ghaṭa Jātaka (No. 454) and Navāyamiga Jātaka (No. 385).
king and queen when they were detected in the realm of Kāsi living harmlessly in disguise. We then see how the Kośala prince Dighāyu, after having gained the favour of the king of Kāsi and risen to the position of a general, tried to avenge his parents, and was re-established in his father's kingdom.

In the second stage, as portrayed in the Rājovāda Jātaka (Fausboll, No. 334), Kāsi and Kośala appear as two equally powerful kingdoms, flourishing side by side, each with its inner circle, outer districts, and border-lands, one ruled over by its king, Brahmadatta, and the other by King Mallika. We see the ruler of Kāsi following the religious principle of 'conquering wrath by wrathlessness' (abhodhena jine krodham), and the ruler of Kośala following the strong administrative principle of 'applying hardness for the hard and softness for the soft' (dālham, dāljassa khipati Malliko mudunā mudunפ).

In the third stage, as disclosed in the Mahāsīlava Jātaka (Fausboll, No. 51), the king of Kośala appears as taking advantage of the goodness of the king of Kāsi and invading the neighbouring kingdom, and the king of Kāsi as remaining passive in the consciousness of his superior dignity and religious security.

Finally, in the fourth stage, Kāsi was absorbed by Kośala, and we find King Mahākośala, father and immediate predecessor of Pasenadi, wielding sovereign power over the extended realm of Kāsi-Kośala. Mahākośala gave his daughter Kosaladevi in marriage to King Bimbisāra of Magadhā, and gave her a village in Kāsi yielding a revenue of a hundred thousand for bath and perfume money. When Ajātashatru put his father Bimbisāra to death, Kosaladevi died of grief. For some time after her death, Ajātashatru continued to enjoy the revenues of the village, but Pasenadi, king of Kośala, resolved that no parricide should have a village which had been given to his sister and so confiscated it. A war ensued between Ajātashatru and Pasenadi, in which Ajātashatru was at first victorious, but was afterwards taken prisoner by the Kośala king. After he had been subdued, however, he was treated generously by Pasenadi who gave him his daughter in marriage, and even bestowed the disputed village on her as a wedding gift.

1 Vinaya Pitaka, Mahāvagga, pp. 342–9.
2 See also Jātaka, III, 21ff., 487; and Kāsi chapter of the present work, where this story and the similar one of Prince Chatta are dealt with.
3 Jātaka (Fausboll), I, 262f.; see also I, 409; Udāna Comm., 123; and see Kāsi chapter.
In addition to the stories of the rivalry between Kāśi and Kośala which we have already dealt with in the Kāśi chapter, two more may be mentioned,—the stories of Dabbaśena, king of Kośala, who seized a holy king of Benares, and was discomfited by a mystic experience; and of Manoja, king of Benares, and a king of Kośala. The latter story is related in the Sonananda Jātaka. Manoja pitched his camp near the city of Kośala (i.e. Śrāvasti?), and sent a message to the king of Kośala asking him either to give battle or to surrender. The king accepted the challenge, and a fierce fight ensued, in which the king of Kośala was defeated, but he was allowed to retain his kingdom.

From the Jātaka stories of the two neighbouring countries of Kāśi and Kośala, it is evident that there was great mutual jealousy between the two kingdoms actuated by a constant spirit of hostility. Each was looking out for an opportunity to inflict a defeat on the other, and annex either the whole or at least a part of the other's dominions. Sometimes they also appear to have been connected by matrimony, and it is probable that the two countries were united sometimes by conquest and sometimes perhaps by a common heir succeeding to the throne of both countries. Even in Vedic times they were closely associated, as is shown by the phrase Kāśi-Kośala, which occurs in Vedic literature.

In the Dīgha Nikāya we read that Pasenadi, king of Kāśi-Kośala, used to collect taxes from the inhabitants of these two countries. He used to share his income with his subordinates. The Mahānagga, however, mentions a Kāsika-rājā (king of Kāśi?) who sent a robe to Jivaka. Buddhaghosa says that he was a brother of Pasenadi, and son of the same father. He was probably a sub-king of Pasenadi, who managed to extend his rule so far as to reign as a supreme monarch with four sub-kings under him. Later, before the end of Ajātaśatru's reign, some parts of Kośala were annexed to the kingdom of Magadha, and Kośala finally disappears from history as an independent kingdom, evidently being absorbed by Magadha. There is nothing surprising about this course of events, for, as the Cambridge History of India points out, India appeared as a number of kingdoms and republics with a constant tendency towards amalgamation.

1 Jātaka, III, p. 13.  
2 Ibid., V, pp. 315-16.  
3 Vin., I, 281.  
4 Vinaya Texts, II, 195, n. 2.  
5 Malalasekera, Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names, s.v. Kāśi.  
7 Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 79.  
8 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 45.  
9 I, p. 190.
In the north, the Kosala country bordered on the region occupied by the Sakyas, and there were mutual jealousies between the two peoples, often developing into war. When Pasenadi was at the height of his power, the Sakyas became his vassals, and he received homage from them. The story of how Pasenadi acquired a Sakyan bride (Mallikā, a Vasabhākhattiyā) has been related in our Sakya chapter. Pasenadi had a great admiration for the Buddha, and many stories are told of his dealings with the Buddha and his disciples. The king became the Buddha’s disciple after meeting him at Jetavana.

Pasenadi was famous for his charity. While Buddha was residing at Sravasti in the Ārāma of Anāthapiṇḍika at Jetavana, the king made gifts for a week on an immense scale. These gifts were known as asadisasāna (incomparable charity). The king of Kosala provided Kunda-Dhāna with all necessities when the latter left the world after hearing the Buddha preach. A great preaching hall (Saddhamma Mahāsālā) was built by Pasenadi for the Buddha. On another occasion, Pasenadi performed a great sacrifice in which 500 bulls, 500 calves, 500 goats, and other animals were offered. Buddha, when requested to attend, expressed his disapproval of this sacrifice, as he was against the taking of life by slaughter.

After the death of his wife, Mallikā, Pasenadi went to the Buddha at Jetavana, and He consoled him in his grief. Pasenadi was also consoled by the Buddha when his grandmother died.

The Buddhist texts contain many stories about eminent men and women of Kosala, and many of these are in some way associated with Pasenadi. For instance, Mallikā, queen of Pasenadi, built an ārāma at the Kosala capital, Sravasti, known as Mallikārāma, where the teacher Potthapāda went to live. The Dīgha Nikāya tells us that Pokkharasādi, a famous Brahman teacher of Kosala, enjoyed some property given to him by Pasenadi. The king did not allow him to enter his presence, but used to consult him behind a screen. Buddhaghosa also furnishes some details about this sage. Pokkharasādi or Pokkharasādi, says he, was a Brahmana, living at Ukkatthanagara, which had been given him by the king of Kosala, Pasenadi, as Brahmadeyya (i.e. as a Brahmin’s fee). He was well versed in the Vedas and in the arts, and the king bestowed Ukkatthanagara upon him because he was satisfied by a display

1 Dīgha Nikāya, II, p. 83.
2 Samyutta Nikāya, I, pp. 68-70.
3 Pīḷhavimāna, Vīmānavatthu Comm., pp. 5-6.
5 Samyutta Nikāya, I, p. 76.
6 Anguttara Nikāya, III, p. 57.
7 Samyutta Nikāya, I, p. 97.
8 Dīgha Nikāya, I, pp. 178ff.
9 Ibid., I, p. 103.
of his learning. A certain Aggidatta was the purohita or royal chaplain of Mahākosalas, father of Pasenadi, and Pasenadi also accepted him as his purohita. Later, Moggallāna converted Aggidatta and his disciples to Buddhism.

Another chaplain of Pasenadi was Bāvari who was the son of the chaplain of Pasenadi's father. Pasenadi bestowed honour and wealth upon Bāvari, and learnt the arts (sippa) from him in his youth. Bāvari later took ordination and lived in the royal garden, many Brahmaṇas becoming his disciples. Pasenadi served him daily with the four requisites. Afterwards Bāvari and his disciples went to the Deccan. Pasenadi also invited two prominent merchants, Mendakasetthi and Dhanarijayasetthi, to settle in Kosala.

The story of the conversion of the Kosala country to the Buddhist faith is told in some detail in the Majjhima Nikāya. Here we read that, in the course of his journey over N. India, on one occasion, the Buddha was sojourning in Kosala, and went to Sālā, a Brahmin village of Kosala. The Brahmin householders of Sālā went to see him and asked him various metaphysical questions which he answered to their satisfaction, and they became his life-long disciples. Once the Buddha went to Nagaravinda, a Brahmin village of Kosala. There many Brahmin householders came to see him, attracted by reports of his fame as a great teacher. After listening to his preaching, they became converted to the new faith. Another Brahmin village visited by the Buddha in Kosala was Venāgapura. Here, too, the Brahmin householders went to pay their respects to him and talk with him. Buddha spent much of his time at Śravasti and most of his sermons were delivered there.

As we have seen, the capital cities of Kosala were Śravasti (Pāli Śāvatthi) and Sāketa. Many fanciful explanations of the name Śāvatthi have been suggested. For instance, it was said that Śāvatthi was so called because the sage Śāvattha resided there. The author of the Pañcaśūlamāri holds that everything required by human beings is to be found there: hence it is called Śāvatthi (sabba and

---

1 Sumangalavilāsinī, I, pp. 244-5.
3 Suttamātā Comm., II, pp. 579ff.
6 Majjhima Nikāya, III, pp. 290ff.
7 Āṅguttara Nikāya, I, pp. 180ff. See also Samyutta Nikāya, V, pp. 352ff.
8 Samyutta Nikāya, V, pp. 349ff.
Sāvatthi was situated in what is now the province of Oudh. It is now known as Maheth of the village group Saheth-Maheth on the borders of the Gonda and Bahraich districts of the United Provinces.

The Pāli Buddhist literature is full of facts regarding the glories of Sāvatthi. Many of the Buddha's most edifying discourses were delivered at the Kosala capital, which was the place of residence of two of the most munificent benefactors of the Buddhist Samgha, viz. Anāthapiṇḍika, the great merchant, and Visākhā Migāramatā, the most liberal-hearted of the ladies figuring in the Buddhist literature. Sāvatthi is mentioned in the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta of the Dīgha Nikāya as a great city. It was the resort of many wealthy nobles, Brahmans, heads of houses and believers in the Tathāgata. In one of the Jātakas we read that there was at Sāvatthi a rich merchant who was worth eighteen crores; in another we read that at Sāvatthi, in the house of Anāthapiṇḍika, food was always ready for 500 brethren, and the same thing is told about Visākhā and the king of Kosala. In the Vīmaṇavatthu we read that the Kosalas and especially the inhabitants of Sāvatthi were remarkable for their charity, which, they believed, was one of the principal ways of obtaining heavenly bliss.

References to the connection of the Buddha and his disciples with Sāvatthi are too numerous to be dealt with in full. Some famous names in the annals of Buddhism which are associated with the Kosalan capital are those of Nandaka, Mahāpajāpatī Gotami, Sāriputta and Ānanda. Sāvatthi contributed a fair number of bhikkhus and bhikkhunis to the Order. For instance, Mahāsāvatthānā, a banker of Sāvatthi, had two sons, the elder of whom became a bhikkhu under the Buddha and was known as Cakkhupāla.

---

2. Vīśupurāṇa, Chap. 2, Amśa 4; cf. Bhagavata-purāṇa, 9th skandha, Chap. 6, sl. 21; Māṣyapurāṇa, Chap. 21, sl. 30; Kūmārapurāṇa, Chap. 23, sl. 19; Līṅgapuruṇa, Chap. 95.
5. Jātaka, VI, p. 68.
6. Ibid., IV, p. 144; see also pp. 236-7.
8. Ibid.
latissa, the Buddha’s cousin, lived at Savatthi as a bhikkhu.\(^1\) Pañcārā was the daughter of a rich banker of Savatthi. She afterwards became a bhikkhuni.\(^2\) Kisāgotami, also the daughter of a setti of Savatthi, became a bhikkhuni after the death of her only child.\(^3\) Nanda, the son of Mahāpajāpati Gotami, was made a bhikkhu by the Buddha at Savatthi.\(^4\) Others who became bhikkhus were Ajita.\(^{10}\) In the Therīgāthā we read that Sumanā was born at Savatthi as the sister of the king of Kosāla. She heard the Master preach the doctrine to King Pasenadī. She put faith in the Buddha, entered the Order, and afterwards became an arahant.\(^{11}\)

As we may gather from the various accounts, there were many merchants at Savatthi. They used to go to Videha with cartloads of merchandise to sell there, and take Videhan commodities in exchange.\(^{12}\) Some merchants of Savatthi went to Suvarnabhūmi in a ship,\(^{14}\) and others went to the northern regions (Uttarāpatha), taking with them 500 cartloads of merchandise.\(^{15}\)

Sāvatthi was visited by the two famous Chinese Pilgrims, Fa-Hien, and Hsüan Tsang, but the glories of the once splendid capital of Kosāla had departed at the time of their visit. When Fa-Hien went to Sāvatthi (in the fifth century A.D.), the inhabitants of the city were few, amounting in all to little more than two hundred families. The pilgrim refers to King Prasenajit of Kosāla, and he saw the place where the old vihāra of Mahāpajāpati Gotami was built, the wells and walls of the house of Anāthapindika, and the site where Aṅgulimālī attained arahantship. Topes were built at all these places.\(^{16}\)

Cunningham points out on the authority of Hsüan Tsang that five centuries after Buddha or one century after Kaniska, Vikramāditya, king of Sāvatthi, became a persecutor of the Buddhists, and the famous Manorhita, author of the Vibhāsāsāstra, committed suicide after being defeated in argument by the Brāhmaṇas. During the reign of Vikramāditya’s successor, the Brāhmaṇas were over-

---

come by Vasubandhu, the eminent disciple of Manibodita. In the
third century A.D., Sravasti seems to have been under the rule of
its own kings, for we find a Kuiradha and his nephew mentioned
as rajas between A.D. 275 and 319. Still later, Sravasti was a
dependency of the powerful Gupta dynasty of Magadha, as the
neighbouring city of Saketa is especially said to have belonged to
the Gupta. From this time Sravasti gradually declined.

A famous Buddhist site at Sravasti was the Jetavana, where
Anatapindika built a vihara which was originally of seven storeys.
This vihara was dedicated to Buddha and the Buddhist Church
by Prince Jeta.¹

In later times, North Kosala itself came to be known as Sravasti
in order to distinguish it from South Kosala. Hsüan Tsang, who
visited India in the seventh century A.D., says that Sravasti, i.e.
North Kosala, was about 600 li in circuit. Although it was mostly
in ruins, there were some inhabitants. The country had good crops
and an equable climate, and the people were honest in their ways,
and given to learning, and fond of good works. There were some
hundreds of Buddhist monasteries, most of which were in ruins.
The brethren, who were very few, were Sammatiyas. There were a
hundred deva-temples, and the non-Buddhists were very numerous.
The preaching hall built by Pasenadi for the Buddha still survived,
and there were several topes,² many Buddhist monasteries, and many
Mahayanaist brethren.³

Another important town of Kosala was Saketa, which was the
capital in the period immediately preceding the Buddha's time.⁴
The road from Saketa to Sravasti was haunted by robbers, who were
dangerous to passers-by. Even the bhikkhus, who had very little
in their possession, were robbed of their belongings and sometimes
killed by the robbers. Royal soldiers used to come to the spot
where robbery was committed, and used to kill those robbers whom
they could arrest.⁵

Besides Savatthi and Saketa, we find mention of other towns in
the Kosala country, e.g. Dandakappaka, Nalakapana, Setavya
and Pañkadha. Once the Buddha gave a discourse to Ananda at
Dandakappaka,⁶ and he also visited Nalakapana, where he dwelt at
Palasavana, and gave religious instruction to the bhikkhus on an
uposattha night.⁷ On another occasion Kumarakassapa went to
Setavya with a large number of bhikkhus. The chief of Setavya,

¹ Legge, Travels of Fa-Hien, pp. 56-7; Khuddakaṇḍha Comm., pp. 110-2.
³ Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 51.
⁵ Ibid., V, pp. 122ff.
⁶ Aṅgulikara Nikāya, III, pp. 402ff.
Pāyāsi, enjoyed enormous wealth which had been given him by King Pasenadi. He was a false believer, but was converted by Kumāra-kassapa.¹ The Buddha visited Pānokadhā, and gave instruction to Kassapagotta, a bhikkhu who was dwelling there.²

In the Samyutta Nikāya³ we find mention of a village named Toranavatthu, between Sāvatthī and Sāketa. In this village, the bhikkhuji Khemā was observing lent, when Pasenadi spent one night there on his way from Sāketa to Sāvatthī. Hearing of Khemā, he went to her, and she answered to his satisfaction questions regarding life after death.⁴

The Jātakas and Vinaya texts are full of details about Kośala. In one Jātaka there is a vivid description of a drought in Kośala, when the crops were withered, and ponds, tanks and lakes were dried up.⁵ Gangs of burglars, highwaymen and murderers were not unknown in Kośala,⁶ and the inhabitants were often carried away and killed by them.⁷ Their activities could not easily be checked, for the Kośala country included the forest-clad hills and valleys of the outer spur of the Himalayas.

In the Pabbajjā Suttanta of the Suttanipāta (p. 73), we read that the inhabitants of Kośala were healthy and powerful. One Jātaka story⁸ says that in Kośala there was a Brahmin who by simply smelling a sword could say whether it was lucky or not.

The Kośalan kings and princes received a good education, usually being ‘finished’ at Taxila. For instance, in the Brahachatta Jātaka we read that Chatta, a son of the king of Kośala, fled to Taxila when his father was taken prisoner, and there he mastered the three Vedas and eighteen vijjās. While at Taxila he also learnt the science of discovering hidden treasure, and on his return he acquired his deceased father’s buried wealth, engaged troops and reconquered the lost kingdom.⁹ King Pasenadi was also educated at Taxila; Mahāli, a śrāvaka prince, and a Malla prince of Kuśinārā were his class-mates.¹⁰

Rhys Davids points out¹¹ that a conversational dialect, probably based on the local dialect of Śrāvasti, was in general use among Kośala officials, among merchants and among the more cultured classes, not only throughout the Kośala dominions but east and west

¹ Dīgha Nikāya, II, pp. 316ff.
² Aṅguttara Nikāya, I, p. 236.
³ Vol. IV, pp. 374ff.
⁴ Samyutta Nikāya, IV, pp. 374ff.
⁶ Ibid., Vol. II, p. 139.
¹⁰ Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 153.
¹¹ Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 153.
from Delhi to Patna, and north and south from Śrāvastī to Avanti. Jacobi observes that the Rāmāyaṇa was composed in Kośala on the basis of ballads popularly recited by rhapsodists throughout the district. Kośala was also the very centre of Buddhist literary activity.¹

¹ Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 183.
CHAPTER XXIX

THE VATSAS

The Vaṣas or Vatsas were one of the peoples of Vedic Aryandom from the earliest period. A certain Vaṣa Aśvya is mentioned in several hymns of the first and eighth maṇḍalas of the Rgveda, and also once in the tenth, as a protégé of the Āsvins.¹ He is also mentioned in the Sāṅkhāyana Śrauta Sūtra.² It would seem that this Vaṣa Aśvya was a Brahmin Rṣi and not a Kṣatriya. He is said to have been the author of the Vaṣa hymn in the Brāhmaṇas and the Āranyakas.³ It is possible to take Vaṣa as a personal name, but it is equally likely that Vaṣa here is a tribal designation and Aśvya the personal proper name.

Vaṣa is mentioned as the name of a people in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa ⁴ which says, ‘…Therefore, in this firm middle established quarter (Dhruva-madhyama), whatever kings there are of the Kuru-Paṅcālas with the Vaṣas and Uṣīnaras, they are anointed for kingship…’ Here we observe that the Vaṣas are spoken of as one of the Vedic tribes living in the Dhruva-madhyama dīk or the Madhyadeśa of Manu, along with the Kurus, Paṅcālas and Uṣīnaras. Their connection with this last tribe appears also to be proved by the Gopatha Brāhmaṇa (I, 2, 9) where Oldenberg reads Sa-vaṣa-Uṣīnaresu instead of Śavasa in the printed edition. In the Kauṣitaki Upaniṣad, too,⁵ we have mention of the Vaṣas together with the Uṣīnaras, Mātysyas, Kurus and Paṅcālas. The Pāli Āṅguttara Nikāya mentions the land of the Vaṃśas (identified by Oldenberg with the Vaṣas) as one of the sixteen Mahājanapadas, along with the Cedis, Kurus, Paṅcālas, Mātysyas, Śūrasenas, etc., who appear to have been their close neighbours. The Janavasabha-Suttanata associates the Vaṃśas rather with the Cedis than with the Uṣīnaras, and mentions the powerful ruling peoples of the time in such groups as Kāśī-Kośala, Vajji-Mallā, Cedi-Vamsā, Kuru-Paṅcāla and Maccha-Sūrasenā.

In the Pāli Buddhist canon, King Udēna of the Vaṃśas is said to have been a contemporary of the Buddha, and to have survived him. Both in Pāli Buddhist and in Brahmanic Sanskrit literature,

¹ R.V., I, 112, 10; 116, 21; VIII, 8, 20; 24, 14; 46, 21, 23; 50, 9; X, 40, 7.
² XVI, 11, 13.
³ Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, VIII, 6, 2, 3; IX, 3, 3, 19; Aitareya Āranyakā, I, 5, 1, 2; Sāṅkhāyana A., II, 10, 11.
⁴ VIII, 14, 3.
⁵ IV, 1.
stories are recited about this King Udena of the Vamśas (Pāli) or Udayana of the Vatsas (Sanskrit). His capital is mentioned as Kosambī or Kauśāmbarī respectively, so evidently the Vamśas and Vatsas are identical. In the Jaina books the same people are spoken of as Vaccas.¹

The country of the Vamśas or Vatsas must therefore have been located round about Kauśāmbarī, the position of which has been identified by Cunningham with Kosām, not very far from Allahabad. According to the Byakṣamhiṭā, the land of the Vatsas was in the middle region. It probably lay to the north-east of Avanti along the bank of the Jumna, southwards from Kośala² and to the west of Allahabad.³ The Chinese pilgrim Hsian Tsang, who speaks of the land of the Vatsas as the Kauśāmbarī country, says that it was about 6,000 li in circuit.⁴

The Mahābhārata contains certain items of traditional information regarding the Vatṣa-bhūmi or land of the Vatsas. In one passage,⁵ we are told that, prior to the Rājasūya sacrifice performed by Yudhiṣṭhira, Bhīmasena led an expedition towards the east and conquered the Vatsa-bhūmi; while in the Vanapravāna,⁶ it is stated that Vatsa was conquered by Karna. Elsewhere⁷ we read that the Haihayas of the Cedi country seized the capital of the Vatsas after killing Haryāśva who must have been a king of Vatsa. In the Bhīṣmapravāna,⁸ it is said that in the Kurukṣetra war, the Vatsa army took the side of the Pāṇḍavas. Nakula and Sahadeva along with the Vatsas and others guarded the left side of the Pāṇḍava army.

According to the tradition in the Harivamśa, the Vatṣa-bhūmi was founded by a royal prince of Kāśī, while, according to the Mahābhārata proper, its capital Kauśāmbarī was founded by the Cedi prince Kusāmbī. The Pāli tradition in the Mahāvamsa Commentary⁹ suggests that fourteen pre-Iksvāku kings of the Solar dynasty, headed by Baladatta, ruled the Vatsa kingdom with their capital at Kauśāmbarī.

The Purāṇas tell us that after Hastinapura was carried away by the Ganges, Nicākṣu who was the fifth in descent from the Puru prince Parīkṣit, grandson of Arjuna, transferred his capital to Kauśāmbarī where altogether twenty-five Puru kings,¹⁰ from Nicākṣu to

¹ Uvāsagadāsā, Hoenle, Vol. II, Appendix I, p. 7. ² Buddhist India, p. 3.
³ N. L. Dey, Geographical Dictionary, p. 100.
⁵ Chap. 30, pp. 241-2.
⁶ Amäśasamparvan, Chap. 30, p. 1809.
⁸ Chap. 50, p. 924.
⁹ Hsiian Tszang, Kosam, p. 128, 130.
¹⁰ Rhys Davids (Camb. Hist., I, p. 308) says: 'The later list contains the names of 29 Puru kings who lived after the war. They reigned first at Hastinapura, the
Kṣemaka, reigned.¹ In this genealogy we are given the succession of the kings of Vatsa from Nīcāksa to Kṣemaka without the length of their reigns. Udayana, who was a contemporary of the Buddha, is represented as the son and successor of Śatānīka; and the four successors of Udayana as Vahinara, Daṇḍapāṇi, Niraṃitra and Kṣemaka. The evidence of Buddhist literature in general, and of the Pāli canon in particular, clearly proves the contemporaneity of Udayana, the king of Vatsa, with Caṇḍa Pradyota (Pāli Caṇḍa Pajjota) of Avanti, Prasenajit (Pasenadi) of Kośala, and Bimbisāra and Ajātaśatru of Magadha. It is interesting to find that the Purāṇas mention just four kings who succeeded to the throne of Avanti after Caṇḍa Pradyota, and four kings who succeeded to the throne of Kośala after Prasenajit.² The total length of the reigns of the five kings of Avanti from Pradyota to Nandivardhana is given as 138 years, Pradyota’s four successors having reigned altogether for 115 years.³ Among the kings of N. India who were contemporaries of the Buddha, Bimbisāra pre-deceased him by about 8 years, and Ajātaśatru survived the Buddha by 16 years; Prasenajit, who was of the same age as the Buddha, died almost in the same year; and though both Pradyota and Udayana survived the Buddha, they could not have lived or reigned for more than 10 or 15 years after the Buddha’s demise. Thus, on the whole, it may be surmised that Avanti, Kośala and Vatsa retained their independence for about a century after the Buddha’s death, and lost it only during the period of the Nandas. We know that when King Aśoka Maurya ascended the throne of Magadha, the three ancient kingdoms of Kośala, Vatsa and Avanti were already included in the Maurya empire. Ujjēni or Avanti was placed under a Viceroy of Aśoka, while Kauśāṃbi or Vatsa was governed by a Mahāmātra.⁴

The Lalitavistara contains a tradition according to which King Udayana was born on the same day as the Buddha.⁵ He appears to have strengthened his political position by matrimonial alliances ancient capital of the Kuru princes, which is usually identified with a ruined site in the Meerut district on the old bed of the Ganges, lat. 29° 9’ N., long 78° 3’ E. (Pargiter, Märk. Pur., p. 355); but when this city was destroyed by an inundation of the Ganges in the reign of Nichakshu, they removed the seat of their rule to Kauśāṃbi. Another of their capitals was Indraprastha in the Kuru plain, the ancient city of the Pāṇḍu princes . . .

¹ For the genealogy in full, see Pargiter, Dynasties of the Kali Age, pp. 65-6.
² Ibid., pp. 67-8.
³ Ibid., p. 68.
⁴ Aśoka’s Kauśāṃbi Schism Pillar Edict.
⁵ Vīdē Poutaux, Tr. of the Tibetan version of the Lalitavistara; cf. Rockhill, The Life of the Buddha, pp. 16-17.
with the neighbouring kings, particularly with King Canda Pradyota of Avanti. Stories of Udayana and his queens abound in Sanskrit and Pāli literature, and provide the themes for no less than four dramas.¹ The Pāli legends tell us that Udayana ascended the throne of Vatsa by the assertion and establishment of his rightful claim as the son and successor of his father Parantapa.² In the Udana, Vatsa is described as a pavanirajja, i.e. a kingdom in which succession to the throne was determined by the law of primo-geniture.³ In most of the other references, whether Brahmanical, Jaina, or Buddhist, Satānīka (better, Satānīka II) is represented as Udayana's father.⁴ In the Skandapurāṇa alone, Sahasrānīka is represented as the father and Satānīka as the grandfather of Udayana.⁵ The Skandapurāṇa speaks of Satānīka as a king of Kauśāmbī who belonged to the family of Arjuna, was powerful and intelligent, beloved by his subjects, and who was killed in a war between the Devas and the Asuras.⁶ According to the Jaina tradition, Udayana's father Satānīka II invaded Campā, the capital of Āṅga, during the reign of King Dadhivāhana.⁷ According to the Skandapurāṇa and Vividhatirthankalpa, Udayana's mother was Queen Mṛgāvati, granddaughter of Kṛtavarmā, king of Ayodhyā.⁸ In the plays of Bhāsa, Udayana is described as Vaidehiputra, which indicates that his mother was princess of Vidhe.⁹

Udayana was a warlike king who kept a strong army noted for its elephants. Envious of his fellow-monarch's wealth and prosperity, Canda Pradyota of Avanti laid a trap for Udayana when he was visiting the frontier of his kingdom, and succeeded in taking him captive. He made his escape from captivity with the help of Vāsuladattā or Vāsavadattā, daughter of Canda Pradyota, who eloped with Udayana and became his chief queen.¹⁰

¹ Bhāsa's Saṃpannavasavadattā and Pratījñāyugandharāyānā; Harsa's Raśñīvalī and Priyadarśīkā. The legends of Udayana are also to be found in the Brahmakhandā of the Skandapurāṇa, the Jaina Vividhatirthankalpa, the Lalitavistara, Tibetan Buddhist literature, Pāli Udāna, Sanskrit Mākandika Avadāṇa, and the Sīyā-ki of Esān Tsang.
² Dharmapāda Commm., I, pp. 165 foll.
⁴ Cf. The Romantic Legend of Sakyā Buddha, p. 28, in which King Pih-Shing or 'Hundred Excellences', i.e. Satānīka, is represented as the son of Tsien-Shing ('Thousand Excellences' or Sahasrānīka). It should be noted that 'anika' can also mean 'army, host'; it would appear that Parantapa, Satānīka and Sahasrānīka may all be taken to refer to the valour and martial strength of the king of Vatsa.
⁵ Chap. 5, Brahmakhandā.
⁶ Skandapurāṇa, Chap. V, Brahmakhandā.
⁹ Vividhatirthankalpa, p. 23; Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 59.
¹⁰ Dharmapāda Commm., I, pp. 191–9, and Saṃpannavasavadattā.
According to the Pāli legend, Udayana was born and brought up in the Himalayan region, in the hermitage of a sage who was previously a native of Allakappa. He was named Udena or Udayana because of his birth, just at sunrise, on the top of a hill, and under a clear sky.\(^1\) According to another Buddhist legend in the Tibetan Dulva, ‘as the world was illuminated at his birth, as with the sun, he was called Udayana’.\(^2\)

Udayana is said to have married Sāmāvatī (Śyāmāvatī), daughter of a banker of Bhaddavatī, who was brought up in the family of the banker Ghosita of Kauśāmbi. Another of his wives was Māgandiyā or Mākandikā, an exquisitely beautiful Brahmin girl from the Kuru country,\(^3\) and yet another was Padmāvatī, daughter of King Ajātaśatru of Magadha.\(^4\) The Ratnavali represents Udayana as having also married Śagarikā, a princess from Ceylon. In the Udenavatthu, each of his three queens Vāsuladattā, Sāmāvatī and Māgandiyā, is said to have been attended by 500 dancing girls. The Priyadarśikā also speaks of a matrimonial alliance made by Udayana with Drīhavarman, king of Aṅga. We are told that Udayana once helped Drīhavarman to regain his throne.

In the Jaina Vīvidhātirihakalpa (p. 23), Udayana is praised as an expert in the science of music (gandhabhaveya-niñña). He ruled despotically and sometimes recklessly. When his queen Māgandiyā was found guilty of putting her co-wife Sāmāvatī to death, Udayana ordered her to be buried alive.\(^5\) According to one Buddhist tradition, a hermit fled to Śrāvasti when his life was threatened by Udayana.\(^6\) On one occasion, in a fit of drunken jealousy, Udayana tortured the Buddhist Thera Piṇḍola Bhāradvāja by causing a nest of brown ants to be tied to his body. Later, however, he consulted this same Piṇḍola about various spiritual matters,\(^6\) and ended by professing himself his disciple. We have no evidence that he proceeded very far along the path, but his fame has lasted in a curious way in Buddhist legends. Udayana is said to have made a golden image of the Buddha,\(^7\) and Hsüan Tsang brought back from India many things including a statue of the Buddha carved out of sandal-wood on a transparent pedestal. This figure is described as a copy of the statue which Udayana, king of Kauśāmbi,

\(^1\) Dhammapada Comm., I, p. 165.
\(^3\) Udenavatthu, pp. 101 foll.
\(^4\) Sāvatthāsaccaudattā, Pratijñāyangandharāyaṇa.
\(^5\) Watters, On Yuan Chwang, I, p. 368.
\(^6\) Sāmyutta Nikāya, IV, pp. 110-2.
\(^7\) Edkins, Chinese Buddhism, p. 49, 2nd Ed.
had made. It is said in the Si-yu-ki that in the city of Kauśāmbī, within an old palace, there was a large vihāra about 60 feet high, containing a figure of the Buddha carved out of sandal wood above which was a stone canopy. It was the work of the King U-to-yen-na (Udayana). By its spiritual qualities it produced a divine light, which from time to time shone forth. The princes of various countries had used their power to try to carry off this statue, but although many men tried, none could move it. They therefore worshipped copies of it, and pretended that their likeness was a true one, the original of all such figures. The Petavatthu records the erection of a vihāra by one Uttara, a wood-carver, in the service of King Udayana. The figure was known to have been made for King Udayana by a distinguished artist of the time. But nowhere in the earlier tradition is Udayana mentioned as the builder of any such temple or statue.

Immediately prior to the rise of Buddhism, there were four powerful monarchies in N. India, each of which was enlarged by the annexation of a neighbouring territory. Thus Āṅga was annexed to Magadha, Kāśi to Kośala, Bharga to Vatsa, and Śūrasena to Avanti. The kingdom of Vatsa must have served as a buffer State between Magadha and Avanti on the one hand, and Kośala and Avanti on the other. Bhāsa in his Svāpnavāsavadattā tells us that an upstart named Arunī ousted Udayana and seized the throne of Vatsa.

As in earlier days, so during the reign of Aśoka in the third century B.C., Kauśāmbī stood on the high road connecting Vidisa and Ujjayini with Benares and Pātaliputra. Aśoka appears to have been an overlord of Vatsa, and to have placed its administration in charge of Mahāmātras with their headquarters at Kauśāmbī. Kauśāmbī was probably the place of residence of Aśoka's second queen Kāluvāki, and her son Prince Tīvala; the edict on her donations was promulgated only at Kauśāmbī.

However that may be, Vatsa was finally absorbed into the Magadhian empire, probably during the reign of Śiśunaga. We may infer from the inscriptions at Pabhosā that in the second century

---

3 This Uttara had friendly relations with Mahākaccāyana and various Buddhist Theras, but his mother was a believer in false doctrines, see Paramatthadhipati on the Petavatthu, pp. 140–4; cf. also B. C. Law, The Buddhist Conception of Spirits, 2nd Ed., pp. 89–90.
4 Watters, On Yuan Chwung, I, p. 368.
5 Svāpnavāsavadattā, Sukthankar's trsl., p. 64.
6 Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures, 1918, pp. 81 and 84.
B.C., Vatsa (Kauśāmbī) and Pañcāla (Ahicchatra) were governed by branches of the same royal family, and that both kingdoms acknowledged the suzerainty of the Śuṅgas.\(^1\) Dhanabhūti, a Śunga feudatory, is called Vacchīputa, son of a princess of Vatsa.\(^2\) It may be that King Dhanabhūti, the donor of Bharhut gateways, his father Āgaraju and grandfather Viśvadeva were all local chiefs of Vatsa under the Śuṅgas.\(^3\) However that may be, the stūpa of Bharhut was erected in the Vatsa country not earlier than the second century B.C., the first pillar of its main railing being donated by Čhāpādevī, wife of Revatīmitra, of Vidiśā.\(^4\) Revatīmitra was in all probability a member of the Śuṅga-Mitra family, stationed at Vidiśā. If this is so, we can say that when the Bharhut railing was erected, the Śuṅga dominions extended as far west as Vatsa and Avanti. As clearly proved by the inscriptions, when the Bharhut gateways were erected by King Dhanabhūti not earlier than the first century B.C., the Vatsa country was included in the Śuṅga empire (Suganam rāje).\(^5\)

An inscription on the gateway on the fort of Kara, dated Samvat 1093 (1036 A.D.), records the grant of the village of Payalāsa (modern Prāśa) in the Kauśāmbī-maṇḍala to one Mathura-vikaṣṭa of Pabhosā together with its customary duties, royalties, taxes, gold and tithes in perpetuity to his descendants by Mahārājādhirāja Yaśahpāla',\(^6\) who was the last Pratihāra king of Kanauj. The history of Vatsa or the country of Kauśāmbī as a political unit ended with the rule of Yaśahpāla of Kanauj.

As we have seen, the Bhagga or Bharga State was a dependency of the Vatsa kingdom. We learn from the preface to the Dhonaṣākhu Jātaka, No. 353, that Prince Bodhi, the son of Udayana, king of the Vatsas (by his queen Vāsūladattā or Vāsavadattā), dwelt on the Sumsumāragiri and built a palace called Kokanada. Sumsumāragiri, according to Buddhist tradition, was the capital of the Bharga kingdom; so evidently in the sixth century B.C. the territory of the Bhargas was a dependency of the Vatsa kingdom, governed by a Viceroy of the royal family of Kauśāmbī. Bhikṣu Rāhula Śaṃ-

---

3. Barua, *Bharhut*, Bk. I, pp. 41-2, inclines tentatively to connect King Dhanabhūti and his predecessors with Mathurā or a nearby locality. Rapson, in *Camb. Hist., loc. cit.*, observes: 'We may conclude that this family ruled at Bharhut, and that it was connected in some way with the royal family at Mathurā, more than 250 miles to the north-west.'
krityāyana proposes to identify the Bharga country with the present Mirzapur district, and its capital Sumsumārāgirī with the present Chunar hill.1 Buddhaṅghoṣa suggests, however, that Sumsumārāgirī (not Sumsumārāgirī) was the name of the principal town in the Bhagga country. Originally the Vatsas and Bhārgavas (or Bhaggas) were two ruling clans that settled down and founded kingdoms side by side. Vatsa and Bhṛgu, from whom the Vatsas and Bhārgavas respectively claimed their descent, are said to have been sons of King Pratardana of Kāśi.2

The country of Kauśāmbī (i.e. Vatsa) is described as follows by the Chinese pilgrim Hsüan Tsang: ‘This country is about 6,000 li in circuit, and the capital about 30 li. The land is famous for its productiveness; the increase is very wonderful. Rice and sugar-cane are plentiful. The climate is very hot, the manners of the people hard and rough. They cultivate learning and are very earnest in their religious life and in virtue’.3

The Aṅguttara Nikāya 4 speaks of the land of the Vamsas as a country which abounded in seven kinds of gems and was consequently regarded as very rich and prosperous. Kautilya’s Arthasastra mentions Vatsa as one of the countries of which the cotton fabrics were of the very best quality.5

From the earliest times, the Vatsas, as the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa clearly attests, established a monarchical form of government in their land. They formally anointed their kings in accordance with the prescribed Vedic rites, and they are not known to have deviated from this practice at any period of their history. Ordeal by walking through fire was applied as a test of purity of descent of the kings.6 Capital punishment by impaling on a stake was inflicted on a culprit even for a light offence, as illustrated by the Jātaka story of ‘Maṇḍavya with the Peg’. When King Kosambika ruled over Kosambī in the kingdom of Vatsa, a robber committed a theft and, being chased, left the stolen goods near the door of an ascetic named Maṇḍavya, and himself escaped. When the owner of the property came there, he took the ascetic to be the robber, and brought him before the king. The king, without enquiry said, ‘Off with him,

1 Buddhaṅcārya, pp. 75, 175; Ghosh, Early History of Kauśāmbī, p. 32.
2 Ray Chaudhuri, Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., pp. 112-13 and 159. The Mahābhārata and the Harivamśa testify to the close connection between the Vatsas and the Bhārgas.
4 IV, pp. 252, 256, 260.
5 Arthasastra, Śāma Śastry’s trsl., p. 94.
6 Cambridge History of India, I, p. 134.
impale him upon a stake’. Stakes of acacia and nimb wood did not pierce him, so concluding that the ascetic was innocent, the king ordered the stake to be drawn out. This was found to be impossible, however, so at Maṇḍavya’s suggestion the stake was cut off with the skin. Thenceforward he was called Maṇḍavya with the Peg. The king asked his pardon and settled him in the royal park.¹

According to the Buddhist legendary tradition, the Vatsa country was among those considered by the Devaputras in the Tuṣita heaven when a suitable birthplace for the Buddha was under discussion. The defects of the Vatsas and their royal family were then pointed out. For instance, it was said that the Vaṁsas were rude and rough, and their king an ‘Ucchedavādin’; and, finally, it was decided that the royal family of Vatsa was unsuited for the honour of the Buddha’s birth.² However, when the Buddha was about to pass away, Ananda mentioned Kauśāmbī of the Vatsas as one of six great cities suitable for the Buddha’s parinibbāna.³

Kauśāmbī, the capital of the Vatsas, is identified by Cunningham with Kosām on the Jumna, about 30 miles south-west of Allahabad.⁴ The Cambridge History, following Cunningham, says that Kauśāmbī seems to have been on the south bank of the Jumna, at a point about 400 miles by road from Ujjain, and about 230 miles upstream from Benares.⁵ The Chinese pilgrims, Fā-Hien and Hsüan Tsang, give discrepant accounts of the situation of Kauśāmbī. Fā-Hien arrived there from the Deer Park to the north of Benares, after walking north-west for 13 yojanas (about 91 miles), as he says. This would make Kauśāmbī lie to the north or north-west of Prayāga, as St. Martin thinks⁶; but Hsüan Tsang, who visited Kauśāmbī twice, arrived there by going from Prayāga ‘south-west through a forest infested by wild elephants and other fierce animals, and after a journey of above 500 li (about 100 miles).’⁷

The question of the site of Kauśāmbī has been much debated, chiefly because of the impossibility of reconciling Cunningham’s identification with the descriptions of the Chinese pilgrims. But such descriptions may either have been incorrect originally or may have been subsequently misinterpreted. For instance, there is nothing in the actual records of Hsüan Tsang to suggest that the

¹ Jātaka (Fausbøll), Vol. IV, pp. 28 foll.
² See the Romantic Legend of Śākya Buddha, p. 28; and Lalitavistāra, ed. Lefmann, p. 21.
³ Dīgha Nikāya, pp. 146, 169.
⁴ Ancient Geography of India, p. 454. See also Rapson, Ancient India, p. 170.
⁷ Ibid., p. 365.
distance given was the actual distance between Prayāga and the city of Kauśāmbī. It is likely that the pilgrim went to Kauśāmbī by a roundabout route from Prayāga. The distance and direction of Kauśāmbī from Sārnāth as given by Fa-Hien may be taken as fairly correct. The distance of 13 yojanas (about 90 or 104 miles) is almost the present distance by road from Benares to Kosam. The fact that Fa-Hien placed Kauśāmbī to the north-west of Benares may perhaps be due to his having walked along a road following a north-west direction for some distance.

Vincent Smith considers that the site of Kauśāmbī is to be looked for near the Sutną railway station in the valley of the Tons river. 1 As for earlier evidence, the Brāhmaṇas generally assert that Kauśāmbī stood either on the Ganges or close to it, and the discovery of the name ‘Koṣāmbimāndala’ in an inscription over the gateway of the fort of Khara seems to confirm this, although the south-west hearing from Prayāga or Allahabad as recorded by Hsüan Tsang points unmistakably to the line of the Jumna. 2

The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa (XII, 2, 2, 13) mentions Pratī Kausurubindi as a pupil undergoing brahmacarya under Uḍḍālaka Aruni (of Upanishadic fame) and bearing the local epithet of Kauśāmbeya which the commentator Harisvāmin explains as meaning ‘a native of Kauśāmbī.’ 3 The Gopatha Brāhmaṇa (I, 4, 24) contains the same reference, but the name of Uḍḍālaka’s pupil is here given as Predi Kausurubindu. Kosambeyaka, a Prākrit form of Kauśāmbeya, occurs in one of the Bārhut Inscriptions, being employed to mean ‘a person from Kauśāmbī.’ 4

Thus, from the employment of Kauśāmbeya as a local epithet of a person in the Brāhmaṇas, it may be safely inferred that the name Kauśāmbī was current as early as the Brāhmaṇa age. The Pali canon abounds in references to Kauśāmbī as a well-known city in N. India, the capital of the Vatsa country of King Udayana. The high antiquity of Kauśāmbī as a royal city is equally proved by traditions not only in the two great Sanskrit Epics and the Purāṇas, but also in the Vamsatthappakāsini (commentary on the Mahāvamsa). The Mahābhārata 5 attributes the foundation of the city of Kauśāmbī to Prince Kuśāmba, third son of the Cedi king Upaticara Vasu. In the Rāmāyana story, however, Prince Kuśāmba is described as the eldest son of an ancient king named Kuśa, who

---

1 J.R.A.S., 1898, p. 503.
2 For a fuller discussion of the problem, see B. C. Law, Kauśāmbī in Ancient Literature (Memoirs of the Archaeological Survey of India, No. 66).
4 Bama and Sinha, Bārhut Inscriptions, p. 12.
had four sons by his queen Vaidarbhi, the youngest of them being Vasu. According to the Matsya Purāṇa, when Hastināpura was swept away by a Ganges flood, the Kuru or Bhārata king Nicakṣu, who was fifth in descent from Parikṣit, the grandson of Arjuna, abandoned Hastināpura and dwelt in Kauśāmbī. There is, however, no suggestion made in the Purāṇa that Nicakṣu was himself the founder of the city. We are told in McCrindle’s Ptolemy that Kauśāmbī was a famous city on the river Jumna, which became the Pāṇḍu capital after Hastināpura had been swept away by the Ganges, and which was noted as the shrine of the most sacred of all the statues of the Buddha. Its fame began only with the reign of Cakra, the eighth in descent from Arjuna the Pāṇḍava. It is stated in the Purāṇas that the three sons of Adhisāmakṛṣṇa, named Nirvakta, Nemicakra and Vivaksu, lived in Kauśāmbī after the destruction of Hastināpura by the inundation of the Ganges.

Several explanations have been suggested to account for the name Kauśāmbi or Kosambi. Different traditions suggest (1) that the city was named after Prince Kusamba; (2) that it was originally the dwelling place of the sage Kosamba; (3) that the city came to be called Kosambi because when it was founded, numerous Kosamba trees were uprooted on the site, or because the town abounded in shady Kosamba trees.

Indian literature consistently refers to Kauśāmbi as a royal city, i.e. the capital of a kingdom; but in the Si-yu-ki of Hsüan Tsang, Kauśāmbi (Kiao-shang-mi) is represented rather as a country with its capital, which was ‘evidently named Kauśāmbi.’ The Chinese pilgrim must have followed the later usage which represented Kauśāmbi as a political unit instead of as a mere city.

Kauśāmbi is described in the Trikāndaśesa (2, 1, 14) as Vatsapatī, ‘the capital of Vatsa.’ In the Buddhist literature, too,

---

1 Rāmāyana (Bombay Ed.), I, 32, 1-6.
3 McCrindle, Ancient India as described by Ptolemy, p. 72.
4 Cunningham, Ancient Geography, p. 391.
5 Matsya Purāṇa, Chap. 50; cf. Vāyu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas.
6 See B. C. Law, Kauśāmbi in Ancient Literature, p. 2.
7 Paramatthajotika, Vol. II, p. 300. Aśvaghoṣa in his Saundarananda Kāvya (B. C. Law’s trsl., p. 9) refers to the hermitage (āśrama) of Kusāmba, where the city of Kauśāmbi was built.
9 Vividhaśristhāktya, p. 23.
11 E.g., Inscription of Yasapala, dated Śaṅvat 1093 (A.D. 1037)—Kauśāmbi is mentioned as Kosambamandala.
12 Ghosh, Early History of Kauśāmbi, Introd., p. xvii.
Kausāmbī is described as the capital of the Vatsa country, as also in the Kathāsuriśāgara. The Vividhatirthakalpa (p. 23) definitely states that the forests of Kausāmbī were reached along the course of the Kalembali (i.e. Yamunā or Jumna).

According to the description in the Suttanipāta of a journey of Bāvari’s disciples from Patiṭṭhāna to Rājagaha, Kausāmbī was one of the halting places on the same high road which led to Sāketa and Śrāvasti. The Vinaya Mahāvagga gives a description of a somewhat different route that lay between Kausāmbī and Śrāvasti. Kausāmbī was the most important entrepôt for both goods and passengers coming to Kosala and Magadha from the south and west. The route from Kausāmbī to Rājagṛha was down the river, and Kausāmbī was also one of the chief stopping places on the way from Śrāvasti to Patiṭṭhāna.

Kausāmbī had great military strength. The remains at Kosam include those of a vast fortress with eastern ramparts and bastions, four miles in circuit, with an average height of 30 to 35 feet above the general level of the country. The fact that the city was an important commercial centre, is indicated by the extraordinary variety of the coins found there. Cast coins were issued at the close of the third century by the kingdoms of Kausāmbī, Ayodhyā and Mathurā, some of which bear the names of local kings in the Brāhmi script. There is little foreign influence traceable in the die-struck coins, all closely connected in point of style, which were issued during the first and second centuries B.C. from Pañcāla, Ayodhyā, Kausāmbī and Mathurā. A number of these bear Brāhmi inscriptions. The coins of Kausāmbī have a tree within a railing on the obverse. The coinage of the kings of Kausāmbī seems to begin in the third century B.C., and to extend over a period of about 300 years.

In the Buddha’s time, there were four establishments or settlements of the Order in or near Kausāmbī, each of them having a group of huts under trees. Buddhaghosa informs us that the three banker friends, Ghosita, Kukkuṭa and Pāvārika, were the great business magnates of Kausāmbī in the Buddha’s time. All of them went on

1 II, I.
4 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 36.
6 Ibid., p. 103.
7 Brown, Coins of India, p. 19.
8 Ibid., p. 20. See also Prācīna Mudrā, p. 105.
elephant-hack from Kauśāmbī to Śrāvastī to wait upon the Buddha at Jetavana, and it was at their invitation that the Buddha agreed to visit Kauśāmbī. Each of the bankers built a suitable retreat for the Buddha in the neighbourhood of the city. Regarding Ghositārāma, Hsüan Tsang tells us that it was situated ‘outside the city on the south-east side with an Asoka tope over 200 feet high’.1 Within the city, at the south-east angle of it, there were the ruins of an old habitation, the house of Ghosita (Ghosira) the nobleman. In the middle there was a vihāra of the Buddha and a stupa containing hair and nail relics. There were also ruins of the Tathāgata’s hathing-house.2 The pilgrim has also left hints as to the location of the remaining two ārāmas. Kukkuṭārāma was situated to the south-east of Ghositārāma. At the time of his visit, it was ‘a two-storeyed building with an old brick upper chamber’.3 Pāvārika’s mango-grove was situated to the east of Ghositārāma, where the old foundations of a building were visible.4

Besides the three retreats built by the three bankers, we read of another Buddhist retreat in or near Kauśāmbī, which was known as Badarikārāma.5 The Deer Park in Bhesakaḷāvana or Kesa-kaḷāvana6 in the neighbourhood of Sūsamūragira, the principal town in the Bhagga province, then ruled by Prince Bodhi as Viceroy, was the other important Buddhist retreat and early centre of Buddhist activity in the Vatsa dominion. The Park evidently belonged to Prince Bodhi, who became an ardent lay supporter of Buddhism. The story of a cordial entertainment of the Buddha and his disciples in the famous ‘Lotus Palace’ then built by Prince Bodhi is narrated in the Majjhima Nikāya.7

In the time of Hsüan Tsang, there were more than ten Buddhist monasteries (in or near Kauśāmbī), but all in utter ruins. The brethren, who were above 300 in number, were adherents of the Hinayāna system. There were more than fifty deva-temples, and the non-Buddhists were very numerous.8

---

1 Watters, On Yuan Chwung, I, p. 369. The Asoka pillar on which Samudragupta recorded the history of his reign is supposed to have been erected originally at Kauśāmbī, which was no doubt honoured at times by the residence of the monarch (see Smith, Early History of India, p. 310, 4th Ed.).
4 Ibid., p. 371.
5 Tipallathamiga Jātaka (Fausböll, No. 16).
6 Bodhirajakumāra Sutta, Majjhima Nikāya, II, 91; Jātaka (Fausböll), III, 157.
7 Vol. II, pp. 91 foll.
The Buddha’s favourite retreat at Kauśāmbi was undoubtedly the Ghositārāma where he stayed on several occasions. For instance, we read in the Majjhima Nikāya that once while the Buddha was staying at the Ghositārāma, he tried to prevent the Kauśāmbi monks, who were divided into two parties, from quarrelling. From the Surāpāna Jātaka we learn that the Buddha, after staying for a long time at Bhaddavatika, went to Kauśāmbi where he was cordially received by the townsfolk, some of whom invited him to a meal. On this occasion the Buddha condemned the drinking of intoxicants. While dwelling at the Badarika monastery in Kauśāmbi, the Buddha related the Tripallathamīga Jātaka about the elder Rahula.

In the Dhammapadattāhakathā, we read that there lived at Kauśāmbi a householder’s son, Kosambivāsi Tissathera, who took ordination from the Buddha. One of the Buddha’s chief disciples, Ānanda, also delivered several sermons at Kauśāmbi. Among famous followers of the Buddha who stayed at Ghositārāma were Sāriputta and Upavāna. After the passing away of the Master, and when the First Great Council was over, Mahākaccāyana lived near Kauśāmbi in a forest hermitage with twelve bhikkhus.

Some of the Kosambians entertained a great respect for the Buddha and the Buddhist faith, and were converted; while we are told that others went so far as to enter the Order and attain arahatship,—e.g. Gayaccha the Less. At the time of the Buddha, Sāmāvatī Therī was born in a rich householder’s family at Kauśāmbi. She was the favourite friend of Queen Sāmāvatī, wife of King Udayana. After the death of the queen, she was very much grieved, and became a bhikkhuṇī. Her grief was so bitter that she was unable to attain the ariyamagga. Afterwards listening to the instruction of Ānanda, she became free from sorrow by developing insight, and became an arahat.

When the Vajjian monks carried out the act of excommunication against Yasa, he is said to have risen up into the sky and descended

---

3 Jātaka (Fausböll), Vol. I, pp. 360 foll.
5 Ibid., Vol. II, pp. 182-5.
7 Ibid., V, pp. 76-7.
8 See Paramatthadīpani on the Petavatthu, pp. 140-144.
9 Psalms of the Brethren, p. 16.
10 Therigāthā Comm., P.T.S., pp. 44-5.
at Kauśāmbī. The Mahāvamsa tells us, however, that the venerable Vasa is said to have fled from Vaiśāli to Kauśāmbī just before the assembly of the second Buddhist Council.

The Parileyyaka forest, where the Buddha is said to have spent one rainy season, and the location of which is unknown, was probably not very far from Kauśāmbī. The town of Bhaddavatika which lay on the way from the Parileyyaka forest to Śrāvasti was another place in the Vatsa kingdom which became associated with the life of the Buddha. Somewhere in the neighbourhood of Kauśāmbī and Ghositārāma was a cave called Pilakkhaguhā, where a Pari-vrājaka or wandering ascetic named Sandaka used to live with his 500 followers during the summer season. The venerable Ānanda is said to have converted Sandaka to the Buddhist faith, with all his following. In the Dīgha Nikāya we read that the city of Kauśāmbī was visited by two wanderers named Maṇḍissa and Jāliya, who interviewed the Buddha at Ghositārāma.

The Mahāvamsa attests that some 30,000 bhikkhus of the Ghositārāma, headed by Thera Urudhammarakkhita, visited Ceylon in about the first century B.C., during the reign of King Duṭṭhagaṇamī.

In the second year of the reign of King Kaniska, the Buddhist nun Buddhimitrā or Buddhhamitrā installed a Bodhisattva image in Kauśāmbī, which was then known to have been 'sanctified by the Buddha's several visits'.

The records of the influence of religion over Vatsa and Kauśāmbī prior to the introduction of Buddhism and Jainism are few and far between. The people were supposed to have been preoccupied with worldly thoughts, but we read even in the Brāhmaṇas of hermits such as Protī Kausurubindi who had considerable influence. The main supporters of such hermits were the bankers of Kauśāmbī, all of whom were members of the Vaiśya caste. The introduction of Buddhism, too, was due to the religious tendencies of persons belonging to this caste, as we have seen from the story of the bankers Ghosita, Kukkuṭa, and Pāvārika. According to the Buddhist tradition in the Tibetan Dulva, the Buddha visited Kauśāmbī when King Udayana was busy planning a military expedition to the city of Kanakavatī. The appearance of the messenger of peace was naturally

1 Kern, Indian Buddhism, p. 104.
2 Geiger, Mahāvamsa, p. 22. See also Vinaya Texts, Pt. III, p. 304.
3 Samyutta Nikāya, III, pp. 94-5.
4 Jātaka (Fausböll), I, p. 360.
5 Majjhima Nikāya, I, pp. 513 foll.
6 Dīgha Nikāya, I, pp. 157, 159-60.
7 P.T.S., p. 228.
8 Dhammapada Comm., I, p. 203.
looked upon and dreaded as the appearance of a bad omen. It was evidently not easy to convert Udayana and members of the royal family to the new faith. There seems to be some truth in the Buddhist legends that the devotion of Queen Sāmāvatī and her attendants, and the martyrdom suffered by them, were greatly instrumental in bringing about a change of heart in Udayana and making him a supporter of Buddhism. Here again the banker Gbosisa is indirectly concerned, for Sāmāvatī was brought up with his family.

The influence of Jainism over Kauśāmbi does not appear to have been extensive. However, Kauśāmbi is known to the Jainas as the sacred place where Vardhamāna Mahāvīra was worshipped even by the Sun and Moon; and where Chandanā attained to Kaivalya. Kauśāmbi is also known to the Jainas as the place hallowed by the birth, career and death of Jina Prabha Sūri. The Pabhosā rock cave was excavated in about the first century B.C. for the residence of the Kāśyapīya arahats.

In the inscription of the goldsmiths of Kauśāmbi, dated Śamvat 1621 (1565 A.D.) we find that six of them call themselves Vaisnavas, although the record itself contains only the prayers of five leading goldsmiths and of thirteen of their employees to Ganeśa and the god Bhairava 'for favour'.

2 Dhammadāpa Comm., I, pp. 208ff.
CHAPTER XXX

THE VĀTADHĀNAS—THE ĀTREYAS—THE BHRADVĀJAS—THE LAMPĀKAS

THE VĀTADHĀNAS

The Vātadhanas are mentioned in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, once along with the Vāhlikas, the Ābhiras, the Aparāntakas and the Śūdras, all grouped in the north-west (LVII, 36), and at another place, along with the Śiviḍas, Dāserakas, Śavadhānas, Puṣkalas, Kairātas, etc., all grouped as peoples of the north (LVII, 44). The Vāyupurāṇa, erroneously no doubt, reads Vātadhānās (XLV, 115). That they were a Punjab tribe is also borne out by the evidence of the Mahābhārata. There the Vātadhanas are said to be derived from an eponymous king Vatadhāna who belonged to the same Krodhanāśa group as the eponymous kings of the Vāhlikas, Madras and Sauvīras (Ādiṣṭhāna, XVII, 2695–9). The Sabhāparvan locates their country in the western region (XXXI, 1190–1), and the Udyogaparvan seems to suggest that they joined the side of the Kuru in the great Bhārata War (XVIII, 569–601). The people are mentioned elsewhere in the Epics as well, e.g. Sabhāparvan, I, 1826; Udyogaparvan, III, 86; Bhīṣmaparvan, IX, 354 and Dronaparvan, XI, 398. Vatadhāna-dvijas were amongst those who were conquered by Nakula (Sabhāparvan, XXXI, 1190–1).

According to Manu, Vatadhāna was the offspring of an outcaste Brāhmaṇa woman (X, 21), but Pargiter points out that this ‘is no doubt an expression of the same arrogance which in later times stigmatised all the Punjab races as outcastes’ (Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, p. 312, notes).

THE ĀTREYAS

The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa list mentions the Ātreyas along with the Bharadvājas, Puṣkalas, Kuśerukas, Lampākas, etc., as peoples of the north (LVII, 39–40). The Matsyaapurāṇa reads Atris who are undoubtedly the same as the Ātreyas (CXIII, 43).

The Ātreyas are also mentioned in several places in the Mahābhārata. They are represented as a family of Brāhmaṇas dwelling in the Dvaitavāna (Vanaparvan, XXVI, 971) not far from the Sarasvatī (Vanaparvan, CLXXVII, 12354–62). They are also mentioned in the Bhīṣmaparvan list (IX, 376), and the Harivamṣa
seems to suggest that the people originated from the Rṣi Prabhākara of Atri’s race (XXXI, 1660–8) whence came the name of the tribe Ātreya.

**The Bharadvājas**

What is true of the Ātreyas seems to be equally true of the Bharadvājas or Bhāradvājas. The Mārkaṇḍeya list (LVII, 39-40) mentions the tribe along with the Āreyas, Puṣkalas, Lampākas, etc., and locates them in the north. They are also mentioned in the Bhīṣma-parvan list (IX, 376) in the same context as that of the Ātreyas; the Great Epic tradition connects Bhāradvāja with the upper Gangetic region near the hills (Ādi-parvan, CXXX, 5102–6; CLXVI, 6328–32; Vanapravāna, CXXXV, 10700–28; Śalyapravāna, XLIX, 2762–2824), and Bhāradvāja, the Rṣi, was evidently the originator of the race or tribe. Like the Ātreyas, it is tempting to connect the people of various caste divisions of present-day India claiming to belong to the Bhāradvāja gotra with the Bhāradvāja tribe.

**The Lampākas**

The Lampākas are mentioned in the Mārkaṇḍeya list (LVII, 40) along with the Kuṣerukas, Śūlakāras, Culikas, Jāguḍas, etc. as a people of the north. The Matsyāpurāṇa reads (CXIII, 43) Lampākas instead, which is no doubt wrong. The Mahābhārata (Dronaparvan, CXXI, 4846-7) also mentions the tribe and seems to suggest that they were a rude mountain tribe like the Daradas and Pulindas. Long ago Cunningham identified the region of the Lampākas with modern Lamghan, hundred miles to the east of Kapisene, north-east of Kabul, which practically upholds Lassen’s identification of the place with Lambagae, south of the Hindu Kush in modern Kafiristan.

If the tradition contained in Hemacandra’s Abhidhāna-cintāmaṇi is to be believed, then Lampāka seems to have once been the centre of the Sai-wang or the Śaka-Muraṇḍa people (Lampākāstū Muraṇḍā h syuḥ).
CHAPTER XXXI

THE YONAS

The Yonas or Yavanas, literally 'Ionians', a people or peoples of Greek descent, may be traced in Indian literature and inscriptions from the third century B.C. to the second century A.D. They were 'manifestly a factor of no small importance in the political history of Northern and Western India'.

In the Mahābhārata we find them taking part in the Bhārata War at Kurukṣetra as allies of the Kurus along with other peoples of North-Western India like the Kāmbojas, Śakas, Madras, Kaikeyas, Sindhus and Sauvīras. Indian tradition, however, regards them as aliens or outcastes. Thus the Śātras mention the Yavanas (Greeks) as the most esteemed of foreigners, but all Yavanas are regarded as sprung from Śīrā females and Kṣatriya males. Gautama says that this view is held by some. The Rāmāyana refers to the struggles of the Hindus with mixed hordes of Śakas and Yavanas (cf. Saka Yavanamīśritān). In the Kiśkindhyā Kanda (IV, 43, 11-12), Sugriva places the country of the Yavanas and the cities of the Śakas between the country of the Kurus and the Madras and the Himālayas. In the Mahābhārata, the Yonas or Yavanas are classed with other peoples of Uttarāpatha or Northern India like the Kāmbojas, Gandhāras, Kirūtas and Barbaras. In the Mārkandeya Purāṇa, we also find a list of peoples where the Gabalas or Yavanas are classed with other people of Northern or North-Western India like the Gandhāras, Sindhu-Sauvīras and Madrakas. Instead of Gabalas, the Vāyu and the Matsya Purāṇas read Yavanas which seems to be the correct reading. The Yonas or Yavanas thus seem to be one of the ancient tribes settled in some part of India. A Yona or Greek State is, therefore, mentioned along with Kāmboja

1 Indian Culture, Vol. I, pp. 343 foll.
3 Ibid., p. 274.
5 I, 54, 21.
6 Political History of Ancient India (4th Ed.), p. 3.
in the Majjhima Nikāya (II, 149) as flourishing in the time of Gautama Buddha and Assalāyana.

The Milinda-Pañha refers to the land of the Yonas as the place fit for the attainment of Nibbāna (Trenckner ed., p. 327). The Mahāvastu speaks of the assembly of the Yonas where anything which was decided was binding on them (Vol. I, p. 171). Hence D. R. Bhandarkar in his Carmichael Lectures observes that there is nothing strange in Pānini flourishing in the sixth century B.C. and in his referring also to Yavanänī, the writing of the Greeks. When Alexander invaded India he found a large number of autonomous tribes and principalities in the North-Western Frontier Province and the Punjab. Among these we find mention of the Nysaeans forming a small hill-state with a republican constitution. They had Adoushis then as their President and they had a Governing Body of three hundred members. Holdich in discussing the site of Nysa shows that the lower spurs and valleys of Koh-i-Mor are where the ancient city of Nysa once stood. According to Bhandarkar, Nysa was situated between the Kophen and the Indus. In the Fifth Book of Arrian's work, we find two relevant passages in this connection. Arrian says, 'The Nysaeans are not an Indian race, but descended from the men who came into India with Dionysus.' The deputies of Nysa, who waited upon Alexander, themselves told the Macedonian monarch that their city was founded by Dionysus; for Dionysus, the Greeks believed, had gone conquering across Asia, at the head of his revellers, in the old heroic days. 'The Greeks', Bevan says, 'always experienced a keen joy of recognition, when they could connect foreign things with the figures of their own legends, and they were delighted with the suggestion.' In the legend the name Nysa was specially connected with Dionysus—it was the name of his nurse, or of the place where he was horn or of his holy hill—and the name of this little town in the Hindu Kush, as it was pronounced to Alexander, had a similar sound. Again the legend said that Dionysus had been horn from the thigh (mēros) of Zeus, and a neighbouring summit, the Greeks discovered, was called Meru. When, moreover, the Greeks saw the sacred plants of the same god, viz. vine and ivy (which grew nowhere else in the land of the Indians), running wild over the mountain, as they knew them at home, no doubt could be left. So hostilities with these interesting kinsmen

1 Cf. Yona Kambojesu ... dveva vannā, uyyo c'eva dāsoca.
2 1921, p. 29.
3 Gates of India, p. 122.
4 Carmichael Lectures, 1921, p. 32.
could not be thought of, and the Nysaeans themselves joined with Alexander. Three hundred of them on their mountain horses joined the army of the Yavana king and followed him to battle in the plains of the Punjab.\(^1\) The evidence furnished by Arrian's account of Nysa shows that Nysa was a Greek colony before the advent of Alexander to India.\(^2\) In the inscription of Asoka,\(^3\) we find mention of the Yonas along with Kambojas.\(^4\) The question here arises—Who were these Yonas? Bhandarkar in his *Carmichael Lectures*, 1921 (pp. 28ff.), points out that it is impossible to identify the Yonas of Rock Edict XIII with the Greeks of Bactria because the same edict was promulgated when Antiochus Theos, King of Syria, was living, his name being actually specified therein. In Asoka’s time Bactria was included in the Syrian empire of Antiochus Theos. We learn from Greek historians, Trogus, Justin and Strabo, that it was Diodotus who first made Bactria independent. He was a Satrap of this province under Antiochus Theos. The death of Antiochus probably caused disturbance when Diodotus made himself independent in Bactria. So the Yonas of the Asokan inscription are to be located elsewhere. Bhandarkar therefore concludes: ‘I suspect that it has to be identified with Aria or Arachosia which were the two provinces ceded by Seleucuus to Chandragupta and which must have been inherited intact by Asoka. I admit it is not possible to locate these Yonas exactly, but this much is certain that they were outside the kingdom of Antiochus Theos, and lived in Asoka’s empire in a territory adjoining Gandhāra but outside India.’\(^5\) Bhandarkar\(^6\) therefore holds the view that in all likelihood, the Yavanas of Rock Edict XIII must have come and settled in large numbers in some outlying province of India long before Alexander. Numismatic evidence also lends support to such a view. Coins similar to those of the earliest type of Athens are known to have been collected from the north-west frontiers of India. They bear head of Athena on the obverse and owls on the reverse.\(^7\) These owls of Athens have been picked up in Southern Arabia Felix. But none of the owls found in the east are of the types known from Athens. The coins found in Arabia might have travelled there as a result of commercial intercourse, for they are generally counter-marked on the obverse with Sabaean letters or are scratched on the reverse with a

---

\(^1\) Cambridge History of India, Vol. I, p. 354.
\(^2\) Carmichael Lectures, 1921, p. 32.
\(^3\) Rock Edict XIII.
\(^4\) Cf. ‘Yona-Kamboyeshu Nabhahe Na(bhi)tina Bhoja-Pitunikeshu Amakara-Puli(de) shu savatra deanam priyasa dharamamāśati anuvatanti.’ (Shabhazgarhi text—Inscriptions of Asoka, edited by Bhandarkar and Majumdar, pp. 53-4.)
\(^6\) Ibid., p. 27.
\(^7\) Numismatic Chronicle, XX, 191.
Sabaean monogram. Bhandarkar argues when a foreign money for the first time comes into circulation along with the native coinage of a country, all the new specimens are tested, and those, which are found not deficient in weight or quality of metal, are sanctioned by marking them with an official stamp which may consist of a single letter or symbol. These official stamps which are found on the owls of Athens, discovered in South Arabia, are conspicuous by their absence on those found on the frontiers of India. The practice of putting such counter-marks on coins was not unknown in or near India also, for the silver Persian sigloi which were current in the Punjab bear Indian counter-marks.\(^1\) When there is no counter-mark, it is not reasonable to say that they were brought there in course of trade. Bhandarkar\(^2\) therefore concludes: 'The natural inference must be that they were native to some outlying district of India which was peopled by the Yavanas or Greeks. And as the original owls of Athens have been assigned to circa 594-560 B.C., a Greek colony, it is possible to infer, may have been established near India about 550 B.C.' Ray Chaudhuri\(^3\) also notes that the exact situation of the Yona territory has not yet been determined. In the Mahāvaṃsa (XII) we find that the Thera Mahārakkhita was sent to the country of the Yonas. This work also refers to its chief city, Alasanda, which Geiger identifies with the town of Alexandria founded by the Macedonian conqueror near Kabul.* Not only the Yonas are mentioned in the inscriptions of Aśoka, we also find a Yavana official or a vassal Yavanarāja called Tushāspha ruling as governor of Surāṣṭra with his capital at Girinagara (Girnar) during the days of Aśoka, as we learn from the Junāgadh Rock Inscription of Mahākshatrapa Rudradāman. Vincent Smith argues that the form of the name shows that the Yavanarāja must have been a Persian. But Ray Chaudhuri contends that if Greeks and other foreigners adopted Hindu names there is no wonder that some of them assumed Iranian appellations. There is, then, no good ground for assuming that Tushāspha was not a Greek, but a Persian. After the death of Aśoka, a Yavana army crossed the Hindu Kush, which was the northern frontier of Aśokan empire on the ruins of which an Indo-Greek kingdom arose. The Yuga Purāṇa section of the Gārgī Samhitā points to the decline of Maurya power in the Madhyadesa when it says: 'Tataḥ Sāketam ākramya Pañcālam Mathurāṃstathā! Yavanaḥ duṣṭavikrāntah prāpsyati Kusuma-

\(^1\) J.R.A.S., 1895, 874 and ff.
\(^2\) Carmichael Lectures, 1921, p. 29.
\(^3\) Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., p. 253.
\(^4\) Mahāvaṃsa, Geiger's translation, p. 194.
dhvajam Tatah Puṣpapurupe prāpte Karddame prathite bite | Ākulā viṣayā sarve bhaviṣyanti na saṃśayah] 1 In Patañjali’s Mahābhāṣya there is a similar line: ‘Arunad Yavanaḥ Sāktaṁ: Arunad Yavano Madhyamikām.’ According to Sir R. G. Bhandarkar this shows that a certain Yavana or Greek prince had besieged Sāketa or Ayodhyā and another place called Madhyamikā (near Chitor) when Patañjali wrote this. Kālidāsa in his Mālavikāgnimitram refers to a conflict between the Śuṅga prince Vasumitra and a Yavana on the southern hank of the Sindhu. The name of this invader, however, is not given in the Mahābhāṣya or the Mālavikāgnimitram. 2 It is clear at any rate that the extension of Yavana power to the interior of India was thwarted in the first instance by the Śuṅgas. In Western India the rising power of the Andhras, Andhraḥṛtyas or Sātavāhanas caused the last vestige of Yavana power to disappear. Thus from the Nāsik Cave Inscription of Gautamiputra Śātakarnī we learn that he destroyed the Sakas, Yavanas and Pahlavas. While in the north-west of India the Yavanas were swept away by the onrush of the Parthians or Pahlavas, as we learn from Chinese sources.

1 Keru, Brhatsamhitā, p. 37.
2 Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., p. 316.
CHAPTER XXXII

THE KALINGAS

The Kalingas as a tribe are almost always associated with the Aṅgas and Vaṅgas in ancient Indian literature. These three tribes along with the Pundras and Suhmas are said to have been named after the five sons of Bali, Aṅga, Vaṅga, Kalinga, Pundra and Suhma who were called Bāleya Kṣatra and also Bāleya Brāhmaṇas. These five tribes evidently then lived conterminously and had their distinct entities within respective geographical boundaries to which they gave the names of their respective tribes. The tradition referred to above is contained in the Purāṇas and the Great Epic, according to which, the sage Dirghatamas had married King Bali’s Śūdra nurse and had Kakṣīvant and other sons; and at Bali’s desire begot on the queen Śudesṇā the aforesaid five sons. According to the Great Epic again, King Jarasandha is said to have extended his supremacy over the Aṅgas, Vaṅgas, Kalingas and the Pundras. In the Droṇaparvan, Vāsudeva is said to have once routed in battle the Aṅgas, Vaṅgas, Kalingas and the Pundras along with other peoples. A town named Kālingenagāra, evidently one of the cities of the Kalinga people, is mentioned in the Rāmāyana, on the west of the Gomati and not far from it. A Kalinga tribe is also referred to in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa as having their settlement on the Śatadru. Pargiter suggests that the reading is erroneous, for there seems to be no ground for thinking that the Kalingas lived in N. India. Moreover, the Vāyupurāṇa in the same context reads Kulindas instead, which seems to be the correct reading. The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa mentions another people named the Arkalinagas along with the Kuntalas, Kāśīs, Kośalas, Ātharvas and the Malakas. Pargiter doubts this reading as well, because of the Vāyupurāṇa reading which is different in the same context. The Matsya purāṇa reads Avantas and Kalingas instead, but this is also hardly satisfactory in view of the fact that the Kalingas are hardly known to have been associated with the Avantas and moreover that the Kalingas are elsewhere

1 Puranic tradition as contained in a number of Purāṇas, the Mahābhārata and the Harivamsa. See the Dirghatamas story and its sequel. Compare Pargiter, A.I.H.T., p. 158.
2 Mahābhārata, XII, Chap. 5, 6607.
3 Mahābhārata, XII, Chap. 5, 6607.  
4 Ayodhyā K., LXXIII, 14, 15.
5 Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, p. 316 n.
6 Ṭīkā, p. 316 n.
7 Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, p. 308 n.
8 LVII, 33.
9 Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, p. 308 n.
10 CXIII, 36.
described not only in the same Purāṇa but also in other Purāṇas as a people of the southern region. The Mārkaṇḍeya, for example, says that they dwelt in the southern region along with the Mahārāṣtras, Mahīṣakas, Ābhīras, Vaiśīkyas, Savaras, Pulindas and others. A number of famous Kāliṅga or Kāliṅga kings are mentioned in the Adiparva of the Mahābhārata and they are credited with having contracted matrimonial relations with princesses of the Aryan royal families of the north (e.g. Adiparvan, XCV, 3774-5, 3780; Droṇaparvan, LXX, 2436). According to epic evidence as contained in the Mahābhārata, the Kāliṅga country comprised the entire tract of country lying along the coast of Vaiṭarāṇi in Orissa to the borders of the Āndhra country.

The country of the Kāliṅgas is mentioned by Pāṇini. According to Baudhāyana, the country was branded as an impure one and was included in his list of Samkarṇa yonayāḥ. According to Kautilya’s Arthaśāstra, elephants of Aṅga and Kāliṅga belonged to the best of their types, while those of Kariṣa, Daśārṇa and Aparaṇa were only second in order of classification, those of the Saurāṣtras and allied tribes (Saurāṣṭrīkāh pāncajānāḥ) having been the worst.

The Jātakas contain a number of references to the Kāliṅga country and its kings. Thus, for example, according to the Kumbhakārā Jātaka, Karandu was a Kāliṅga and he was a contemporary of Nimi, king of Videha. The Mahāgovinda Suttanī makes Sattahū, king of Kāliṅga, a contemporary of Reṣu, king of Mithilā and of Dhātaraṃtha or Dhīraraṃṭha, king of Kāṣi and Aṅga. The Jātakas also refer to the capital city of Kāliṅga which was Dantapuranagara which is probably identical with Dantakura mentioned in the Mahābhārata, Dantapura of inscriptions. Other cities of the Kāliṅga country are also known, e.g. Rājapura, Simhapura, which is probably identical with Singupuram near Chicacole, Kāṇcanapura of the Jainas, and Kāliṅganagara which has been identified with Mukhaliṅgam on the river Vaṃśadharā. Kaliṅga (Kaliṅga) is mentioned in the Niddesa. From Kaliṅga the Buddha’s tooth was brought to Ceylon at the time of King Sirimeghavanṇa. A Kaliṅga king picked up a quarrel with Arunā, the Assaka king of Potali, but was defeated and had to surrender.

---

1 LVII, 46-7.  
2 LXVII, 2701.  
3 III, 114, 4.  
4 Ray Chaudhuri, P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 75.  
5 IV, 1, 170.  
6 I, i, 30-1.  
7 II, 2.  
8 V, 48-76.  
9 Epigraphia Indica, XIV, p. 361.  
10 Mahābhārata, XIII, 4, 3.  
12 Dubreuil, A.H.D., p. 94.  
13 Indian Antiquary, 1891, p. 375.  
14 Epigraphia Indica, IV, 187.  
15 Cullānīdēsa, ii, 37.  
16 Jātaka (Fausboll), III, 31.
Susa, a Kalinga princess, was married to a king of Vaṅga. Vijayahāhu I married a Kalinga princess named Tilokasundari. Maṅgha, a prince of Kalinga, did a great mischief to Ceylon. Asoka’s brother Tissa spent his retirement in the Kalinga country with his teacher Dhammarakkhistha.

Important light on the history of the Kalinga people is thrown by Pliny, the classical historian. From the accounts of Diodoros Curtius and Plutarch, we know that at the time of Alexander’s invasion, there were two very powerful peoples in the lower Gangetic valley, the Parasii (Braisioi) and the Gangaridai whose king was Xandrammes or Agrammes. The capital city of the Prasii was Palibothra or Pataliputra, while that of the Gangridai was Gange at the mouth of the Ganges, according to the author of the *Periplus of the Erythraean Sea*, or at the junction of the Ganges leading to the Maga and Kamberikthon mouths respectively. Pliny adds a third important people of E. India at that time, namely the Kalingas. He says: ‘The tribes called Kalingas are nearest the sea, and higher up are the Mandaei and the Malli, in whose country is mount Mallus, the boundary of all that district being the Ganges... the final part of its course is through the country of the Gangaridaes. The royal city of Kalinga is called Parthalis. Over their king 60,000 foot-soldiers, 1,000 horsemen and 7,000 elephants keep watch and ward.’ An alternative reading of Pliny’s text makes Gangaridae-Kalinga one people, having a king, a capital city, and an army of their own. Pliny further mentions two more tribes which must have been allied with the Kalinga people proper, e.g. the Maccokalingae (cf. modern Mukbalisingam referred to above, or is it Mukhya Kalingāḥ, the main Kalingas?) and the Modokalinga, both inhabiting an island in the Ganges. The capital city Parthalis of the Kalingas has been identified with Purvasthali, a large village about 20 miles from the present Burdwan town, which, however, is not above criticism. In any case, from the description of Pliny, it is certain that the countries of the Gangaridae and the Kalingae were adjacent territories.

Agrammes or Xandrammes has been usually identified with Mahāpadma Nanda who was king of both Prasii and Gangaridae. Mahāpadma was supplanted by Candragupta Muśuuya who is referred to by Greek writers as having been king of Prasii but nowhere is he mentioned as king of Gangaridae as well. The well-known Kalinga expedition of Asoka was, perhaps, directed against a probable

---

1 Mahāvamsa, VI, 1; Dipavamsa, IX, 201.
2 Cūḍavamsa, LI, 30.
3 Theraṇṭhā Commentary, I, 506.
4 Ibid., LXXX, 581.
5 I.H.Q., IV, p. 55.
Kalingae-Gangaridai combination of forces, suggested by an alternative reading of Pliny referred to above. In any case, the Kalinga resistance must have been a very stiff one, as is evident from the description in the thirteenth Rock Edict.

Kalinga is again lifted to historical prominence when Khāravela of the Ceta dynasty became anointed, when he had completed his twenty-fourth year, as Mahārāja of Kalinga. In his Hathigumpha Cave Inscription Kalinga finds mention for more than once and it is said in that very inscription that in the first year of his reign he repaired the gates and ramparts of his capital Kalinganagara identified with Mukhalingam.

We do not hear of the Kalingas or their country, so far at least as N. India history is concerned, for a long time, in fact not until we reach the time when Yuan Chwang visited the country in about the second quarter of the seventh century A.D. Kālidāsa, however, in his Rāghuvarśam mentions both Utkala and Kalinga, from which it is evident that they were two distinct countries. Yuan Chwang travelled from Odra to Kangoda whence he travelled through jungle and forest, dense with huge trees, south-west for 1,400 or 1,500 li, to Kalinga (Ka-long-ka). According to him, 'the country was above 5,000 li in circuit, its capital being above 20 li. There were regular seed-time and harvest, fruits and flowers grew profusely, and there were continuous woods for some hundreds of li. The country produced dark wild elephants prized by neighbouring countries. The climate was hot... The people were... fast and clear in speech; in their talk and manners they differed somewhat from "Mid-India". There were few Buddhists, the majority of the people being of other religions. There were above ten Buddhist monasteries, and 500 brethren students of the Mahāyānist Sthavira School System. There were more than 100 Deva temples, and the professed adherents of the various sects were very numerous, the majority being nirgranthas.'

Earlier, however, by about two centuries (i.e. fifth century A.D.) there is the well-known Komarti grant which introduces us to a Śrī Mahārāja named Candravarman who is described as Kalingadhīpāti (lord of Kalinga). 'To his dynasty, probably, also belonged Umavarman and Viśākhavarman who were both evidently lords of Kalinga. To about the same date as that of the Komarti grant, may be ascribed the inscription of a certain Kalingadhīpāti Vaśiṣṭhiputra Śaktivarman of the Māthara family who granted from Pīṭhapura (= Pithāpuram) the village of Rākaluva in the Kalinga-

2 Sewell, Historical Inscriptions of Southern India, p. 18.
viṣaya. In the Aihole Inscriptions (634-35 A.D.) Pulakesin II claims to have subdued the Kaliṅgas along with the Kośalas and took the fortress of Piṣṭapura. One at least of the Vākāṭaka kings is credited with having conquered the Andhra and Kaliṅga countries; he was Harisena, the father-in-law of Mādhavavarman the Viṣṇukundin. Towards the middle of the seventh century Kaliṅga seems to have come, for a time at least, under the sway of Kāmarūpa. One of her kings, Harṣadeva or Śrī Harṣa, is described in a contemporary Nepalese inscription to have been the king of Gauḍa, Oḍra, Kalināga, Kośala and other countries.⁴

Another reference to Kaliṅga we find in the Bheraghat Inscription of Alhaṇādevi, the queen of Gayā-Karna of the Kalacuri dynasty, the grandson of the famous Lakṣmikarna. It informs us that when Lakṣmikarna gave full play to his heroism, Vaṅga trembled with Kaliṅga.⁵ King Rāmapāla of the Pāla dynasty also seems to have inflicted a defeat on Kaliṅga as well as on Utkala and Kāmarūpa.⁶ King Vijayasena of the Sena dynasty is credited with having inflicted a defeat on the Kaliṅgas whose king at that time was evidently Rāghava. The Madhainagar grant of Lakṣmanasena informs us that the Gaudeśvara (i.e. Lakṣmana) in his youth took his pleasures with the females of Kaliṅga.

The reference to Trikaliṅga in some of the old records is very interesting. The S. Indian dynasties that ruled in the northern districts of Madras, C.P., and Orissa assumed the title 'Lord of Trikaliṅga' or 'Trikaliṅgādhipati'.⁷ Kaliṅga, evidently in a narrow sense, has always been distinguished in literature and sometimes also in epigraphs from Oḍra and Utkala and Kośala; but we must also take the Puranic statement into consideration that the Amarakantaka hill was situated in the western half of Kaliṅga (Kaliṅgadāse paścārdhe parvate Amarakantake). Mention may also be made in this connection to Pliny’s reference to three Kaliṅgas in his time, already mentioned: (i) the Gangaridae-Caliṅgae, the Kaliṅgas who lived conterminously with the Gangaridae, (2) the Macco-Caliṅgae, either the Mekala-Kaliṅgas or (Macco = Muka =

---

1 Ep. Ind., XII, pp. 1ff.  2 Ibid., VI, pp. 4ff.
5 Ep. Ind., Vol. II, p. 11.  6 Rāmacarita, II, 45 and 47.
7 Deopara Inscription.
8 E.g., the Sompur grant of Mahāśivagupta Yayāti where the king is described as such. The same king is described in one of his grants as having been elected king of Kaliṅga, Kaṅgoda, Utkala and Kośala. Kaṅgoda is certainly the Kung-Yū-t'u of Yuen Chwang, when the pilgrim went to Kaḷeng-ka, cf. the Narasapatam grant of Trīkaliṅgādhipati Vajrahaṣṭadeva.
three) the Muka-Kaliṅgas (perhaps identical with Mukhalingam) and (3) the Calingae proper. The word Tilang which we meet with in some Arabic records is evidently a corruption of this Trikaliṅga which is also responsible for the term Talaing used to designate the ancient people of Lower Burma or Ramaññadesa who must have originally migrated from the Trikaliṅga countries. The term Kliṅg applied to the people of Malay Peninsula must have originally been derived from Kaliṅga which seems to have been the original home of the Kliṅg people.

1 E.g., see Elliot, *History of India as told by her own Historians*, Vol. III, p. 234.
CHAPTER XXXIII

THE ANDHRAS

The earliest mention of the Andhras as a tribe is to be found along with the Savaras, Pulindas and probably also the Muitibas, in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa where all these tribes are referred to as dasyus or non-Aryans. In the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa also, the Andhras are mentioned along with the Pundras, Savaras, Pulindas and the Muitibas. Vincent Smith is of opinion that the Andhras were a Dravidian-speaking people and were evidently the progenitors of the modern Telegu-speaking people occupying the deltas of the Godāvari and the Kṛṣṇā, while P.T.S. Iyengar also holds that the Andhras were originally a Vindhyan tribe that extended its political power from the west gradually to the east down the Godāvari and the Kṛṣṇā valleys. That the Andhras were indigenous to the Deccan is attested to by both the epics; the Mahābhārata says that they were Daksinā-patha-janmānāh, while the Rāmāyana connects them with the Godāvari:

Daksinā-patha-janmānāh sarve naravarāndhrarakāh,
Guhāḥ Pulindāḥ Savarāḥ Cukukā Madrakah (?) saha.
(Mbh., XII, 207, 42.)

Nādim Godāvariṃ caiva sarvamevānupāsyataḥ,
TAthāvāndhrāṃśca Pundrāṃśca colān Pundrāṃśca kekebalān.
(Rām., Kish. Kān., 41, Chap. 11.)

That the Andhras occupied the Godāvari-Kṛṣṇā valley is further upheld by one of the earliest records of the Pallava dynasty that flourished in the Andhra region. The Mayidavohl plates of the early Pallava ruler Śivaskandavarman prove that the Andhrapatha or the region of the Andhras embraced the Kṛṣṇā district with Dhañnakada or Bezwada as its capital.

The Markandeya Purāṇa mentions in the list of peoples inhabiting the eastern countries a tribe called the Andhrarakas which is substituted by the Andhravākas. But both seem to be misreadings for the Andhras who were always a people of the southern regions, as also in view of the fact that the same Markandeya Purāṇa

1 Aitareya Br., VII, 18.
2 Aitān vah prajāh takṣiṣṭa iti, etc. Andhrāh Pundrāḥ Savarāḥ Pulindāḥ Mālibāh iti uddyaṁtāh vahābhaḥ bhavanti?
4 Canto I, VII, 42.
5 Ep. Ind., VI, p. 38.
6 Ibid., 1918, p. 71.
7 XLV, 122.
places a people called the Andhas along with the Maulikas, Aśmakas, Bhogavardhanas, Naiṣikas, Kuntalas, etc., in the southern region.\(^1\) The reading Andhas is also corrected in the Vāyupurāṇa as Andhras.\(^2\) These peoples are mentioned in the Mahābhārata in the Udyogaparvan and Bhīṣma-parvan as Andhakas and Andhras respectively.\(^3\) According to the Subhāparvan and Vanaparvan,\(^4\) the Andhas or Andhras were a rude uncivilised people.

The earliest epigraphic mention of the Andhra people is made in some of the edicts (XIII, R.E.) of Aśoka where the Andhras, Palidas (Pāladas, Parimdas = the Pulindas, or the Pāradas), Bhojas and Rāṭhikas (Rāṣṭrikas) are said to have been vassal tribes of the great Maurya. The Andhra people are also referred to by Pliny who says that the Andarāes or Andhras possessed a very large number of villages, thirty towns defended by walls and towers, and supplied their king with an army of 100,000 infantry, 2,000 cavalry and 1,000 elephants.\(^5\)

The founder of the great Sātavāhanas, Simuka, who is credited by the Purāṇas to have assailed the Kāṇvāyanas and destroyed the remains of the Śuṅga power in about the first century B.C. is said to have started a dynasty that ruled over the Daksināpatha, for about 250 years. The Sātavāhanas are claimed by the Purāṇas to have been Andhras or Andhrabhṛtyas. The exact significance of this appellation cannot, however, be determined but doubtless they ruled over the whole of Andhradeśa and the adjoining regions.

In the Harāhā Inscription of the Maukhari king Kumāragupta III (554 A.D.) a certain 'lord of the Andhrs' (Andhrādhipati) is said to have given the Maukhari king a great trouble by his 'thousands of three-fold rutting elephants'.\(^6\) Dr. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri suggests that the Andhra king referred to was probably Mādhavavarman (I, Javāśrāya) of the Polamuru plates belonging to the Visnukundin family.\(^7\) This suggestion seems to be in agreement with the fact that the Jaumpur Inscription of Iśvaravarman, father of Iśānavarman Maukhari, refers to victory over the Andhras on behalf of Iśvaravarman.\(^8\) The Vākṣṭaka king Harisena, father-in-law of Mādhavavarman of the Visnukundin family referred to above, also claims to have conquered the Andhra and Kaliṅga regions.\(^9\)

The Īśvākus succeeded the Sātavāhanas in the rule of the Andhra region where almost all the records of the dynasty have

---

\(^1\) LVII, 48-9.
\(^2\) XLV, 127.
\(^3\) XVIII, 586 and X, 357 respectively.
\(^4\) IV, 119; XXX, 1175; XXXIII, 1270 and Vanaparvan, LI, 1988.
\(^5\) Ind. Ant., 1877, p. 339.
\(^6\) P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 509.
\(^7\) J.R.A.S., 1914, p. 137.
\(^8\) Ep. Ind., XIV, pp. 110ff.
heen found. At the time of Pallava Śivaskandavarman, the Andhrāpatha or the Andhra country seems to have come under the sway of the Pallava dynasty whose headquarters at this time were at Dhamnakada (Dhānya-kāṭaka). According to the Purāṇas, the Andhra (i.e. the Sātavāhana) dynasty had five different branches.1

In fact, one of these five branches, namely, the Cutusātakāṁī branch, is known from inscriptions, coins and literary references to have ruled in the Kuntala country before the Kadambas.2 The Vāyu-purāṇa in the same context referred to above mentions the Ābhiras who ruled after the Andhras (i.e. the Sātavāhanas).

In about the second quarter of the seventh century A.D., the celebrated Chinese pilgrim Hsüan Tsang visited the An-to-lo or the Andhra country. The nearest transcription of An-to-lo is Andara which is comparable to Pliny’s Andarae referred to above, though doubtless it means the Andhra country. From Kosala (evidently South Kosala), the pilgrim travelled south, through a forest, for above 900 li to the An-to-lo country which ‘had a rich fertile soil with a moist hot climate; the people were of violent character; their mode of speech differed from that of “Mid-India”, but they followed the same system of writing. There were twenty odd Buddhist monasteries with more than 3,000 brethren. Near the capital was a large monastery with a succession of high walls and storeyed terraces . . .’.

The name of the capital of the country as given by the pilgrim was Ping-ki-lo which does not seem to have as yet been correctly identified, though Cunningham sought to equate it with Warangal.

We have seen above that in the time of Pallava Śivaskandavarman, Dhārayakaṭaka was the capital of the Andhrāpatha, but Hsüan Tsang seems to refer to Dhānyakaṭaka as a region separate from Andhra. The pilgrim proceeds to relate that from Andhra he continued his journey south, through wood and jungle, for over 1,000 li, and reached the Te-na-ka-che-ka country which was above 6,000 li in circuit, and its capital was above 40 li in circuit. Te-na-ka-che-ka has been equated with Dhānyāyakaṭaka or Dhanakaṭaka.4


2 Sircar, Successors of the Sātavāhanas, pp. 218ff. For a summary of the historical vicissitudes of Andhradeśa after the Sātavāhanas, see ibid., pp. 3–5 of the introduction.


'The country had a rich soil and yielded abundant crops; there was much waste land and the inhabited towns were few; the climate was warm, and the people were of black complexion, violent disposition, and fond of the arts. There was a crowd of Buddhist monasteries but most of them were deserted, about 20 being in use, with 1,000 brethren mostly adherents of the Mahāsāṅghika system. There were about 100 Deva temples and the followers of the various sects were numerous...

Stray references to the Andhra country and people are made in later epigraphic records as well. Thus the Indian Museum inscription of the ninth year of Narāyaṇapāladeva of the Pāla dynasty refers to the Andhra-vaisayika Sākyabhikṣu Sthavira Dharmamitra who erected an image, evidently of the Buddha.

The Pāli Buddhist literature is not wanting in references to the Andhras. The Apadāna, a book of the Pāli Canon, mentions Andhakas along with the Mūndākas, Kolakas and Činas who came to show respect to a banker's son named Jatukannika in the town of Hamsavati.

A young brahmin after completing his education at Takkasilā (Taxila), then a great seat of learning, came to the Andhra country to profit by practical experience. Assaka and Ajaka or Mulaka were the two Andhaka kings. A brahmin well versed in mantras belonging to the kingdom of Kosala came to live in the kingdom of Assaka on the banks of the Godāvari.*

---

1 Pt. II, p. 359.
3 Suttanipāta Commentary, II, p. 581.
4 Suttanipāta, p. 190.
CHAPTER XXXIV

THE DAMILAS

The Damilas, commonly known as the Tamils, were a powerful S. Indian tribe, frequently mentioned in Buddhist texts, particularly the Ceylon Chronicles (Dīpavamsa, Mahāvaṃsa, Cūlavamsa). It is interesting to note that a Vinaya Commentary called Vimavatvinodanī was written by Kassapa Thera, an inhabitant of the kingdom of Damila. In the Mahāvaṃsa Tīkā, however, we are told that the Damilas were disrespectful to the Buddhist stūpas.

From the Pāli Chronicles we find that the Damilas were a warlike people. From early times they made incursions into Ceylon, and we frequently find Damila rulers on the throne at Anurādhapura. For instance, in 177 B.C., two Damilas, Sena and Gutta, are said to have conquered King Suratissa (187–177 B.C.) and ruled the island of Laṅkā (= Ceylon) for twenty-two years. In the second and first centuries B.C. the island of Laṅkā was very much troubled by the Damilas who became very turbulent. A Damila king named Elāra reigned in Laṅkā from 145 B.C. till 101 B.C., and was then defeated and dethroned by the famous Dutṭhagāmaṇi, ‘himself a great warrior, accompanied by ten great heroes’. In the Mahāvaṃsa Tīkā we read that Dutṭhagāmaṇi fought with the Damilas, killing large numbers of them, and made a single realm of Ceylon. This story is elaborated in the Sumanāgalavilāsinī (p. 640). Here we read that ‘Dutṭhagāmaṇi Abhaya’, after defeating 32 Damila kings and being crowned at Anurādhapura as undisputed ruler of Ceylon, was so highly delighted that he did not sleep for a month. The Thūpavamsa (p. 59) further says that Dutṭhagāmaṇi defeated the Damilas at Mahiyāṅgana, where he built a golden cetiya

1 We may note that the word ‘Dravidian’ comes from the ethnic name ‘Dravida’, or ‘Dramida’, or ‘Damila’.
2 Sāsanavaṃsa, 33.
3 Mahāvaṃsa Tīkā, p. 447 (P.T.S. Ed.).
4 Dīpavamsa, 18, 47.
5 Mahābodhivaṃsa, p. 133.
6 Mahāvaṃsa Tīkā, p. 24.
7 Ibid., p. 439—the phrase is ‘ghaṭetvā Damile sabbe’, ‘killing all the Damilas’, but this is probably poetic licence.
8 ‘Ekaraṇjan katva’—ibid., p. 437; and see p. 100.
and worshipped it. On another occasion, he conquered the Damilas 'on the other side of the Ganges' (Gangāya parātīre).  

Many Damilas were also killed by Velusumano, a general of Dutṭhagāmaṇi, after they had taken refuge in the city called Vijitanagara (or Vijitapura). Thereupon Dutṭhagāmaṇi's troops went to Giriloka, where a Damila general named Giriya was slain. King Kakavanaṇa Tissa, Dutṭhagāmaṇi's father, had also fought with the Damilas at Mahiyangana, where he huilt a golden stūpa. In order to put a check on the Damilas he kept guards at the fords of the Mahāgaṅgā.  

In 43 B.C., in the fifth month of Vattagāmaṇi's reign, a Brahmin named Tissa rose against him, but was defeated by seven Damilas who landed at Mahātīttha. Then these Damilas waged war against Vattagāmaṇi and defeated him at Kolamhālaka. For fourteen years, Vattagāmaṇi and his queen Anulā were exiled, and during this period five Damilas ruled in succession at Anurādhapura. First came Pulahattha who ruled this city for three years, and appointed a Damila named Bāhiya as his commander (senāpati). Bāhiya succeeded Pulahattha, and was followed in his turn by Panayamāra, Piḷayamāra, and Dāṭhika. Meanwhile, Vattagāmaṇi was staging a comeback, and in 29 B.C. he attacked and slew Dāṭhika, regained his throne, and reigned until 17 B.C.  

Some years later (between 12 and 16 A.D.), the wicked queen Anulā poisoned all her husbands in succession; among them were two Damilas, namely Vaṭuka and Nīliya. Though there must have been Damila incursions during the succeeding four centuries, we have no definite dates until 433 A.D. when a Damila usurper named Pāṇḍuka reigned in Ceylon for five years, after killing King Mittasena. A little later, another Damila usurper named Piṭhiya ruled at Anurādhapura for seven months, and was then killed in battle.  

More Damilas were killed by Māna, eldest son of Kassapa II (641–650 A.D.). We then have another gap in the chronology, until

1 Mahāvamsa Tīkā, p. 476. The Ganges in this case is the 'Great River' of Ceylon (= Mahāvālakaganga).
2 Thupavamsa (P.T.S. Ed. by B. C. Iaw), p. 62; Mahāvamsa Tīkā, pp. 475, 479; and see Malalasekera, Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names, s.v. Velusumano, Dutṭhagāmaṇi, and Giriya.
3 Thupavamsa, p. 58.
4 Mahāvamsa Tīkā, p. 448.
5 Ibid., p. 617.
6 This Dāṭhika must be identical with the Sāṭhika or Dāṭhika who is mentioned in the Dipavamsa (19, 16) as having been killed by 'Abhaya, son of Saddhātissa', i.e. by Vattagāmaṇi.
7 Mahāvamsa Tīkā, p. 626.
8 Colavamsa (P.T.S.), p. 22.
9 Ibid., p. 24.
10 Ibid., p. 71.
the time of Parakkamabahu I of Ceylon (1153–1186 A.D.). During this period, Kulasekhara, a Cholian king of S. India, besieged the Pandyyan king, Parakkama of Madhurā, and the latter appealed for help to Parakkamabahu who sent an expeditionary force to S. India where they carried on a prolonged campaign against Kulasekhara and his allies, in the course of which the fortress of Semponmari was conquered by the Sinhalese.1 Meanwhile, the Pandyyan king had been killed, but the Sinhalese defeated Kulasekhara and installed Parakkama’s son on the throne of Madhura.2 About a century later, a powerful Damila general named Ariyacakkavatti laid waste the kingdom of Ceylon, entered the town of Subhagiri, seized all its sacred treasures, including the Buddha’s tooth relic, and returned with them to the Pandu kingdom, then ruled over by another Kulasekhara (1268–1308 A.D.).3

A study of the Buddhist texts clearly shows that the Damilas were a fighting people, engaged in constant strife with the Sinhalese. They are described as ‘anāriya’ or uncultured. They were defeated and mercilessly massacred in almost all their battles with the Sinhalese; on one occasion, as we read in the Mahāvamsa Commentary,4 the Damilas were killed in such large numbers that the water of a pond became red on account of the profuse flow of Damila blood. They are said to have used red-hot iron balls and molten pitch against their enemies.5

The literary tradition of Ceylon does not clearly indicate who these Damila invaders were. But, as we have seen above, the general Ariyacakkavatti, for example, came from the Pandu kingdom, i.e. the land of the Pandyvas in the southernmost part of India; and we may perhaps conclude from this that the Damilas who made predatory excursions into the island of Ceylon from time to time were natives of Pandyva. We cannot tell, however, whether those Damilas who invaded Ceylon in early times were sent on their expeditions by the king of Pandu, or whether they were a race of marauders who undertook those expeditions on their own initiative. The Commentaries of Buddhaghosa distinguish the Damilas from the Vavanatas and Kirātas on the one hand, and from the Andhras on the other.

The relations between the Damila country and Ceylon were not always inimical. For instance, the account of Vijaya in the Mahāvamsa6 distinctly brings out that a matrimonial alliance

---

1 Culavamsa (P.T.S.), p. 402.
2 See Malalasekera, op. cit., s.v. Kulasekhara.
3 Culavamsa, p. 512.
4 p. 482.
5 Ibid., p. 477.
6 VII, 72.
existed between the rulers of Lanka and Pāṇḍya. It is also mentioned that there was a very early settlement in Ceylon of skilled craftsmen and families of the eighteen guilds, all from Pāṇḍya. There existed a close cultural relationship and constant intercourse between S. India and Ceylon; notable centres of Buddhist learning mentioned in Pāli works being Kāverīpaṭṭaṇa, Madhurā and Kāñcipura (modern Conjeeveram).
CHAPTER XXXV

THE SAVARAS

The Śavaras or Śabaras referred to in both the Great Epics were a non-Aryan tribe. The earliest mention of them is to be found in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VII, 18), where it is stated that the elder sons of Viśvāmitra were cursed to become progenitors of such servile races as Andhras, Puḍras, Śavaras, Pulindas and Mūtības. The implication of this passage seems to be that the Śavaras were a non-Aryan people dwelling somewhere in the Daksināpatha. The Matsya and Vāyu Purāṇas definitely locate them in the south, describing them as Daksināpathavāsinah. The Mahābhārata (XII, 207, 42) also places them in the Deccan along with the Andhras and Pulindas:

Daksināpathajanmānaḥ sarve naravarāndhrakāh
Guhāḥ Pulindāḥ Śavarāś Cucukā Madrakaiḥ (?) saha.

Ptolemy mentions a country called Sabarai which is generally held to be identical with the region inhabited by the Śavaras. Cunningham identifies the Sabarai of Ptolemy with Pliny's Suari, and further identifies both with the aboriginal Śavaras or Suars, a wild race who lived in the woods and jungles without any fixed habitations, and whose country extended as far southward as the Pennār river. These Śavaras or Suars are only a single branch of a widely spread race found in large numbers to the south-west of Gwalior and Marwar and S. Rajputana where they are known as Surrius.

The Rāmāyaṇa story of the Śavara women who were deeply attached to Rāmacandra also seems to indicate that the Śavaras were a wild tribe inhabiting the forest regions of the south.

1 Roth, Zur Litteratur und Geschichte des Weda, p. 133.
2 Matsya P., 144, 46–8; Vāyu P., 45, 126.
4 Ibid., p. 173.
5 See Rāmāyaṇa, I, 1, 55 sq. (Cf. Rām., III, 77, 6 sq.)
The Mütibas were a non-Aryan barbarian (Dasyu) tribe, mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VII, 18) along with the Andhras, Pulindas and Šavaras. They are also probably referred to in the Sānkhyāyana Śravat Sūtra (XV, 26, 6) under the name Mucipas or Müvipas.¹

The location of the Mütibas is not definitely known, but as they are mentioned along with the Šavaras and Pulindas who, according to the Purāṇas² and the Mahābhārata,³ were ‘dakṣināpatbavāsinah’ or located in the south, it may be surmised that the Mütibas also were a southern tribe. This is also indicated by the fact that the Andhras with whom they are associated were also a southern people.

The Mütibas were probably the same as the Modubae of Pliny, who are said to have dwelt beyond the Modo-Galingae, a tribe occupying a large island in the Ganges; though it is difficult to account for the Mütibas evidently a southern tribe, coming to occupy a region not very far from the Ganges.

The Mütibas do not seem to have been an important tribe; they are scarcely mentioned in the historical period.

¹ It is not altogether improbable that the Mucipas are the people who appear in the Mārkandeya Purāṇa (57, 46) under the designation of Mushika. A comparison of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa with the Sānkhyāyana Śravat Sūtra betrays a good deal of confusion with regard to the second and third consonants of the name. It was, therefore, perfectly natural for later generations to introduce further variations. The Mushikas were probably settled on the banks of the river Musi on which Hyderabad now stands’ (P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 80).
² Vāyu P., 45, 126; Matsya P., 114, 46–8.
³ XII, 207, 42.
CHAPTER XXXVII

THE PULINDAS

The Pulindas were a people belonging to the aboriginal stock, and have often been classed with such non-Aryan tribes as the Śabarās, Ābhīras, Pulkusas, etc. They are usually definitely stated to be a southern tribe, but there seems to have been a northern branch of the Pulindas as well.

The association of the Pulindas with the Andhras and Śavaras, as also with the Puṇḍras and Mūtibas, is as old as the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VII, r8), where it is stated that the elder sons of Viśvāmitra were cursed to become progenitors of such races as the Andhras, Puṇḍras, Śavaras, Pulindas and Mūtibas.1

The Mahābhārata 2 places the Pulindas in the Daksināpatha (Deccan), along with the Andhras, Guhas, Śavaras, Cucukas and Madrakas. The Māṣya and Vāyu Purāṇas 3 also describe them as Daksināpatha-vāsinah (dwelling in the Deccan), along with the Vaidarbhas, Daṇḍakas, Vindhyas and others. The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 4 too places the Pulindas in the Deccan, and classes them with the Puṇḍrakas, Keralas, Kaliṅgas, Ābhīras, Andhras, Vaidarbhas and Kuntalas. The Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (2, 4, r8) associates them with the Kirātas, Hūṇas, Andhras, Pulkusas, Ābhīras, Suhmas, Yavanas and Khaśas, all of whom sought the protection of Śrī Kṛṣṇa.

In the Bengali recension of the Rāmāyaṇa (Kīśkindhyā K., XLI, r7; XLIV, r2), the Pulindas appear both in the south and in the north. The northern recension knows only of the northern Pulindas (Kīśkindhyā K., XLIII). The Viṣṇupurāṇa 5 associates the Pulindakas (probably identical with the Pulindas) with the Sindhus: the two peoples are coupled in a compound—Sindhu-

---

1 Roth, Zur Litteratur und Geschichte des Veda, p. 133.
2 XII, 207, 42.
3 Teśām pare janaṇapā Daksināpatha-vāsināḥ.
4 57, 45–8. The Pulindas are also mentioned in the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa (see Pārvā Bhāgā, 16, 40ff.), Brahma P. (27, 41ff.), Vāmana P. (13, 35ff.), Garuḍa P. (35, 10ff.).
5 See Wilson, Viṣṇu P. tr., Vol. 2 (1865), pp. 156ff.
Pulindakas—and are mentioned together with the Kārūṣas, Bhojas, Daśārṇas, Mekalas, Utkalas and other tribes. The compound Sindhu-Pulindaka also occurs in the Mahābhārata (6, 346ff.) and Padmapurāṇa (III, 6, 4ff.). The Pulindas are alluded to in the Raghuvamśā as well (XVI, 32), but there is hardly any clue to their geographical location.

The capital of the (southern) Pulindas was Pulindanagara which lay to the south-east of Daśārṇa, i.e. in the Vidiśā or Bhilsa region, and may have been identical with Rupnāth, the find-spot of one recension of Minor Rock Edict I of Aśoka.¹

At the time of Aśoka, the Pulindas, together with the Andhras, Bhojas and Rāṣṭrikas, formed a group of vassal tribes within the Emperor’s dominions,² which extended as far south as the Pennar river in the Nellore district, just stopping short of the Tamil kingdoms, which are referred to as Pracāṃta or frontier states.

Some interesting information about the Pulindas is supplied by Ptolemy. According to him, the Pulindas seem to have been located along the banks of the Narmadā, to the frontiers of Lārike or Lāṭa (= Gujarat); for he describes them as occupying a region northward of Nasik, Ozene (= Ujjain), Minnagara, Lārika or Lāṭadeśa (= Gujarat), Barygaza (= Bharukaccha = Broach), etc. His epithet for the tribe is ‘Agriophagoi’,—a Greek word indicating that they were a tribe that subsisted on raw flesh and wild roots and fruits.

Yule in his map locates the Pulindas to the north-east of the Gulf of Cutch.

² Rock Edict, V and XIII.
CHAPTER XXXVIII

THE KUNTALAS

The Kuntalas are twice mentioned in the Mārkaṇḍeṣa Purāṇa list of tribes, once in connection with the peoples of Kāśi and Kośala (L.VII, 33), which means that they were a Madhyadeśa tribe, and elsewhere (L.VII, 48) along with the Āśakas, Bhogavardhanas, Naiśikas, Andhras, etc., which suggests that they were a people of the Deccan. The Bhīṣmaparvan of the Mahābhārata, however, seems to locate them in the Madhyadeśa, while another (IX, 367) in the Deccan which is also upheld by a reference apparently to the same people in the Karnaparvan (XX, 779). A third reference in the Bhīṣmaparvan (IX, 359) suggests location of the tribe somewhere in the western region. Cunningham points out (A.S.R., XI, 123) that the country of the Kuntalas of the Madhyadeśa should be identified with the region near Chunar which he calls Kuntila. Whatever be the merit of the identification, the Kuntalas of the Madhyadeśa do not seem to have attained to any historical eminence. The Kuntalas of the west also have hardly any place in history. But the Kuntalas of the Deccan appear to have risen to considerable importance in historical times as will be evident from subsequent details.

Literary and epigraphic references have now proved beyond doubt that there were several families of the Śatākārṇis of the Deccan, and one or more of these families ruled over Kuntala of the Kanarese districts before the Kadambas (Ray Chaudhuri, P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., 339-40). One member mentioned in the Matsya-prāṇa list is actually called Kuntala Śatākārṇi, a name that is commented upon by the commentator of Vātsyāyana's Kāmasūtra. He takes the word 'Kuntala' in the name Kuntala Śatākārṇi to mean 'Kuntala-viṣaye jātatvāt tatsamākhyaḥ'. A Śatāvahana of Kuntala is also referred to in the Kāvyamāṃṣā of Rājaśekhara. This king ordered the use of Prākrit to the exclusion of every other language by the ladies of his inner apartments. He has often been identified with king Hāla who hailed from Kuntala (Kāvyamāṃṣā notes, p. 9).

According to certain Mysore Inscriptions,1 the Kuntala region included the southern part of the Bombay Presidency and the

---

1 Rice, Mysore and Coorg from Inscriptions, p. 3; Fleet, Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts, p. 284, f.n. 2.
northern portion of Mysore, and it was ruled at one time by the kings of the Nanda dynasty.

Kuntala figured in history also in later times. An Ajantā Inscription credits the Vākāṭaka king Pṛthivīśena I with having conquered the lord of Kuntala. Another Vākāṭaka king Harīśena claimed victories over Kuntala along with Lāṭa, Avanti, Andhra, Kaliṅga, etc.
CHAPTER XXXIX
THE RĀŚTRIKAS

The Rāśtrikas are mentioned for the first time in the Rock Edicts of Aśoka (V and XIII), along with the Andhras, Pulindas and Bhojas who were included as vassal tribes within Aśoka's dominions. The Andhras, Pulindas and Bhojas were known as early as the time of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, but the Rāśtrikas find no mention there. The tribe had evidently not come into importance at that time.

Even after Aśoka's time the Rāśtrikas continued to be associated with the Bhojas. In the Hāthigumpha Inscriptions of King Khāravela of Kaliṅga (c. 150 B.C.), that monarch is said to have defeated the Bhojakas and Rāthikas (i.e. the Bhojas and Rāśtrikas of Aśokan inscriptions) in the fourth year of his reign, and to have compelled them to do him homage.

The Sātavāhana records refer to two tribes, Mahābhojas and Mahāraṭhis (Smith, Aśoka, 4th Ed., p. 225), who were evidently identical with the earlier Bhojas and Rāśtrikas, and it is clear that the Rāśtrikas or Mahāraṭhis were the ancestors of the present Mahāraṭha people or Mārāṭhas (cf. R. G. Bhandarkar, Anc. History of the Deccan).

The Bhojas were located in the Vīdarbha or modern Berar region, which is included within modern Mārāṭhi-speaking districts. The Rāśtrikas who were so frequently associated with them must have occupied the adjoining tracts, and it may be assumed that they were located in the very region where the present Mārāṭhas dwell.
CHAPTER XI

THE NÁSIKYAS

The Purāṇas make a mess in the mention of this people. The Markandeya Purāṇa in one context reads it as Naiṣikas (LVII, 48), but in the same canto in another context reads it as Nāsikyāvas (LVII, 51), and still in another place correctly as Nāsikyas (LVIII, 24). There is no doubt that at all these places one and the same people of ancient Nasik is meant. The Vāyu-purāṇa reads Nairnikas (XLV, 127) which the Markandeya Purāṇa reads Naiṣikas, and instead of Nāsikyāvas of the same source, it reads Nāsikyas. The Maitya-purāṇa reads Vāsikas (CXIII, 50). This confusion makes it evident that the people and the region were not so widely celebrated. This people moreover does not seem to have been known to the authors of the Epics.
CHAPTER XI.
THE ASMAKAS

The Asmakas or Assakas formed one of the Ksatriya tribes of ancient India. They are not mentioned in the Vedic literature, but we find them referred to in the Epics and Puranas. In an enumeration of the countries in 'Bharatavarsha', the land of the Asmakas is mentioned along with those of the most prominent Ksatriya peoples of ancient India, such as the Kurus and Sūrasenas. In the different recensions of the Mahābhārata, the name of the tribe varies, being spelt either Aśmaka or Aśvaka. In Pāli Buddhist literature, the name is Aśaka which, as Rhys Davids points out, may be the vernacular equivalent of either Aśmaka or Aśvaka. He continues: 'Either there were two distinct tribes so called, or the Sanskrit form Aśvaka is a wrong reading or a blunder in the Sanskritization of Aśaka'.

The Greek writers mention a people called the Assakenoi in eastern Afghanistan and the Kunar valley, with their chief town at Massaga or Maśakāvati.

In the Mahābhārata, there is some confusion between the Aśmakas and the Aśvakas, and some of the passages appear to contradict one another. In the Jayadrathavadhaparvadhyaya, the Aśmakas are found ranged on the Pāṇḍava side in the Kurukṣetra war; on the other hand, an 'Aśmaka-dāyāda', or a relative of the Aśmaka monarch, is said to have been killed in battle by Abhimanyu (VII, 37, 1605); and the same person is also referred to as 'Aśmakaśya suta' (son of Aśmaka) in the verse immediately following (VII, 37, 1606). An Aśmakeśvara (king of Aśmaka) is also spoken of here (VII, 37, 1608). In a list of the tribes conquered by Karna, the Aśmakas are mentioned along with the Vatsas, Kaliṅgas, Rṣikas, etc. (VIII, 8, 237). In the Ādiparvan, a Rājarṣi Aśmaka, son of Vaśisṭha and Madayanti, wife of Kalmāsapāda, is mentioned, and the story of his birth is referred to. The same king, who is called a Vāśisṭha, is said to have founded Paudanya (I, 177, 6791).

Pāṇini mentions Aśmaka in one of his Sūtras (IV, I, 173).

The Ariguttara Nikāya, like the Purāṇas, tells us that Aśvaka was one of the sixteen Mahājanapadas of Jambudīpa (India).

1 Bhishmaparvan, Chap. 9, p. 822. 3 VII, 85, 3049.
2 Buddhist India, p. 28. 4 I, 122, 4737.
5 I, p. 213; IV, pp. 252, 256, 260. 6 Padmapurāṇa, Svargakhanda, Chap. III; Viṣṇudharmottaramahāpurāṇa, Chap. IX.
had an abundance of food and gems, and was wealthy and prosperous. From the Mahāgovinda Sutta, we learn that Potana was the (capital) city of the Assakas.¹

In the Suttanipāta,² one of the oldest works of the Pāli Buddhist literature, the Assaka or Aśmaka country is associated with Mūlaka with its capital Patiṭṭāna (Paithan), and mentioned as situated on the bank of the river Godāvari, immediately to the south of Patiṭṭāna. The same passage speaks of a Brāhmaṇa guru called Bāvari who, having left the Kośala country, settled near a village on the Godāvari in the Assaka territory in the Dakṣināpatha.³

Rhys Davids points out that the country is mentioned together with Avanti, in the same way as Aṅga is with Magadha, and its position in the list of Mahājanapadas, between Śūrasena and Avanti, makes it appear probable that when the list was drawn up, Aśmaka was situated immediately north-west of Avanti. In that case, the settlement on the Godāvari was a later colony, and this is confirmed by the fact that there is no mention of Potana (or Potali) in the list.⁴ Further, Aśaṅga in his Sutradāṅkāra mentions an Aśmaka country in the basin of the Indus; and we have already noted that the Greek writers knew of a people called the ‘Assakenoi’ in eastern Afghanistan.

The legendary story of the origin of Aśmaka, founder of the tribe, hardly mentioned in the Mahābhārata, is narrated in full in the Bhāvanāraddhāya Purāṇa. Once Sudāsa, who is often identified with the Rgvedic hero who won the battle of the ten kings, went to the forest to hunt. He killed a tiger, and the dying animal took the shape of a terrible monster bent on wreaking vengeance on the king. An occasion soon presented itself. When Vasiṣṭha, the king’s priest, had departed after performing a sacrifice for Sudāsa, the monster assumed the form of the priest, appeared before the king, and asked him to prepare meat for him to eat. The monster once more changed his appearance, and appeared before King Sudāsa in the guise of a cook. When ordered by the king to prepare a dish of meat for Vasiṣṭha, he cooked human flesh; and the king offered the dish to the genuine Vasiṣṭha when he arrived. Vasiṣṭha thought the king to be wicked in offering him meat; and when, after meditation, he discovered that it was actually human flesh, he cursed the king, saying that he would become a monster, greedy for human flesh. When the king told him that it was (supposedly) by Vasiṣṭha’s own order that the dish had been prepared, the Rṣi meditated once more, learnt the

---

¹ Dīgha, II, p. 235.
² Verses 976-7.
³ D. R. Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 4; and p. 53, n. 5.
⁴ Buddhist Indiu, pp. 27-8.
whole truth, and modified his curse to have effect for twelve years only. The king, in his turn, was about to curse Vaśiṣṭha, but his queen Madayanti entreated him to forbear, and appeased his wrath. The king washed his feet with the curse-water; his legs turned black, and thenceforward he was famous as Kalmāsapāda ('having speckled feet').

Every third night thenceforth the king took the shape of a rāksasa, and strolling about the forest, used to kill human heings. One night he ate a Brāhmaṇi’s husband, and the Brāhmaṇi cursed him, saying, *You will die at the time of union with your wife*. After twelve years, the king was duly freed from the curse of Vaśiṣṭha. He desired an heir, but recollecting the Brāhmaṇi’s curse, requested Vaśiṣṭha to act as his proxy. Queen Madayanti conceived, and a son was born to her after the lapse of seven years. According to the legend, the boy was named Āsmaka because his mother smote her womb with a stone (aśmaṇi) before he was born, in order to hasten delivery. Āsmaka’s son was Mūlaka, and his great-grandson is said to have been Dilipa, the forefather of Rāma. Thus a connection is established between the Ikṣvākus and the Āsmakas.2

The Matsyapurāṇa (Chap. 272) gives us a list of twenty-five Āsmaka kings, contemporaries of the Śiśunāgas who reigned in Magadha before the Nandas.

One of the Jātakas relates the following story. In Potali, the capital of Assaka, there reigned a king Assaka who had a queen of unique beauty. When she died, the king was overwhelmed with grief. The Bodhisattva, then dwelling at the foot of the Himalayas, got to know of the king’s sorrow, and appeared before him. He showed the king his queen, reincarnated as a tiny dungworm. The king made himself known to his queen who told him in human voice that she no longer loved him,—the worm was now dearer to her. Thus the king was consoled.3

In another Jātaka,4 we read that Assaka was the king of Potali in the Assaka country. At this time Kaliṅga was reigning in the city of Dantapura in the Kaliṅga kingdom. Kaliṅga had four daughters of surpassing beauty, whom he ordered to sit in a covered carriage to be driven to every village, town and city with an armed escort. Kaliṅga declared that if any king were desirous of taking them into his harem, he would join battle with him. Passing through various countries, the princesses reached Potali in the Assaka country. The gates were opened by order of Nandisena,

---

1 For the connection between the Āsmakas and Mūlakas, see Mūlaka chapter.
2 Brhamnāraṇdyā Purāṇa, Chap. 9.
3 Jātaka (Fausbōll), Vol. II, pp. 155 foll.
4 Ibid., III, pp. 3 foll.
the minister of the king of Assaka; and the four princesses were brought before the king who, acting on Nandisena’s advice, made them his queen-consorts and sent a message to King Kaliṅga informing him of this. Keeping his threat, Kaliṅga set out for Assaka with a large army, and a great battle was fought. Through Nandisena’s diplomacy, Assaka defeated Kaliṅga who fled to his own city. Assaka demanded from Kaliṅga a portion of the dowry of his daughters. King Kaliṅga sent a befitting dowry to Assaka, and thenceforth the two kings lived amicably. According to this story, the countries of the Assakas and the Kaliṅgas bordered on each other. Evidently it is the southern Aśmaka country, on the Godāvari, that is here referred to.

The Vīmānavatthu Commentary tells us that a king named Assaka, whose capital was Potanānagara, reigned in the country of Assaka. In fulfilment of a promise to grant a boon to his younger wife, he reluctantly sent Sujata, his son by his first wife, to the forest, so that his younger wife’s son should succeed him on the throne. Whilst in the forest, Sujata met the Elder Mahākaccāyana, was instructed in the Dhamma by him, and afterwards became a bhikkhu.¹

¹ Vīmānavatthu Commentary, pp. 259ff.
CHAPTER XLII

THE MULAKAS

The Mulakas were a small tribe, very closely related with the Ashmakas of the South (=Aśvakas of the Mahābhārata, Assakas of Pali literature). They were perhaps situated to the south of Avanti, and according to Bhāṭṭasvāmī, the commentator of Kautilya’s Arthaśāstra, their country was identical with Mahāraṣṭra. The position of the Ashmakas and Mulakas may be determined by two references in the Suttanipāta. From verse 977 we gather that the Assakas and Mulakas occupied the region on the banks of the Godavari; while in verse 1011 the capital of the Mulakas is described as being located at Patitṭhāna (Sans. Pratisthana), i.e. Paithan (= Baithan of Ptolemy) on the north bank of the Godavari in the Aurungabad district of the Nizam’s dominions.

Some scholars are of opinion that the Mulakas occupied the same tract of country as that of the Ashmakas, and that the two tribes were identical. This is, however, doubtful. In the Vāyu-purāṇa, both Ashmakas and Mulakas are no doubt stated to be scions of the Ikṣvāku family (Chap. 88, 177-8); and if we are to believe the Pauranic tradition as contained in the Garuḍapurāṇa (Chap. 142, 34), Mulaka, the originator of the Mulaka tribe, was the son of King Ashmaka, a descendant of Bhagiratha. The Ashmakas and the Mulakas were thus intimately related, but that the two tribes were different and lived in separate regions is revealed not only by the Brahmanical sources of the Epics and Purāṇas, but by Buddhist sources as well.

In early Pali literature, Assaka is distinguished on the one hand from Mulaka in the north and on the other from Kaliṅga in the east. According to the Paramalṭhajotikā (II, Pt. II, p. 581), the Godāvari formed the border line between the territories of two Andhra kings (that is to say, between Assaka and Alaka). That the two countries were distinguished from each other is also upheld by the Pauranic tradition as contained in the Viṣṇudharmottara

---

1 As distinguished from the Ashmakas of N.W. India, identical with the Assakenoi of the Greeks.
2 It should be noted, however, that Mulaka occurs only in the Burmese reading of the S.N. The Singhalaese has 'Alaka', which seems to be identical with Mulaka (Law, Geography of Early Buddhism, p. 21).
3 Dey, Geographical Dictionary, pp. 13 and 133.
4 Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures, 1918, pp. 53-4.
THE MULAKAS

(Pt. I, Chap. 9). D. R. Bhandarkar, however, suggests that in later times Mulaka came to be included in Assaka. In the Sonadanda Jataka, the Assaka country is associated with Avanti; this contiguity, according to Bhandarkar, can only be explained if it is assumed that Mulaka was included in Assaka, and that the latter country was thus contiguous with Avanti.

In giving the genealogy of the kings of Ayodhyā who belonged to the Ikṣvāku or 'solar' race, some of the Purāṇas mention the names of six kings, namely, Aśmaka, Mūlaka, Śataratha, Iḍavīḍa (with variations), Viḍśāsarman and Viśvasaha, who came after King Saudāsa Khaḷmāśapāḍa. The list differs from that given in the other Purāṇas, but Pargiter considers it more authentic (Anc. Ind. Hist. Tradition, pp. 94 and 147). King Mūlaka is referred to in the Purāṇas enumerated above as reigning contemporaneously with one King Rāma. Mūlaka was afraid of Rāma and lived protected by a guard of women (nāri-kavaca). A similar statement occurs in the Mahābhārata. In the historical period, Aśmaka and Mūlaka were no longer connected with Ayodhyā.

As late as the second quarter of the second century A.D., the Mūlakas are distinguished from the Aśmakas. The Nāsik Inscription of Gautami, the Śatavāhana Queen, states that her son conquered the Śakas, Yavanas and Pahlavas, and that her dominions extended not only over Asika, Asaka (= Aśmaka) and Mūlaka, but also over Surattha, Kukkura, Aparānta, Anupa, Vidarbha and Ākara-Avanti.

1 Jātaka (Fausböll), V, p. 317.
2 Carmichael Lectures, 1918, pp. 53-4.
3 Vāyu P., Chap. 88, 178-9; Brahmāṇa P., Pt. III, Chap. 63, 178-9; Liṅga P., Pt. I, Chap. 66, 29; Kārma P., Pt. I, Chap. 21, 14; Bhāgavata P., Pt. IX, Chap. 9, 40.
4 XII, Chap. 49, 1770-8 and 1792-3; for the historicity of these tales, see Pargiter, op. cit., p. 752, f.n. 2.
5 The country of the Mūlakas seems to have been mentioned as Maulika in Varāhamihira's Brhatsamhitā, XIV, 4.
CHAPTER XLIII

COlAS

In the earliest time of which we have any record, the Tamilagam or Tamil realm, as Dr. Barnett thinks, extended over the greater part of the modern Madras Presidency, its boundaries being on the north a line running approximately from Pulicat on the coast to Venkatagiri (Tirupati), on the east the Bay of Bengal, on the south Cape Comorin, and on the west the Arabian Sea as far north as the 'White Rock' near Badagara, to the south of Mahi. Malabar was included in it.\(^1\) It consisted of three kingdoms, those of the Pāṇḍyas, Cōlas and Chēras or Keralas. The Cōla kingdom stretched along the eastern coast, from the river Penner to the Vellār, and on the west reaching to about the borders of Coorg. According to tradition, the Cōla country comprised the land between two streams having the same name, Vellāru, in the north and the south, the sea on the east and Kōṭṭaikkarai in the west. The area included the modern districts of Trichinopoly and Tanjore and part of the Pudukkottai State.\(^2\) Its capital was Uraiyūr (old Trichinopoly). Kāviri-paṭṭinam or Pugar on the northern bank of the river Kāveri was its great port while Kāṅchi (modern Conjeeveram) was one of its chief towns. Uraiyūr corresponds to Sanskrit Uragapura.

Negapatam, about 10 miles south of Kāraikkāl, also on the seaboard, was perhaps known to Ptolemy as an important town; at any rate it became a centre of trade and of many religions including Buddhism long before it attracted the attention of European merchants and missionaries. Tanjore, Trichinopoly and Kumbakonam are the present notable cities of the former Cōla country. Gangaikonda-Cōlapuram, at the meeting point of the modern districts of Trichinopoly, S. Arcot and Tanjore, rose to prominence as the Cōla capital in the eleventh and twelfth centuries.

The Cōla country was thus drained by the river Kāveri and comprised the districts of Trichinopoly and Tanjore.\(^3\) The river Kāveri is often alluded to and associated with the name of the Cōlas in South Indian inscriptions. Thus we learn from a South Indian inscription\(^4\) that Hara asked Gunabhara: 'How could I, standing in

---

\(^1\) Cambridge History of India, Vol. I, p. 595.


\(^3\) Ray Chaudhuri, Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., p. 271.

\(^4\) Hultzsch, South Indian Inscriptions, Vol. I, p. 34.
a temple on earth, view the great power of the Cōlas or the river Kāveri? From another inscription we learn that the Cāluṣya king Pulakesin II crossed the river Kāveri with his victorious army to enter the Cōla country when 'the Kāveri had her current obstructed by the causeway formed by his elephants'. The glory of the Kāveri forms an inexhaustible theme of early Tamil poetry. According to the Manimēkkalai,¹ this noble stream was released from his water-pot by the sage Agastya in response to the prayer of the king Kānta and for the exaltation of the 'children of the sun'. She was the special banner of the just race of the Cōlas, and she never failed them in the most protracted drought. The yearly freshes in the Kāveri formed the occasion of a carnival in which the whole nation from the king down to the meanest peasant took part.² The origin of the name Cōla is uncertain. The Parimēlahagur is inclined to make it the name, like Pāṇḍya and Čēra, of a ruling family or clan of antiquity. The story of the eponymous brothers Čēran, Śōjan and Pāṇḍiyan is indeed suggestive. The name Cōla, however, indicated from the earliest times the people as well as the country subject to the Cōla dynasty of rulers. Col. Gerini wrongly connects the word Cōla with the Sanskrit Kāla (black) and with Kōla which denoted in the early days the black or dark coloured pre-Aryan population of Southern India in general. The effort to derive it similarly from Tamil 'Cōlam' (millet) or Sanskrit 'Cōra' (thief) seems unsound. Other names generally used for the Cōlas are Kīḷi, Valavan and Śembiyani. Kīḷi probably comes from 'Kil' (dig) meaning a 'digger'; this word forms an integral part of early Cōla names like Nedungili and so on which is not found in later Cōla names. Valavan probably comes from 'Valam' (fertility) and means owner of a fertile country, like the land of the Kāveri. Śembiyani is generally taken to mean a descendant of Śibi, a legendary hero whose self-sacrifice in saving a dove from the pursuit of a falcon figures among the early Cōla legends and forms the theme of the Śibi Jātaka among the Jātaka stories of Buddhism.³

The Cōla kings were alleged to belong to the tribe of Tiraiyar or 'Men of the Sea'. Their connection with the sea is probably indicated by the following reference of Aelian to the realm of Soras (Chola?) and its chief city: 'There is a city which a man of royal extraction called Soras governed at the time when Eukratides governed the Bactrians, and the name of that city is Perimuda. It is inhabited by a race of fish-eaters who go off with nets and catch oysters.'⁴ During the age of the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea.

¹ I, 9-12; 23-4. ² Manimēkkalai, p. 23. ³ Ibid., p. 25. ⁴ Ray Chaudhuri, Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., 271, l.n. 2.
as Dr. Ray Chaudhuri shows in Appendix B (p. 387) of his work, the kingdom of Araguru (= Uragapura) was included in Damirica. The geographer Ptolemy refers to the kingdom of Sora (Chola) ruled by Arkatos and the kingdom of Malanga (probably Kāñchī, according to Dr. Ray Chaudhuri), ruled by Basaromagā. In the Mārkandeya Āpyn, Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas, the Cōlas are mentioned along with the Pāṇḍyas and Keralas. In the Rāmāyana, Sugriva is described as sending his monkey followers to the countries of the Cōlas, Pāṇḍyas and Keralas in quest of Sītā. Kātyāyana in his Vārttikas or aphorisms to Pāṇini’s Śūtras or grammatical rules mentions the Cōlas and the Pāṇḍyas. Patañjali in his Mahābhāṣya mentions Kāñchipa. Aśoka in his Rock Edicts II and XIII mentions the Cōlas, Pāṇḍyas, Ketalaputras and Satiyaputras as forming ‘prachamta’ or outlying provinces outside his empire. They were on friendly terms with him. The Cōlas, like the Pāṇḍyas, are spoken of in the plural in all the versions of the Aṣokan edicts, and this has been held to imply that ‘in Aśoka’s time there were more than one Cōda and one Pāṇḍya King’. Two or three poets of the Śaṅgam make references to an invasion of the south by the Māriyar (Mauryas). Māmūlanār also speaks of the wealth of the Nandas hidden under the Ganges at Pātaliputra. He says that the Vāḍugar formed the vanguard of the invading Mauryas (Aham 281). He further says that the Kōsār undertook the subjugation of the south and as the Mōhūr chieftain continued defiant, the Mauryas came down with their great forces on a warlike expedition to the south (Aham 251). The above account thus confirms the story of Bindusāra’s conquest of Southern India as recorded by the Tibetan historian Taṇānāt. It is evident thus that Maurya empire in Southern India probably received some setback before the date when Rock Edicts II and XIII were promulgated. Allusions to the land of the Cōlas and Kāveripatītan are found in the Mahāvamsa. The Milinda-Puṇho mentions Kola-Pattana, which according to Rhys Davids, must be some place on the Coromandel Coast. Here is a reference probably to Kāveripatītan. In the Jātaka story Akitti to escape from his admirers is said to have left the neighbourhood of Benares for the Tamil country where he spent some time in a garden near Kāveripatītan. The Mahāvamsa shows that towards the middle of the second century B.C., a Damila of noble descent, Elāra

1 Chap. 57, V. 45.  
2 Chap. 45, V. 124.  
3 Chap. 112, V. 46.  
4 IV, Chap. 41, Bombay Ed.  
6 IV, 2, Second Āhnika.  
7 Cf. Bhandarkar, Aśoka, p. 41.  
8 Ibid., p. 28.  
9 Trenchner Ed., p. 350.  
10 Jātaka (Pausbōll), IV, 237 foll.
by name, came to Ceylon from the Cōla country (Colarāṭṭha) overpowered Asela,¹ the then king of the island, and himself reigned as king for forty-four years with even justice towards friends and foes on occasions of disputes at law. He sentenced his only son to death for unwittingly causing the death of a young calf. In Tamil literature also we find the story of the prince and the calf which is placed in the reign of Manu.

The early history of the Cōla country is obscure. About the beginning of the Christian era the Cōla king was Peru-nar-Killi. His son was Iļanjet-Senni whose son was Karikāl, a vigorous ruler, under whom the Cōlas became the leading power of the south. He defeated an allied army of the Cheras and Pāṇḍyas and made an expedition to the north. At home he suppressed the turbulent Ayar, Aravālar, Kurumbar and Oliyar. He made his capital at Kāveri-pattinam on the Kāveri and he secured it from flood by raising the banks of the river as well as by making canals. From the Cōlas the hegemony of the south passed to the Cheras and later still to the Pāṇḍyas who were ousted by the Pallavas who later on became the suzerain power of Southern India.

¹ Mahāvamsa (Geiger), p. 166.
CHAPTER XLIV

PÂNDYAS

The Pândya kingdom comprised the greater part of the modern Madura and Tinnevelly Districts and in the first century of the Christian era Southern Travancore also. It had its capital originally at Kolka on the Tâmraparṇi river in Tinnevelly and later at Madura (Dakṣinā Mathurā). According to Dr. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri the Pândya country corresponded to the Madura, Ramanad and Tinnevelly districts and perhaps the southern portion of the Travancore State. It was watered by the rivers Tâmraparṇi and Kṛtamala or Vaigai. Kātyāyana in his Vârttika derives Pândya from Pându. In the Mahābharata and in several Jâtakas the Pândus are spoken of as the ruling race of Indraprastha. In the statement of Kātyāyana regarding the connection of the Pândyas with the Pândus who are mentioned in the Epic tale, we find an interesting clue for the name of Madura, the Pândya capital. Madura or Dakṣinā Mathurā is in a sense the same as Mathurā or Muttra, the capital of the Śurasena kingdom. Now, according to Epic tradition, the Pândus of Indraprastha were closely connected with the ruling family of the Śurasena country by ties of friendship and marriage. The geographer Ptolemy (circa 150 A.D.) speaks of the country of the Pandoouoi in the Punjab. The association of the Pândyas of the south with the Śurasenas of Mathurā and the Pândus of Northern India is probably alluded to in the confused statement of Megasthenes regarding Herakles and Pandaia. Megasthenes, who visited the court of Candragupta Maurya towards the end of the fourth century B.C., has left on record some rumours concerning these southern States. He thus notes a legend that Heracles placed the south under the rule of his daughter 'Pandaia'. The Sanskrit Epics mention them vaguely as foreign lands outside their purview. Thus in the Mahābhārata Sahadeva, the youngest of the Pându princes, is represented in his career of conquest to have gone to Dakṣināpatha after having conquered the king of the Pândyas. In the same way the country of the Pândyas is mentioned in the Rāmāyana where Sugriva is said to have sent his monkey-soldiers in quest of Sītā, Rāma's consort. In the Purāṇas also as in the case of the

2 Sahâerpura, Chap. 31, V. 17.
3 Rāmāyana, IV, Chap. 41.
Mārkaṇḍeya,1 Vāyu 2 and Matsya,3 we find mention of the Pāṇḍyas. In Rock Edicts II and XIII, Aśoka mentions the Pāṇḍyas whose territory lay outside his empire. The relations between the Damilas and the natives of Ceylon form one of the main strands in the narrative of the Mahāvamsa. Though on several occasions the Chronicle speaks only of Damilas in general, still the distinction between the Pāṇḍya and Cōla divisions of the Tamil country is well known and clearly observed in it. A careful study of the Buddhist texts shows that the Damilas were a fighting people always engaged in constant strifes with the Ceylonese. They are described as anāriyā or uncultured. ‘Might is right’ was their policy with the result that they were defeated and mercilessly massacred in almost all their battles with the Sinhalese as we find in the Mahāvamsa Commentary (p. 482). It is only in connection with a particular Damila general named Āriyacakkavatti that we are told that he returned with all booties to the Pāṇḍya country, the land of the Pāṇḍyas in the south. The literary tradition of Ceylon keeps us entirely in the dark as to whether those Damilas were sent with expeditions by the king of Pāṇḍu or they were a race of marauders who undertook those expeditions on their own initiative. The account of Vijaya distinctly brings out that there existed a matrimonial alliance between the ruler of Laṅkā and that of Pāṇḍya. It is also mentioned that there was a very early settlement in Ceylon of skilled craftsmen and families of the eighteen guilds, all from Pāṇḍya.4 There existed similarly a close cultural relationship and constant intercourse between South India and Ceylon; the notable centres of Buddhist learning mentioned in Pāḷi works being Kāveripaṭṭana, Madhurā, and Kāṇḍcīpurā.5

Strabo (XV, 4, 73) makes mention of an embassy sent to Augustus Caesar about the year 22 B.C. by a king ‘Pandion’, possibly a Pāṇḍya of the Tamil country.6 In the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea, the Pandian kingdom is mentioned which was included in Damirica.7 From the Hathigumpha Inscription of the Cheta king Khāravela of Kaliṅga, it appears that in his eleventh year ‘he had had Pithuda ploughed with a plough drawn by an ass’, and seems to have pushed his conquest further south and made his power felt even by the king of the Pāṇḍya country.8

We have very little information regarding the early history of the Pāṇḍya country. Meagre references in the pages of classical

1 Chap. 57, V. 45.
2 Chap. 45, V. 124.
3 Chap. 172, V. 46.
4 Mahāvamsa, Chap. 7.
6 Cambridge History of India, Vol. 1, p. 597.
8 Ibid., 4th Ed., p. 349.
writers like Pliny supplemented by the data collected from ancient Tamil literature are the only materials for a study of their history. From these we can gather that Nedun-jeliiyan II was the first conspicuous Pāṇḍya ruler who made the Pāṇḍyas the leading power of the south. But the supremacy of the south ultimately passed to the Pallavas.
CHAPTER XLV

KERALAS OR CHERAS

The Keralaputra (Ketalaputra or Chera) is 'the country south of Kūpaka (or Satya), extending down to Kanneti in Central Travancore (Karunagapalli Taluk). South of it lay the political division of Mūshika'. It was watered by the river Periyār on the banks of which stood its capital Vaṇji (near Cochin) and at its mouth the seaport of Muziris (Kranganur). According to L. D. Barnett 2 the Chera or Kerala territory comprised Travancore, Cochin and the Malabar District; the Koṇgu-deśa (corresponding to the Coimbatore District and the southern part of Salem District), which at one time was separate from it and later annexed to it. Its capital was originally Vaṇji (now Tīru-Karur, on the Periyār river, near Cochin), but later Tīru-Vaṇjikkalam (near the mouth of the Periyār). It had important trading centres on the western coast at Tondi on the Agalappulai, about five miles north of Quilândi, Muchiri (near the mouth of the Periyār), Pālaiyūr (near Chowghāt), and Vaikkarai (close to Kottayam).

The three Tamil kingdoms, viz. Cōla, Chera and Pāṇḍya, are vaguely mentioned in the Sanskrit Epics and Purāṇas. Thus in the Purāṇas, as Sir R. G. Bhandarkar points out, 3 the term Daksina or Daksina is used to denote the whole peninsula to the south of the Narmadā. The Mārkandeya Purāṇa (Chap. 57, 45) reads Kevalas. The Viṣṇupurāṇa (XLV, 124) and the Maśya Purāṇa (CXIII, 46) as well as the Bhīṣma Purāṇa of the Mahābhārata (IX, 352 and 365) give the correct reading Kerala. According to the Mahābhārata, 4 the Keralas seem to have been a forest tribe. In historical times they are associated with the Cōlas and Pāṇḍyas. This is upheld by Harivamśa as well (XXXII, 1836). The Mārkandeya, Viṣṇu and Maśya Purāṇas mention the Cōlas, Pāṇḍyas and Keralas among the peoples of the Daksinapatha. In the Mārkandeya Purāṇa, 5 the reading of the second line, as R. G. Bhandarkar says, is wrong. He gives his reading as follows: 'Pāṇḍyāś ca Keralāścaiva Cōlah Kulyāś tathaiva ca'. In the Rāmāyaṇa, 6 we read that Sugrīva,

---

4 Saṁhāpaka, XXX, pp. 174-5.
5 Chap. 57, 45 (ed. Bibliotheca Indica).
6 IV, Chap. 41, Bom. Ed.
monkey-king, is described as sending his followers to the different quarters in search of Rāma’s wife, Sītā, and Rāvana, her ravisher. The monkey-soldiers are directed to go to the countries of the Andhras (Telugu people), the Pāṇḍyas, the Cōḷas and the Keralas, in the south, and are told that they will there see the gate of the city of the Pāṇḍyas adorned with gold and jewels. In the Mahābhārata Sahadeva in his career of conquest is represented to have subdued the Pāṇḍyas, Drāviḍas, Udras, Keralas and Andhras. Patañjali in his Mahābhāṣya shows an intimate acquaintance with the south. In Mahābhāṣya Kerala (or Malabar) is mentioned. The same work mentions Māhiṣmati, Vaidarbha and Kaṇcipuram (Conjeeveram). In the second and thirteenth rock edicts of Aśoka, the outlying provinces of the Cōḷas, Pāṇḍyas, Satiyaputras, Ketalaputras (Chera or Kerala), and the Andhras and Pulindas are mentioned.

Damirica is shown in the age of the Periplus as including Cerobothra (i.e. Keralaputra). During the age of Ptolemy the kingdom of Karoura was ruled by Kerobothros (Keralaputra).

After the Cōḷas, the Cheras for a time became the leading power of the south. After them the Pāṇḍyas became the supreme power for some time in Southern India and then the Pallavas.

1 Sābhāparvan, Chap. 31.
2 IV, I, 4th Āhūnika.
3 Early History of the Deccan, p. 7.
CHAPTER XLVI

THE MAGADHAS

The Magadhas occupied a prominent position in very ancient times. Though the Ṛgveda does not mention them as such, yet Vedic literature generally contains innumerable references to them as a people. In the Atharvaveda Samhitā,¹ the Māgadha is said to be connected with the Vṛātya as his Mitra, his Mantra, his laughter and his thunder in the four quarters. In the Lāṭyāyana Śrāuta Sūtra ² (which belongs to a school of the Sāmaveda), Vṛātya-dhana or the property of the Vṛātya is directed to be given either to a bad Brahmīn or to a Brahmīn of Magadha; but the Pañcavimśa Brāhmaṇa (XVII, 1, 16), which also belongs to the Sāmaveda, does not say anything on the point.

In the Taittīrya Brāhmaṇa (III, 4, 1, 1) we read that the people of Magadha were famous for their loud voice. The fact that Māgadha in later times often stands for ‘minstrel’ is easily accounted for by the assumption that the country was the home of minstrelsy and that wandering bards from Magadha were apt to visit the more western provinces of ancient India. The minstrel character of the Magadhas also appears from the Mānava Dharmasāstra which mentions them as bards and traders.³ The Brāhmaṇapuruṣaṇa tells us that the first great Sāmrāṭ or Emperor Prathu gave Magadha to Māgadha, being highly pleased with his song in praise of himself.⁴ The later texts recognise the Māgadhas as a special caste, inventing their origin from intermarriage among the old established castes. In the Gautama Dharmasāstra (IV, 17) and Manusamhitā,⁵ the Māgadha is not a man of Magadha, but a member of a mixed caste produced by the union of a Vaiśya man and a Kṣatriya woman.

In the Śānkhyāyana Āranyaka it is said that Madhyama, son of Pratibodhi, was a resident of Magadha (Magadhavāsin).⁶ In the Āpāstamba Śrāuta Sūtra (XXII, 6, 18), the Magadhas are mentioned along with other peoples both of E. and of W. India, viz. the Kālingas, the Gandhāras, the Pāraskaras and the Sauvīras.

¹ Harvard Oriental Series, p. 774.
³ Manusamhitā, X, 47.
⁴ Chap. IV, śl. 67; Vāyu Purāṇa, Chap. 62, śl. 147.
⁵ X, 47.
⁶ Keith, Śānkhyāyana Āranyaka, p. 46.
They are also mentioned in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa,1 where it is said that neither Kosala nor Videha was fully brahmanised at an early date,—much less Magadha.

Coming down to the Epic age, we find the Magadhas frequently mentioned, and much information about the country and the people may be culled from the Great Epics. For instance, the Rāmāyaṇa tells us that Vasiṣṭha asked Sumantra to invite many pious kings, including the Magadhan king, who was well versed in all the śāstras. King Daśaratha tried to appease his irate queen Kaikeyi by offering to present her with ‘articles manufactured in Magadhā’.3 The Kīśkindhyā Kānda informs us that Sugrīva sent monkeys in quest of Sītā to all parts of India, and even beyond its boundaries. Here Magadhā is mentioned as one of the countries in the east.

Pargiter has sought to show on the evidence of the Purāṇas that the dynasties of Magadha and the adjoining countries were descended from Kuru’s son Sudhanvan. Vasu, the fourth in succession from Sudhanvan, conquered Cedi from the Vādavas, thereby obtaining the title Caidvoparicara, and also annexed the adjoining countries as far as Magadhā. When he offered to divide his five territories among his five sons, the eldest son Brahmā took Magadha with Girivraja as its capital and founded the famous Bārhadratha dynasty there.5 We read in the Rāmāyaṇa that ‘Vasu, the fourth son of Brahmā, built Girivraja, the ancient capital of Magadha’.6

The Purāṇas assert that the successors of Jarāsandha ruled over Magadha for a thousand years. Two of these kings, Kuśāgra and Vṛṣabha, are commemorated in early names of Rājagṛha (Girivraja, Kuśāgra-pura, Vṛṣabha-pura). Rupūnjaya was the last king of this dynasty. He was killed by his minister Sunīka (? Pulika, Munīka, Sunaka), who installed his son Pradyota on the throne of Magadhā. Five kings of the Pradyota dynasty ruled over Magadha for 138 years, after which the Śiśunāgas came into power.7 Twelve kings of this dynasty reigned in Magadha for 162 years, Mahānandin being the last king. Mahāpada Nanda, son of Mahānandin by his Śūdra wife, destroyed the Kṣatriya race and established Śūdra rule in Magadha. Thereafter eight sons of Nanda ruled over Magadha for

---

1 I, 4, 1, 10.  
2 Adī Kānda, 13th Sarga.  
3 Ayodhya Kānda, 37; 10th Sarga.  
4 48th Sarga, sl. 23.  
5 Pargiter, Ancient Indian Historical Tradition, pp. 118, 282.  
6 Adī Kānda, canto 32, verse 7.  
7 The famous King Bimbisāra is said to have been the fifth of the Śiśunāga line, which was established before 600 B.C.; but the Mahāvaṃsa makes Śiśunāga the founder of a dynasty which succeeded that of Bimbisāra.
a hundred years, and then the Nandas were destroyed in their turn by Kautšilya who installed Candragupta Maurya on the throne. Ten kings of the Maurya dynasty are said to have ruled over Magadha for 137 years. Brhadhratha was the last king of this dynasty, which was followed by the Suigas, founded by Puṣyamitra. Ten kings of this dynasty ruled for 112 years, Devabhūti being the last monarch of the Suiga family; he was killed by Vāsudeva Kātuva, who founded the Kāuṣṭha dynasty, and four kings of this family ruled in Magadha for 45 years. Then Sipraka, a royal servant, murdered King Susarman, usurped the throne and founded the Andhra dynasty, thirty kings of which reigned in Magadha for 456 years. The Viṣṇupurāṇa gives us a long list of the ancestors of Jarāsandha as well as of the monarchs who succeeded him.

Kālidāsa, who seems to have derived his materials from the Purāṇas and Epics, speaks of the intermarriage of the early kings of Košala with the ruling family of Magadha. He says that Dilipa, the father of Raghu, married Sudakṣinā, daughter of the king of Magadha. In his beautiful account of the Svayamvara of Indumati, Kālidāsa also refers to the prominent position occupied by the Magadhan king. We have a description of Magadha in the Daśakumāracaritam of Daṇḍin who belongs to about the same period as Kālidāsa. Daṇḍin there speaks of a monarch, Rājahaṃsa, who was a powerful king of Magadha, and who defeated Mānasāra, king of Mālava. Bhāsa's Svapnavāsavadattā also speaks of Magadha and its king, whose daughter Padmāvatī married the king of Vatsa, Udayana. The Samanitapāśādikā mentions two other kings of Magadha, viz. Anuruddha, and his son Munda. The latter is also referred to in the Aṅguttara Nikāya. Here we read that King Munda was overwhelmed with grief at the death of his queen, Bhaddā, and asked his treasurer to embalm her body in an oil pot, so that he might continue to look at her. The treasurer besought Munda to go to the sage Nārada who was dwelling at the Kukkuṭārāma near Paṭaligāma.

1 Twenty-two years according to the more reliable account of the Samanitapāśādikā (72); cf. Mahāvamsa, Chap. IV.
2 Viṣṇupurāṇa, IV, 24. The Buddhist Samanitapāśādikā (Vol. I, pp. 72-3) gives the following summary of Magadhan dynasties. Udaya Bhadda reigned for sixteen years. He was succeeded by Susunāga (i.e. Śīsunāga) who ruled for eighteen years. Then came the Nandas who reigned in Magadha for the same period. The Nanda dynasty was overthrown by Candagutta who ruled the kingdom for twenty-four years, and he was succeeded by Bindusāra who reigned for twenty-eight years, and was succeeded by Aśoka.
3 Viṣṇupurāṇa, IV, Chap. 19, Chap. 23; Matsyapurāṇa, Chap. 50, Chap. 271. 4 Raghvaciṃsā, I, 31. 5 Ibid., VI.
6 Saṃkhīḍhakāhā, Pārvapāthikā, pp. 4-5. 7 See Vatsa chapter.
(later Pātaliputra), and listen to his doctrine. Mūnda went to Nārada who instructed him and brought him solace. The king then asked his treasurer to burn the dead body of his queen, and thereafter attended to his duties as usual.¹

Before passing on to a more detailed account of the Magadhan dynasties, it may be as well to summarise what is known of the location of Magadha. According to Parāśara and Varahamihira, Magadha was situated in the eastern division of the nine portions into which the sub-continent of India was divided.² Magadha was bounded by the Ganges on the north, by the district of Benares on the west, by Hiranyaparvata or Moughyr on the east, and by Kirāṇa Supavana or Singhbhum on the south. Cunningham infers that in ancient times Magadha must have extended to the Karmanasā river on the west and to the sources of the Dāmoodar river on the south.³ Rhys Davids gives as probable boundaries: the Ganges to the north, the Son to the west, the country of Ānga to the east, and a dense forest reaching the plateau of Chota Nagpur to the south.⁴

Magadha was a narrow strip of country of some considerable length from north to south, and of an area greater than that of Kośala. Just as Kośala corresponded very nearly to the present province of Oudh, but was somewhat larger, so Magadha corresponded at the time of the Buddha to the modern district of Patna, but with the addition of the northern half of the modern district of Gayā. The inhabitants of this region used to call it Magā, a name doubtless derived from Magadha.⁵ According to the Siamese and other Buddhist books, as Spence Hardy shows, Magadha or Madhyamāṇḍala was supposed to be situated in the centre of Jambudvīpa. It is generally regarded as answering to Central Bihar. It is called Makata by the Burmese and Siamese, Mo-ki-to by the Chinese and Makala Kokf by the Japanese.⁶ All these are no doubt phonetic variations of the name Magadha. Rapson says⁷ that Magadha or Southern Bihar comprises the districts of Gayā and Patna; while Dr. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri places Magadha to the west of Ānga, being separated from the latter kingdom by the river Campā.⁸

One of the earliest and most famous kings of Magadha was Jarāsandha of Epic fame. The Mahābhārata speaks of Jarāsandha, son of King Brhadāratha, as a very great and powerful king of Magadha who reigned in the city of Girivraja or Rājagṛha, 'well guarded by

---
¹ Anguttara Nikāya, III, pp. 37ff.
² Cunningham, Ancient Geography, p. 6.
³ Cambridge History of India, Ancient India, p. 182.
⁴ Spence Hardy, Manual of Buddhism, p. 140.
⁵ Political History, p. 53.
⁶ Ibid., pp. 318ff.
⁷ Ibid., pp. 182-3.
⁸ Ancient India, p. 166.
THE MAHAJANAPADAS OF ANCIENT INDIA
mountains on all sides’. One of the ancient names of Rājagrha was Bārhadrathapura, after Jarāsandha. According to the Viṣṇupūrāṇa, Jarāsandha gave his two daughters in marriage to Kamsa, king of Mathurā, and when Kamsa was killed by Kṛṣṇa, Jarāsandha marched with his army to Mathurā to destroy Kṛṣṇa with all the Yadavas, only to be repulsed with heavy loss. From other sources, however, we learn that Jarāsandha besieged Mathurā with his large army of 23 aksauhinis, defeated many of the kings of N. India, and kept them imprisoned in Girivraja, it is said in a temple of Śiva, in order to sacrifice them to the god.⁵ According to the Sāntiparvan of the Mahābhārata, Jarāsandha, hearing of the valour of Karna, fought with him, but was defeated, and being pleased with his great skill in arms, made him king of the city of Mālini.⁶ In the Ādi-parvan, Jarāsandha is represented as a reincarnation of Vipractīti, a chief of the demons.⁷ Jarāsandha exercised such great power that without defeating him it was not possible for Vudhiśthira to assume the status of a paramount sovereign and perform the Rājasūya sacrifice. The Bhāgavata-pūrāṇa narrates that Bhima, Arjuna, and Kṛṣṇa went to Girivraja where Bhima killed Jarāsandha, and Kṛṣṇa made Sahadeva (Jarāsandha’s son) king of Magadha, and released all the kings imprisoned by Jarāsandha.⁸ The Sabhāparvan relates that Bhima proceeded again to Girivraja where he forced Sahadeva to pay taxes to him; and at the Rājasūya sacrifice, Sahadeva was present as one of the vassals of the Pāṇḍavas.⁹ In the Kurukṣetra battle, Dhrṣṭaketu, son of Jarāsandha, helped the Pāṇḍavas with a fourfold army. After the battle of Kurukṣetra, when the horse let loose at the Āsvamedha sacrifice of Vudhiśthira was proceeding towards Hastināpura, Meghasandhi, son of Sahadeva of Magadha, offered battle to Arjuna, but was defeated by him.¹⁰

After Ripuṇjiyaya, the last king of Jarāsandha’s line, came the Pradyotas, of whom there is not much to relate; and then followed the Śiśūnāgas. The Śiśunāga dynasty was established before 600 B.C. (perhaps in 642 B.C.) by a chieftain of Benares named Śiśunāga who fixed his capital at Girivraja or Rājagrha. Bimbisāra, said to

---

¹ Sabhāparvan, Chap. 27.
² Viṣṇupūrāṇa, Amśa 5, Chap. 22. The Khila-Harivamśa (Viṣṇupūrāṇa, Chap. 35, śis. 92 ff. and Chap. 36, śis. 40) informs us that Jarāsandha, king of Magadha, killed the horses yoked to the chariot of Balarāma, but was ultimately defeated by the Viṣṇis.
³ Mahābhārata, II, 14-5; Brahma-pūrāṇa, Chap. 105, śi. 3.
⁴ Sāntiparvan, Chap. 5.
⁵ Ādi-parvan, Chap. 67, v. 4.
⁶ Bhāgavata-pūrāṇa, Skandha 10, Chap. 72, śis. 16, 46.
⁷ Sabhāparvan, Chap. 30, v. 18.
⁸ Udyogaparvan, Chap. 57, v. 8.
⁹ Āsvamedhaparvan, Chap. 82.
have been the fifth of his line, came to the throne about 528 B.C. The Mahāvanśa, however, makes Śiśunāga the founder of a dynasty which succeeded that of Bimbisāra; and the Purāṇas are self-contradictory. The first Pradyota, namely, Canda Pradyota Mahāsena, was a contemporary of Bimbisāra according to the early Pali texts; but the Purāṇas, as we have seen, make Śiśunāga an ancestor of Bimbisāra. The fact that Vārānasī was included within Śiśunāga’s dominions supports the view that Śiśunāga came after Bimbisāra and Ajātaśatru, who were the first to establish Magadhan authority in Kāśi. The Mālālaṃkāravatthu tells us that Rājagṛha lost its rank as a royal city from the time of Śiśunāga. This also goes to show that Śiśunāga came after the flourishing days of Rājagṛha, i.e. the period of Bimbisāra and Ajātaśatru.

The Mahāvanśa (Geiger Ed., p. 15) records some facts regarding King Bimbisāra of Magadha, telling us that he was 15 years old when he was anointed king by his father, and that he reigned for 52 years. The father of Bimbisāra was probably Bhaṭṭiya who was defeated by Brahmadatta, King of Aṅga. As we shall see, this defeat was later avenged by Bimbisāra. Dr. Bhandarkar, however, makes Bimbisāra the founder of a dynasty, and says that he was a general who carved out a kingdom for himself at the expense of the Vajjis.

There are several more or less fanciful explanations of Bimbisāra’s name. The Suttanipāta Commentary relates that he was called Magadha because he was the lord of the Magadhās. He was the possessor of a large army, hence he was called Seniya; and he was called Bimbisāra because his colour was like that of excellent gold. In Rockhill’s Life of the Buddha (p. 16), it is said that Bimbisāra was so called because he was the son of Bimbi, queen of King Mahāpadma of Rājagṛha. Jaina works represent Bimbisāra as a Jain by religion, and sometimes in Jaina tradition his name is coupled with that of Aśoka’s grandson Samprati, as a notable patron of the creed of Mahāvira. All the Buddhist books, however, represent him as a devoted patron of the Buddha, and a great benefactor of the Buddhist Order.

2 Dynasties of the Kali Age, p. 21.
3 S.B.E., XI, p. 16.
4 J.A.S.B., 1914, 321.
6 Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 72.
7 Ibid., p. 448.
8 Smith, Ancient and Hindu India, p. 45.
Bimbisāra is said to have built the new Rājagṛha, the outer town to the north of the ring of hills encircling the ancient fort. We shall return later to the history of Rājagṛha.

King Bimbisāra annexed Āṅga to his kingdom. Āṅga was a small kingdom to the east, corresponding to the modern district of Bhagalpur and probably including Monghyr.1 The Jātaka stories contain several references to Āṅga, both as an independent kingdom and as a vassal of Magadha. It is stated in one Jātaka story that at one time the king of Benares conquered Āṅga and Magadha,2 and in another that the Magadhan kingdom once came under the suzerainty of Āṅga.3 The Campēyya Jātaka records a fight between the two neighbouring countries of Āṅga and Magadha. The river Campā flowed between Āṅga and Magadha, and a Nāga king named Campeyya used to live in that river. From time to time Āṅga and Magadha were engaged in battle. Once the Magadhan king was defeated and pursued by the army of Āṅga, but he escaped by jumping into the river Campā. Again, with the help of the Nāga king, he defeated the king of Āṅga, recovered his lost kingdom, and conquered Āṅga as well. He became intimately associated with the Āṅga king and used to make offerings to him on the bank of the river Campā every year with great pomp.4

While this story is evidently fanciful, the Mahāvagga5 offers reasonable evidence to prove that Āṅga came under Bimbisāra’s sway, while the Sonadanda Suttanta of the Dīgha Nikāya, by mentioning the bestowal of Campā, the capital of Āṅga, as a royal fief on the Brahman Sonadanda, indirectly proves the same.6 The Jaina works7 tell us that a Magadhan prince governed Āṅga as a separate province with Campā as its capital. During Bimbisāra’s lifetime, his son Ajātasatru acted as Viceroy at Campā.

The annexation of Āṅga was the turning point in the history of Magadha. As V. A. Smith says, it marked ‘the first step taken by the kingdom of Magadha in its advance to greatness and the position

1 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 32.  
2 Jātaka (Fausböll), V, 316.  
3 Ibid., VI, 272. See also Ray Chaudhuri, Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., p. 91.  
4 Jātaka (Fausböll), IV, pp. 454–5. In the Mahāvastu (I, pp. 288ff.) a story is narrated of how once Rājagṛha was suffering from a very severe pestilence. The king sent to the king of Āṅga for a bull with supernatural powers, owing to which the Āṅga kingdom was prosperous and healthy. This bull was lent by the king of Āṅga, and when it was brought within the boundary limits of the Magadhan capital, all pestilences due to attack by superhuman beings vanished.  
6 Dīgha Nikāya, I, pp. 111ff.  
7 Hemchandra, Śiṅhavāraḷi-charita; cf. the Bhagavatī Sūtra and the Nirayāvalī Sūtra.
of supremacy which it attained in the following century, so that Bimbisāra may he regarded as the real founder of the Magadhan imperial power. He strengthened his position by matrimonial alliances with the two neighbouring states, viz. Kośala and Vaiśāli. He took one consort from the royal family of Kośala and another from the influential Licchavi clan at Vaiśāli. A third queen of Bimbisāra, as mentioned in the Therigāthī Commentary (p. 131) was Khemā, daughter of the king of Madda (Madra) in the Punjab. According to the Jainā Nirayāvalīya Sūlī, the mother of Vehalla or Vihalla, one of the sons of Bimbisāra, was a daughter of Četaka, the then king of Videha. There is also mention of Udumbarikādevī, a royal lady, whose relation with Bimbisāra is not precisely known. The Jātakas tell us that Bimbisāra married Mahākośala’s daughter, Kosaladevi, to whom her father gave as a wedding gift a village of Kāśi yielding a revenue of a hundred thousand, for bath and perfume money. The Mahāvagga says that Bimbisāra had 500 wives.

Thus the marriages of Bimbisāra paved the way for the expansion of Magadha both westward and northward, and enabled Bimbisāra to add a part of Kāśi to his dominions and to launch Magadha on that career of conquest and aggrandisement which only ended when Aśoka sheathed his sword after the conquest of Kaliṅga.

The Vinaya Piṭaka (I, p. 179) tells us that Bimbisāra was the lord of 80,000 villages, and the Mahāvagga also states that Bimbisāra’s dominions embraced 80,000 townships, the overseers (Gāmikas) of which used to meet in a grand assembly.

Bimbisāra had many sons, of whom we know the names of several, viz. Kunika Ajāṭaśatru, Abhaya, Vimala-Koṇḍañña, Vehalla (or Vihalla), Silavat, Megha, Halla, and Nandisena. King Bimbisāra’s eldest son, Ajāṭaśatru, murdered his father. Many are the myths surrounding this dreadful deed. Devadatta, the recalcitrant cousin of the Buddha, is said to have performed a miracle and thereby succeeded in persuading Ajāṭaśatru to become his follower. It was he, it is said, who induced the prince to torture his father to death. During the lifetime of Bimbisāra, Ajāṭaśatru was made king, but at the instigation of Devadatta, he killed his

---

1 Smith, Early History of India, pp. 31-2. See Licchavi chapter.
3 Nos. 239, 283, 492. See Kośala and Kāśi chapters.
4 VIII, 1, 15.
7 See Licchavi chapter.
8 Psalms of the Sisters, p. 120; Psalms of the Brethren, p. 65.
10 See e.g., Sumanāgalavilāsinī, Pt. I, p. 134.
father by starving him, in spite of the efforts of Queen Kośaladevi to provide her husband with sustenance.

On the day that Bimbisāra died, a son was born to Ajātašatru. The reports conveying the news of the death of his father and the birth of his child were received by his ministers simultaneously. They first handed to Ajātašatru the letter conveying the news of the birth of his son. Forthwith the king’s mind was filled with filial affection, and all the virtues of his father rose up before his mind’s eye, and he at once ordered Bimbisāra’s release. But it was too late. The ministers handed him the other letter, and on learning of his father’s death, he wept, went to his mother, and asked her whether his father had any affection for him. Kośaladevi told him a story illustrating his father’s love for him. Hearing this, Ajātašatru wept hot tears.¹

The Vinaya (II, 400) gives a short account of an attempt made by Ajātašatru to kill his father with a sword, and in the concluding portion of the Sūmaññaphala Sutta, there is an allusion to the actual murder which he afterwards committed.² The details may or may not be true, but the fact that Bimbisāra was put to death by Ajātašatru appears to have been a historical truth, the tradition is so strong and persistent with regard to this matter. According to the Ceylonese Chroniclers, this event took place 8 years before the death of Buddha, when Bimbisāra had been on the throne for 52 years.³ According to other accounts, Bimbisāra reigned for 28 or 38 years, and Ajātašatru for 25 years.⁴

After Bimbisāra’s death, Queen Kośaladevi died of grief. Ajātašatru then began to enjoy the revenues of the Kāsi village, the dowry of his mother. But Pasenadi of Kośala determined that no parricide should possess a village which had been presented to his sister, and he accordingly waged war upon his nephew. Pasenadi was defeated in three campaigns, but in another battle he avenged his defeat, and took possession of Kāsi. However, he treated Ajātašatru generously, giving him his daughter Vajrā in marriage, and even bestowing the disputed village on her as a wedding gift. Thus Kāsi once again came under the sway of Ajātašatru, and the two kingdoms of Magadha and Kośala were once more closely united by matrimonial alliance.⁵

Ajātašatru afterwards succeeded not only in permanently annexing Kāsi, but also in absorbing the land of the Licchavis. At

² Dīgha Nikāya, I, p. 86.
³ Dipawamsa, III, 50-60; Mahāvamsa, II, 28-31.
⁵ Samyutta Nikāya, I, 82-5. See Kāsi and Kośala chapters, and cf. Vaḍḍhakīsūkara, Kummāsaṇī, Tāccha-sūkara and Bhuddasāla Jātakas.
any rate, the Licchavis were obliged to accept Ajātaśatru’s suzerainty and to pay him revenue, but they were in all probability independent in their internal politics. Ajātaśatru is said to have made use of two deadly weapons, the Mahāśilakaṇṭa and the Ra(t)hamusāla, in his war with the Licchavis. The first seems to have been some engine of war of the nature of a catapult which hurled big stones. The second was a chariot to which a mace was attached and which, when in motion, effected a great slaughter of men. It may be compared to the modern tank.¹

Kūnika Ajātaśatru is represented throughout Jaina literature as a king of Āṅga who reigned in Campā. But the fact is that he was only the Uparāja or Viceroy of Āṅga which formed part of the kingdom of Magadha. While Viceroy of Āṅga, Kūnika-Ajātaśatru picked a quarrel with the Vṛjī-Licchavis of Vaiśāli over the possession of a mineral mine on the boundary of the two territories. The Pāli commentatorial tradition indicates that Ajātaśatru was jealous of the Vṛjī-Licchavis on account of their national solidarity and numerical strength. Accordingly, after he had ascended the throne of Magadha, he became bent upon destroying them and uprooting their power. He deputed his minister Varsakāra to wait upon the Buddha and learn his opinion regarding the future of the Vṛjis. On coming to know that the Buddha laid much stress on unity as the source of their national strength, Ajātaśatru employed two of his ministers, Suniddha and Vassakāra, to build a fort at Patālighāma with a view to repelling the Vṛjis.² He also proceeded to weaken them by treacherous means, and eventually succeeded in conquering them.³

The Mahāvamsa⁴ assigns a reign of 32 years to Ajātaśatru, while the Vinaya Commentary, Samanipātikā, puts his reign at 24 years, and the Puranic tradition indicates that he reigned for 25 years.⁵ Ajātaśatru suffered the same miserable fate as his father, being put to death by his son Udāyi Bhadda.⁶ According to the genealogical lists given in the Purāṇas, Ajātaśatru was succeeded by Darśaka.⁷ Bhāsa’s Svapnavāsavadatta mentions a Magadhan king named Darśaka, but makes no mention of any fact that might lead us to believe that Darśaka was the successor of Ajātaśatru.

² Sumangalavīśā, II, pp. 56-7; Dīgha Nikāya, II, 67.
³ For a fuller account, see Licchavi chapter.
⁴ II, vv. 29, 31, 32.
⁶ Mahāvamsa, Chap. IV, v. 1.
⁷ Pargiter, Purāṇa Text of the Dynasties of the Kāli Age, pp. 67-9. 'Ajātaśatru was followed by Darśaka who reigned for 25 or 27 years. After Darśaka, Udāyin became king and made Kusumapura (Patāliputra) his capital, situated on the south bank of the Ganges.'
Dr. Bhandarkar identifies him with Nāga Dāsaka who is represented by the Ceylonese Chronicles as the last king of Bimbisāra’s line. The Pāli Canon and Jaina tradition do not warrant us in holding that Darśaka was the immediate successor of Ajātaśatru. The former asserts that Udāyi Bhadda was the son of Ajātaśatru and probably also his successor, and the latter represents Udāyi as the immediate successor of Kūnīka Ajātaśatru. The Ceylonese Chronicles also inform us that Udāyi Bhadda succeeded his father Ajātaśatru on the throne, and reigned for 16 years. That Udaya-bhadda or Udāyibhadda was the son and successor of Ajātaśatru is borne out by the Sāmaṇḍaphala Sūtra of the Dīgha Nikāya (I, p. 50), by the Samantapāsādikā (p. 72) and the Sumanāgalavilāsinī (Vol. I, pp. 153-4).

Before his accession to the throne, Udāyi Bhadda seems to have acted as his father’s Viceroy at Campā. The Jaina work Parisīṣṭāparvan tells us that it was Udāyin who founded on the bank of the Ganges a new capital which came to be known as Pāṭaliputra, though the first beginning of a garrison town appears to have been made during the Buddha’s lifetime. The Vāyupurāṇa bears testimony to this fact and says that Udaya built the city of Kusumapura in the fourth year of his reign.

The successors of Udāyi Bhadda, according to the Purāṇas, were Nandivardhana and Mahānandin. The Purāṇa account does not tally with the Samantapāsādikā which tells us that Udāyi Bhadda was succeeded by his son Anuruddha who reigned for 18 years, and was succeeded by his son Munda who reigned for the same period. Then came Nāga Dāsaka who reigned for 24 years. Nāga Dāsaka was banished by the citizens who anointed the minister, Śīṣunāga, as king. This was probably because the people had become disgusted with the succession of parricides from Ajātaśatru to Nāga Dāsaka. Śīṣunāga reigned for 18 years, and was followed by his son Kālaśoka, who reigned for 28 years. Kālaśoka had ten sons who ruled for 22 years.

Then came in succession the nine Nandas who took possession of the throne of Magadha and are said to have reigned for 22 years. According to the Purāṇas, the founder and first king of the Nanda dynasty was Mahāpadma Nanda, son of Mahānandin by a Śudra woman. He usurped the throne of Magadha in or about 413 B.C.

1 Jacobi, Parisīṣṭāparvan, p. 42.
2 Dīpavaṃsa, V, 97; Mahāvamsa, IV, 1.
3 Jacobi, Parisīṣṭāparvan, p. 42.
5 Ibid., pp. 72-3.
6 Cf. Dīpavaṃsa, V.
7 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 41.
We learn from Kauṭilya’s Arthaśāstra, Kamandaka’s Nītisāra, the Purāṇas and the Muḍrārākṣasa that the Nanda dynasty was overthrown by Candragupta Maurya with the help of his wily and astute minister, Kauṭilya.

Candragupta was the son of the chief queen of the Moriya king of Pipphalivana,¹ and founder of the Imperial Maurya dynasty of Magadha. He was advised by his minister Kauṭilya to seek the help of the Licchavis who were then living under a saṅgha form of government. The Licchavis enjoyed a great deal of independence under Candragupta. It will be remembered that they had been forced by Ajātaśatru to acknowledge the suzerainty of Magadha. Candragupta appears to have liberated the Punjab from foreign rule. He inherited from his Nanda predecessor a huge army which he increased until it numbered 30,000 cavalry, 9,000 elephants, 600,000 infantry, and a multitude of chariots. With this irresistible force, he overran and subdued all the northern States, probably as far south as the Narmadā or even farther.² Plutarch³ tells us that he brought under his sway the whole of India. Justin also says that Candragupta was in possession of India. Vincent Smith states that ‘the dominions of Candragupta, the first historical paramount sovereign or emperor in India, extended from the Bay of Bengal to the Arabian Sea’.⁴ Justin⁵ informs us that while India was under Candragupta, Seleukos (Seleucus), a general of Alexander the Great, made an expedition into India (about 305 B.C.). Appianus says that he crossed the Indus and waged war on Candragupta, king of the Indians, until he made friends and entered into relations of marriage with him.⁶ The hosts of Candragupta, however, proved too strong for the invader to overcome, and Seleukos was perforce obliged to retire and to conclude a humiliating peace. This treaty may be dated in or about 303 B.C. It was ratified by a ‘matrimonial alliance’, which is taken to mean that Seleukos gave a daughter to Candragupta. Seleukos was not only compelled to abandon all thought of conquest in India, but also to surrender a large part of Ariana to the west of the Indus. In exchange for the comparatively trifling equivalent of 500 elephants, Candragupta received the Satrapies of the Paropanisadai, Aria and Arachosia, the capitals of which were known as Kabul, Herat and Kandahar respectively. The Satrapy of Gedrosia with its capital Makran seems also to have been ceded. The inscriptions of Aśoka prove the inclusion of the

¹ See chapter on Bulis, Moriyas, etc.
² Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 124.
³ Alex., LXII.
⁴ Watson’s Ed., p. 143.
⁵ Smith, op. cit., p. 124.
Kabul Valley within the Maurya empire. After the war, the Syrian and Indian emperors lived on friendly terms. Seleukos sent an envoy, Megasthenes, to Candragupta's court. Megasthenes stayed at Pātaliputra for a considerable time, and wrote a history of India. Unfortunately this work, which would have been invaluable for the ancient history of India, has been lost. The fragments which survive in quotations by later authors such as Strabo and Arrian have been collected by Schwanbeck, and translated by McCrindle.

Great soldier and conqueror as Candragupta admittedly was, he was no less great as an administrator. We have a beautifully complete and detailed account of the system of administration in vogue in his time from the Arthaśāstra of Kautilya who is generally supposed to have been his chief minister, and the few fragments of Megasthenes which have survived amply corroborate this picture. The edicts of Aśoka again confirm in many respects the particulars of the organisation of the empire given by Kautilya and Megasthenes. The supreme government, it appears from Kautilya's work, consisted of two main parts: (1) The rājā, on the one hand, and (2) the Mahāmathrās, Amātyas or Saśīvas (ministers) on the other. At the head of the State was the sovereign (rājā) who had military, judicial, and legislative as well as executive functions, but was never the spiritual head. In addition to the Mantrins, there was the Mantriparīśad or Assembly of Imperial Councillors. In several passages of the Arthaśāstra, the Mantrins are sharply distinguished from the Mantriparīśad. The members making up the latter body evidently occupied an inferior position, their salary being 12,000 paṇas, while that of a Mantrin was 48,000 paṇas.¹

Kautilya's Arthaśāstra has been so largely utilised by scholars that any attempt to present anew an account of Candragupta's government would be futile and a mere repetition of what has already been said on the subject. The Early History of India² and the Political History of Ancient India³ give us a systematic and critical account of the government of the great Maurya Emperor, while Jayaswal's work on Hindu Polity illuminates many obscure points of ancient Indian statecraft and administration.

Historians differ in presenting an account of the last days of Candragupta. According to Jain tradition, Candragupta abdicated the throne and became a Jain ascetic. He is said to have repaired to Mysore, where he died.⁴ According to Vincent Smith, 'Chandragupta either abdicated or died in the year 298 B.C.'⁵

² By Vincent Smith.
³ By Hemchandra Ray Chaudhuri.
⁴ Rice, Mysore and Coorg from Inscriptions, pp. 34.
⁵ V. Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 126.
Candragupta was succeeded by his son Bindusāra, surnamed Amitraghāta (slayer of foes)—an epithet which is quoted, perhaps with reference to this king, in the grammatical work of Patañjali.1 It is uncertain whether Bindusāra earned, or merely assumed, his sobriquet. The Purāṇas attribute to Bindusāra a reign of 25 years, and the Ceylonese Chroniclers a reign of 28 years. The Samanta-pāśādikā,2 on the other hand, says that he ruled for 18 years only. According to Smith’s chronology, Bindusāra’s reign terminated about 273 B.C.3 The Divyāvadāna4 tells us that Taxila revolted during his reign, and that he sent his son Aśoka to quell the rebellion. When the prince approached Taxila with his troops, all disturbance was allayed. The people came out to meet him and said: ‘We are not opposed to the prince, nor even to King Bindusāra, but the wicked ministers insult us.’ Aśoka alludes to the high-handedness of the Maurya officials in his Kalinga Edict.5 Nothing of political importance is known to have happened during Bindusāra’s reign, but it is clear that he maintained intact the dominions inherited from Candragupta. The friendly relations between India and the Hellenistic powers, which had been initiated by his father Candragupta and the Greek empire-builder Seleukos, continued unbroken throughout his reign.6

Bindusāra was succeeded by his son Aśoka, who is said to have won undivided sovereignty over all Jambudvīpa after slaying all his brothers except the youngest, Tissa. Aśoka reigned without coronation for four years,7 and then consecrated himself as king in the city of Pātaliputra.8 He assumed the title of Devānampiya9 (‘dear to the gods’), and loved to speak of himself as Devānampiyadasi. The name Aśoka is found only in literature, and in two inscriptions, viz. the Maski Edict of Aśoka himself, and the Junāgadā inscription of the Mahākṣatrapa Rudradāman. Aśoka was at first called Candāsoka on account of his evil deeds, but he later became known as Dhammāsoka on account of his meritorious deeds.10 The Sarnath Inscription of Kumārādevī mentions the name Dharmāsoka.

During the first thirteen years of his reign, Aśoka appears to have followed the traditional Maurya policy of expansion within India and of friendly co-operation with foreign powers. In the thirteenth year of his reign, he conquered the kingdom of the Three Kaliṅgas or Kaliṅga, and annexed it to his empire. The annexation of Kaliṅga, like that of Aṅga by Bimbisāra, was a great landmark.

---

in the history of Magadha and of India. But the unavoidably heavy loss of life and property involved in the conquest of Kāliṅga made a deep impression on Aśoka and awakened in him feelings of profound compunction and sorrow. About this time he appears to have come under the influence of Buddhist teachers. This opened a new era—an era of peace and kindness to all animate beings, of social progress, of religious propaganda, and it marked the close of a career of conquest and aggression. 'The martial spirit of Magadha began to die out for want of exercise.' Thus came to an end the era of political 'dīgvijaya' begun by his mighty grandfather, giving place to the sacred era of Dhammavijaya or conquest by the spiritual force of non-violence. Aśoka's change of religion after the Kāliṅga war resulted in a change of the monarch's internal as well as foreign policy. He maintained friendly relations with the S. Indian and Hellenistic powers. He renounced once for all the old policy of violence, of conquering peoples, suppressing revolt by force and annexing territory. In Edict IV he says with a spirit of exultation: 'the reverberation of the war drums (Bherighoṣo) has become the reverberation of the Law (Dhammadhoṣo)' He called upon his future successors—sons and grandsons—to shun new conquests. This change of policy darkened the political horizon of the Magadhan empire in its heyday. Magadha which, before Bimbisāra was merely a tiny State in South Bihar, had, during the interval from the time of Bimbisāra to the Kāliṅga war of Aśoka, expanded to a gigantic empire from the foot of the Hindu Kush to the borders of the Tamil country. After the Kāliṅga war, the political destiny of Magadha was reversed. The empire gradually became smaller and smaller till it sank to its pre-Bimbisarian area and position.

At one time King Bindusāra used to give alms to 60,000 Brahmins and heretics. Aśoka also followed his father for some time in making donations to non-Buddhist ascetics and institutions. But becoming displeased with them he stopped further charities to them and gave charities to the Buddhist bhikkhus.1 Aśoka sent missionaries all over India and also to Ceylon to preach the Buddhist dhamma. Almost all of these missionaries were natives of Magadha.2

Aśoka continued the Council Government of his predecessors. The inscriptions bear ample testimony to the fact that he also retained the system of provincial administration in vogue under his forefathers. The emperor, and the princes who often acted as Viceroy in charge of the provinces, were helped by a number of officials who, according to the Edicts, may be classed as (1) The Mahāmātras,

---

1 Samantapāśālikā, I, p. 44.  
2 Ibid., I, p. 63.
(2) The Rājākas, (3) The Prādeśikas, (4) The Yutas (the Yuktas of the Arthaśāstra, p. 59), (5) Pulisā (Purushas), (6) Pativedakā (Prativedakas), and (7) Vachabhūmikā (Vrajabhūmikas).

Aśoka was succeeded by Daśaratha who was followed by a succession of weak Maurya kings who had only a vestige of the great power that Aśoka wielded. Bṛhadratha, the last of the Maurya dynasty, was treacherously murdered by his commander-in-chief, Pusyamitra Śunga, who established himself upon the throne of his master and set up the Śunga dynasty. The Divyāvadāna (p. 434) tells us that the emperor continued to reside in Pātaliputra. Pusyamitra ruled over Magadha for thirty-six years from about 185 to 149 B.C. During his reign the Mantriparīṣad (Assembly of Councillors) continued to be an important element of the governmental machinery. The viceregal princes were assisted by pariṣads. The historical events worth mentioning during Pusyamitra's reign were the Vidarabha war and the Greek invasion. The former resulted in the splitting up of the kingdom of Vidarbhā into two States, between which the river Varadā formed the boundary. The latter is referred to in Patañjali's Mahābhāṣya and Kālidāsa's Mālavikāgīrīna. Unfortunately, the name of the Greek invader is not given in either of these works. Historians differ as to the identity of the invader, but they agree that he was a Bactrian Greek. Dr. Ray Chaudhuri adds strong evidence to identify Demetrius with the Yavana invader referred to by Patañjali and Kālidāsa. Pusyamitra died in or about 149 B.C., as the Purāṇas affirm. He was followed by nine kings who ruled for 76 years. The Śunga dynasty probably lasted for 112 years. The last of the Śunga monarchs was Devabhūti who was a young and dissolute prince. The Purāṇas state that he was overthrown by his Minister, Vāsudeva Kāṇva. Rapson says that the Śungas were a military power, but in later times they became puppets in the hands of their Brahmin councillors. They probably ruled originally as feudatories of the Mauryas at Vidiśā, the modern Besnagar, on the Vetravati (Betwa) near Bhilsā, and about 120 miles east of Ujjain. The Śunga dynasty probably came to an end about 73 B.C., and was succeeded by the Kāṇva dynasty which lasted till 27 B.C., when the Andhras came into power. For some time, Pātaliputra may have acknowledged their supremacy, but later on, it must have re-asserted its independence. After the period of the Andhras, the history of Pātaliputra passes into oblivion.

1 For a full account of this reign, see Vincent Smith's Aśoka.
3 Ibid., pp. 308ff.
4 Cambridge History of India, Chap. XXI, pp. 522-3.
At the beginning of the fourth century A.D. the Magadhan monarchy again rose into prominence under the Guptas. I-tsing mentions a king Mahārāja Śrīgupta of Magadha who may be placed in about the second century A.D. (175 A.D.). But the first independent sovereign (Mahārājādhirāja) was Candragupta, son of Mahārāja Ghatotkacha Gupta, and grandson of Mahārāja Gupta. Candragupta ascended the throne in 320 A.D., the initial date of the Gupta era. Like Bimbisāra he strengthened his position by a matrimonial alliance with the Licchavis of Vaiśāli, who appear to have continued to occupy an influential position in N. India, though for a time their glory was eclipsed by the rising State of Magadha. The union of Candragupta I with the Licchavis is commemorated by a series of coins, and by the Allahabad inscription. Through his Licchavi connection, Candragupta was elevated from the rank of a local chief, and he proceeded to lay the foundations of the second Magadhan empire.

His son and successor Samudragupta often felt pride in describing himself as the son of the daughter of the Licchavis. Before his death, Candragupta selected Samudragupta, his son by the Licchavi princess, as his successor. It is clear from the Allahabad praśasti and from the epithet ‘tatrādāparīgha’ applied to Samudragupta in other inscriptions that the prince was selected by Candragupta I from among his sons, as the best fitted to succeed him. It was the aim of Samudragupta to bring about the political unification of India and to make himself an Ākara (sole sovereign) over this united empire; but his only permanent annexation was that of portions of Āryavarta, the Gangetic plain.1 Samudragupta made the rulers of the Ātavika rājyas (‘forest kingdoms’) his servants, led an expedition to the south, and made his power felt by the powerful rulers of the Eastern Deccan. Here he defeated the kings, but following the pre-Mauryan Hindu policy he did not annex their territory. According to Dr. Fleet,2 the Ātavika rājyas were closely connected with Dabhāla, i.e. the Jhabalpur region.3 The Eran inscription of Samudragupta bears testimony to the conquest of this region and to the fact that the Vakāṭakas of the Western Deccan were deprived of their possessions in Central India by the Emperor.4 The kings (mostly of Dakśināpatha) who came into conflict with the great Gupta conqueror were Mahendra of Kośala, Vyāghrarāja of Mahākāntāra, Maṇṭarāja of Kaurāla, Śvāmidatta of

Piśatăpura and of Koṭṭāra of Mahendragiri, Damana of Eraṇḍapalla, Viśṇugopa of Kānci, Nilarāja of Avamukta, Hastivarman of Veṅgi, Ugrasena of Palakka, Kuvera of Devarāṣṭra, and Dhanañjaya of Kusthalapura. The tribal States of the Punjab, W. India and Malwa are also said to have obeyed his compelling mandate or decree (pracanda-sāsana) ‘by giving all kinds of taxes, obeying his orders and coming to perform obeisance’. The most important among the eastern kingdoms which submitted to the mighty Gupta emperor were Šamatata (part of E. Bengal bordering on the sea), Davaṅka (not yet satisfactorily identified) and Kāmarūpa (in Assam). The Dāmodarpur plates inform us that Pundravardhana or N. Bengal formed an integral part of the Gupta empire and was governed by a line of Uparika Mahārājās as vassals of the Gupta emperor. The dominion under the direct government of Samudragupta in the middle of the fourth century comprised all the most populous and fertile provinces of N. India. It extended from the Brahmāputra on the east to the Jamna and Chambal on the west, and from the foot of the Himalayas on the north to the Narmadā on the south. Beyond these wide limits, the frontier kingdoms of Assam and the Gangetic delta, as well as those on the southern slopes of the Himalayas, and the free tribes of Rajputāna and Mālā, were attached to the empire by bonds of subordinate alliance; while almost all the kingdoms of the south had been overrun by the emperor’s armies and compelled to acknowledge his irresistible might.

The exact year of Samudragupta’s death is not yet ascertainable. Dr. Ray Chaudhuri states that he died some time after 375 A.D. He was succeeded by his son Candragupta II (born of Queen Dattadevi), who assumed the title of Vikramāditya (‘Sun of Power’). He was also called Simhacandra and Simha Vikrama. Certain Vākaṭaka inscriptions and the Sāṇchi inscription of 472 A.D. call him Devagupta or Devarāja.

The greatest military achievement of Candragupta Vikramāditya was his advance to the Arabian Sea through Malwa and Gujarāt, and his subjugation of the peninsula of Surāṣṭra or Kathiawād, governed for centuries by rulers known as Śaka Satraps. As a result of the western expedition, Malwa and Surāṣṭra were added to the Gupta dominions. Another event of political importance was the Emperor’s matrimonial alliance with

---

1 Ray Chaudhuri, Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., p. 452.
2 Ibid., p. 456.
3 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 303.
5 Indian Antiquary, 1913, p. 160.
the Vākāṭaka king of the Deccan, by the marriage of the Emperor’s daughter Prabhāvatī with King Rudrasena II, son of Prthivīsenā I. The original capital of Magadha under Candragupta II was Pātaliputra, but after his western conquests, Ujjain was made a second capital. Smith says: ‘Ajodhya enjoyed a more favourable situation and appears to have been at times the headquarters of the government of both Samudragupta and his son, the latter of whom probably had a mint for copper coins there. There is reason to believe that during the fifth century Ajodhya rather than Pātaliputra, was the premier city of the Gupta empire.’

Detailed information regarding the administrative history of the Magadhan empire under Candragupta II is not available, but the narrative of Fa-Hien and the inscriptions that have hitherto been discovered throw much light on the character of his administration, and on the social and religious condition of India at the time.

The Rājā was the head of the State. He was apparently nominated by his predecessor, both primogeniture and capacity being taken into consideration. A body of high ministers whose office was very often hereditary used to assist him. There was no distinction between civil and military officials.

After Candragupta II, the Gupta power in Magadha was temporarily eclipsed by the Puṣyamitrās. Then followed the Hūna invasion, in which the Emperor Skandagupta, according to Dr. Ray Chaudhuri, was presumably victorious, and, according to Smith, was unable to continue the successful resistance which he had offered in the earlier days of his rule, and was forced at last to succumb to the repeated attacks of the foreigners.

But the Magadhan empire did not wholly perish on the death of Skandagupta. It was ruled by Puragupta, Narasimhagupta, Kumāragupta II, and Buddhagupta.

Then the imperial line passed on to a dynasty of eleven Gupta princes known as the ‘later Gupta monarchs of Magadha’. The Damodarpur plates, Sarnath inscriptions, the Erāṅ epigraph of Buddhagupta, and the Betul plates of the Parivrājaka Mahārāja Samkṣobha, dated in the year 518 A.D., testify to the fact that the Gupta empire continued to exert sovereign rights in the latter half of the fifth as well as the sixth and seventh centuries A.D.

In the first half of the seventh century, Hārṣa, the great Kanouj monarch, overshadowed the Gupta power, which was revived by Ādityasena, who assumed the titles of Paramabhaṭṭakāra

---

1 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 310.
3 Ibid., p. 488.
and Mahārājādhirāja. Ādityasena and his successors, as proved by Aphsad and Deo-Baranark inscriptions, were the only N. Indian sovereigns who laid claim to the imperial dignity during the last quarter of the seventh century A.D., and appear actually to have dominated Magadha and Madhyadesa. The last king of the line of Ādityasena was Jivitagupta II, who reigned early in the eighth century A.D.

About this time, the throne of Magadha was occupied by a Gauḍa king named Gopāla, as the Pāla inscriptions seem to indicate. Then the great Magadhan empire decayed politically, being included in the Gauḍa empire of the Pālas and Senas, but it continued to remain the centre and headquarters of Buddhist learning up to the time of the Muhammadan conquests at the close of the twelfth century, when the monasteries with their well-stocked libraries were reduced to ashes.

Magadha and its ancient capital Rājagrha were intimately associated with the Buddha. Magadha was the scene of the real birth of Buddhism. The Buddha's chief disciples, Sāriputta and Moggallāna, were natives of Magadha, and it was at Rājagrha that they were converted by the Buddha. Their conversion, and the consequent desertion of the school of Sañjaya the Wanderer, must have created a sensation among the citizens of Rājagrha. Another notable conversion was that of Mahākāśyapa, who formerly belonged to another religious sect. Persons of many well-known families either became monks or lay supporters of the new doctrine. For want of accommodation in Venuvana, the bhikkhus passed the night in grottoes and caverns of the hills surrounding the city. This induced Anāthapindika, the great banker of Rājagrha, to undertake, with the permission of the Buddha, to build some 60 viharas for them.

Rājagrha was the first place visited by the Bodhisattva after his adoption of ascetic life at Anupiya in the Malla territory. It was here that he begged his food from door to door for the first time. It was somewhere in Magadha, between Rājagrha and Uruvelā, that he met and placed himself under the training of Arāḍa Kālāma and Udāra Rāmaputra in the method of Yoga.

---

1 Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 413.
2 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 420.
3 Malalasekera, Pāli Proper Names Dict., II, s.v. Magadha.
4 Kathāvatthu, I, 97; Vinaya Piṭaka, I, 37ff.
5 Vinaya, Cullavagga, p. 14.
6 Suttanipāta, pp. 72ff.; Fausbøll, Jātaka, I, pp. 65ff.
7 Majjhima Nikāya, I, pp. 163ff.; Mahāvastu, II, 118; III, 322; Lalitavistara, VII, v. 54; Fausbøll, Jātaka, I, pp. 66ff.
eventually selected Uruvelā in Magadha as the most fitting place for meditation and the attainment of enlightenment. Shortly after his attainment of Buddhahood, it was suggested to him that his primary task was the reformation of the religions of Magadha, which had all become corrupt.¹

A notable triumph of the Buddha in Magadha was the conversion of the three great leaders of the Jātīlas with their thousand followers. With all these new converts, he proceeded towards Rājagṛha and halted on the way at Laṭṭhi or Yasti-vana, a beautiful palm-grove belonging to King Bimbisāra. He was received with ovations by all the citizens of Rājagṛha and the inhabitants of Anāga-Magadha, headed by King Bimbisāra.²

The conversion of the king (who was the Buddha's junior in age by five years) to the new faith proved a great incentive to the people at large to welcome it. King Bimbisāra made a gift of his bamboo grove, Veluvana-Kalanda-Kaṇḍanā to the Buddha and his disciples.³ With the formation of the order of Bhikkhuṁis at Vaiśālī, many women of Rājagṛha, headed by Kṣemā, the gifted queen of Bimbisāra, joined the Order.⁴ Bhaddā Kuṇḍalakesī, who was converted by the Buddha, went to Magadha after she became a theri, and lived in Gijjhakūta for some time.⁵ Therī Cālā was born in Magadha at Nālakagāma, in an influential Brahmin family. She, Upacālā, and Sisupacālā were the sisters of Sāriputta. They obtained ordination from the Buddha when they learnt that Sāriputta had been ordained.⁶ Other Magadhan ladies who entered the order were Mettiṅā and Subhā, the daughters of an eminent Brahmin of Rājagṛha,⁷ Dhammādānavī,⁸ Cittā,⁹ and Subhā, a goldsmith's daughter.¹⁰

The Theragāthā records the influence of the Buddha's teachings. For instance, once the Buddha gave instruction to Visākhā, the son of a rājā in Magadha, and as a result Visākhā renounced the world.¹¹ The Divyāvadāna ¹² gives an account of a journey from Śrāvasti to Rājagṛha, which was undertaken by the Buddha and his monks. In the course of this journey, the Buddha six times saved some merchants of Śrāvasti from being robbed. Velaṭṭha Kaccāṇa was another trader who, on his way to Rājagṛha from Andhakavindha,

¹ Majjhima Nikāya, I, p. 168; Vinaya, Mahāvagga, p. 5.
² Watters, On Yuan Chwang, I, p. 146; Mahāvastu, III, 441ff.
³ Vinaya, Mahāvagga, p. 39; Fansboll, Jātaka, I, p. 85.
⁵ Ibid., pp. 162-3.
⁶ Ibid., p. 16.
⁷ Ibid., p. 27.
⁸ Psalms of the Brethren, p. 152.
⁹ Ibid., pp. 106-7.
¹⁰ Theragāthā, pp. 28 and 148.
¹¹ Ibid., p. 142.
¹² pp. 55, 94-5.
met the Buddha and his pupils, and offered each bhikkhu a pot of molasses.¹

The *Dīgha Nikāya* ² narrates that at Rājagṛha the Buddha summoned all the bhikkhus and prescribed several sets of seven conditions of welfare for the Saṅgha. Once the Buddha, while sojourning amongst the Magadhins, went to a Brahmin village named Khānumata, and took up his abode in the Ambalaṭṭhikā grove (mango-grove). An influential Brahmin named Kūṭadanta, the owner of the village, together with many Brahmin householders, was converted to the Buddhist faith after conversing with the Buddha.³

The Pāli Texts abound with references to the Buddha's experience and converts in Magadha, and especially at Rājagṛha.⁴ One of the best-known stories is that of the Buddha and Bharadvāja, the Brahmin ploughman of Ekanālā, a Magadhan village.⁵ The *Dīgha Nikāya* and *Sumanāgalavilāsini* give a beautiful account of the visit paid to the Buddha by the parricide monarch of Magadha, Ajātaśatru. Territorial expansion could not satisfy Ajātaśatru or bring peace to his perturbed mind. After murdering his father he could not sleep soundly, but dreamed dreadful dreams; and he devised various means of spending the night without sleep. On one occasion, the whole of Rājagṛha was illuminated and decorated and was full of festivities and enjoyments. Ajātaśatru with his ministers went on the terrace and saw the festivities going on in the city, so that he might not fall asleep. The moon-lit night by its soft beauty elevated his soul, and the thought arose within him of approaching a 'Samāna or Brāhmaṇa' who could bring solace to his tortured mind.⁶ Hearing of the great virtues of the Buddha from Jivaka, the greatest physician of the day, Ajātaśatru came to the mango-grove where the Buddha was staying,⁷ and asked whether he could show him the effect of leading the life of a Samāna. The Buddha did so by delivering to the repentant king a discourse on various virtues of the ascetic life as narrated in the *Sāmaññaphala Suttanta* of the *Dīgha Nikāya*.⁸

¹ *Vinaya Piṭaka*, I, pp. 224-5.
² II, pp. 76-81.
⁵ *Samyutta Nikāya*, I, pp. 172-3; *Suttaniṭṭha*, I, 3.
⁶ *Sumanāgalavilāsini*, I, 141-2.
⁷ Ibid., I, 151-2.
⁸ Ibid., I, pp. 158ff. See also *Dīgha Nikāya*, I, 47ff.
Once Vassakāra (later the chief minister of Ajātaśatru) began the work of repairing the fort at Rājagṛha. He needed timber for the purpose, and went to the reserved forest, but was informed that the wood was taken by a bhikkhu named Dhāriya. Vassakāra complained to King Bimbisāra, and the incident was brought to the notice of the Buddha who ordered the bhikkhus not to take anything which was not offered or presented to them.¹

The Buddha passed away in the eighth year of Ajātaśatru’s reign.² It was from Rājagṛha that he started on his last journey to Kuśinārā, stopping on the way at Ambalaṭṭhikā, Nālandā and Pāṭaligāma, and delivering fruitful discourses to all who came in contact with him.³ After the Buddha’s parinirvāna, his relics were distributed among various clans. Ajātaśatru obtained a share and enshrined it with great respect and honour, instituting a worship of the relics on a grand scale.⁴ He built Dhātu Caityas all round Rājagṛha, his capital,⁵ and at his own cost repaired 18 mahāvihāras at Rājagṛha which had been deserted by the bhikkhus after the Buddha’s death.⁶ The bhikkhus headed by Mahākassapa performed the funeral ceremony of the Buddha, and resolved to hold a council at Rājagṛha.⁷ Accordingly, Rājagṛha is famous in the history of Buddhism as the place where 500 distinguished theras met under the leadership of the Venerable Mahākassapa to recite the doctrine and discipline of the Buddha, and fix the Buddhist canon.⁸ All later traditions, whether in Pali or Sanskrit, tell us that the First Council was convoked in front of the Saptaparṇī or Saptaparna cave on a slope of the Vaihāra or Vaihāra hill, and under the auspices of king Ajātaśatru, who constructed a suitable mandapa (tent) for the purpose; but the Vinaya account distinctly says that the main reason for selecting Rājagṛha for the purpose was that it could afford spacious accommodation for the 500 theras.

The shady slopes and caverns of the hills around Rājagṛha were fitting places for the lonely meditation of bhikkhus and bhikkhuṇīs, theras and therīs. The sombre beauty of the hills and the retreats was much praised by the Buddha.⁹

The Vinānavaṭṭhū Commentary points out that Rājagṛha was much frequented by Gautama Buddha and his disciples. The people of Rājagṛha were always ready to satisfy the needs of the

¹ Vinaya Pīṭaka, III, pp. 41–5.
² Samantapāśādikā, I, p. 72.
³ Dīgha Nikāya, II, pp. 72–89.
⁴ Paramatthadīpani on the Petavattku, p. 212.
⁶ Samantapāśādikā, I, pp. 9–10.
⁷ Mahāvamsa, Chap. 3, pp. 16 foll.
⁸ Vinaya Cullavagga, XI.
bhikkhus.1 Buddhaghosa records various facts about Rājagṛha. For instance, two chief disciples of the Buddha went to the city, and the inhabitants showered charities upon them. A silk robe was also given in charity to Devadatta (the Buddha’s wicked cousin).2 The Samantapāsādikā records that Rājagṛha was a good place, having accommodation for a large number of bhikkhus.3 We may also mention two Jātaka references to legends regarding Rājagṛha.4

It is not possible to refer to all of the stories told of the Buddha’s disciples and their connection with Magadha, and particularly Rājagṛha. We have already mentioned the fact that Sāriputta was a native of Magadha; he is often referred to in the Pāli literature.6

It was at Rājagṛha that Anāthapindika, the great banker of Śrāvasti, was converted by the Buddha.6 The Manorathapūraṇa relates that Piṇḍola Bharadvāja, one of the Buddha’s foremost disciples, was born at Rājagṛha in a rich Brahmin family.7 It further narrates that Cullapanthaka and Mahapanthaka, grandsons of Dhanasēthi, a banker of Rājagṛha, could by their supernatural power create as many bodies as they liked.8 Kumārakassapa, foremost of the orators amongst the Buddha’s pupils, was born at Rājagṛha.5 While the Buddha was at Rājagṛha at Kalandakanívāpa, a party of six bhikkhuś went to attend the Giraggasamajja, a kind of festival.10

Apparently such festivals were common in the Magadhan capital, for we read in the Jātaka (I, 489) that there was a festival at Rājagṛha where people drank wine, ate flesh, danced and sang; and in the Visuddhimagga 11 we read of a festival at Rājagṛha in which five hundred virgins offered Mahākassapa-thera a kind of cake which he accepted. Another celebration known as Nakkhattakīlam, ‘sport of the stars’, in which the rich took part, used to be held at Rājagṛha, and lasted a week.12

The Divyāvaḍāna contains several stories about Rājagṛha. For instance, a householder went to sea with merchandise 13; on another occasion 500 merchants came to Rājagṛha, but could not buy merchandise as there was a festival going on at the time.14 Once a childless merchant of Rājagṛha died. The inhabitants of the town put seeds of various colours into a pot and declared that the

---

1 Vimānavatthu Comm., pp. 250-r; and see ibid., pp. 246-7, 27-8.
2 Dhammapada Comm., I, pp. 77ff.
4 Jātaka (Fausboll), No. 445, IV, pp. 37 foll., No. 311, IV, pp. 33 foll.
5 See, e.g. Aṅguttara Nikāya, V, pp. 120-r; Cānayutta Nikāya, IV, pp. 25r-60.
8 Manorathapūraṇa, Sinhalese Ed., pp. 130ff.
9 Ibid., pp. 173ff.; and see Dhammapada Comm., III, pp. 144 foll.
10 Vinaya Piṭaka, IV, 267.
13 p. 301.
14 p. 307.
person who was able to pick out seeds of one colour only would become the merchant (i.e. his heir). A certain merchant of Rājagṛha built a vihāra for the bhikkhus. The Vinaya Piṭaka tells us a story of a trader who had made preparations to go on a journey from Rājagṛha to Patiyāloka, when a bhikkhu on his begging tour came to the trader’s house for alms. The trader exhausted the food which he had collected for the journey, by giving it to several bhikkhus. Not being able to start his journey when he had intended, he set out late and was killed by robbers on the way.

It is apparent from the foregoing references that many people of Magadha, and more especially of Rājagṛha, were engaged in trade and commerce. There are numerous references in the Jātakas to big bankers of Magadha in the Buddha’s time. In the Asampadāṇa Jātaka, for instance, we find that a Magadhan seṭṭhi or banker named Saṅkha was the master of eighty crores of wealth. He had a friend in Benares who was also a banker, having the same amount of riches. Saṅkha helped his friend greatly, but was repaid by base ingratitude. Hearing of this ingratitude, the king caused the seṭṭhi of Benares to give all his wealth to his benefactor; but the Magadhan banker was so honest that he refused to take back more than his own money. The Petavatthu Commentary tells us that there was a merchant at Rājagṛha who was so very wealthy that his immense riches could not he exhausted even if 1,000 coins were spent every day.

Rājagṛha, the ancient capital of Magadha, had many names in the course of its long history; and many explanations of these names have been put forward by various authorities, indigenous and foreign. By some it was said that Rājagṛha (Pāli Rājagaha) was so called because it was founded by a king, and every house in it resembled a palace. Buddhaghosa says, however, that the town was called Rājagaha because it was used as a residence (lit. seized) by Mandhātā, Mahāgovinda, and the rest. Dhammapāḷa refers to another opinion accounting for the name Rājagaha as a prison for inimical kings (paṭīraḫūnam gahahūtattā). The town was also called Kuśāgrapura, ‘the city of the superior reed-grass’ which abounded there, or ‘city of (King) Kuśāgra’ and Girivraja.

1 p. 300.  
2 Vinaya Piṭaka, II, p. 146.  
3 IV, pp. 79-80.  
4 Jātaka (Fausboll), I, pp. 466-7.  
5 pp. 2-9.  
6 Spence Hardy, Manual of Buddhism, p. 162, note.  
7 Sumanāgalavilāsini, I, p. 132.  
8 Udāna-vannanā, Siamese Ed., p. 32. Cf. Bhāgavatapurāṇa, X, Chap. 7, according to which Jarāsandha imprisoned several kings in Rājagṛha.  
because it was surrounded by mountains. Girivraja is the name which was given in the Rāmāyana and the Mahābhārata to the old capital of Jarāsandha, king of Magadha. Dhammadāla says that the place was originally built or planned by Mahāgovinda, the famous architect, while in the Sāsanavamsa we read that King Mandhātā was the founder of Rājagaha, and in the Sultanīpāla Commentary it is stated that Rājagaha was ruled by famous kings like Mandhātā and Mahāgovinda. In the Jātakas it is mentioned as a great city.

The Mahābhārata describes Girivraja or Rājagrha, the capital of Jarāsandha, as a city which had a teeming population and was noted for hot springs (tāpodas). Jinaprabha-sūri tells us that it contained 36,000 houses of merchants, half of which belonged to the Buddhists, while the other half belonged to the Jainas, shown forth in the middle as a row of magnificent buildings. Buddhaghosa too mentions Rājagaha as a city, the inner and outer areas of which contained each nine crores of people. The city had 32 gates and 64 posterns. According to the Chinese pilgrims’ accounts, high mountains surrounded it on every side and formed its external ramparts, as it were. On the west it could be approached through a narrow pass, while on the north there was a passage through the mountains. The town was extended (i.e. broad) from east to west, and narrow from north to south. It was about 150 li in circuit. The remaining foundations of the wall of the inner city were about 30 li in circuit. Kanīka trees with fragrant bright golden blossoms were on all the paths, and these made the woods in late spring all golden-coloured.

Hsüan Tsang would have us believe that the name Rājagrha was strictly applicable only to the new city built either by Bimbisāra or by Ajātaśatru, not far to the north-east from Venuvana (the old city being known as Girivraja). Fa-Hien too speaks of the ‘old city’ and the ‘new city’. By the old city Hsüan Tsang distinctly means Kuśāgrapura, and by the new city he means the city which King Ajātaśatru made his capital.

---

1 Mbh., Sabhāparvan, Chap. XXI, v. 3. For a detailed description of the mountains surrounding Rājagrha, see B. C. Law, Rājagrha in Ancient Literature, M.A.S.I., No. 58.
2 Vīmāna-vālthu Comm., p. 82. Mahāgovinda-pāṇḍitena Vatthu-vijjāvāhinā sammadeva nivesite, sumudīlīte.
3 P. 152.
4 P. 413.
5 I, 391.
6 Vīvīdukhīrtha-kalpa, p. 22.
7 Spence Hardy, Manual of Buddhism, p. 323.
8 Beal, Buddhist Records of the Western World, II, 150; Watters, On Yuan Chwang, II, 148.
9 Watters, On Yuan Chwang, II, 162.
The Jaina *Vividha-tirtha-kalpa* speaks of *Rajagrha* as the residence of such kings and princes as *Jarasandha, Śreniika, Kunika, Abhaya, Megha, Halla, Vihalla, and Nandisena*.1 *Śreniika* was no other than *King Śeniya Bimbisāra* of *Pāli* literature, and *Kunika* was *King Ajātaśatru*. *Abhaya, Megha, Halla, Vihalla* and *Nandisena* we have already referred to as sons of *Bimbisāra*.

During the reigns of *Bimbisāra and Ajātaśatru*, the city of *Rajagrha* was at the height of its prosperity. *Āṅga* formed an integral part of the kingdom of *Magadha*, which comprised an area covered by the districts of *Gayā* and *Bhagalpur*. The Jaina texts describe *Rajagrha* as a city which was rich, happy and thriving; but some two centuries after the death of *Mahāvīra* a terrible famine visited *Magadha*.2 *Rajagrha* must have lost its glory with the removal of the capital to *Pātaliputra* or *Kusumapura* by *Udāyibhadda*, some 28 years after the Buddha’s demise. But the *Hathigumpha* Inscription lifts the veil for a moment, and shows that when *Bharaspatimitra* was king of *Magadha* (second century B.C.), *King Khāravela of Kalinga* marched towards *Magadha* after having stormed *Gorathagiri*, and brought pressure to bear upon *Rajagrha* (*Rajagaham upapldapayatr*).3 *Rajagrha* must have been used by the then king of *Magadha*, if not as a capital, at least as a strong fortress against foreign inroads. As was the case with most if not all ancient cities, *Rajagrha* was walled; we read in the *Vinaya Piṭaka* (IV, pp. 116-7) that the city-gate of *Rajagrha* was closed in the evening, and then nobody, not even the king, was allowed to enter the city. The same inscription refers to *Āṅga* and *Magadha* as united into one kingdom.

When Fā-Hien visited the place in the fifth century A.D., he found the sites still there as of old, ‘but inside the city all was emptiness and desolation, no man dwelt in it’.4 *The Karanda Venuvana* monastery was still in existence, tenanted by a ‘company of monks’.5 At the time of *HeShian Tsang’s* visit in the seventh century A.D., ‘the old inhabitants of the city were 1,000 Brahmin families’, and many *Digāmarbas* lodged on the *Pi-pu-lo* (*Vaibhāra*) mountain and practised austerities.6

*Rajagrha* was intimately associated not only with the development of Buddhism, but also with its rival religion, Jainism, and with earlier popular creeds such as *Nāga* and *Vakkha* worship. *Nagas* and *Vakkhas* were popular objects of veneration in *Rajagrha*

---

1 p. 22.  
5 Legge’s *Fā-Hien*, p. 82.  
6 Ibid., p. 84.  
in early times; while old ruined temples of Ganeśa and Śiva still remain on Vaibhāra-giri. Rajagṛha was popularly known to have been so much under the influence of such malevolent spirits as Nāgas and Yakṣas that even the Buddhist bhikkhus had to be furnished with a Parītta or ‘saving chant’ in the shape of the Mahā-āṭūnāṭiyāya Suttanta for their protection against them. The tapodas or hot springs and the Tapodā or Sarasvatī carrying water from those hot springs were popularly regarded as pūnyatīrthas or places for holy ablutions. The hot springs of Rajagṛha survive today.

Rajagṛha was the earliest known stronghold of heresy and heterodoxy of the age. The early records of Buddhism bring before us six powerful teachers, Purāṇa Kassapa, Makkhali Gosāla, Pakudha Kaccāyana, Ajīta Kesakambali, Saṅjaya Belatṭhiputta and Nigaṇṭha Nātapatutta (i.e. Mahāvīra), who proved founders of schools (titthakaras) and leaders of thought. Makkhali Gosāla was the leader of the Ājīvikas, and Nigaṇṭha Nātapatutta the leader of the Nirgranthas or Jainas. The beginnings of their career are bound up with the history of Rajagṛha.

Vardhamāna Mahāvīra was born in Magadha, and he once preached at the court of Bimbisāra with so much force and good logic that the heir, prince Nandisena, was converted. Mahāvīra spent fourteen rainy seasons in Rajagṛha. The eleven Gandharvas of Mahāvīra died in Rajagṛha after fasting for a month. Jaya, son of King Samudravijaya of Rajagṛha, renounced the world and practised self-restraint.

Rajagṛha was one of the three places selected by the Chabbaggyas (Sadvargikas) of Vinaya notoriety, for planting centres of their mischievous activities. Rajagṛha, too, was the place where Devadatta fell out with the Buddha, tried to do personal harm to him, fomented schism in the Saṅgha, and eventually created a division in it. The Dhammapada Commentary records the jealousy of other sects towards Buddhism. Moggallāna, for example, was struck by certain fanatics, with the help of some hired men. In the Petavatthu Commentary, we read that many heretics of the

---

2 Watters, On Yuan Cheang, II, pp. 154, 162.
3 The Wanderer Mahāsakuladāyi informed the Buddha that Aṅga and Magadha were full of sophist activities (Majjhima Nikāya, II, pp. 1-22).
4 Mrs. Sinclair Stevenson, Heart of Jainism, p. 8.
5 Ibid., p. 126.
7 Ibid., II, pp. 287.
8 Ibid., II, pp. 86-7. For other mentions of Rajagṛha and Jainism, see ibid., II, pp. 31ff., 383 ff n.
9 Vinaya Cullavagga, VII.
10 III, pp. 65ff.
Sāṃśramocaka caste lived in some villages of Magadha. Some-where in Magadha, between Rājagṛha and Uruvela, not far from the Mahānadi (Mohanā) lived two teachers, Arāda Kālāma and Udra Rāmaṇaputra, who founded schools for the training of pupils in yoga.

The Brahmins who lived in Rājagṛha and around it were mostly of the Bhāradvāja-gotra. Some of them were agnihotris, some upholders of the cult of purity by birth, morals and penance. They were generally opposed to the conversion of any of their number to the Buddhist and other such non-Brahmanical faiths. In the Buddha’s time, Rājagṛha was surrounded by many Brahmin villages or settlements.

What actually happened to the Buddhist Saṅgha at Rājagṛha as a consequence of the transfer of the capital to Pātaliputra, we cannot precisely say. But we can tell from glimpses of fact here and there that the process of history was one of decay. Hsüan Tsang tells us that ‘two or three li to the north-west of this (the Kalandā Tank to the north of the Veṇuvana monastery) was an Āsoka tope beside which was a stone pillar, above 50 feet high, surmounted by an elephant, and having an inscription recording the circumstances leading to the erection of the tope. The circumstances that led to the erection of the tope at Rājagṛha by Āsoka are also narrated by the Pāli scholiasts and chroniclers. The Mahāvamsa says that the Venerable Indagutta (Indragupta) went from all places around Rājagṛha as a representative to take part in the grand celebration of a Mahāthūpa in Ceylon during the reign of King Duṭṭhagāmanī (second century B.C.). As some of the images recently discovered at Rājagṛha indicate, there was some amount of new vigour in Buddhist activities at the place under the patronage of the Pāla kings, after which the history of Buddhism at Rājagṛha became practically closed for ever.

We have already indicated that Rājagṛha was surrounded by mountains. The Rṣigiri or Isigili, as its name shows, was a favourite hermits’ retreat, as indeed were the other mountains which encircled

---

1 pp. 67–72.
4 E.g., Ekānatu Ambasaṇḍa, Khānumata.
5 Watters, On Yuan Chwang, II, p. 162.
7 Majjhima Nikāya, III, pp. 66–71; and see B. M. Barua’s Historical Background of Jinalogy and Buddhalogy’, in the Calcutta Review, 1924, p. 61.
the city. The most famous of these mountains was the Grdhra-kūṭa or Gijjhakūta peak, so called either because it was shaped like vulture's head, or because it was frequented by vultures. Dhaniya, a potter's son, made a beautiful hothouse at the foot of the Gijjhakūta hill, and many people came to see it.

The Vepullapabhata, which was once known as the Vāṅkakapabbata, was another of the hills surrounding Rājagrha. King Vessantara was hamished to this mountain, which was also called Supassa. It took three days to reach its summit.

Among the villages which lay near Rājagrha was Ēkanāla, a Brahmin village in Dakkhinagiri, an important locality which lay to the south of the hills of Rājagrha. A Buddhist establishment was founded there. The Saṃyutta Nikāya distinctly places it in the kingdom of Magadha, outside the area of Rājagrha.

Nāla, Nālaka, Nālagama or Nālakagama was a village in Magadha, where Sāriputta died. The Vimānavaṭṭhukar Commentary locates Nālakagama in the eastern part of Magadha. The village of Kolika is also associated with Sāriputta.

Khānumata was a prosperous Brahmin village somewhere in Magadha, where a Vedic institution was maintained on a land granted by King Bimhisāra. The garden Ambalatthikā in the vicinity of Khānumata became the site of a Buddhist establishment. The Rājagrāraka at Ambalatthikā was a garden house of King Bimhisāra. Ambalatthikā stood midway between Rājagrha and Nālandā and was the first halting place on the high road which extended in the Buddha's time from Rājagrha to Nālandā and further east and north-east.

The place where King Ajātaśatru is said to have built a stūpa for the enshrinement of his share of the Buddha's relics is an important site from the Buddhist point of view. Hsüan Tsang definitely tells us that this stūpa stood to the east of Venuvana.

---

1 For a full account of these mountains, and indeed for everything regarding Rājagrha, see B. C. Law, Rājagrha in Ancient Literature, No. 58 of Memoirs of the Archaeological Survey of India.
2 Suttaṇiṭṭha Comm., p. 413.
3 Vinaya Piṭaka, III, 41-2.
6 Saṃyutta Nikāya, I, p. 172.
7 Ibid., V, p. 161.
8 p. 163.
9 Watters, On Yuan Cheuang, II, p. 171. Kolika was located eight or nine li (1½ miles) south-west of the Nālandā monastery.
12 Dīgha Nikāya, I, p. 1; Sumāṅgala-vilāsini, I, p. 35.
13 Dīgha Nikāya, II, pp. 72ff.
14 Ibid., II, p. 156. See also Sumāṅgala-vilāsini, II, pp. 611 and 613. Mahājārā-mūla-kālaḥ, p. 600.
15 Watters, On Yuan Cheuang, II, p. 158.
The Veluvana or Vequvana was a charming garden, park or grove at Rajagaha, surrounded by bamboos. The name may be translated ‘Bamboo Grove’ or ‘Bamboo Park’. The land was received as a gift by the Buddha. The fuller name of the site was Veluvana Kalandakanivāpa, the second part of the name indicating that here the Kalandakas or Kalakas (squirrels or jays) roamed about freely and found a nice feeding ground. In the Pāli accounts King Bimhisāra figures as the donor of the garden. It is certain that the site was outside the ‘inner city’. Fa-Hien definitely informs us that the Karanda Bamboo Garden stood to the north of the old city, over 300 paces from the gate, on the west side of the road. Hsüan Tsang adds further details regarding its site.

Another grove which was presented to the Buddha and his Order was the Jivaka-Ambavana, a mango-grove which Jivaka converted into a vihāra, and gave to the Buddha and his Order. King Ajātaśatru had to go out of the city of Rajagaha to reach this orchard. In the commentary on the Sāmaṇānaphala Sutta, Buddhaghosa says that the king proceeded by the eastern gate of the city, the ‘inner city of Rājagaha’, under the cover of the Gijjhakūta mountain, because the mango-grove stood somewhere between the mountain and the city wall. Fa-Hien places it at the ‘north-east corner of the city in a (large) curving (space)’. Hsüan Tsang, too, locates the site ‘in a bend of the mountain wall’, north-east from the (old) city. According to Watters’ suggestion, based upon a Chinese account in the Fo-shuo-sheng-ching, Chap. II, the orchard ‘was apparently in the inclosure between the city proper and the hills which formed its outer defences on the east side’.

Other sites in or near Rajagaha, which find mention in Pāli literature, were the deer-park at Maddakuceh, Pippali- or Pipphali-guha a cave which became a favourite resort of Mahākassapa, and which was visited by the Buddha, Amhasanda (Skt. Āmrakhaṇḍa), a Brahmin village, and the Latthivana (Skt. Yaśīvana), the royal park of Bimbisāra where the Buddha arrived from Gayāsīra (the

---

1 Cf. Sultanipāta Comm., p. 419.
2 Legge’s Fa-Hien, pp. 84-5.
4 Dīgha Nikāya, I, p. 47, 49-.
5 Sumanāgalavilāsini, I, p. 150; cf. ibid., p. 133.
6 Legge’s Fa-Hien, p. 82.
7 Watters, On Yuan Chwaw, II, p. 150.
8 Watters, On Yuan Chwaw, II, p. 150.
9 Sarathapakkāsini, I, pp. 77-8; Samyutta Nikāya, I, p. 110.
11 Legge, Fa-Hien, p. 85; Watters, On Yuan Chwaw, II, p. 154; Samyutta Nikāya, V, p. 79.
12 Dīgha Nikāya, II, p. 263; Sumanāgalavilāsini, III, p. 697.
TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

main hills of Gayā) and halted with the Jaṭilā converts on his way to the city of Rājagrha. The Pāsānaka-cetiya (Pāsāna-caitiya) is famous in Buddhist tradition as the place where the Buddha had delivered the Pāraśāya Discourses, now embodied in the concluding book of the Suttanipāta. Other places which find mention in Pāli literature are Macalagama, Manimalaka-cetiya, and Andhaka-vindha.

The Majjhima Nikāya describes Senānīgāma, one of the villages of Magadha, as a very nice place having a beautiful forest and a river with transparent water. It was a prosperous village, alms being easily obtainable there.

As already indicated, the later capital of Magadha was Pātaliputra, near Patna of the present day, the seat of the Government of Bihar. Its ancient Sanskrit names were Kusumapura and Puṣpapura, from the numerous flowers which grew in the royal enclosure. The Greek historians call it Palibothra, and the Chinese pilgrims Pa-lin-tou.

Hsüan Tsang, the great Chinese traveller, gives the following account of the legendary origin of the name of the city. Once upon a time, a very learned Brahmin had a large number of disciples. On one occasion a party of these disciples were wandering in a wood, and one youth among them appeared unhappy and disconsolate. To amuse the gloomy youth, his companions arranged a mock marriage for him. A man and a woman were chosen to represent the bridegroom’s parents, and another couple, the parents of the imaginary bride. They were all near a Pāṭali tree, which was chosen to symbolise the bride. All the ceremonies of marriage were gone through, and the man acting as father of the bride broke off a branch of the Pāṭali tree and gave it to the bridegroom. When all was over, his companions wanted the pseudo-bridegroom to go with them, but he insisted on remaining near the tree. Here at dusk an old man appeared with his wife and a young maiden, whom he gave...
to the young student to be his wife. The couple lived together in the forest for a year, when a son was born to them. The student, now tired of the lonely life of the woods, wanted to go back to his home, but the old man, his father-in-law, induced him to remain by promising him a properly built establishment. Afterwards, when the seat of government was removed to this place, it received the name Pataliputra, because it had been built by gods for the son of the Pātali tree.1

According to Jaina tradition, Pataliputra was built by Udaya, son of Darśaka, but the first beginnings were made by Ajātaśatru, for the Buddha, when on his way to Vaiśāli from Magadha, saw Ajātaśatru's ministers measuring out a town.2 Pataliputra was originally a village of Magadha, known as Pātaligāma, which lay opposite to Koṭigāma on the other side of the Ganges, which formed a natural boundary between Magadha and the territory of the Vṛji-Licchavis of Vaiśāli. The Magadhan village was one of the halting stations on the high road which extended from Rājagṛha to Vaiśāli and other places. The fortification of Pātaligāma which was undertaken in the Buddha's lifetime by the two Brahmin ministers of Magadha, Sunūdha and Vassakāra, led to the foundation of the city of Pataliputra,3 to which the capital of Magadha was removed by Udai or Udāyibhadda, the son and successor of Ajātaśatru. Thus it may be established that Ajātaśatru was the real builder of Pataliputra, which was in fact the new Rājagṛha or new capital of Magadha, as distinguished from the old Rājagṛha or Girivraja with its outer area.

This tradition somehow became twisted and led the Chinese pilgrims Fa-Hien and Hsiian Tsang to speak of the 'old city' and the 'new city' of Rājagṛha, both with reference to Girivraja, crediting Ajātaśatru with the building of the 'new city'. Fa-Hien says that a yojana to the west from Nāla, the place of birth and death of Śāriputra, brought him to 'New Rājagṛha, the new city which was built by King Ajātaśatru'. There were then (fifth century A.D.) two monasteries in it. It was enclosed by a wall with four gates. Three hundred paces outside the west gate was the stūpa erected by Ajātaśatru over a portion of the relics of Buddha. Some four li (less than a mile) south from the south gate was the old city of King Bimbisāra, 'a circular space formed by five hills'.4

---

2 See a paper on Pataliputra by H. C. Chakladar in the Modern Review, March, 1918, where the traditions about the foundation of Pataliputra are discussed at some length.
4 Legge, Fa-Hien, pp. 81-2.
There may be some truth in the suggestion made by Hsüan Tsang that the cause of removal of the capital was a fire which broke out in the old capital.\(^1\)

Pātaliputra was built near the confluence of the great rivers of Mid-India, the Ganges, Son and Gaṅdak, but now the Son has receded some distance away from it. The city was protected by a moat 600 ft. broad and 30 cubits in depth. At a distance of 24 ft. from the inner ditch there stood a rampart with 570 towers and 64 gates. The *Samantapāsādikā* informs us that Pātaliputra had four gates, Ašoka's income from them being 400,000 kāhāpanas daily. In the *Sabhā* (council), he used to get 100,000 kāhāpanas daily.\(^2\)

Pātaliputra was the capital of the later Śiśunāgas, the Nandas, and also of the great Mauryan emperors, Candragupta, and Ašoka, but it ceased to be the ordinary residence of the Guptas sovereigns after the completion of the conquests made by Samudragupta.\(^3\)

Fa-Hien came to Pātaliputra in the fifth century A.D. The Chinese pilgrim was so much impressed by the glory and splendour of the city that he says that 'the royal palace and halls in the midst of the city were all made by spirits which Ašoka employed, and which piled up the stones, reared the walls and gates, and executed the elegant carving and inlaid sculpture-work in a way which no human hands of this world could accomplish'. There was in the city a Brahmin named Rādhāśāmi, a professor of the Mahāyāna system of Buddhism. By the side of the tope of Ašoka there was also a Hinayāna monastery. The inhabitants of the city were rich, prosperous and righteous.\(^4\) Fa-Hien further gives an interesting description of a grand Buddhist procession at Pātaliputra.\(^5\)

Hsüan Tsang says that south of the Ganges lay an old city above 70 li (about 14 miles) in circuit, the foundations of which were still visible, although the city had long been a wilderness. He notes that it was first called Kusumapura, and then Pātaliputra.\(^6\) The poet Dāṇḍin speaks of Pātaliputra as the foremost of all the cities, and full of gems.\(^7\)

During the reign of Candragupta Vikramāditya, Pātaliputra was still a magnificent and populous city, and was apparently not ruined until the time of the Hun invasion in the sixth century. Haraśva-vardhana, when he ruled N. India as a paramount sovereign (612-47

---

A.D.), made no attempt to restore the old Magadhan Imperial capital, Pātaliputra.1 About 600 A.D. Śaṅkha Narendragupta, king of Gauḍa and Kāraṇḍuvarṇa, destroyed the ‘Buddha’s footprints’ at Pātaliputra, and smashed many Buddhist temples and monasteries.2 Dharmapāla, the most powerful of the Pāla kings of Bengal and Bihar, took some steps to renew the glory of Pātaliputra, but the interests of the Pāla monarchs seem to have been centred in Bengal rather than in Magadha.3

As might be expected, the Pāli Buddhist literature has references to Pātaliputra, but as it had not grown up into a city in the Buddha’s lifetime, it does not find such frequent mention as Rājagrha, the ancient capital. However, on one occasion, the upāsakas of Pātaligāma, as it then was, built an Āvasathāgāra (living-house), and they invited the Buddha on the occasion of its opening ceremony.4 An influential Brahmin householder of Benares named Ghoṭamukha built a vihāra at Pātaliputra for Udema, a bhikkhu, and the vihāra was called Ghoṭamukhi.5 Another bhikkhu, Bhadda, dwelt at Kukkūṭārāma near Pātaligāma, and had conversations with Ānanda, the Buddha’s famous disciple.6

The Dāsthāvamsa contains a long story concerning King Pāṇḍu of Pātaliputra, the heretical Nigaṇṭhas, and King Guhasiva, a vassal of Pāṇḍu. In brief, the Nigaṇṭhas went to Pāṇḍu to complain that Guhasiva worshipped the tooth-relic of the Buddha, instead of Pāṇḍu’s gods Brahma, Śiva and the rest. Pāṇḍu, angered, sent a subordinate king called Cittayāna to arrest and bring Guhasiva to him with the tooth-relic. However, Cittayāna was converted by Guhasiva to be a follower of the Buddha, and together they went to Pātaliputra, where a series of miracles ensued, as every effort made by Pāṇḍu to destroy the relic failed. Finally, King Pāṇḍu was convinced of the relic’s miraculous properties, and gave up his false belief.7

Sthūlabhadra, leader of some of the Jaina bhikkhus, summoned a council at Pātaliputra (about 200 years after Mahāvīra’s death), in the absence of Bhadrabāhu and his party, to collect the Jaina sacred literature. Bhadrabāhu on his return refused to accept the work of the Council of Pātaliputra.8

---
1 Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 310.
2 S. C. Vidyābhūṣana, History of Indian Logic, p. 349.
5 Majjhima Nikāya, II, pp. 157 foll.
7 See B. C. Law, Dāsthāvamsa, Intro., pp. xii-xiv.
8 Mrs. Sinclair Stevenson, Heart of Jainism, p. 72.
Pātaliputra coins had their own individual marks. The discoveries of punch-marked coins give the death-blow to the theory that all symbols on them 'were affixed haphazard by shroffs and moneyers through whose hands the coins passed', and give rise to the incontestable conclusion that they constitute 'coinages' peculiar to three different provincial towns, one belonging to Taxila, the second to Pātaliputra, and the third to Vidiśā (Bhilsā) of Central India.

The following are the interesting discoveries made by the Archaeological Department of the Government of India at the site of Pātaliputra:

1. Remains of wooden palisades at Lohanipur, Bulandibagh, Mahārājganj and Mangle's tank.
2. Punch-marked coins found at Golakpur.
3. Didarganj statue.
4. Durukhia Devi and Perso-Ionic capital.
5. The railing pillar probably belonging to the time of the Śuṅgas.
6. Coins of Kushan and Gupta kings.
7. Votive clay tablet found near Purabdarwaza.
8. Remains of Hinayāna and Mahāyāna monasteries at the time of Fa-Hien, the temples of Sthūlabhadra and other Jaina temples and the temples of Choti and Bari Patan Devis.

Nālandā was a famous seat of learning in ancient India. It was a village which Cunningham identifies with modern Baragaon, seven miles north of Rājgir in Bihar. Nālandā is mentioned in the Mahāvastu Avadāna as a very prosperous place at no great distance from Rājagha.

After the nirvāṇa of the Buddha, five kings, named Śakrāditya, Buddhagupta, Tathāgatagupta, Bālāditya and Vajra, built five saṅghārāmas or monasteries at Nālandā. In the Buddha's time, Nālandā was one of the halting stations on the high road connecting Rājagha with Pātaligāma, Koṭigāma, Vaiśālī, etc. Buddhaghosa knew it as a town at a distance of one yojana (about 7 miles) from

---

1 Carmichael Lectures, 1921, p. 100.
2 Ibid., p. 99.
4 For an interesting account of Nālandā vide Nālandā (J.M.U., Vol. XIII, No. 2) by K. A. Nilakanta Śāstri, A. Ghosh, A Guide to Nālandā (Delhi, 1930), Nālandā in Ancient Literature (5th Indian Oriental Conference, 1930) and Harsha (Oxford) by Dr. R. K. Mookerji.
5 Cunningham, Ancient Geography, p. 537.
6 Vol. III, p. 56.
7 Watters, On Yuan Chwang, II, pp. 164-5.
Rājagrha. Cunningham identifies the ancient site with the modern village of Baragona which lies at the northern end of the precincts of the Nālandā Mahāvihāra. The Pāli texts, however, refer not so much to Nālandā itself as to Pāvārika's mango-grove in its vicinity, as the real place of importance both to the Buddhists and the Jainas. According to the tradition recorded by Hsian Tsang, 'in a Mango Wood to the south of this monastery was a tank the dragon of which was called Nālandā, and the name was given to the monastery. But the facts of the case were that Ju-lai (Buddha) as a Pu-ya (Bodhisattva) had once been a king with his capital here, that as king he had been honoured by the epithet Nālandā or 'Insatiable in giving' on account of his kindness and liherality, and that this epithet was given as its name to this monastery'. The grounds of the establishment were originally a mango park bought by 500 merchants for ten kotis of gold coins and presented by them to the Buddha.

Nālandā was often visited by the Buddha. Mahākassapa, who was at first a follower of a heretical teacher, met the Buddha for the first time while he was seated on the road between Rājagrha and Nālandā. He declared himself a follower of the Buddha. The Majjhima Nikāya tells us that once Nigantha Nātaputta was at Nālandā with a large retinue of his followers. A Jaina named Dīghatapassi went to the Buddha, who was in the Pāvārika ambavana at Nālandā, and the Buddha converted many of Mahāvīra's followers. In the Jaina Sūtras we read that there was at Nālandā a householder named Lepa who was rich and prosperous. Lepa had a beautiful bathing hall containing many hundreds of pillars. There was a park called Hastiyāma. Once Gautama Buddha lived at Nālandā. He had a discussion with Udaka, a nigantha and follower of Pārśva, who failed to accept Gautama's views as to the effect of karma. It was at Nālandā that Mahāvīra spent the second year of his asceticism, and here, too, that he found many rich supporters. The Kalpa-sūtra (p. 122) informs us that Mahāvīra spent as many as fourteen rainy seasons at Rājagrha and Nālandā.

According to Tibetan accounts, the quarter in which the Nālandā University, with its grand library, was located, was called Dharmaganja (Piety Mart). It consisted of three grand buildings called

---

1 Sumangalavilāsinī, III, p. 873; I, p. 35: Rājagahato pana Nālandā yojanam eva.
2 Majjhima Nikāya, I, p. 377.
4 See, e.g. Dīgha Nikāya, I, pp. 1ff., 211; ibid., II, pp. 81-4; Samyutta Nikāya, IV, p. 110, 311ff., 314-7.
6 Majjhima Nikāya, I, pp. 371ff.
7 S.B.E., II, pp. 419-20.
Ratnasāgara, Ratnodadhi and Ratnarañjaka respectively.\(^1\)

Dharmapāla, a native of Kañcipurā in Drāvida (modern Conjeeveram in Madras) studied at the University of Nālandā and acquired great distinction. In course of time he became the head of the University.\(^2\)

Śīlabhadra, a Brahmin, came of the family of the king of Samatāta (Bengal). He was a pupil of Dharmapāla, and in course of time he too became the head of the University.\(^3\)

The Chinese pilgrim, I-tsing, who started for India in 671 A.D., arrived at Tamralipti at the mouth of the Hooghly in 673 A.D. He studied Buddhist literature at Nālandā.\(^4\) He relates that venerable and learned priests of the Nālandā monastery used to ride in sedan chairs, never on horseback.\(^5\)

According to Dr. S. C. Vidyābhūṣana, the year 450 A.D. is the earliest limit which we can roughly assign to the royal recognition of Nālandā.\(^6\)

Besides Nālandā, Magadha had other great seats of Buddhist learning which attracted students from all parts of India and beyond, such as the Universities of Odantapuri and Vikramaśilā. In the eighth century A.D., Gopāla, the founder of the Pāla dynasty of Bengal, founded a great monastery at Uddandapura or Otantapuri in Bihar.\(^7\) As a University, the glories of Vikramaśilā were hardly inferior to those of Nālandā. Hither too came students from Tibet, and Tibetan works tell us how Dipaṅkara or Śrijñāna Atīsa, a native of Bengal, who was at the head of the University from 1034–8 A.D., was induced to go to Tibet and establish the Buddhist religion there.\(^8\)

The Vikramaśilā Vihāra was a Buddhist monastery situated on a bluff hill on the right bank of the Ganges, and had sufficient space within it for a congregation of 8,000 men with many temples and buildings. On the top of the projecting steep hill of Pātharhātā, there are the remains of a Buddhist monastery, and the space covered by the ruins is large enough to hold an assembly of many thousands of people. This Pātharhātā was the ancient Vikramaśilā.\(^9\) It is said to have included 107 temples and 6 colleges.\(^10\) This University was known for its output of numerous commentaries. It was a centre

---

\(^1\) History of Indian Logic, p. 516; see also H. D. Sankalia, The University of Nālandā (Madras, 1934).

\(^2\) Ibid., p. 302; Beal, Buddhist Records of the Western World, II, p. 110.

\(^3\) Beal, Buddhist Records of the Western World, II, p. 110.

\(^4\) I-tsing, Records of the Buddhist Religion, Intro., p. xvii.

\(^5\) Ibid., p. 30.

\(^6\) History of Indian Logic, pp. 514–5.


\(^8\) Journal of the Buddhist Text Society, Vol. I.


not only of tantric learning but of logic and grammar, and is interesting as showing the connection between Bengal and Tibet.\(^1\) King Dharmapāla endowed the University with rich grants sufficing for the maintenance of 108 resident monks, besides numerous non-resident monks and pilgrims. At the head of the University, there was always a most learned and pious sage. Thus, at the time of Dharmapāla, Ācārya Buddhajñānānapāda directed the affairs of the University. Grammar, metaphysics (including logic) and ritualistic books were especially studied at Vikramāśila. On the walls of the University were painted images of panditas (learned men) eminent for their learning and character. The distinguished scholars of the University received diplomas of pandita from the king himself. The most erudite sages were appointed to guard the gates of the University, which were six in number.

The University of Vikramāśila is said to have been destroyed by the Mohammedan invader, Bakhtiar Khalji, about 1203 A.D., when Śākya Śrī Pândita of Kashmir was at its head.\(^2\)

Like princes of most other Indian States, Magadhan princes were frequently educated at Taxila. One Magadhan prince, Duyyodhana, as we learn from the Jātaka, went to Taxila to learn the arts. He later became king, and used to give alms to Śramaṇas, Brāhmaṇas and others, observe the precepts and perform many meritorious deeds.\(^3\) The Darimukha and Sañkhāpāla Jātakas have references to the education of Magadhan princes at Taxila.\(^4\)

Magadha was the birthplace of Jivaka, the famous physician, who educated himself at Taxila and on his return to his native city was appointed physician to the royal family.\(^5\) His success in operating on King Bimbisāra won for him the post of royal physician, and the king later appointed him physician to the Buddha and the congregation of bhikkhus. Once, we are told, Magadha was badly attacked by five kinds of diseases, and Jivaka had to treat the suffering bhikkhus.\(^6\)

The Jātakas are full of interesting information about Magadha. From them we learn that Magadha was famous for conch shells; that white elephants were used there by the royal family; that agriculture was prosperous, and that some Brahmins used to cultivate

---


\(^2\) S. C. Vidyabhūṣana, History of Indian Logic, pp. 519-20.

\(^3\) Jātaka (Fausboll), V, pp. 161-2.

\(^4\) III (Fausboll), pp. 238-40. Needless to say, the Jātaka contains many stories of supposed previous incarnations of the Buddha, in the course of which he was born in Magadha, e.g. III, pp. 238-40; I, pp. 199, 213, 373.

\(^5\) Vinaya Piṭaka, I, pp. 71 foll.

\(^6\) Jātaka (Fausboll), VI, p. 465.

\(^7\) Ibid., I, p. 71.

\(^8\) Ibid., I, p. 444.
land themselves in Magadha. The *Vinaya Piṭaka* states that the fields of Magadha were well divided for the purpose of cultivation. We have already noted that there were stated to be 80,000 villages in Magadha in King Bimbisāra’s time. A story reminiscent of the Fools of Gotham is that of a particular village inhabited by fools who once went to the forest where they used to work for their livelihood. They had to pay the penalty for their foolishness by losing their lives while trying to destroy mosquitoes with bows and arrows.

The *Lakkhana Jātaka* refers to the destruction of paddy by deer which used to come to the field during the harvest. The Magadhans laid traps and devised various other means to capture and kill them.

The *Anguttara Nikāya* mentions Magadha as one of the sixteen great janapadas or provinces of ancient India, stating that it was full of seven kinds of gems, and had immense wealth and power. Hsüan Tsang gives a fair account of Magadha in the seventh century A.D. According to him, the country was 5,000 li in circuit. There were few inhabitants in the walled cities but the other towns were fully populated. The soil was rich and yielded luxurious crops. It produced a kind of rice with large grain of extraordinary fragrance. The land was low and moist, and the towns were on plateaux. From the beginning of summer to the middle of autumn, the plains were flooded, and boats could be used. The climate was hot, and the inhabitants were honest, esteemed learning, and revered Buddhism. There were above 50 Buddhist monasteries and more than 10,000 ecclesiastics, for the most part adherents of the Mahāyāna system. There were some deva temples, and the adherents of the various sects were numerous.

On account of Magadha’s predominant political position, the language spoken there obtained recognition all over India in very early times. The *Mahāvaṃsa* goes so far as to tell us that the Māgadhī language is the root of all Indian languages. It was in this Māgadhī language that Buddhaghosa translated the Sinhalese commentary on the *Tripiṭaka*. At the time of Aṣoka, as the numerous inscriptions scattered all over India show, the dialect of Magadha must have been understood over the greater part of India.

---

CHAPTER XLVII

THE VIDEHAS

The Videhas are mentioned in the Brāhmaṇa portion of the Vedas as a people in a very advanced stage of civilisation. The part of the country where they lived appears to have been known by the name of Videha even in the still more ancient times of the Samhitās, for the Yajurveda Samhitās mention the cows of Videha, which appear to have been particularly famous in ancient India.¹

According to Julius Eggeling, a confederacy of kindred peoples known as the Kośala-Videhas, occupying a position of no less importance than that of the Kuru-Pañcālas, lived to the east of the Madhyadeśa at the time of the redaction of the Brāhmaṇas. The legendary account is that these people claimed Videgha Māthava as their common ancestor, and the two branches are said to have been separated from each other by the river Sadānirā (corresponding either to the Rāpti or to the Gandak). In Eggeling’s opinion, the Videha country in those days constituted the extreme east of the land of the Aryans.² Dr. Weber notes that the Aryans, led by Videgha Māthava and his priest, apparently pushed up the river Sarasvāti as far east as the river Sadānirā which formed the western boundary of the Videhas, or more probably the Gandak (= Sadānirā) which was the boundary between the Kośalas and the Videhas.³

The Videha country, as we have seen, is said to have derived its name from this King Videgha Mathāva or Videha Mādhava, who introduced the sacrificial fire; and according to some, this introduction of the sacrificial fire is symbolical of the inauguration of the Brahmanical faith in the region. This legend, which is of importance in connection with the question of Aryan settlement in the Videha country, may be read in full in the Salāpatha Brāhmaṇa. According to this account, King Māthava Videgha carried Agni Vaiśvānara (=fire) in his mouth. When invited to do so, Agni sprang forth, and started to flash over the ground, burning it up. Starting from the river Sarasvāti, he went burning along towards the east, drying up all the rivers. Only he did not burn over the river Sadānirā,

² Salāpatha Brāhmaṇa, S.B.E., Vol. XII, Intro. XLII–XLIII.
³ S.B.E., Vol. XII, p. 104 f.
flowing from the Northern (Himalaya) mountain. 'That one of the Brahmānas did not cross in former times, thinking, “It has not been burnt over by Agni Vaisāvānara”. Nowadays, however (i.e. in the time of the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa), there are many Brahmānas to the east of it... Māthava, the Videgba, then said (to Agni), “Where am I to abide?” “To the east of this (river) be thy abode”, said be. Even now this (river) forms the boundary of the Kośalas and the Videhas; for these are the Māthavas (or descendants of Māthava).”

Great importance has rightly been attached to this passage which, since the days of Professor Weber, has been taken by scholars to indicate the progress of Vedic Aryan civilisation from N.W. India towards the east. Though we cannot be sure about this point, yet it shows at least that in which times the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa considers ancient, the Videha country had received Vedic civilisation, and the cult of offering sacrifices in fire had developed there. According to tradition, the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa was compiled in the Videha country by Yājñavalkya who flourished at the court of the Emperor (Samrāt) Janaka, though parts of it bear testimony to its having originated like the other great Brāhmaṇa in the country lying farther to the west.

In the later Mantra period, Videha must have been organised so far as to take a leading part in Vedic culture, and the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa clearly indicates that the great spiritual and intellectual lead offered by Samrāt Janaka and Rṣi Yājñavalkya was accepted by the whole of N. India. Rṣis from the Kuru-Pañcāla regions flocked to the court of Janaka and took part in the discussions held about the supreme Brahmaṇ; and they had to admit the superior knowledge of Yājñavalkya. In our opinion, the Videha country must have received Vedic culture long before the time of the compilation of this Brāhmaṇa, for we find in the Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad which forms a part of it, that Samrāt Janaka of Videha was a great patron of Vedic culture, and that Rṣis from the whole of N. India repaired to his court.  

From the Brhadāraṇyaka account, it would seem that at the time of the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa the Videha Brahmānas were superior to the Kuru-Pañcālas as regards the Upaniṣadic phase of the development of Vedic culture.

In other works of the Brāhmaṇa period as well as of the Sūtra period that followed, other celebrated kings of Videha are mentioned (vide Vedic Index, II, 298), so that there can be no question but that

---

2 Cf., for example, the story of Yājñavalkya and the cows, Brh. Up., III, 1-9.
the Videhas maintained a high position in Vedic society at least in the Brāhmaṇa period, and from the superior intellectual position that they had attained in this period it is legitimate to assume that Vedic Aryan culture had taken its root in Videha long before the Brāhmaṇa age, and most probably in the early Samhitā age of the Ṛgveda.

The Jātaka stories, too, refer to sacrifices performed by the Videhan kings, saying that goats were sacrificed in the name of religion. We are told in the Purāṇas that Nimi, Ikṣvāku’s son, performed a sacrifice for a thousand years, with the help of Viśvāstha who had previously officiated as high-priest at a certain Vajña performed by Indra.

The evidence of the Adhyātma Rāmāyaṇa also testifies to the sacrificial activities of the Videhan royal family. Viśvāmitra is represented as saying to Rāma: ‘We are going to Mithilā, of which Janaka is the ruler. After attending the great Vajña of Janaka we shall make for Ayodhya’.

Coming to the Epic age, we find Rāmacandra, the hero of the Rāmāyaṇa, marrying Vaidehi (= Sītā), the adopted daughter of Janaka, king of Mithilā. This Janaka is probably not the same person as the patron of Vajñavalkya; it appears that several sovereigns of the dynasty bore that name which had been rendered glorious by the intellectual and political powers of the Vedic king. The Rāmāyaṇa gives a splendid picture of the Videhan capital and the wide and richly equipped sacrificial ground of King Janaka. The distance between Mithilā and Ayodhyā may be gauged from the fact that during the reign of Janaka, king of Videha, it took Viśvāmitra, together with Rāma and Laksmaṇa, four days to reach Mithilā from Ayodhyā. On the way they rested for one night only, at Viśālā. The messengers sent by Janaka reached Daśaratha’s capital in three days of very fast travelling; while Daśaratha on his journey to the Videhan capital in his chariot took four days. Mithilā is identified by tradition with the modern Janakapura in the hills in the present Nepalese territories; a large number of pilgrims visit it every year.

Videha, its capital, Mithilā, and its King Janaka are mentioned many times in the Mahābhārata. After Yudhiṣṭhira’s accession to the throne of Indraprastha, before the Rājasūya sacrifice, Bhima

---

1 Jātaka (Fausböll), Vol. I, pp. 166ff.
2 Viśvāpurāṇa, p. 246 (Vaṅgavāsi edition).
4 Rāmāyaṇa, Bālakanda (Bombay edition), Chap. 73.
5 Rāmāyaṇa (Vaṅgavāsi edition), 1-3.
defeated the king of the Videha people in the course of his digvijaya.\(^1\) Karna also conquered Mithilā, the Videha capital, during his digvijaya.\(^2\) The celebrated sacrifice of Janaka is referred to in several places,\(^3\) while a conversation between Janaka and Vājñavalkya is related in the Śāntiparvan (Chap. 311). There are many references to Janaka's spiritual enlightenment, his talks with Paṇica-sikha, with Sulahhā and others, and the teaching imparted by him to the young Śuka.\(^4\) Kṛṣṇa, together with Bhimasena and Arjuna, visited Mithilā on his way from Indraprastha to Rājagṛha.\(^5\) The Videhas are mentioned twice in the list of peoples in the Bhāṣmaparvan: once as Videhas along with the Magadhas, and once as Vaidehas along with the Tamraliptakas.

The Viṣṇupurāṇa also mentions the Videha country, furnishes a list of its rulers from ancient times, and gives a fanciful account of the origin of the name of Videha and also that of Mithilā, the capital. The story goes that Vaśiṣṭha, having performed the sacrifice of Indra, proceeded to Mithilā to commence the sacrifice of King Nimi. On reaching there he found that the king had engaged Gautama to perform the sacrificial rites. Seeing the king asleep he cursed him thus: 'King Nimi will be bodiless (videha, vi-vigaladeha), inasmuch as he having rejected me has engaged Gautama'. The king on awakening cursed Vaśiṣṭha, saying that he too would perish, as he had cursed a sleeping king. Rsis churned the dead body of Nimi, and as a result of the churning a child was born, afterwards known as Mithi\(^6\) (supposedly from manth, to churn). According to the Bhaviṣyaprāṇa, Nimi's son Mithi founded a beautiful city which was named Mithilā after him. From the fact of his having founded the city, he came to be known as Janaka ('begetter, creator').\(^7\) The Mahāgovinda Suttanta of the Dīgha Nikāya gives another account of the origin of Mithilā, stating that it was built by Govinda.\(^8\)

Undoubtedly the most important Videhan king was Janaka, but we find references to other kings in ancient literature, namely Sāgaradeva, Bharata, Āṅgirasa, Ruci, Suruci,\(^9\) Patāpa, Mahāpatāpa, Vanapravāna, 254.

---

1 Sabhāparvan, Chap. 30.
2 Ibid., Chaps. 132, 134, etc.
3 Śāntiparvan, Chap. 327, etc.
4 Sabhāparvan, 20.
5 Viṣṇupurāṇa, pp. 388 ff. See also Bhāgavataprāṇa, IX, 24, 64.
6 Bhaviṣyaprāṇa: 'Nimēk Putraste tarata .. purījanana sāmarthē Janakah sa ca kiritāh'. See also Bhāgavataprāṇa, IX, 13, 13, where the story of the founding of Mithilā is also related.
8 For the story of Suruci's childless queen, see Jātaka (Fausboll), IV, pp. 314 foll.
Sudassana, Neru, Mahāsammata, Mucala, Mahāmucala, two Kalyānas,1 Satadhanu of ill-fame,2 Makhādeva, Śādhina and others.

Kings of Videha usually maintained friendly relations with neighbouring powers. We have already referred to the marriage of Sītā and Rāmacandra, son of Daśaratha, king of Kośala. Instances of matrimonial alliances concluded by the kings of Videha with the neighbouring royal families occur also in later literature. Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar points out that in the plays of Bhāsa, Udayana is called Vaidehiputra, indicating that his mother was a princess of Videha.3 In the Buddhist literature we have a reference to a Videhan princess (no doubt a queen of Bimhisāra), who was the mother of Ajātaśatru. Her name was Vāsavi.4

Vardhamāna Mahāvīra, the great founder of Jainism, ‘a Videha, son of Videhādattā, a native of Videha, a prince of Videha, had lived thirty years in Videha when his parents died’.5 Mithilā was his favourite resort, and he spent six monsoons there.6

At the time when the Buddha preached his gospel, we find the ancient Videha country cut up into parts, the Licchavis occupying the foremost position. Eight peoples are named as making up the Vajjian confederacy, the Licchavis and the Videhas occupying a prominent position. The confederacy, according to Kauṭilya, was a rājasabḍopajjott Saṅgha.7 Videha was twenty-four yojanas in length from the river Kauśikī to the river Gandak, and sixteen yojanas in breadth from the Ganges to the Himalayas.8 The capital of Videha, Mithilā, was situated about thirty-five miles north-west from Vesāli.9

It is stated in the Jātakas that the city of Mithilā was seven leagues, and the kingdom of Videha 300 leagues in extent.10 It was the capital of the kings Janaka and Makhādeva, in the district now called Tirhut.11 The city of Mithilā in Jamhūdvipa had plenty of elephants, horses, chariots, oxen, sheep and all kinds of wealth of this nature, together with gold, silver, gems, pearls and other precious things.12 From a Jātaka description, we learn that the

---

2 Vīṣṇupūrāṇa, Pt. III, Chap. XVIII, p. 217. (Vaṅgavāśī Ed.)
3 Carmichael Lectures, 1918, pp. 58, 59. Udayana is addressed as Vaidehiputra (S.V., Act 6, p. 68, Ganapati Sāstrī’s Ed.).
4 Rockhill, Life of the Buddha, pp. 63-4.
6 Ibid., p. 264.
7 Arthādāstra, trsl. Shāma Sāstrī, p. 455. See also Licchavi chapter.
8 Bhṛt Vīṣṇupūrāṇa.
11 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 37.
TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

kingdom of Videha had 16,000 villages, storehouses filled, and 16,000 dancing girls.\(^1\) Magnificent royal carriages could be seen, drawn by four horses; and the Videhan king was driven in state around his capital.\(^2\)

In the *Si-Yu-Ki* (Buddhist Records of the Western World) we find that the Chinese traveller Hsüan Tsang, describing the kingdom of Po-li-shi (Vrji), says that the capital of the country was Chen-shu-na. Beal quotes V. de St. Martín who connects the name Chen-shu-na with Janaka and Janakapura (= Mithilā).\(^3\)

From very early times, Videha was frequented by merchants. At the time of Buddha Gautama we find people coming from Śrāvasti to Videha to sell their wares.\(^4\)

The Videhas were a charitable people. Many institutions of charity were in existence in their country, and we are told that six hundred thousand pieces were spent daily in alms-giving.\(^5\)

The *Jātaka* stories often make extravagant demands upon popular credence, as when they relate how the average length of human life at the time of the Buddha Gautama was thirty thousand years. More fortunate than the average mortal, King Makkhādeva of Mithilā had a lease of life of eighty-four thousand years,\(^6\) in the earlier portion of which he amused himself as a royal prince. Later on, he was appointed a Viceroy, and last of all he came king. We come to a more sober estimate when we find it related that there lived in Mithilā a Brāhmaṇ named Brahmāyu, aged one hundred and twenty years, who was well versed in the Vedas, Itihāsas, Vyākaraṇa, Lokāyata, and was endowed with all the marks of a great man.\(^7\)

Polygamy appears to have been in vogue among the kings of Videha. Brahmadatta, king of Benares, had a daughter named Sumedhā whom he declined to give in marriage to a Videhan prince who had a large number of wives, fearing that her co-wives would make her life miserable.\(^8\)

Many writers bear testimony to the devotion and faithfulness of Videhan princesses. The story of Sītā is too well-known to be repeated. Again, it is stated in the *Amidāyurāhyāna Sūtra* that when Ajātaśatru arrested his father Bimbisāra at the instigation of

\(^1\) *Jātaka* (Fausbōll), Vol. III, p. 365.
\(^3\) *Ibid.*, Vol. II, p. 78. The actual words are: "... Janaka and Janakapura, capital of Mithilā"; but, as we have seen, Mithilā is identified with Janakapura.
\(^5\) *Jātaka* (Fausbōll), Vol. IV, p. 355. See also Makkhādeva *Jātaka*.
\(^8\) *Jātaka* (Fausbōll), Vol. IV, pp. 314 foll.
Devadatta, and confined him in a room with seven walls, declaring that none must approach him, Vaidehi (i.e. Videhan princess), the queen-mother, kept him alive (until she was discovered), by concealing food and drink for him.\(^1\)

We read in one of the Jātakas that the people of Videha once reproached their king for his childlessness.\(^2\)

The kings of Mithilā were men of high culture. We have already referred to Janaka, the great Rājarsī of the Brahmanic period. In the Buddhist age, we find Sumitra, king of Mithilā, devoted to the practice and study of the ‘true law’.\(^3\) King Videha of Mithilā had four sages to instruct him in law\(^4\); and we read\(^5\) that the son of this King Videha was educated at Taxila, the usual seat of learning for young men of noble birth.\(^6\)

Stories regarding the religious tendencies of the royal family of Videha are frequently found in ancient literature,—see, e.g. the story of King Nimi and the hawk, Jātaka, III, p. 230. Another Jātaka story relates that Videha, king of Videha, and the Bodhisattva, then king of Gandhāra, were on friendly terms, although they had never met. Once, on the fast day of the full-moon, the king of Gandhāra took a vow to keep the five moral precepts, and delivered before his ministers a discourse on the substance of the law. At that moment the demon Rāhu was overshadowing the full-moon’s orb so that the moon’s light was dimmed by an eclipse. The king observing the phenomenon thought that all trouble came from outside; he considered his royal retinue was nothing but a trouble, and that it was not proper that he should lose his light like the moon seized by Rāhu. He thereupon made over his kingdom to his ministers, took to a religious life, and having attained transcendental powers, spent the rainy season in the Himalayan regions, devoting himself to the delights of meditation.

When the king of Videha heard of the religious life of the king of Gandhāra, he abdicated his throne, went to the Himalayan region and became a hermit. The two ex-kings lived together in peace and friendliness without knowing each other’s antecedents. The ascetic of Videha waited upon the ascetic of Gandhāra. One day, they witnessed an eclipse of the moon, and this was the indirect cause of their recognising each other as former fellow kings.\(^7\)

---


\(^2\) Jātaka (Fausbøll), V, pp. 279-80.

\(^3\) Beal, Romantic Legend of Śākyu Buddha, p. 30.

\(^4\) Jātaka (Fausbøll), VI, p. 333.


\(^7\) Jātaka (Fausbøll), Vol. III, pp. 365-6.
We have already referred to the long life of King Makhādeva of Mithilā. One day this king, on his barber showing him a grey hair from his head, thought that his days were numbered. Handing over his kingdom to his son, the old king became a recluse, and developed very high spiritual powers.¹

Sādhīna, a righteous king in Mithilā, kept the five śīlas and observed the fast-day vows. His virtue was praised by the princes of heaven who sat in the ‘Justice Hall’ of Śakra, and all the gods desired to see him. Accordingly, Śakra ordered Mātali to bring Sādhīna to heaven in his own chariot. Mātali went to the kingdom of Videha on the day of the full-moon, driving his celestial chariot side by side with the moon’s disc. All the people shouted, ‘See, two moons are in the sky’. Then, when the chariot came nearer, they saw what it was, and concluded that it had come for their virtuous king. Mātali went to the king’s door and made a sign that he should ascend the chariot. After arranging for the distribution of alms, the king went with Mātali. One-half of the city of gods and twenty-five millions of nymphs, and a half of the palace of Vaijayanta were given to Sādhīna by Śakra; and the king lived there in happiness for seven hundred years. But when his merits were exhausted, dissatisfaction arose in him, and he did not wish to remain in heaven any longer. The king was carried back to Mithilā, where he distributed alms for seven days. On the seventh day he died, and was reborn in the heaven of the thirty-three (gods).²

Śakra is concerned in another legendary story about the Videhan royal family. Suruci, king of Mithilā, had a wife named Sumedhā who was childless. Sumedhā prayed for a son. She took the eightfold sabbath vows (āṭhasilāṇī), and sat meditating upon the virtues; and Śakra appeared to her and granted her boon.³

¹ Jātaka (Fausboll), I, pp. 137-8. In the Makhādeva Sutta (Majjhima Nīhāya, Vol. II, pp. 74-83) we find the same story with slight variations. Nimi, a later king, was like Makhādeva. Indra with other gods came to him and praised him. When Nimi reached the Assembly Hall of the gods, he was received cordially by Indra, and sent back to his kingdom in a celestial chariot.
² Jātaka (Fausboll), Vol. IV, pp. 355-6.
³ Ibid., Vol. IV, pp. 315 foll.
CHAPTER XLVIII

THE JNĀTRKAS

The Jnātrakas (also known as the Nātha or Nāya clan) gave India one of its greatest religious reformers, Mahāvira, the last Tīrthankara of the Jains, and this is their sole claim to fame among ancient Indian tribes.

The Jnātrakas, or Kṣatriyas of the Jnātri (or Nāya) clan, used to dwell in Vaiśālī (Basārh), Kuṇḍagrāma and its suburb Kollāga, and Vānijyagrāma. The Cambridge History of India states that Kuṇḍagrāma was a suburb just outside Vaiśālī, probably surviving in the modern village of Basukunda. Mrs. Sinclair Stevenson (Heart of Jainism, pp. 21-2) says that some 2,000 years ago, in Basārh, the same divisions existed as would be found today, and there, in fact, the priestly (Brāhmaṇa), warrior (Kṣatriya) and commercial (Vānīya or Vānijya) communities lived so separately that their quarters were sometimes spoken of as though they had been distinct villages, as Vaiśālī, Kuṇḍagrāma and Vānijyagrāma. Strangely enough, she adds, it was not in their own but in the Kṣatriya ward that Mahāvira was to be the great hero of the commercial class. We are not prepared to accept Mrs. Stevenson's statement that Vaiśālī was exclusively a Brahmin settlement, in the absence of positive evidence.

The Jain writers give an idealised picture of the Jnātrakas, telling us that they were afraid of sin, abstained from wicked deeds, did no mischief to any being, and therefore did not partake of meat. Dr. Hoernle says: 'Outside their settlement at Kollāga, the Jnātrakas possessed a religious establishment (or Cheiya) which bore the name Duipalāsa. Like most Cheiyas, it consisted of a park enclosing a shrine, hence in the Vipāka Sūtra it is called the Duīpalāsa Park (Ujjāna)'. The Nāya clan seems to have supported a body of monks who followed Pārśvanātha, an ascetic, who lived some 250 years before Mahāvira. It is stated in the Uvāsagadasāṅaō that Mahāvira's parents (and with them probably the whole clan of Nāya Kṣatriyas) are said to have been followers of the tenets of Pārśvanātha. When Mahāvira, who was taken to be the successor of Pārśvanātha, appeared, the members of his clan became his devoted followers.

1 Uvāsagadasāṅaō (Hoernle), Vol. II, p. 4, f.n.
4 Uvāsagadasāṅaō, Vol. II, pp. 4 and 5, f.n.
5 = Skt. Chaitya, shrine.
6 Mrs. Stevenson, Heart of Jainism, p. 31.
Dr. Hoernle says that Vaiśāli, one of the settlements of the Jñāṭrākas, was an oligarchic republic, the government of which was vested in a senate composed of the heads of the resident Kṣatriya clans and presided over by an officer who had the title of king and was assisted by a Viceroy and a Commander-in-chief.1 Mrs. S. Stevenson says that the government of Vaiśāli seems to have resembled that of a Greek State.2

In the early sixth century B.C., the chief of the Kṣatriya Nātha clan was Siddhārtha who married Triśalā, sister of Cetaka, the most eminent among the Licchavi princes. Siddhārtha and Triśalā were the parents of Mahāvira, who lived from approximately 570-500 B.C. (See B. C. Law, Mahāvīra: His Life and Teachings, p. 53). Of Siddhārtha Dr. Hoernle says: ‘Though, as may be expected, the Sacred Books of the Jains speak of him in exaggerated terms, they do not, I believe, ever designate him as “the king of Kuṇḍapura or Kuṇḍagāma”; on the contrary, he is, as a rule, only called the Khattiya Siddhattha (Siddhatthe Khattiye) and only exceptionally he is referred to simply as King Siddhattha. This is perfectly consistent with his position as the chief of the Kshatriyas of Kollāga. Accordingly, Mahāvīra himself was born in Kollāga and naturally when he assumed the monk’s vocation, he retired to the Cheiya of his own clan, called Duipalasa and situated in the neighbourhood of his native place, Kollāga.’3 Mahāvīra, on renouncing the world, probably first joined Pārśva’s sect of which, however, he soon became a reformer and chief himself.4

A detailed sketch of the life and work of Mahāvīra would fill a volume and is beyond the scope of the present treatise.5 We may, however, mention the fact that it was Mahāvīra who brought the Jñāṭrākas into intimate touch with the neighbouring communities of eastern India and developed a religion which is still professed by millions of Indians. Another celebrity of the Jñāṭrāka clan was Ānanda, a staunch follower of Mahāvīra. The story of Ānanda and his wife Śivanandā is related in the Uvāṣagadasāo.6

---

2 Heart of Jainism, p. 22.
4 Ibid., p. 6.
5 For an account of Mahāvīra, see B. C. Law: Mahāvīra: His Life and Teachings.
The Sakyas have acquired great importance in Indian history owing to the Buddha having been born among them. Before the birth of the founder of Buddhism, the Sakyas were comparatively little known; yet in the rugged fastnesses of the lower Himalayas, they had already built up a remarkable though not a very powerful principality.

The traditional story of the Buddha’s birth starts with a discussion among the Devaputras in the Tusita heaven, as to which of the great royal families of India the Bodhisattva should honour with his birth. In this discussion, the Sakyas were not mentioned. The Devaputras pondered over the merits of the sixteen Mahājanapadas of Jambudvīpa (India), and analysed the claims of all the important royal families of the day, but found them all stained with one black spot or another. Being at a loss to find a people worthy of claiming him as their congener, the Devaputras at length had recourse to the Bodhisattva himself, and when finally the Sakyas were chosen as the recipient of that great honour, it was rather on account of their moral qualities.¹

The Sakyas of Kapilavastu claimed to be Kṣatriyas. As soon as they heard the news of the Buddha’s passing away, they demanded a portion of his relics, saying, ‘Bhagavā amhākaṃ ṇāti-seṭho’² (‘the Blessed One was the chief (or best) of our kinsmen’). While all the other Kṣatriya clans that claimed a portion of the Buddha’s ashes did so on the grounds of their belonging to the same caste (Bhagavā pi Khattiyo, mayampī Khattiya), in the case of the Sakyas the claim was founded upon a closer relationship, that of consanguinity.

The origin of the Sakyas is traced back to King Okkāka, i.e. Iksvāku. It is stated in the Sumāṅgalavilāsini³ that King Okkāka had five queens. By the chief queen, he had four sons and five daughters. After the death of the chief queen, he married another lady who extorted from him the promise to place her son upon the throne. The king thereupon requested his other sons to leave the kingdom. The princes, accompanied by their sisters, accordingly

---

left the kingdom, and going to a forest near the Himalayas, they began to search for a site to build a city. In the course of their search, they met the sage Kapila who said that they should build a town in the place where he lived. The princes duly built the town, and named it Kapilavatthu (Kapilavastu). In course of time, the four brothers married four of the sisters (excepting the eldest one), and the family came to be known as the Śākyas.

This story is evidently fanciful. Sister-marriage was not in vogue in ancient India even in the earliest times of which we have any record, as the story of Yama and Yamī in the Ṛgveda amply demonstrates. The descent from King Okkāka, however, may be based on fact. The Mahāvamsa too traces the origin of the Śākyas to Okkāka, and gives their genealogy in great detail, going back to Mahāsammatā of the same dynasty.¹

There can be no doubt that King Okkāka in this genealogy is no other than Ikṣvāku of the so-called solar dynasty of the Purāṇas. Comparing the names with those in the Paurānic list, we find that the lists do not agree in every detail, but there is agreement with regard to some of the more prominent names. Thus, for example, in the long history of the solar dynasty given in the Viṣṇupurāṇa, Pt. IV, we find many of the names in the Mahāvamsa list, like Māndhata (Mandhata), Sagara (Sāgara), etc. The Viṣṇupurāṇa states that King Brhadvala (Brhadbala) of this dynasty was killed in the Kurukṣetra war,² and next proceeds to trace the descent of King Śakya from the Brhadvala.³

The source of the accounts given in the Mahāvamsa and the Sumanāgalavilāsini is not, however, the Purāṇas, but such ancient Buddhistical works as the Mahāvastu. This latter work gives a detailed account of the foundation of Kapilavastu and the settlement of the Śākyas there. The story of the sister-marriage is given there, and, as in the Mahāvamsa, the Śākya family is traced back to Mahāsammatā. The names of the kings that succeeded him agree in the two accounts, for the most part. The following story ⁴ is told of Sujata, king of the Śākyas, who reigned in the city of Sāketa. The king had five sons and five daughters, and also another son by a concubine, Jenti. Being pleased with Jenti, he promised her a boon. She demanded that her son, Jenta, should be recognised as heir-apparent; and the king, thought loath to consent, could not break his word. The five princes, his legitimate sons, went into

¹ For the complete genealogy of the Śākyas, according to Sinhalese tradition, see Mahāvamsa, Chap. II, verses 1-24.
² Viṣṇupurāṇa, Pt. IV, Chap. IV, verse 48.
⁴ Obviously corresponding to the story of King Okkāka.
exile, followed by many thousands of citizens. They were received by the king of Kāśi-Kośala, and the people of Kāśi-Kośala were delighted with the bearing of the princes. The king, however, became envious and drove the princes out of his kingdom. At the foot of the Himalayas there lived a wise sage called Kapila. His hermitage was vast and charming, with fruits and flowers, adorned with a good many plants and with a dense forest. The princes went to the dense forest and lived there. Traders used to pass through there on their way to Kāśi and Kośala. When asked whence they came, these traders replied that they had come from a certain part of the forest called Sākotavana.

The people of Saketa as well as the traders of Kośala visited the Sākotavana. The princes took their brides from among their sisters by the same mother, because they did not wish their race to be contaminated by a mixture of blood. Hearing of this, King Sujāta asked his purohitas and learned Brahmans whether such a custom was permissible, and they replied in the affirmative.

Meanwhile the princes decided to build a town. They went to the sage Kapila and said that they desired to build a city and name it after him. The princes built a city, making the sage’s hermitage a royal residence. As the hermitage was given by Kapila the sage, the city became known by the name of Kapilavastu. Kapilavastu was prosperous, wealthy and peaceful; there alms were easily obtainable, and the people were fond of trade and commerce, sociable, and fond of taking part in festivities.

The names of the five princes were Opura, Nipura, Karandaka, Ulkāmukha and Hastikāsiriṣa. Opura was the eldest, and he was elected king of Kapilavastu.1

The story given in the Mahāvastu and the Sumangalavilāsinī about the origin of the Sākyas by sister-marriage is referred to in the introduction to the Kunāla Jātaka. Here the story of the origin of the Sākyas exactly tallies with that in the Mahāvastu, but there is some difference in the story of the Koliyas. While the Mahāvastu says that they resided in a cave of a hill, the Jātaka story relates that they received the name Koliya because of having resided in the hollow of a Koli or jujube tree.

In the Mahāvastu the Sākyas are called adityabandhus or ‘kinsmen of the sun’. This refers to their descent from the Solar

---

1 Mahāvastu, Ed. Senart, Vol. I, pp. 348–52. It will be observed that Opura, Nipura, Karandaka, Ulkāmukha and Hastikāsiriṣa are represented in a former passage of the Mahāvastu as sons of King Sujāta. Here, however, the relationship between each prince and the one next mentioned is represented as that of father and son.
dynasty to which the Ikṣvākus belonged.¹ The Mahāvastu also speaks of King Śuddhodana, father of the Buddha, as born in the Ikṣvāku family.² Another passage in the same work speaks of the Buddha as a Kṣatrita of the Ādityagotra and of the Ikṣvākukula, i.e. born in the family of the Ikṣvākus who derived their descent from the sun.³ The Lalitavistara (p. 112) also speaks of the Buddha as born in the royal family of Ikṣvāku.

The Śākyas were Kṣatriyas of the Gotama gotra, as is seen from the fact that the Buddha had the surname Gotama, while the Licchavis and Mallas who also belonged to the same race, bore the gotra name of Vaśishtha. The gotra of a Kṣatriya family was derived from the gotra name of the purohita or family priest; so evidently the Śākyas had adopted the Gotamas as their priests at an early date. The Gotama gotra is described in the Pāli books⁴ as occupying a very high position among the gotras, no doubt from its association with the founder of Buddhism.

Kapilavastu, the Śākya capital, is sometimes called Kapilavāstu. The Lalitavistara calls it Kapilavastu, and sometimes Kapilapura (p. 243) or Kapilāhvaya pura (p. 28, etc.); and these names are also found in the Mahāvastu.⁵ The Divyāvadāna also connects Kapilavastu with the sage Kapila.⁶ In the Buddhacarita, the city is described as Kapilasya-vastu.⁷

Kapilavastu is said to have been surrounded by seven walls.⁸ A clue to the identification of the city is furnished by the discovery of the famous Rumminderi Pillar which marks the site of the ancient Lumbini garden, the traditional scene of Śākyamuni’s birth. Smith is inclined to identify the Śākya capital, which lay not far from the Lumbinigrāma, with Piprawa in the north of the Basti district on the Nepalese frontier.

The Chinese pilgrim, Fa-Hien, who visited India early in the fifth century A.D., says that the neighbourhood of Kapilavastu was infested by white elephants and lions, against which the people had to be on their guard.⁹ The country was thinly populated. He noticed towers at Kapilavastu, set up at various places, viz. where prince Siddhārtha left the city by the eastern gate, where his chariot was made to turn back to the palace, where his horoscope was cast

¹ Mahāvastu, II, p. 303.
² Ibid., III, p. 247.
³ Ibid., III, p. 246.
⁴ E.g. Suttavibhaṅga, Pācittiya, II, 2; Vinaya Piṭaka, Oldenberg, Vol. IV, p. 6.
⁵ Vol. II, p. 11, line 3.
⁷ Buddhacarita, Book I, verse 2.
⁹ Travels of Fa-Hien and Sung-Yun, by S. Beal, pp. 88–98.
by the sage Asita, where the elephant was struck by Nanda and others, where the arrow going thirty li in a south-easterly direction penetrated into the earth and produced a fountain of water which quenched the thirst of travellers in later generations, where Śuddhodana was met by his son when the latter had acquired supreme wisdom, where five hundred Śākyas honed Upāli, and where the children of the Śākyas were massacred by King Vidūḍabha.¹

Hsiian Tsang, who visited India in the seventh century A.D., narrates that Kapilavastu, the country of the Śākyas, was about four thousand li in circuit. The royal precincts built of brick were within the city, measuring fourteen or fifteen li round.² He says that, long after the passing away of the Buddha, tobes and shrines were built in or near Kapilavastu.³ The villages were few and desolate. The monasteries (sāṅghārāmas) which were then in ruins, were more than one thousand in number. There still existed a sāṅghārāma near the royal precincts which contained thirty (3,000 according to one text) followers who read 'the little vehicle of the Sammatiya school'. There were two deva-temples where different sectarians worshipped. There were some dilapidated foundation walls, the remains of the principal palace of King Śuddhodana, above which a vihāra (monastery) was built containing a stūpa of the king. Near it, was a foundation in ruins, representing the sleeping palace of Queen Mahāmāyā. Above it a vihāra was built containing a figure of the queen. Close by stood a vihāra, on the spot where the Bodhisattva was supposed to have entered the womb of his mother. A stūpa was built to the north-east of 'the palace of spiritual conception' of the Bodhisattva.⁴ To the north-west of the capital, a stūpa was built where King Vidūḍabha massacred the Śākyas.⁵ The cultured land was rich and fertile and the climate of the country was bracing.

According to Rhys Davids, there were villages around the rice-fields, and the cattle roamed about in the outlying forest. The jungles, which were occasionally resorted to by robbers, divided one village from another.⁶

Mention is made of several other Śākya towns besides Kapilavastu, viz. Chāṭumā, Sāmagāma, Ulumpā, Devadaha, Sakkara,

⁵ Ibid., Vol. II, p. 12.
⁶ Buddhist India, pp. 20–21.
Silavati, and Khomadussa. The latter was so called on account of its abundant produce of linen cloth.

It is stated in the Jataka that the Sakyas were a haughty people, and did not do obeisance to Siddhartha on the ground that he was younger in age, but were afterwards made to do so on seeing a miracle performed by him. Hsiian Tsang, however, says that the manners of the people were 'soft and obliging', while in Rockhill's Life of the Buddha it is said that they did not kill any living thing, 'not even a black beetle'. The produce of their cattle and rice-fields supplied their only means of livelihood. The villages were grouped around the rice-fields, and the cattle wandered through the outlying forest over which the peasantry had rights of common.

The Tibetan Buddhist Books as translated by Rockhill relate that the Sakyas law allowed a man one wife only. This law is rather remarkable inasmuch as polygamy was in vogue in India from the Vedic age downwards, especially among the Ksatriyas who were rich and powerful. We may, however, account for the existence of this law among the Sakyas on the ground of their special constitution and position. They were a small tribe, and very proud of their birth. They would not give one of their girls in marriage even to such a powerful prince as Pasenadi of Kosala. Among such a people, marriage was generally confined within the tribe itself, and the number of marriageable girls being limited, many adult males would have to go without a wife if polygamy prevailed. Hence the law had grown up among them limiting the number of wives to one. But that the Sakyas had no objection to polygamy as such on religious or other grounds, is clear from the fact narrated by the same Tibetan works that the rigorous provision of the law was relaxed in the case of Suddhodana, the father of the Buddha; in consideration of a great public service rendered by him when, as a young prince, in subduing the hillmen of the Pandava tribe, he was allowed by the Sakyas to have two wives.

The Lalitavistara seems to suggest that Suddhodana had a crowded harem, when it says that Mayadevi was his chief queen, being at the head of a thousand ladies. But this appears to be a mere poetic exaggeration, for the Pali books speak of only two

---

3 Jataka (Fausböll), Vol. VI, pp. 479 foll.
5 Rockhill, Life of the Buddha, p. 117.
6 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 20.
7 Life of the Buddha, p. 15.
8 'Suddhodananassa pramadā prādhānā nārisahasresu hi sāgrāprāptā'. Lalitavistara, p. 28.
wives of the king. Prince Siddhartha had only one wife according to all accounts, and, according to the Lalitavistara, even the hand of this girl was not granted to him, although he was a prince, until he could satisfy the proud Sakya father of his knowledge of the silpas or arts, by an open exhibition of skill in warfare as well as the finer arts.\(^1\) Siddhartha's wife is named Yasodharā in the Mahāvastu, and her father is called Mahānāma.\(^2\)

How proud and aristocratic the Sakyas were when asked to give away their daughters in marriage to any one outside their clan will appear from the following story of King Pasenadi of Kosala, who desired to have a Sakya girl as his consort. The king considered that if he married a Sakya girl, the Brethren (i.e. Bhikkhus) would be his friends, as he would then be related to them by marriage. So, rising from his seat, he returned to the palace, and sent a message to Kapilavatthu to this effect: 'Please give me one of your daughters in marriage, for I wish to become connected with your family'. On receipt of this message the Sakyas gathered together and deliberated: 'We live in a place subject to the authority of the king of Kosala; if we refuse to give him one of our daughters, he will be very angry; and if we give her, the custom of our clan will be broken. What are we to do?' Then Mahānāma said to them, 'I have a daughter named Vasahhakkhattiyā. Her mother is a slave woman named Nagamunda; the girl is sixteen years old, of great beauty and auspicious prospects, and noble on her father's side. Let us send her, as a girl nobly born.' The Sakyas agreed, and, sending for the king's messengers, said that they were willing to give a daughter of the clan, and that they might take her with them at once. But the messengers reflected: 'These Sakyas are desperately proud in matters of birth. Suppose they should send a girl who is not one of them, and say that she is so. We will take none but one who eats along with them.' However, by a ruse, Mahānāma avoided eating more than one mouthful with his daughter, and Pasenadi's messengers did not discover the secret.

'So Mahānāma sent away his daughter in great pomp. The messengers brought her to Srāvasti, and said that this maiden was the true-horn daughter of Mahānāma. The king was pleased, and caused the whole city to be decorated, and placed her upon a pile of treasure, and by a ceremonial sprinkling made her his chief queen. She was dear to the king, and beloved.'\(^3\)

The Tibetan books have preserved a story of Pasenadi. Once Pasenadi, king of Kosala, carried away by his horse, reached Kapila-

---

\(^1\) Lalitavistara, pp. 243ff.; and see Mahāvastu, II, 73.

\(^2\) Mahāvastu, II, 48.

\(^3\) Jālaka (Fausbøll), Vol. IV, pp. 146 foll.
truly alone, and roaming about hither and thither, came to the
garden of Mahānāman. Here he saw the beautiful Mallikā, who
was well versed in the Śāstras, and asked her whose garden it was,
and was told that it belonged to the Śākya Mahānāman. The king
dismounted, and asked for water for washing and drinking. Mallikā
brought water for him, and then she was desired by the king to rub
his feet, which she willingly did. Hardly had she touched his feet
than he fell asleep. Mallikā thought that the king might have
enemies, and did not open the gate when instructed to do so by a
multitude of people. The king awoke and asked her what the
matter was, and she told him what she had done. Her shrewdness
and wisdom were admired by the king. Coming to know that she
was a slave girl of Mahānāman, he went to her master and expressed
his desire to marry her. The master agreed, and the king took her
with him in great pomp to Śrāvasti. The king’s mother was highly
displeased that her son had married a slave girl, but when Mallikā
went to pay respects to her and touched her feet, she immediately
fell asleep. When she awoke, she thought that such a touch could
not but be that of a maiden of noble birth, worthy of the family of
Kośala. Shortly afterwards a son was born to Mallikā, and was
called Virudhaka or the high-born. It is evident that this story
is a Tibetan version of the story of Pasenadi and Vāsabhakhattiya.

We learn, then, that the Śākyas contracted marriages within
their own tribe, and even their ruling house did not enter into matri-
monial relations with any of the numerous princely houses in N.
India,—unlike the royal houses of Kośala, Magadha and Videha,
for example. When the marriage of Prince Siddhartha was decided
upon at the council of five hundred Śākya elders, these proceeded
to select a bride for him from among themselves. This clannish
custom among the Śākyas perhaps gave rise to the idea that they
married their sisters.

In Hsiian Tsang’s times, when a Śākya child was born, it was
carried to the temple of Īśvaradeva to be presented to the god. The
temple contained a stone image of the god in the posture of rising
and bowing.

The women appear to have enjoyed a greater amount of inde-
pendence and freedom of thought among the Śākyas than among
the people of the plains, perhaps owing to the scarcity of women.
Thus, according to all Buddhist accounts, the Śākya ladies were the

---

1 Rockhill, *Life of the Buddha*, pp. 75–7. According to Pāli canonical literature,
Virudhaka was the son of Pasenadi by another wife named Vāsabhakhattiya, who
was given in marriage to Pasenadi by the Śākyas.
2 Vide ante.
first to cut themselves off from the world, and to institute the order of nuns, the foster-mother of the Buddha, Mahāpajāpati Gotāmi, taking the lead.1 Some of the Śākyas who left the world and adopted the life of the female ascetic have left behind them poems and songs that are preserved in the Psalms of the Sisters (Therīgāthā). Among these ladies were Tissā, Abhirūpanandā and Mittā. Tissā was born at Kapilavastu among the Śākyas. She renounced the world with Mahāpajāpati Gotāmi, and attained Arahatship.2 Abhirūpanandā was the daughter of Khemaka the Śākya. She was called Nandā the Fair for her great beauty and amiability. Her beloved kinsman, Carabhūta, died on the day on which she was to choose him from amongst her suitors. She had to leave the world against her will, and though she entered the Order, she could not forget that she was beautiful. Fearing that the Buddha would rebuke her, she used to avoid his presence. At last, however, she was compelled to come to him for instruction, and by his supernatural power the Buddha conjured up a beautiful woman who became transformed into an old and fading figure. This had the desired effect, and Nandā became an Arahat.3 Mittā, born in the royal family of the Śākyas at Kapilavastu, left the world with Mahāpajāpati Gotāmi, and like the other two, soon attained Arahatship.4

There was a technical college of the Śākyas in the mango-grove. ‘It was a long terraced mansion made for the learning of crafts.’5 The learning of one or other of the arts was incumbent upon every Śākya youth, for, as we have seen, no father would give his daughter in marriage to an idler or ignoramus. There was also a school for archery at Kapilavastu, where the Śākyas were trained.6 The Śākyas being a Kṣatriya tribe devoted to warlike pursuits, and surrounded on all sides by warlike tribes, the school of archery was necessarily a flourishing institution. The Lalitavistara describes in details the various sciences and arts, beginning with the arts of writing, that the young Siddhārtha had to learn. But the whole description is that of an ideal school which the poet imagined, no doubt basing the account on the condition of education in India at the time in which he wrote. There is nothing in the description that might be called particularly Śākyā.

The minds of the Śākyas royal princes and nobles were so enlightened by the Buddha that they were able to realise the perfect

---

1 Vinaya Texts, S.B.E., Vol. XX, Pt. III, pp. 320–6, 1, 2, 3, 4, 1st paragraph, and paragraphs 5 and 6.
3 Ibid., pp. 22–3, and see also ibid., pp. 55–7 (Sundari Nandā).
4 Ibid., p. 29.
fruit of righteousness'. Nandupananda and Kundadana, two principal nobles, and other persons of the Śākya clan became recluses. Upāli, son of Atali, followed their example. Then the other princes and the sons of the chief minister renounced the world. At the request of the Buddha, many Śākyas became recluses, and were well provided for. The life of the Śākya recluses was so attractive that Sumaṅgala (reborn in a poor family) became a recluse. The recluses were respected for their simplicity of life. There was a residence at Kapilavastu provided by the community for recluses of all schools.

The administrative and judicial business of the Śākya clan was carried out in their samsthāgāra or Council-Hall at Kapilavastu. A young Brahmin named Ambaṭṭha who went to Kapilavastu on business had the opportunity of visiting the samsthāgāra of the Śākyas, where he saw the young and the old seated on grand seats. The 'samsthāgāra' is spoken of in the Mahāvastu and the Lalitavistara, and we are told there that 500 Śākyas usually took their seats in the Hall. The Mahāvastu describes how thirty-two princes, the sons of a Śākya girl and Rāja Kola of Benares, came to settle in Kapilavastu, and presented themselves before the Śākya council (Śākyapariṇā), where 500 Śākyas leaders sat together to transact some important business. A new Council-Hall of the Śākyas was raised at Kapilavastu when the Buddha was dwelling at the Nigrodhārāma in the Mahāvana which was close to it. At their request, the Buddha inaugurated the hall, and a series of ethical discourses lasting the whole of the night were delivered by him, Ānanda and Moggallāna.

The Lalitavistara also gives 500 as the number of the members of the Śākya Council. The Pariṇā of the Licchavis appears to have been larger, but the system of administration seems to have been very much the same, though there was this difference, that while at Vaiśali everyone called himself a rājā, at Kapilavastu there was one distinct headman called the rājā who was elected by the people. According to Rhys Davids, he had to preside over the sessions and when no sessions were held, he had to conduct the business of the State. But we hear that once Bhaddiya, a young cousin of the Buddha, took the title of rājā; and in one passage, Suddhodana is styled a rājā, although he is elsewhere spoken of as a simple citizen.

2 Ibid., pp. 226-7.  5 Psalms of the Brethren, p. 47.
3 Ibid., p. 227.  6 Buddhist India, p. 20.
8 Digha, I, p. 91. 'Uccheda āsanesu nisinnā'.  9 Buddhist India, p. 20.
11 Buddhist India, p. 19.
In Prof. Rhys Davids' opinion, no doubt all the more important places had a 'Mote-Hall' or 'pavilion covered with a roof but with no walls in which to conduct their business'. The local affairs of the villages were conducted in open assembly consisting of the householders, 'held in the groves which, then as now, formed so distinctive a feature of each village in the long and level alluvial plain'.

In the time of the Chinese travellers, Fa-Hien, Sung-Yun and Hsüan Tsang, there was no central government at Kapilavastu. There existed a congregation of priests and about ten families of laymen. Each town appointed its own ruler and there was no supreme ruler.

D. R. Bhandarkar says that kula or clan sovereignty was prominent among the Śākyas. Kula, which was more extensive than the family, was the lowest political unit amongst the political sanghas. To quote his words, kula 'denotes not simply the domination of a chief over his clan, but also and principally his supremacy over the territory occupied by that clan'.

It appears from the Mahāvastu that Koliya and Licchavi young men also showed their prowess at the tournament held to test the knowledge of Prince Siddhārtha before his marriage. It seems that the Koliyas and Licchavis were on terms of close relationship with the Śākyas. The Koliyas were of kindred origin, and the Licchavis, from their living in the country to the south-east of the Śākya territory, most probably often became intimate with the Śākyas.

The Kośala country bordered on the region occupied by the Śākyas, and there were mutual jealousies between the two peoples that often developed into war. Thus we are told that the Śākyas became the vassals of King Pasenadi of Kośala who received homage from them. At first Pasenadi was scornful of and disrespectful towards the Buddha, but he later repented of his attitude, developed a great admiration for the Buddha, and paid his respects to him. We have already seen how he desired to establish a connection with the Buddha's family by marriage.

When Vidūdahha, the son of Pasenadi and Vāsabhakhattiya, came of age, he found out that the Śākyas had deceived his father, and he resolved to take revenge upon them. In order to do this, he decided to get possession of the throne for himself, and with the aid of his commander-in-chief, Dirgha Cārāyana or Dīgha Kārāyana,

---

1 *Buddhist India*, p. 20.
he deposed his father who fled from Śrāvasti, the Kośala capital, and set out for Rāja-γṛha, the capital of Magadha. But ‘it was late when he came to the city, and the gates were shut and lying down in a shed, exhausted by exposure to wind and sun, he died there’. After ascending the throne, Vidudabha invaded the Sākya country, took their (capital) city and slew many of them without any distinction of age or sex. He then took 500 Sākya girls for his harem, to celebrate his victory. Full of rage and hatred, the girls declared that they would never submit to the king. On hearing this, the king was enraged, and gave orders that they should be killed. According to the king’s orders, the officers cut off their hands and feet and threw them into a ditch. The girls invoked the Buddha who saw their plight through his divine insight, and ordered a bhikkhu to go to them and preach his doctrine. Having heard the instruction, they attained ‘purity of the eyes of law’, died, and were all reborn in heaven. Vidudabha himself is said to have perished by a sudden flood, along with numerous Kośalan followers.

There is a different version of this account in the Vidudakā-vadānām of the Avadānakalpalatā. According to this, Vidudaka (= Vidudabha) slaughtered seventy-seven thousand Sākyas and stole one thousand boys and girls. One day when he was eulogising his own prowess in his court, the stolen Sākya girls said, ‘Wherefore this pride when death is inevitable to a man bound by action?’ The king heard this, became angry, and ordered his men to cut off the hands of the girls.

Rhys Davids says that the real motives which led Vidudaka to attack and conquer the Sākya were most probably similar to the political motives which led Ajataśatru to attack and conquer the Licchavis of Vaiśali. Vidudaka perhaps used the arrogance of the Sākya as a pretext.

It is stated in the Mahāvamsa Tīkā that during the lifetime of the Buddha some Sākya, being oppressed by Vidudabha, fled to the Himalayas, where they built a beautiful city, which was known as Moriyanagara (Mauryanagara), because the spot always resounded with the cries of peacocks. The Buddhists hold that Aśoka and the Buddha were of the same family, as the former was descended from Candragupta, who was a son of the queen of one of the kings of Moriyanagara.

---

1 Jātaka (Fausböll), Vol. IV, p. 152.
3 11th Pallava (Bibl. Indica series).
4 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, pp. 11-12; and see also Licchavi chapter.
5 Mahāvamsa Tīkā (Ceylonese edition), pp. 119-21.
CHAPTER L

THE MALLAS

The Mallas were a powerful people of E. India at the time of Gautama Buddha, and are often mentioned in Buddhist and Jaina works.

The country of the Mallas is spoken of in many passages of a Buddhist work as one of the sixteen 'great countries' (Mahājana-padas). It is also mentioned in the Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata, where we are told that the second Pāṇḍava, Bhimasena, during his expedition to E. India, conquered the chief of the Mallas, besides the country of Gopālakakṣa and the northern Kośala territories.  

The Bhiṣma-parvan mentions the Mallas along with such E. Indian peoples as the Ahgas, the Vangas and the Kalihgas. 

At the time of which we are speaking, the Mallas appear to have been divided into two confederacies, 'one with headquarters at Pāvā, and the other with headquarters at Kuśinārā', as we see from the Mahāparinibbāṇa Sutta. There is reason to believe that in the Buddha's time Kuśinārā was not a city of the first rank, like Rājagṛha, Vaisāli, or Śravasti. When the Lord expressed to Ānanda his desire to die at Kuśinārā, Ānanda said to him, 'Let not the Exalted One die in this little wattle-and-daub town, in this town in the midst of the jungle, in this branch township....' The fact that the Buddha hastened to Kuśinārā from Pāvā during his last illness indicates that the distance between the two towns was not great; but the description in the Mahāparinibbāṇa Sutta does not enable us to make any accurate estimate. Kuśinārā has been identified by Cunningham with the village of Kāsiā in the east of the Gorakhpur district, and this view has recently been strengthened by the fact that in the stūpa behind the Nirvāṇa temple, near this village, a copperplate has been discovered, bearing the inscription 'parinirvāṇa-caitya-tāmra-patta', or 'the copperplate of the parinirvāṇa-caitya'. This identification appears to be correct, although V. A. Smith would prefer to place Kuśinārā in Nepal, beyond the first range of hills. Rhys Davids expresses the opinion

1 Anguttara Nikāya, Vol. IV, p. 252.
3 Ibid., Bhiṣma-parvan, Chap. IX, sl. 3.
5 Ancient Geography of India, pp. 430–3.
that, if we may trust the Chinese pilgrims, the territory of the Mallas
of Kuśinārā and Pāvā was on the mountain slopes to the east of the
Śākya land and to the north of the Vajjian confederation. But some
would place their territory south of the Śākyas and east of the
Vajjians.1 It is a considerable distance from Kāśiā in the Gorakhpur
district to Pāwāpuri of the Jainas in the Patna district, and one so
ill as the Buddha was not likely to go such a distance on foot. Therefore
Pāvā of the Buddhist books appears to have been distinct from
Pāwāpuri, and situated not very far from Kāśiā.

The Cullavagga of the Vinaya Piṭaka mentions another town
of the Mallas named Anupiya,2 where the Buddha resided for some
time. This Anupiya may be the same as the mango-grove called
Anupiya, where Gautama spent the first seven days after his ren-
cunciation, on his way to Rājagaha.3

A fourth town of the Mallas, called Uruvelakappa, where the
Buddha stayed for some time, is mentioned in the Āṅgulīkara Nikāya.4
In its neighbourhood a wide forest called Mahāvāna appears to
have existed, where the Buddha went alone for midday rest after
his meal, and met the gahapati Tapusa.

From the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta account of the Buddha’s
death and cremation,5 it is evident that the Mallas belonged to the
Kṣatriya caste; and they are repeatedly addressed by the Buddha
as well as by Ānanda and others as Vāsetṭhas or Vāśisṭhas,6—showing
that, like the Licchavis, they belonged to the Vaśisṭha gotra. Like
the Licchavis again, the Mallas are described by Manu (X, 22) as
‘horn of a Kṣatriya mother and of a Kṣatriya father who was a vrātya,’
i.e. who had not gone through the ceremony of Vedic initiation at
the proper age.

According to Kauṭilya, the Mallas were a saṅgha or corporation
of which the members called themselves rājus, just as the Licchavis
did. Buddhaghosa also calls them rājus.7 A passage in the Majjhima
Nikāya mentions the Licchavis and Mallas as examples of saṅghas and
ganās. The Mallas of Pāvā and Kuśinārā, then, had their respective
Sunthāgaras or Council-Halls, where all matters, both political and religious,
discussed. The Saṅgīti Suttanta of the Dīgha Nikāya8 tells us that when the Buddha came to the Mallas,
a new Council-Hall named Ubbhaṭaka had just been built at Pāvā.

---

1 Buddhist India, p. 26.
2 Cullavagga, VII, r, r; Vinaya Texts, S.B.E., Pt. III, p. 224.
5 Dīgha Nikāya, II, p. 165.
6 Ibid., III, p. 209.
7 Sumanalavilāsini, III, p. 971; and see Licchavi chapter.
8 Dīgha, Pt. III, p. 207.
The Mallas invited the Buddha to this hall, saying, 'Let the Lord, the Exalted One, be the first to make use of it. That it has first been used by the Exalted One will be for the lasting good and happiness of the Pāvā Mallas'. At their request, the Buddha gave a discourse on his doctrine to the Mallas of Pāvā, until the late hours of the night. The Mallas were in assembly and had been doing business in their Council-Hall when Ānanda went to them with the message of the impending death of the Master; and again they gathered in assembly, evidently in the same Santhāgāra, to discuss the procedure to be followed in the disposal of the body, and afterwards to discuss the claims put forward by the various Kṣatriya kings and peoples.

In the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta, there is mention of a set of officers called Purisas among the Mallas of Kuśinārā, about whose functions we are quite in the dark. Rhys Davids¹ takes them to be a class of subordinate servants. It is not unlikely that they are the same as the Pulisas mentioned in the edicts of Aśoka.

It seems that the Mallas were a martial race and were devoted to such manly sports as wrestling.² It is probable that the word 'Malla' denoting a professional wrestler was derived from the tribal name of this people. But the Mallas cultivated learning as well as physical culture. We read in one of the Buddhist texts, for example, that Bandhula, a son of a king of Kuśinārā, went to Taxila for his education. There he studied with a great teacher, along with Pasenadi of Kośala, and Mahāli, a Licchavi prince of Vaiśāli. After completing his education he came back to this realm.³ We often find the Mallas discussing philosophical problems, as may be seen, e.g. from Samyutta Nikāya, IV, pp. 327ff.; V, pp. 228-9, 349ff.

Before the advent of Jainism and Buddhism, the Mallas seem to have been caitya-worshippers like their neighbours, the Licchavis. One of their shrines called Makuṭa Bandhana, to the east of Kuśinārā, is mentioned in connection with the death of the Buddha: his dead body was carried thither for cremation. There is no indication of the kind of worship that was performed at this place.

Jainism found many followers among the Mallas. The accounts in Buddhist Literature of the schism that appeared in the Jaina Church after the death of Mahāvīra amply prove this. At Pāvā, the followers of Niganttha Nātaputta were divided after the death of their great Tirthaṅkara. There were both ascetics and lay devotees among these Jainas, for we read that on account of the disputations among the ascetics, 'even the lay disciples of the white robe, who

¹ Buddhist India, p. 21.
² Jātaka (Fausböll), Vol. II, p. 96.
³ Fausböll, Dhammapadam (old edition), p. 211.
followed Nātaputta, showed themselves shocked, repelled and indignant at the Niganthas.' These lay Jainas appear from this passage to have been draped in white robes, just as the Svetāmbaras are at the present day. The Buddha seems to have taken advantage of the schism that overtook the Jaina church on the death of its founder, for the propagation of the rival faith. In the Pāsādika Suttāna, we find that Čunda, the novice of Pāvā, brought the news of the death of Mahāvīra to Ānanda at Śāmagāma in the Malla country. Ānanda forthwith reported it to the Buddha who delivered a long discourse.

The Mallas were much attached to the founder of Jainism. We are informed by the Kalpa Sūtra that to mark the passing away of the great Jina, nine Mallakis or Malla chiefs were among those that instituted an illumination on the day of the New-moon, saying, 'Since the light of intelligence is gone, let us make an illumination of material matter.'

Buddhism also attracted many devotees among the Mallas some of whom, like the venerable Dabba, attained a high and respected position among the brethren. On account of his virtues, he was appointed, after due election by the Buddhist Saṅgha, a regulator of lodging places and apportioner of rations. He was so successful in the discharge of these duties, which required a great deal of patience and tact, that he was considered by the Saṅgha to be possessed of miraculous powers. But there were some who were envious of him, and preferred charges against him to bring about his expulsion from the Saṅgha. The venerable Dabba, however, was exculpated from these charges.

Another Malla, Khandasumana, born in the family of a Malla rāja of Pāvā, entered the Buddhist Order and acquired six-fold Abhiññā.

Once, Buddha was in the country of the Mallas at Uruvelakappa. One day he asked Ānanda to remain there, while he left for Mahāvana to spend the day. While Ānanda was at Uruvelakappa, a householder named Tapussa, probably a Malla, came to him, and Ānanda took him to the Buddha whose teachings cured Tapussa of his desire for sensual pleasures. Another Malla, Roja, asked Ānanda whether the Buddha would accept potherbs and meal from him, and the Buddha asked him to hand them over to the bhikkhus. A certain Siha was born in the country of the Mallas, in the family of a rāja.

---

2 Ibid., III, p. 118.  
3 Jaina Sūtras, Pt. I, S.B.E., XXII, p. 266.  
4 Vinaya Texts, Pt. III, pp. 4ff.  
5 Psalms of the Brethren, p. 90.  
As soon as he saw the Buddha, he was attracted to him. The Buddha taught him the Dhamma, and he entered the Buddhist order and eventually developed insight and acquired Arhatship.¹

It was at the Mallian city of Pāvā that the Buddha ate his last meal at the house of Cunda, the smith, and fell ill. Though in pain, the Buddha went to the rival Mallian city of Kuśinārā. When he felt that his last moment was fast approaching, he sent Ananda with a message to the Mallas of Kuśinārā who had then assembled in their Sāntāgāra (Council-Hall) for some public affair. On receipt of the news, they flocked to the Sala grove where the Buddha was, with their young men, girls and wives, 'being grieved and sad and afflicted at heart'. The venerable Ananda caused them 'to stand in groups, each family in a group,' and presented them to the Buddha.² After his last exhortations to the assembled brethren to work out their salvation with diligence, the Buddha entered into parinirvāṇa.

The Mallas then met together in their Council-Hall to devise some means of honouring the earthly remains of the Lord in a suitable manner, and carried them with music to the shrine of the Mallas, called the Makāṭa-bandhana, to the east of their city. They treated the remains of the Tathāgata as they would treat the remains of a king of kings (Cakravartinrajā).³ When the cremation was over, they extinguished the funeral pyre with water scented with all sorts of perfumes, and collected the bones, which they placed in their Council-Hall, surrounding them 'with a lattice work of spears and with a rampart of bows.'⁴

As they had a separate principality, the Mallas of Pāvā were among the various clans that pressed their claims for a share of the remains. They sent a messenger to the Mallas of Kuśinārā, saying: 'The Exalted One was a Kṣatriya and so are we. We are worthy to receive a portion of the relics of the Exalted One. Over the remains of the Exalted One will we put up a sacred cairn, and in his honour will we celebrate a feast.' Both the Mallas of Pāvā and of Kuśinārā erected stūpas over their respective shares, and celebrated feasts.

The Mallas appear to have usually been on friendly terms with their neighbours, the Licchavis, with whom they had many ties of kinship, though, as was inevitable, there were occasional rivalries between the two States, as, for instance, the story of Bandhula, a Mallian general, shows.⁵ Bandhula drove to Vaiśāli, the Licchavi capital, where he arrogantly misused the water of a tank where the members of the king's families were in the habit of obtaining water

---

¹ Psalms of the Brethren, p. 80.
² Digha, II, pp. 148 foll.
³ Ibid., p. 161.
⁴ Ibid., p. 164.
for ceremonial purposes. Five hundred Licchavi Rājās set forth to capture Bandhula, but the latter 'sped a shaft and it cleft the heads of all the chariots and passed right through the five hundred kings,'—who forthwith died in gruesome circumstances.

The Mallas appear to have lost their independence to that ambitious monarch of Magadha, Ajātasatru, and their dominions were annexed to the Magadhan empire.¹

¹ D. R. Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 79.
It is not difficult for the philologist to recognise the present Bengal in the tribal name ‘Vaṅga’. But Vaṅga in ancient days denoted only a portion of present-day Bengal; it is distinguished in ancient literature and epigraphic records not only from Rādhā which included Suhma¹ or was conterminous with it² and Gauda which at one time included Karnasuvama³ and a portion of Rādhā,⁴— all making up what is now roughly known as Western Bengal,— but also from Pundra or Puṇḍravarṇa which included Varendra or Varendri,⁵ making up what is roughly identical with present Northern Bengal. Vaṅga thus stood for what is now known as Eastern Bengal comprising the modern Dacca and Chittagong divisions. Among the important divisions of Vaṅga in ancient days were included Samatata (mod. Faridpur), according to Watters;⁶ and for some time even Tāmralipta or Tāmalitti (mod. Tamluk).⁷ Hemacandra in his Abhidhanacintāmani (IV, 23), however, identifies the country of the Vaṅga with that of a tribe called the Harikelas.⁸ In the eleventh century Cola Inscription (Tirumalai Rock Ins. of Rājendra Cola) as well as in the Goharwa Plate of Karnadeva, king of Cedi (c. 1040–1070 A.D.), the Vaṅga country is referred to as Baṅgā-la-deśam, which, in the thirteenth century, came to be called Baṅgāla (Wright’s Marco Polo) and in Mohammedan times Bāṅgāla. The Tirumalai Inscription distinguishes Vaṅga from South Rādhā (Takkana Lāḍham) and North Rādhā (Uttila Lāḍham). Thus Vaṅga which at one time denoted Eastern Bengal has now given its name to the entire province of modern Bengal, the English rendering of the name being derived from Baṅgāla or Bāṅgāla.⁹

² S.B.E., Vol. XXII, pp. 84–5, Nilakantha’s commentary on the Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata. ‘Suhmāh Rādhāḥ’ = The Suhmas are the Rādhās.
³ M. Chakravarti, J.A.S.B., 1908, p. 274.⁴ Prabhodhacandrodaya, Canto II.
⁵ Tarpandighi Grant of Uikstnaiiasona, Inscriptions in Bengal, III, pp. 99ff. But in some of the Sena records Vaṅga is included in Puṇḍravarṇaabhukti.
⁷ According to I-tsing (I-tsing, Takakusu, p. xlvii), Wu-hung, another Chinese pilgrim, visited Harikela, which was the eastern limit of E. India. Harikela is also mentioned in an illustrated manuscript of Agastasahasra-prajñāpāramitā in the Camb. Univ. Library (MSS. Add. 1643).
⁸ In a Nalanda Inscription recently edited by N. G. Majumdar (Ep. Ind., Vol. XXI, Pt. III, pp. 97ff.) the name Vaṅgāla deśa appears.
In the time of Baudhāyana\textsuperscript{1} (fourth century B.C.?), the Vāngas were distinguished from the Pundras, while in the Epics and Purāṇas, Vāṅga is distinguished from Pundra and Suhma, as well as from Āṅga and Kaliṅga. According to the Purāṇas and the Mahābhārata,\textsuperscript{2} King Bali’s queen, Sudesnā, and the sage Dīrganatamas had five sons (with Bali’s consent): Āṅga, Vāṅga, Kaliṅga, Pundra, and Suhma. These five were called the Bāleya Kṣatras or Bāleya Brāhmaṇas, and are said to have been the founders of the five countries bearing their respective names. In the Maitreya purāṇa, Vāṅga and Suhma are included in a list of the eastern countries (Chap. 114, 43-45).\textsuperscript{3} According to the Mahābhārata (XII, Chap. 5, 6607), King Jarāsandha is said to have extended his supremacy over the Āṅgas, Vaṅgas, Kaliṅgas, and Pundras. Karna is also once said to have conquered the Suhmas, Āṅgas and Vaṅgas (Karnaparvan, Chap. 8, 19), while Vāsudeva is said to have once routed in battle the Āṅgas, Vaṅgas, Kaliṅgas and Paundra along with other peoples. In the Sabhāparvan, the Pândavas are described as having subjugated the Pundras and the Vaṅgas, and led their victorious army to Suhma (Sabhāparvan, Chap. XXX, 23-5).

It, therefore, seems that in the period represented by the Epics and the Purāṇas, Vāṅga, Pundra (or Paundra) and Suhma were the three important divisions of Bengal, but it is difficult to define with any degree of exactitude the geographical positions of these divisions. We may, however, assume that Pundra and Suhma were two adjacent tracts, identical roughly with the modern Rajshahi and Burdwan divisions respectively. In the Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata Āṅga and Vāṅga are mentioned as forming one Viśaya or kingdom. This is supported by a reference in the Ramāyana (Bk. II, Chap. X1) where the Vaṅgas are mentioned along with the Āṅgas; they are, moreover, nearly always associated in ancient literature with the Āṅgas and Kaliṅgas.

The Vaṅgas as a tribe are not mentioned in earlier Vedic literature, unless we recognise them in the curious word ‘Vaṅga-Vāgaḍhā’ which occurs in the Aitareya Āraṇyaka (II, I, I). ‘Vaṅga-Vāgaḍhā’ has often been amended into ‘Vaṅga-Māgaḍhā’.

\textsuperscript{1} Dharmasūtra, I, I, 14; cf. Oldenberg, Buddha, 394, n.
\textsuperscript{2} Vāyu P., Chap. 99, 26-34, 47-97; Brahmāṇḍa P., III, Chap. 74, 25-34, 47-100; Mātysa P., Chap. 48, 23-9, 43-89; Brahma P., IV, Chap. 18, 1; Bhāg. P., IX, Chap. 23, 5; Mbh. I, Chap. 104, 4193-221, with variations; XII, Chap. 343, 13177-84, cf. Pargiter, Anc. Ind. Hist. Tradition, pp. 109 and 158.
\textsuperscript{3} Cf. also Mbh. (Bhishmaparvan, Chap. 9, 40) where the Āṅgas, Vaṅgas and Kaliṅgas are mentioned as East Indian peoples (Law, ‘Some Kṣatriya Tribes of Ancient India’, p. 147). Cf. also Ramāyana (Kiśkindhyā Kānda, Canto xlii) where the Pundras are mentioned as an Eastern people.
The physical map of India.
i.e. the Vaṅgas and the Magadhas, who were neighbouring peoples. The amendment is doubtful; but if it be correct, the Vaṅgas along with the Magadhas must have been branded by the Aryans as an impure people, probably a pre-Aryan tribe; for the two tribes are described as 'paksi-viśeṣaḥ', or like certain species of birds. Baudhāyana too brands Vaṅga as an impure country, along with Pundra, Kaliṅga and Sauvira. An Aryan who had been to any of these countries was required to perform a certain sacrificial rite to become free from the impurities attaching to residence there. Even in the time of Patañjali (second century B.C.) the Vaṅgas and their country were excluded from Āryavarta. The country was, however, Aryanised before Manu wrote his Dharmaśāstra (between 200 B.C. and 200 A.D., acc. to Bühler), for the Manusamhitā extends the eastern boundary of Āryavarta to the sea. In the early Buddhist literature where detailed lists appear of many countries and peoples, the Vaṅgas and their country are conspicuous by their absence. They are, however, mentioned in the Jaina Prajñāpānā, which ranks Āṅga and Vaṅga in the first group of Aryan peoples, and in the Milinda-Pañho, where Vaṅga is described as a trading-place to be reached by sea. The mother of Sihaḇāhu and Sihašivalī, of Mahāvamsa and Deśavamsa fame, was a Vaṅga princess, the daughter of a king of Vaṅga who had married the daughter of the king of Kaliṅga.

The first epigraphic mention of the Vaṅgas is probably made in the Maharauli Iron Pillar Inscription (C.I.I., Vol. III, pp. 141 ff.), where the mighty King Candra is said to have 'in battle in the Vaṅga countries turned back with his breast the enemies who uniting together came against him.' H. P. Śāstri identified this King Candra with King Candraravarman of the Allahabad Pillar Inscription, and with the king of the same name of Pokhrana, which he located in Marwar.

---

1 For early references to Vaṅga see Lévi, Pre-Aryan et Pre-Dravidian dans l'Inde.
2 It is interesting to see what accounts we may get of the ancient Vaṅga people out of some records of non-Aryan activities of a time when the Aryans disdained to notice the tribes outside the pale of Āryavarta. For a detailed study vide B. C. Majumdar, History of the Bengali Language, pp. 38-41. Glimpses of the ancient relation of Bengal with the Tamilis are reflected in at least one place-name of ancient Bengal Tāmarālīpti, which was once called Dāmalīpti or Dāmihiti, i.e. the city of the Dāmala people. The Dāmalas are the same as the Tāmala people or the Tamilis; and Bengal must once have been a home of these people.
3 P. 350 (Treneckner).
4 Mahāvamsa, VI, rff.; Deśavamsa, IX, 2. We may note here that Lāla, which is mentioned in this story has been proved by H. C. Ray, in an interesting note, to be identical with Rādha (H. C. Ray, 'Lāla—A Note', J.A.S.B. (new series), Vol. XVIII, 1922, No. 7).
in Rajputana. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri and S. K. Chatterjee, however, identify Pokhrana or Puśkaraṇa with a village of the same name on the Dāmodara river in the Bankura district of Bengal, some 25 miles east of the Susimia Hill on which the record of Candravarman is inscribed. The Vaṅgas are mentioned in Kālidāsa’s Raghu-
vamsa, where Raghu is said to have conquered the Vaṅgas after he had finished his task with the Suhmas, and then to have planted his victorious banner in the midstream of the Ganges (Canto IV, 35-6). This passage shows that in the age of Kālidāsa (c. 400 A.D.) the Vaṅgas were distinguished, as in earlier days, from the Suhmas. It is likely that the realm of the Vaṅgas abutted on the Ganges, which probably formed the dividing line between the two countries.

The Vaṅga country is also referred to in the Mahākūṭa Pillar Inscription (Ep. Ind., Vol. V), which tells us that in the sixth century A.D., Kīrtivarman of the Cāḷukya dynasty gained victories over the kings of Vaṅga, Āṅga and Magadha, which were three neighbouring countries. Another reference to the realm of the Vaṅga people is made in the ‘Gauḍavaho’, a Marathi Prakrit poem that records the exploits of King Yaśovarman of Kanauj (first half of the eighth century A.D.). The identity of Yaśovarman has been sufficiently established by his mention in Chinese records (as I-chai-fon-mo), and also in the Rājata-ravignī of Kalhava; but the exploits recorded in the ‘Gauḍavaho’, with the exception of the main topics, i.e. the defeat and death of the Gauḍa king, are of doubtful historical value. We are told that Yaśovarman, bent on conquest, first came to the river Son, whence he proceeded to the Vindhyas with his army. Fearing his approach, the Gauḍa king, who was also the king of Magadha, fled, and Yaśovarman entered his territory and fixed his camp there. The Gauḍa king returned, and a battle was fought in which he was killed. Yaśovarman next proceeded to the Vaṅga kingdom, whose king also submitted to him. Not long after Yaśovarman’s victories, Odivisa, Vaṅga and five other countries of the east (which seem to have included Gauḍa, Suhma, Pūndra, etc.) seem, according to the celebrated Tibetan historian Tārānāth (Ind. Ant., Vol. IV, pp. 365-6), to have been plunged into a chaos which has been described as ‘Māṭsyā-nyāya’,—i.e. the system where the strong destroy the weak, like the big fish eating up the small frog. This was ended when Gopāla, the first of the Pāla dynasty, was elected from amongst the people sometime in the middle of the eighth century A.D.

From the above account we see that the Vaṅga country seems to have been distinguished from that of the Gaudas in the eighth century A.D.; and this distinction seems to have been maintained as late as the twelfth century A.D. In the Pithāpuram plates of Prithvīsena (A.D. 1186) King Malla is said to have subdued among others the kings of the Vaṅgas, Magadhas and Gaudas. In the Tirumalai Rock Inscription\(^1\) of King Rājendra Cola (1025 A.D.) Vaṅgaladesam, i.e. the realm of the Vaṅgālas or Vaṅgas (at that time ruled over by Govinda Candra) is distinguished from Uttira-Lādam or Uttara-Rādhā (= the Brahma country of the Kāvyamimāṁsā),\(^2\) ruled over by Mahipāla, and from Takkana-Lādam or Dakṣiṇa Rādhā (= Suhma of the Epics, the Purāṇas and the Kāvyamimāṁsā), ruled over by Raṅgāstra. The Kāvyamimāṁsā,\(^2\) a work of the tenth century A.D., mentions Aṅga, Vaṅga, Suhma, Brahma, Pundra, etc., as janapadas of the east. The Vanga country is also referred to not only in the copperplate grant of Vaidyadeva of Kāmarūpa (twelfth century), who is said to have been victorious in southern Vaṅga (\textit{Ep. Ind.}, Vol. II, p. 355), but also in the Edilpur plate of Kesavasena, the Madanpāḍa plate of Viśvarūpasena, and the Sāhitya Parishad plate of the same king (\textit{Inscriptions of Bengal}, Vol. III, pp. 119, 133 and 141).

It thus appears that from the fall of the later Guptas (eighth century) to the break-up of the Sena dynasty (twelfth century), the more important divisions of Bengal were Vaṅga, Pundra, Gauḍa and Suhma (which latter, according to one authority, was identical with Rādhā-Nilakanṭha’s commentary on the Mahābhāraṭa, and, according to another, stood for a portion, i.e. the southern portion of Rādhā, the northern portion being called Brahma).\(^3\) Other important divisions were Karnaṇasuvāṇa and Varendra, Tāmrālipti, Bāḍī, Samatāṭa and Harikela (of which the last two were included in or identical with Vaṅga). Tāmrālipti was included in Suhma and Varendra in Pundra or Pundrāvadhana, while Karnaṇasuvāṇa seems to have stood for some region perhaps identical with some portion of the northern Rādhā country. Some scholars have identified it with Rāṅgāmāṭi in the Murshidabad district.\(^4\) Others think that Karnaṇasuvāṇa was situated to the west of the Bhāgirathi and included Murshidabad, Bankura, Burdwan and Hugli.\(^5\) Bāḍī, one of the four divisions of the ancient Bengal, according to Vallaḷa-sena (Gopāla Bhaṭṭa’s \textit{Vallaḷa-Charitam},—a book of doubtful

\begin{itemize}
  \item [2] Chaps. 3 and 17.
  \item [5] Dey’s \textit{Geographical Dic[t]y.}, p. 94.
\end{itemize}
value—Pūrva-khaṇḍa, verses 6 and 7) comprised the delta of the Ganges and the Brahmaputra, and may be identified with what is now known as the 24-parganas and the Sunderbans (C.A.G.I., Ed. Majumdar, pp. 730-1).

Samatāta, as we have already said, was included in the larger divisions of Vaṅga. Some scholars are of opinion that it was distinct from Vaṅga, which lay between the Meghna on the east, the sea on the south, and the old Buḍigaṅga course of the Ganges on the north. The western boundary of Vaṅga appears always to have been indefinite (vide Bhaṭṭasāli, Sculptures in the Dacca Museum, pp. 4-6). 1 Samatāta is mentioned for the first time in the Allahabad Pillar Inscription 2 of Samudragupta as one of the most important among the north-east Indian frontier kingdoms which submitted to the mighty Gupta emperor. It is also mentioned in the Karmavibhāga of the Bhātisamhitā (Chap. XIV) as an eastern country, and was visited by the Chinese travellers, Hsūn Tsang, I-tsing and Seng-chi. Hsūn Tsang describes it as 'the country of which the rivers have flat and level banks of equal height on both sides'. According to him, it was much to the south of Kāmrūpa and east of Tāmralipta; it was low, moist and on the sea side. Samatāta thus seems to have been identical with the delta of the Ganges and Brahmaputra and must have comprised, according to epigraphic evidence, the modern districts of Tipperah, Noakhali, Sylhet (J.A.S.B., 1915, pp. 17, 18), and probably portions of Barisal. That it included Tipperah is proved also by Nos. 19 and 59 of the Cambridge MSS., Add., 1643, and Foucher, Iconographie Bouddhique, Vol. I; also Bhaṭṭasāli, op. cit., pp. 12-13.

When Hsūn Tsang visited the country (c. 640 A.D.), Samatāta was an important kingdom. There were about 30 Buddhist Saṅghārāmas with about 2,000 priests in the country, while the temples of Brahmanical gods were also numerous, and there were also many Jain (Niganttha) ascetics. During the visits of Hsūn Tsang and Seng-chi, Samatāta seems to have been under the rule of the Khāḍga dynasty. 3 The Asrafpur copperplates of the Khāḍgas (Mem., A.S.B., Vol. I, No. 6) were issued from a place called Karmānta, which has been identified with Baḍ-śaṅkṭā, 12 miles west of Comilla. Karmānta has often been identified as the capital of Samatāta (Dey, Geog. Dicty., p. 175; Bhaṭṭasāli, op. cit., p. 6). Later on,

---

1 Regarding Vaṅga, Vaṅgāla and Samatāta, mention may be made here of H. C. Ray Chandhuri's Bengali article, 'Vanga hon deśa' in his Studies in Indian Antiquities, Cal. Univ., pp. 184-192.
Samataṭa came to be ruled over by the Candra dynasty of Vaṅga (cf. Govindacandra of Vaṅgāla deśam of the Tirumalai Inscription). The Rampal plate of Śricandrādevaṁ (Ep. Ind., Vol. XII, p. 136) informs us that a Candra dynasty held sway over the Rohita hill (identified by Bhaṭṭasālī with a range of hillocks in the Tipperah district, see Sculptures in the Dacca Museum, pp. 9-10), and appears to have mastered the whole of Vaṅga including Samataṭa. Śricandrādeva’s father Trailokyacandra is described as having been the mainstay of the king of Harikela. The Candras were ousted from their possession of Samataṭa in the beginning of the eleventh century by the Varmans, who in their turn gave place to the Senas towards the end of the same century. During their rule Vaṅga was included in the Puṇḍravardhanabhukti.
CHAPTER LII

THE GAUḌAS

The earliest literary reference to the country of the Gauḍas is made by the celebrated grammarian Pāṇini who seems to locate the country in the east (Pāṇini, VI, ii, 99-100). The country is also referred to in the Arthaśāstra of Kautilya as well as in the Kāmasūtra of Vātsyāyana (nakkhaṭchedya ṭrakaraṇam, ii, 13). Varāhamihira (sixth century A.D.) probably refers to the Gauḍa country when he places ‘Gauḍaka’ in the eastern division of India. But the first epigraphic mention of the tribe is made in the Harāhā inscription of A.D. 554 (Ep. Ind., XIV, pp. 110ff.), where King Īśānavarman of the Maukharī dynasty claims victories over the Andhras, the Śūlikas (prob. = the Cālukyas) and the Gauḍas, who are described as living on the seashore (Gauḍaṃ saṃudrāsrayaṃ). It is difficult to define with any amount of certainty the exact region which the Gauḍas occupied at that time. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri, however, suggests that their ‘proper realm’ was Western Bengal as it bordered on the sea, and included Karnasuvarna and Rādhāpurī (P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 509). This may find confirmation in the combined testimony of Bāna and Hsiian Tsang who state that Śaśāṅka or Karnasuvarna (identified with Rāṅgāmāṭi in Murshidabad, W. Bengal) was the Gauḍa king, the great rival of Rājyavardhana and Harṣavardhana, the kings of Thānesvar (seventh century).

The fight with the Maukharīs seems to have brought the Gauḍas into the forefront of Eastern Indian politics. At first the Gupt-Maukharī struggle effected the serious discomfiture of the Guptas; in fact they were obliged to give up Magadha to their enemies and retire to Mālava.1 During the reign of Rājyavardhana of Kanauj, the king of Mālava was Devagupta,2 and the king of the Gauḍas was Śaśāṅka who was also the king of Karnasuvarna, according to Hsiian Tsang. Devagupta allied himself with Śaśāṅka, and defeated and killed Graḥavarman, the Maukharī king, who had married Rājyaśrī, sister of Rājyavardhana and Harṣavardhana. Rājyavardhana, who came to the rescue of his widowed sister, and succeeded in defeating Devagupta, was treacherously slain

1 N. Ray, The Maukharis of Kanauj, Cal. Rev., 1928, Feb,
2 Bāna’s Hārṣacarita; cf. also the Madhuvan and Banshkhera Inscriptions of Harṣavardhana.
by the latter’s ally, Śaśāṅka, king of Gauda ¹ (606 A.D.). Though the murdered king’s brother Harṣavardhana sought to avenge his death, Śaśāṅka is known to have been still in power as late as the year 619; but his kingdom probably became subject to Harṣa at a later date.²

After the death of Śaśāṅka, the Gaudas seem to have faded out of history for a time; but in the first half of the eighth century they again appear on the stage, and a Gauda king is seen to occupy the throne of Magadha. This appears from the Gaudavaho, a Prākrit poem by Vākpatirāja, which records the slaying of the Gauda king, who was also the king of Magadha, by Yaśovarman, king of Kānauj. The Gauda country in Vākpatirāja’s account is distinguished from the Vānga country. As its king was also the king of Magadha, it may be assumed that it was contiguous with Magadha.

The sequel to the story of Yaśovarman is given in the Rajatarangini of Kalhana. Yaśovarman was defeated in his turn by Lalitāditya, king of Kāśmīr, who had launched out on a career of conquest. Lalitāditya is also credited by Kalhana with having defeated another Gauda king and compelled the latter to give him his whole elephant force. We are not told who this Gauda king was or which region he ruled over. According to Kalhana, Lalitāditya had the Gauda king killed in spite of a promise given not to harm him and sworn by his favourite god Parīhasa Keśava. When the Gaudas heard of this treachery, they at once started for Kāśmīr, and entering the capital, they threw down the idol of the Rāmasvāmi temple, broke it into pieces and strewed them on the road. While they were thus engaged, the royal army from Śrīnagar arrived and attacked them. Undaunted, the Gaudas continued in their work of destruction until they were annihilated by the army. Even in the time of Kalhana (twelfth century A.D.) the Rāmasvāmi temple was empty, and the heroism of the Gaudas was sung all over the valley. But it is difficult in the absence of other records to ascertain the elements of historic truth underlying this romantic story, and sober history would hardly agree to recognize it.³

Lalitāditya’s grandson Jayāpiḍā (close of the eighth century) is also described by Kalhana as having had some relations with the Gaudas. He is said to have once gone to Bengal incognito.

¹ V. A. Smith, Early History of India (4th Ed.), p. 350.
² The Gauda country is referred to in the Apsahad Incription of Ādityasena (c. 658 A.D.), where Śīksmaśāva, the engraver of the inscription, is mentioned as being a native of the Gauda country.
³ After Yaśovarman’s defeat Kalhana makes Lalitāditya start on a march of triumphal conquest round the whole of India, which is manifestly legendary (Stein, Chronicles of the Kings of Kāśmīr, Vol. I, p. 90).
Having killed a tiger which had become a terror to the city of Paundravardhana, he came to the notice of the king who ruled there, one Jayanta. Jayanta gave him his daughter in marriage, and Jayapida is then said to have subdued five kings of the Gauda country (which probably meant the major portion of the province of Bengal with Monghyr and Bhagalpur of the province of Bihar) on behalf of his father-in-law, and then returned to Kasimir in triumph with his bride. The whole story reads more as fiction than history, and serious criticism has doubted its authenticity.¹

The Gaudos are twice mentioned in Rajaśekhara’s Kāvyamāmāmsā, where it is said that they spoke Sanskrit, but could not speak Prākrit well (Chap. X, p. 57; Chap. 7, p. 33).

The Pāla kings of Bengal are often described as ‘Lords of Gauda’ (Gaudendra or Gaudeśvara) as well as ‘Vaṅgapatī’, in the contemporary epigraphic records of the ninth century A.D. Dharmapāla and Devapāla had often to measure swords with the Gurjara Pratihāras on the one hand and the Rāstrakūṭas on the other. Thus the Rādhānapur plates of Rāstrakūṭa Govinda III (Ep. Ind., VI, p. 248) as well as the Wani grant of the same monarch refer to a defeat inflicted by the Rāstrakūṭa king Dhruva upon Vatsarāja, the Gurjara king, who had already defeated the king of Gauda. The Sanjan Copperplate of Amoghavarṣa I tells us that Dhruva took away the white umbrellas of the king of Gauda, which were destroyed between the Ganges and the Jumna (Ind. Ant., Vol. XII, p. 159). That Dhruva actually advanced so far is also proved by a verse in the Baroda plates of Kakkarāja. This proves almost conclusively that the kingdom of Gauda in the ninth century stretched at least as far as Allahabad at the confluence of the Ganges; and Vatsarāja’s son Nāgabhata is stated in the Gwalior Inscription of Bhoja to have defeated the king of Bengal (c. 810 A.D.). The Jodhpur Inscription of Bauka informs us that his father Kakka ‘gained renown by fighting with the Gaudas at Madgagiri (or Monghyr)’ (Majumdar, Gurjara Pratihāras, p. 60). The Sirur and Nilgund Inscriptions (Ep. Ind., Vol. VI) of Amoghavarṣa I (866 A.D.) refer to the Rāstrakūṭa Govinda III, who imprisoned not only the Keralas and Mālavas, but also the Gaudas, whose king at that time was Devapāla who is described in the Gauḍa Pillar Inscription of Bādal (Ep. Ind., Vol. II, pp. 160ff.) as the Lord of Gauda. It was probably during the reign of Devapāla’s grandson

¹ Stein, Chronicles of the Kings of Kasimir, Vol. I, p. 94. ‘But the romantic tale of his visit incognito to the capital of Paundravardhana, then the seat of government of a king named Jayanta, unknown to sober history, seems to be purely imaginary’ (Smith, Early History of India, 4th Ed., p. 387).
Nārāyanaṇapāla that the Raśtrakūṭa king Krishna II inflicted a defeat on the Gaudās. In the Deoli Plates he is said to have 'taught humility to the Gaudās'. The Gaudās are represented as having been humiliated by Krishna III as well (Karhad Plates of Krishna III, Ep. Ind., IV, p. 287). The Kāmarūpa copperplate of Vaidyadeva also refers to the Lord of Gauda, evidently meaning the Pāla king 1 who appointed Vaidyadeva as ruler (Ep. Ind., Vol. II, p. 348).

After the fall of the Pālas, the Gauda country seems to have passed into the hands of the Senas. Vijayasena (c. 1060 A.D.), one of the early kings of the Sena dynasty, is described in the Deopara Inscription (Ep. Ind., Vol. I, pp. 305–15) as having defeated Nānya, Vīra, and the kings of Gauda, Kāmarūpa, and Kalinga. The Madhainagar copperplate of Lākṣmanaṇasena (J.A.S.B., N.S., Vol. V, pp. 467ff.) describes Lākṣmanaṇasena (early twelfth century) as having suddenly seized the kingdom of Gauda, and raided Kalinga. He is referred to as Gaudesvara, i.e. Lord of Gauda, and his sons Kesavasena and Viśvarūpasena are also referred to as Lords of Gauda (J.A.S.B., N.S., Vol. X, pp. 99–104). During the rule of the Senas the Gauda country seems to have more than once been attacked. In the Nagpur Stone Inscription of the rulers of Mālava (1104–5 A.D.), Lākṣmanadeva, the Paramāra king, is said to have defeated the Lord of Gauda—an unhistorical claim, says Kielhorn (Ep. Ind., Vol. II, p. 193). The Pithapuram Inscription of Prithivīsvara (Prithivīsenā) points out that King Malla is credited with having subdued among others the Lord of the Gaudas. 2

The Gaudas at one time or another must have inhabited other countries and localities than the region with which they were primarily associated. The late A. M. T. Jackson pointed out that Thāneśvar was called Guḍa (a corruption of Gauda) in Alberuni's day (J.R.A.S., 1905, pp. 163–4). He was supported by B. C. Majumdar (J.R.A.S., 1906, p. 442), who cites a verse from the Mātvsapuraṇa to the effect that Raṇa Śravastī founded Śravasti in Gaudadesa—the evident conclusion being that 'Gauda must have been lying to the north of Kosala and to the north-west of Mithilā'. The reference is supported by similar references in the Kūrma and Śrīga Purāṇas; 3 and R. C. Majumdar 4 was led to conclude that there was more than one Gauda. It is more

1 Kumārapāla, acc. to Smith, Early History of India, p. 416 (4th Ed.).
2 See chap. on the Vānas.
4 Gṛjarā Pratihāras, p. 34, f.n. 2.
likely, however, that Śrāvasti which is referred to in the Purāṇas is the same Śrāvasti which is mentioned in the Silimpur Inscription of Prahas (Ep. Ind., Vol. XII, pp. 283–95), and which is to be located somewhere in North Bengal, i.e. in the Varendra country of Gauda. Gonda, a subdivision of Uttara Kośala, 42 miles south of the Kośala Śrāvasti, is, according to Cunningham, a corruption of Gauda.1 The term Pañca Gauda, often used to designate the entire territory of Northern India as far as Kanauj and the river Sarasvati, is however late, and is probably ‘reminiscent of the Gauda empire of Dharmapāla and Devapāla, and cannot be equated with the ancient realm of the Gaudas in the early centuries of the Christian era’ (P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 537). The ruins of the ancient city of the Gaudas, which was situated at the junction of the Ganges and the Mahānandā, can still be seen near Maldah in North Bengal, at a distance of 10 miles from the town.

1 Cunningham, Anc. Geography, p. 408; Dey’s Geographical Dictionary, p. 63.
CHAPTER LIII

THE SUHMAS

The land of the Suhmas is mentioned for the first time probably in the Áyáraṅga-sūtta, one of the oldest sacred books of the Jainas. It is stated therein that Mahāvīra 'travelled in the pathless countries of the Lāḍhas, in Vajjabhūmi and Subbhabhūmi', where he was very rudely treated by the people. This Lāḍha is doubtless identical with what later came to be known as Rāḍha, and Subbhabhūmi with the country of the Suhma people. The Suhma country was thus a portion of the more comprehensive region which was later known as Rāḍha. According to the Epics and the Purāṇas, the Suhma country is distinguished from Vaṅga and Pundra, the two other important divisions of Bengal. The Epic account of Bhīma's eastern conquests makes the country of the Suhmas distinct from Vaṅga and Tāmralipta. In the Dasaśakumāracaritam (Chap. VI), Damalipti or Tāmralipti (mod. Tamluk in Midnapur) is described as having been a city of the Suhmas, while according to the Matsya-purāṇa (Chap. 114) Suhma and Tāmralipti were different countries. The Jain Prājñāpanā includes Tāmalitti in Vaṅga (see chapter on the Vaṅgas).

The distinction between Suhma and Vaṅga (and Pundra) is supported by the Epic and Pauranic tradition, which distinguishes Suhma, one of the eponymous 'Bāleya Kṣatras', from his brothers Ānga, Vaṅga, Kaliṅga and Pundra. In the Sabhāparvan (Chap. 30, 16) of the Mahābhārata, the Pāṇḍavas are described as having subdued the Pundras and Vaṅgas, and led their victorious army to Suhma. In Kālidāsa's Raghuvanśa also, Suhma is distinguished from the sea coast and the country of the Vaṅgas (Canto IV, 35-6). According to the Pavanadīta of Dhoyika, the Suhma country seems to have been situated on the Ganges (verse 27). In Rājaśekhara's Kāvyamimāṁsā, the Suhma country along with Brahma to the north, Vaṅga and Pundra, was included in a list of the Janapadas of the east. In the Bhaisamhitā it is located between Vaṅga and Kaliṅga.

According to Epic tradition, Suhma was once conquered by Pāṇḍu (Mbh., Ādi-parvan, Chap. 113), and at another time by Kariṇa (Mbh., Karna-parvan, Chap. 8, 19). It was in Sumbha-
or Suhma that the Buddha delivered the Janapada-kālīyāṇī Sutta, while dwelling in a forest near the town of Desaka ¹ (Telapatta Jātaka, Jātaka No. 96, Vol. I, p. 393).

According to Nilakaṇṭha's commentary on the Mahābhārata, the Suhmas and the Raḍhas were one and the same people (see Vaṅga Chap.); but from the Ayāraṅga-sutta, one may gather that the Suhma country formed a part of the Raḍha (Lāḍha) country, the other important part having been called Brahma (cf. Brahmatūr of the Purāṇas and Brahma of the Kāvyamīmāṃsā).

In the fourth Jain Upāṅga, called the Prājñāpāṇa (or Pannavanā), as well as in the fifth Jain Aṅga, called the Bhagavatī, Lāḍha is described as having been one of the 16 great Janapadas, and one of the Ariya Janapadas of India. But the name Raḍha is not traceable in the Epics or any other Sanskrit record before the tenth century A.D. 'The reason for this fact seems to be that in all Sanskrit records of the period including the Great Epic, the names Suhma and Brahma have always been used to denote the Raḍha country which was almost fully covered by these two Janapadas.' ² By the end of the tenth century A.D. Raḍha which seems to have comprised the whole of Western Bengal, bounded on the north and east by the Ganges and the Bhāgīrathī, had come to be divided into two parts: Uttara Raḍha and Daksīna Raḍha: for Śrīdhara Bhaṭṭa, the author of the philosophical work, Nyāyakāndaṇḍī, composed in 991 A.D., is said to have been born in a village called Bhūrīśrīsti in Daksīna Raḍha. Moreover, the Tirumalai Rock Inscription of Rājendra Cola (1025 A.D.) mentions Uttara Raḍha and Daksīna Raḍha as two distinct Janapadas (see Vaṅga Chap.); and Uttara Raḍha is also mentioned in the Belava copperplate of BhojaVarman as well as in the Naihāti copperplate of Vallaḷasena, as a mandala (district) included in the bhukti (limit) of Vardhamāṇa. It is highly probable that the two Janapadas, Brahma and Suhma, of the Epics, the Purāṇas, the Kāvyamīmāṃsā, and other Sanskrit sources are identical with the two divisions of Raḍha (Uttara and Daksīna) alluded to in the Nyāyakāndaṇḍī, the Tirumalai Inscription, the Prabodhacandradaya (Canto II), and finally in the Sena records. The Raḍha country seems to have comprised the modern districts of Hooghly, Howrah, Bardwan, Bankura, and the major portions of Midnapur; Uttara and Daksīna Raḍha being separated by the river Ajaya.

¹ Sedaka, acc. to Samyutta Nikāya, V, 89.
² For a most interesting and original discussion of this subject, see Sen, Some Janapadas of Ancient Raḍha (I.H.Q., Vol. VIII, No. 3, pp. 52ff.).
The Pundras seem to have been a very ancient people. They are mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (VII, 18), where they are described as outcaste descendants of Viśvāmitra. Viśvāmitra, so the story goes, had many sons; but he adopted the Bhārgava Sunahṣeṇa, calling him Devarāta, and made him the chief of all his sons. But the other sons did not all accept Devarāta's headship; and it is said that Viśvāmitra cursed those who repudiated it to become mlecchas or dog-eaters¹ such as Andhras, Pundras and Šabarās.

The Pundras are mentioned in the Sūtras as well (cf. Baudhāyana, I, 2, 14), and in Manu's Dharmaśāstra (10, 43-4)—here in the form Paundraka. But they are most frequently mentioned in the Purāṇas and Epics by the name of their originator, Pundra, one of the eponymous 'Bāleya Kṣatras'³ (see Vānga Chap.). It is said that Vāsudeva defeated the Pundras along with the Āṅgas, Vāṅgas, Kalingas, Kāśis, Kośalas, Karūṣas and others (Mbh., Drona-parvan, XI). Jarāsandha, king of Magadha, is referred to in the Harivamśa (Chap. 116) as having once held sway over the Pundras as well as over the Āṅgas, Vāṅgas and Kalingas. In the Rāmāyaṇa (Kiṣkindhāyā Kāṇḍa, XLI, 12), Pundra is referred to as a southern country, but, according to the Purāṇas and the Mahābhārata, the realm of the Pundras seems to have been situated in the eastern division, as they are always associated with the Vāṅgas, Āṅgas and Kalingas, as also with the Suhmas. This is also supported by Rājaśekhara's Kāvyamāṁśa, which places the Pundra country in the east along with Prāgjyotisa and Tamralipta.⁴ This determines the correctness of the usually accepted identification of the ancient Pundra country with what later came to be known as Pundravardhana.

The Pundras are sometimes referred to as Paundradas, Paundrakas (cf. Manusāṁhitā), or even Pauṇḍrikas. In the Mahābhārata,
these names are sometimes used as equivalents, but sometimes a distinction is made between the Paundras and Pundras.\(^1\) Pargiter\(^2\) holds that they were two different tribes occupying two different countries. According to this theory, the Pundras, linked as they were with the Vaṅgas and Kirātas (Sabhāparvan, XIV) and with the Aṅgas and Vaṅgas (Sabhāparvan, IV), occupied some intermediate position between the Aṅgas, the Vaṅgas, and the hilly countries of the Himalayas. Accordingly, the Pundra country should be identified with Maldah, portions of Purneea, east of the Kosi, and parts of Dinajpur and Rajshahi. The Paundras, however, linked as they were with the Udras, Utkalas, Mekalas, Kalihgas and Andhras (Bhīṣmaparvan, IX; Dronaparvan, IV), occupied the modern district of Santāl Parganas and Birbhum and northern portion of Hazaribagh.\(^3\) But as the enumeration of the countries and peoples in the Epics and Purāṇas is often loose, the distinction cannot be pushed very far, and in fact it is hardly ever accepted. In later literary and epigraphic records the distinction between Pundra and Paundra is never maintained.

According to the Divyāvadāna (pp. 21-2), Puṇḍravardhana was the eastern boundary (of the Middle Country). In the Sumāghadhāvadāna of the Avadāna Kalpalata (Chap. 93, v. 10), Puṇḍravardhana is described as being situated 160 yojanas (or 640 miles) to the east of Śrāvastī.

It is not improbable that Puṇḍravardhana formed a part of the Magadhan empire during the time of the Mauryas. This is suggested by the testimony of Hsūan Tsang, who saw stūpas of Aśoka near Tāmralipta and Karṇasuvārṇa in Samatāta, as well as in Puṇ-na-fa-tan-na (Puṇḍravardhana). Travelling east, Hsūan Tsang crossed the Ganges, and after a journey of above 600 li reached the Puṇ-na-fa-tan-na country. This country was above 4,000 li in circuit and its capital was more than 30 li in circuit. Twenty li to the west of the capital was a magnificent Buddhist establishment, the name of which is given in some texts as Po-shih-po. Near it was an Aśoka tope at the place where the Buddha had preached for three months'. (Watters, On Yuan Chwang, II, 184-5.)

On the authority of Hsūan Tsang's description of the Po-shih-po monastery in Puṇḍravardhana, Cunningham identified the capital of Puṇḍravardhana with Mahāsthān, saying that the Buddhist remains of Bhasu Vihāra, 4 miles to the west of Mahāsthān, corresponded with those noted by Hsūan Tsang at

---

1 Bhīṣmaparvan, IX; Sabhāparvan, LIII.  
2 J.A.S.B., 1897, p. 85.  
3 Cunningham, Ancient Geography of India, Majumdar, Notes, pp. 723-4.
the Po-shih-po monastery, situated just 4 miles to the west of the capital city of Pundravardhana. This conclusion is confirmed by the mention of 'Pundanagala' (= Pundranagara, the city of the Pundras) in a fragmentary Maurya Brahmi inscription paleographically dated in the second century B.C., which has been discovered at Mahâsthân, 7 miles north of the modern town of Bogra.

About the second century B.C., then, the Pundras had their chief city at Pundranagara. Not long after, they had spread over a wider area, which came to be known as Punavadhana (= Pundravardhana), for the name Punavadhana occurs in at least two inscriptions (Nos. 102 and 217, Ep. Ind., Vol. II, pp. 108 and 380) of the Sâanchi stûpa. Its inhabitants, Dhamatâ (Dharma- dattâ) and Isinadana (Rśinandana), made gifts of architectural pieces that went to the building up of the Sâanchi stûpa and its walls and torânas. The Mahâsthân fragmentary inscription proves that the district of Bogra was certainly included in what later came to be known as Pundravardhana. That it also included the district of Rajshahi, or at least portions of it, is proved by the recently discovered Pâhârpur copperplate (478-9 A.D.) which purports to have been issued from Pundravardhana city itself. But contemporaneously the term appears as the name of a bhûkta or provincial division. Thus, in the Damodarpur (a village in the Dinajpur district) Copperplate Inscriptions (Ep. Ind., XV, pp. 113ff.) of Kumâragupta I (443 and 448 A.D.) and of Budhagupta, the Pundravardhanabhûkta is referred to as being governed successively by Cirâtadatta, Brahmadatta and Yayadatta, all provincial governors. In all these records, Kuto-varṣaviṣaya is recorded as a subdivision of the Pundravardhanabhûkta. But naturally enough it is in the epigraphic records of the Pâlas and Senas of Bengal that the name most frequently occurs. Pundravardhana continued as in the days of the Guptas to be a provincial division of Bengal. Among the Pâla records, it is referred to in the Khalimpur grant of Dharmapâla, the Nâlandâ grant of Devapâla, the Bangâr grant of Mahîpâla I, the Amgachi grant of Vigrâhâpâla III and

---

1 A.S.R., XV, p. 110.
2 This inscription has been edited by D. R. Bhandarkar for the Ep. Ind. Cf. also 'Mahâsthân and its environs' (monograph No. 2); and also D. R. Bhandarkar's 'Important Fragmentary Inscription found at Mahâsthân (Bogra district) belonging to the Varendra Research Society', published in the Indian Antiquary, September, 1933.
3 In the Sângâ copperplates (Saka year 855) of the Râstrakûta king Govinda Suvarnâ-varṣa, Pundravardhananagarâ is mentioned as the place from which the doñee, Këśava Diñsîta, is said to have come (Ind. Ant., XII, pp. 251ff.).
the Manhali grant of Madanapāla. Among the Sena grants it is referred to in the Barrackpur grant of Vijayasena, the Amulia, the Tarpanadighi, the Madhainagar and the Sunderban copperplates, all of Lākṣmanasena, the Edilpur copperplate of Keśavasena, the Madanapāḍā and the Sāhitya Parishad copperplates of Viśvarūpasena (for Sena records, see Inscriptions of Bengal, Vol. III, Varendra Research Society).

During the rule of the Guptas, the Pundravardhanabhukti included as we have seen Koṭīvarṣaviṇīsa, which must have included the whole or a part of Dīnajpur. It is certain that by that time (c. 535–720 A.D.) Pundravardhana stood for the greater part of North Bengal, including at least the modern districts of Rajshahi, Bogra, Dīnajpur, and portions probably of Maldah and Rungpur. But in the time of the Pālas (c. 730–1060 A.D.), the Pundravardhana-bhukti must have comprised a larger area, while the Senas must have ruled over a still larger division. We are led to this conclusion by the fact that the records of these two dynasties refer to the following subdivisions as included in the larger division of Pundravardhanabhukti: The Koṭīvarṣaviṇīsa (Dīnajpur), the Vyāgrataṁ maṇḍala (Maldah), the Khāḍivisya (identical with the Sunderbans and the 24-Parganas), Varendri (roughly identical with Rajshahi, Bogra, Rungpur and Dīnajpur), and Vaṅga (Eastern Bengal, more particularly the Dacca division). That Pundravardhana included Varendri as well as Gaṇḍa (Maldah and Dīnajpur) is also proved by a reference in Purusottama’s lexicon (eleventh century A.D.), where we have ‘Pundrāh syur Varendri-Gaṇḍa-nivṛti’, i.e. ‘the Pundras include the Varendri and Gaṇḍa (countries)’.

The capital city of the Pundravardhanabhukti is referred to in the Rāmacaritam of Sandhyākara Nandī (eleventh century A.D.), as well as in the Karatoya Māhātmyam (sixteenth century A.D.) as Śrī Pundravardhanapura, and also as Pundranagara. According to the Rāmacaritam (Kaviśrāstī, v. 1), Śrī Pundravardhanapura seems to have been situated in Varendri, for it is there stated that Varendri was the foremost place of the east, and Pundravardhanapura was its ‘crest jewel’, or the most beautiful ornament.

Pundravardhana is also referred to in a picture label of a manuscript of the Pāla period now in the Cambridge University Library; and the name occurs in the Devī-bhāgavata, Pañcama, Maitrīya, Brahmandā and Mārkandeya Purāṇas, as well as in the Jñānārṇava Tantra. According to the Rājatarangini, Paundra-

---

1 For Pāla Inscriptions see Gañḍalakhamāḷā (in Bengali), Varendra Research Society.
2 Foucher, Iconographie Bouddhique de l’Inde, p. 190.
vardhana was the seat of government of Jayanta, a vassal chief of the kingdom of Gauḍa, when Jayāpīḍa, king of Kāśmir, is said to have visited it in the eighth century A.D.; but Jayanta is not recognised as historical by present-day scholars. Paundrabhukti, a shortened form of Pundra-vardhana-bhukti, is referred to in the Rāmpāl copperplate of Śrīcandrādeya, Belava copperplate of Bhojavarman, and Dhulla plate of Śrīcandra (for these records see Inscriptions of Bengal, Vol. III).

1 See Gauḍa chapter; Chronicles of the Kings of Kāśmir, pp. 93-4.
The Kirātas were a non-Aryan mountain tribe, possessing a rude culture. They are referred to in the *Mahābhārata* (XII, 207, 43) together with the Yaunas or Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Gāndhāras, and Barbaras, who all dwell in the northern region or Uttarāpatha; while the *Rāmāyaṇa* mentions them along with the Mlecchas, or 'barbarians', another non-Aryan tribe. That the Kirātas were outside the Aryan fold is evident from a passage in the *Śrīmad-bhāgavatam* (II, 4, 18) which states that the Kirātas along with the Hīnas, Andhras, Pulindas, Pulkasas, Ābhīras, Suhmas, Yavanas, Khasas, and other impure tribes purified themselves by offering their allegiance to Śrī-Kṛṣṇa. The Kirātas are mentioned in the *Viṣṇupurāṇa* (Wilson's Ed., II, pp. 156–90), in a long list of Indian peoples and countries, where they also seem to have been located in the northern region.

That the Kirātas were located in the Uttarāpatha seems also to have been attested to by Ptolemy who includes the Kirrhodai (or Kirrhodois) among the tribes of Sogdiana (present-day Soghd), which was divided from Baktriana by the river Oxus (see McCrindle, *Ancient India*, p. 277). Kirrhadia, the country of the Kirrhodai, is mentioned in the *Periplus of the Erythraean Sea* as lying west from the mouth of the Ganges. This reference seems to suggest that the Kirātas had settlements in the eastern region as well. Ptolemy's Kirrhodai or Airrhodai spread widely not only over Gangetic India, but also over countries farther east. The *Mahābhārata*, too, seems to point to a settlement of the Kirātas in Kāmarūpa; we are told that Bhagadatta, the powerful ruler of Prāgjyotīṣa (= Kāmarūpa), led a mighty Mleccha army of Kirātas and Cinas in the battle of Kurukṣetra. For further remarks on the location of the Kirātas or Kirrhodai, see Lassen’s *Indisches Alterthum*, Vol. III, pp. 235–7. L. Pliny and Megasthenes also mention the tribe under the name Skyrites. According to Megasthenes, they were a nomadic people ‘who instead of nostrils have merely orifices’. They were probably a flat-nosed people of primitive origin dwelling in forests and mountains and living by hunting.

Long assures us¹ that there is still a tradition in Tripurā, precisely where Ptolemy places his Kirrhadia, that the first name

---

of the country was Kirāt. The Kirātas had an influential settlement in Nepal, and a Kirāta dynasty of kings held the valley in sway in succession to the Ābhīras. Sylvain Levi has pointed out that the Nepalese usage still gives the name Kirāta to the country between the Dudh-kosi and the Arun, and that there is evidence that the Kirātas once occupied a much more extensive area in Nepal.¹

CHAPTER LVI

THE PRÄGYOTIŚAS

If the story of Kṛṣṇa’s fight with the demons Muru and Naraka, as told in the Viṣṇupurāṇa,¹ the Mahābhārata,² and the Harivamśa,³ can be interpreted as having an ethnological significance, then undoubtedly the Prāgyotīṣas were a people of non-Aryan extraction. The Epics definitely describe the country of Prāgyotīṣas as an Asura or Dānava kingdom ruled over by the demons, Naraka and Muru, with whom the leaders of Aryanism were in frequent conflict. The Pauranic description of Naraka, the Asura leader, attributes to him immense power and a strength that baffled and perplexed even Indra. The environs of his capital city called Prāgyotīṣapura were defended by nooses constructed by the demon Muru. Of course, the Aryan leader, Kṛṣṇa, is described as having got the better of the fight with the demons, which may be interpreted as one of the exploits in the history of the spread of Aryan influence in the east.

The Mahābhārata in other places⁴ refers to Prāgyotīṣa as a Mlecha kingdom ruled over by a king named Bhagadatta who is always spoken of in respectful and even eulogistic terms. Bhagadatta is styled a Yavana,⁵ probably denoting that he did not belong to the Aryan fold. The Udyogaparvan describes him as the son of Naraka, the Prāgyotīṣa king, and as an ally of Duryodhana.⁶ Among his retinues Bhagadatta counted the Cinas (the people of China),⁷ and if the Kālayavana of the Viṣṇupurāṇa refers to the same king, as Wilson seems to think,⁸ he also ‘assembled many myriads of Mlecchas and barbarians’ among his followers. The Mahābhārata mentions him as a king of boundless might (aparyantā-balā) ruling over (the country of) Muru and Naraka.⁹

---

¹ Wilson’s Ed., 5, XXIX, 88ff.
² Vana-parvan, XII, 488; Udyogaparvan, XLVII, 1887-92.
³ CXXI, 6791-9; CXXII, 6873, etc.
⁴ Sabhāparvan, XXV, 1000-1; ibid., I, 1834; Udyogaparvan, CLXVI, 5804; Karṇaparvan, V, 104-5.
⁵ Sabhāparvan, XII, 578-80; ibid., I, 1834-6.
⁶ Udyogaparvan, XVIII, 584-5.
⁷ Wilson’s Viṣṇupurāṇa, Bk. V, pp. 54-5.
⁸ Sabhāparvan, I, 578-9:

‘Muraṁ ca Narakasya caiva śasti yo Yavanādhipuḥ
aparyantābala-rājā pratīcyām Varuṇo yathā.
Bhagadatto maharaśa Vṛdhaśastavaputiḥ sakkha
sa vaca pranatastasya karmāṇa ca viśeṣatāḥ.’
According to the *Mahābhārata*, Prāgjyotisā was situated in the northern region of India\(^1\); but the *Markaṇḍeśa Purāṇa* places it in the eastern region, together with the Brahmottaras (or Suhmottaras), Pravijayas (perhaps Prāvrśeyas), Bhārgavas, Jñeyamallakas, Madras, Videhas, Tāmraliptakas, Mallas and Magadhas; or together with the Candreśvaras, Khāśas, Magadhas, and Lauhityas.\(^2\) The mountainous regions called Antar-giri, Vahir-giri, and Upa-giri in the *Mahābhārata*\(^3\) appear to comprise the lower slopes of the Himalayas and the Nepalese Terai; and it is not unlikely that the Prāgjyotisās lived contiguously, as Bhagadatta is called Śailālaya (‘one whose abode is in the mountains’).\(^4\) According to the *Abhidhanacintamani*, Prāgjyotisā was the same as Kāmarūpa,\(^5\) though in the *Raghuvaṃśa* the Prāgjyotisās and Kāmarūpas are described as different peoples. Generally speaking, the two countries came in later times to be regarded as one and the same. In the *Kālikāpurāṇa*,\(^6\) for example, the capital of Kāmarūpa is called Prāgjyotisapura, which has been identified with Kāmākhya or Gauhati. The *Raghuvaṃśa* seems to locate Prāgjyotisā beyond the Brahmaputra,\(^7\) but Kālidāsa’s knowledge of distant geographical locations is not always satisfactory. For all practical purposes, Prāgjyotisā may, therefore, be identified with the whole of Assam proper, along with Northern Bengal as far as Rungpur and Cooch Behar, which is the territory comprised by Kāmarūpa, according to the *Yoginītantra*.\(^8\)

King Bhagadatta, as we have seen, was a Mleccha, and his people also Mlechas or Yavanas, i.e. non-Aryans, but the *Rāmāyaṇa* ascribes the foundation of the kingdom to Amūrtarājas, one of the four great sons of King Kuśa—a significant Aryan name.

According to the *Brahmaṇḍapurāṇa* and the *Rāmāyaṇa*, there seems to have been another Prāgjyotisapura on the river Vetravati or Betwa.\(^9\)

The later kings of Kāmarūpa, who claimed to have been descended from the line of Narakāsura and Bhagadatta, figured prominently in Indian history. Most important of them was Kumāra Bhāskaravarmā, an ally of Harṣavardhana Śilāditya, and referred to both by Bāna (in his *Harṣacarita*) and by Hsüan Tsang, the celebrated Chinese pilgrim.

---

5. *Pragjyotisah Kamarupaḥ*, IV, 22. The name Kāmarūpa seems to have come into use later.
7. IV, 81.
King Prālamba of Kāmarūpa (c. 800–825 A.D.) is described in the Tezpur plates of his grandson as 'Prāgjyotiśeda', i.e. 'ruler of Prāgjyotiśa'. His grandson Vanamāla claims to belong to the line (anuvāya) of the lords of Prāgjyotiśa, and so also does Balavarman, another king of the same dynasty (c. 975 A.D.). During the earlier half of the eleventh century A.D., the capital city of Prāgjyotiśa seems to have attained great eminence under the kingship of Ratnapāla. In the Bargaon grant of this king, the city is referred to as impregnable, and rendered beautiful by the Lauhitya (= Brahmaputra river?).

The Kamauli grant of Vaidyadeva (c. 1100) refers to the Maṇdala of Kāmarūpa and the Viṣaya of Prāgjyotiśa, which implies that the latter was the larger administrative division, including Kāmarūpa.

Rājyamati, a daughter of King Harśavarman Prāgjyotiśa (according to the stray plate of King Harjara), is described as Bhagadattarājakulajā, i.e. born of the family of King Bhagadatta.

1 J.A.S.B., 1840, IX, 2, pp. 76ff.
2 Ibid., 1893, LXVII, pp. 115–8.
3 Ep. Ind., XII, pp. 37ff.
CHAPTER LVII

THE BULIS—THE KOLIYAS—THE MORIYAS—
THE BHAGGAS—THE KALĀMAS

We may group together a number of lesser tribes which are occasionally referred to in the Buddhist texts, particularly in the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta. They may be enumerated as follows:—

(1) The Bulis of Allakappa.
(2) The Koliyas of Devadaha and Rāmagāma.
(3) The Moriyas of Pipphalivana.
(4) The Bhaggas of Sunsumāra Hill.
(5) The Kalamas of Kesaputta.

These five clans or tribes are mere passing shadows in the early Buddhist records, there being scarcely any data for an historical account of them. The Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta mentions the Bulis of Allakappa, the Koliyas of Rāmagāma and the Moriyas of Pipphalivana, along with the Līchavis of Vesāli, the Śākyas of Kapilavatthu and others, as so many distinct clans or corporations, all of whom claimed shares of the bodily remains of the Buddha Gautama on the ground that, like the deceased master, they were of the Kṣatriya caste. The claimants are said to have obtained their respective shares of relics, which they enshrined with customary ceremonies. The Bulis of Allakappa and the Koliyas of Rāmagāma had the good fortune to obtain one share each of the bodily remains, while the Moriyas of Pipphalivana had to be satisfied with a share of the ashes, as they were rather late in sending their messenger to Kuśināra. One of their descendants (or at least a namesake of theirs)—a Moriya of Pātaliputra—was more fortunate.

The existing Buddhist traditions all agree on the fact of the redistribution of the relics of the Buddha (with the exception of those enshrined at Rāmagāma by the Koliyas) in the time of King Aśoka Moriya (Maurya).

The legend from the Aśokāvadāna, as summarised by the late Dr. Vincent Smith, is as follows: 'When King Aśoka desired to distribute the sacred relics of the body of Buddha among the eighty-four thousand stūpas erected by himself, he opened the stūpa of the Urn, wherein King Ajātaśatru had enshrined the

---

1 Rhys Davids, *Buddhist India*, p. 22.
cremation relics collected from seven of the eight original stūpas. The eighth, that at Rāmagāma, was defended by the guardian Nāgas, who would not allow it to be opened. The relics thus withdrawn from the stūpa of the Urn were distributed among eighty-four thousand stūpas, “resplendent as the autumn clouds” which were erected in a single day by the descendant of the Mauryas. A similar legend can be gathered from the Sinhalese chronicles and other late Pāli works, particularly Buddhaghosa’s commentary on the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta; while the epilogues attached to the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta and the Buddhavamsa indicate that the sacred relics of the Buddha’s body were, after their re-distribution, enshrined all over Northern India from Gandhāra to Kāliṅga.

The Mahāvamsa Commentary furnishes us with some interesting information about the origin of the Moriyas of Pipphalivana and their connection with the Maurya rulers of Magadhā. We are told that there are two theories about the derivation of the name Moriya. According to one theory, the name is derived from ‘modiya’, meaning pleasing or delightful; the Moriyas were a people who lived in a delightful laud. According to the other, the name is connected with ‘mora’, peacock, and the people came to be known as Moriyas from the fact that the place where they founded their city always resounded with the cries of peacocks. Further, the city which they founded had buildings of blue stone, like the neck of the peacock. It is said that the Moriyas were originally Śākyan princes of Kapilavatthu, who escaped to the Himalaya regions to save themselves from the attacks of Vidūḍabha, the ambitious and cruel usurper of the throne of Kośala, and established a city there, building it around a lake in a forest tract abounding in peepul trees.

When the Moriyas are introduced to us in the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta, they are contemporaries and powerful rivals of the Śākyas of Kapilavastu. Vidūḍabha’s invasion of Kapilavastu and the carnage committed upon its citizens took place, if the tradition is to be believed, shortly before the demise of the Buddha. There may be some truth in the suggestion that the Moriyas were in some way connected with the Śākyas of Kapilavastu, and with the advance of ethnological researches it may be found that the matri-

1 Vincent Smith, Asoha, 2nd Ed., pp. 251f.
4 Mahāvamsa Tīkā (Sinhalese edition), pp. 119ff.
monial alliance of the Śākyas with the neighouring hill peoples brought some new tribes into existence.

Moreover, the Mahāvamsa Commentary traces the origin of the Maurya rulers of Magadha to the Moriyas of Pipphalivana. According to this account, Candragupta, the founder of the Maurya dynasty, was born of the chief queen of the Moriyan king of Pipphalivana. This conflicts with the evidence of Visākhadatta’s Mudrārākṣasa, where Candragupta is represented as a Vṛṣala, a person of low birth, an illegitimate son of the last Nanda king by a Śūdra woman named Murā. How far Visākhadatta’s account represents the true state of things is a controversial point. But there are many instances of a misconception of history resulting from a conjectural etymology of personal and dynastic names. It appears, however, that the royal family of the Nandas was connected by matrimonial alliance with the Moriyas of Pipphalivana; and Asoka’s mother, Dhammā, was also a Moriyan princess.

As regards the Kālāmas of Kesaputta, our information is very meagre. There is a bare mention of them in the Nikāyas, but no doubt they existed at the time of the Buddha as a distinct tribe or clan. Their home was probably in a mountain fastness, not far from the upper Gangetic valley. The etymology of the name ‘Kesaputta’ indicates that the tribe traced its descent from the Keśins, a tribe connected with the Pañcālas.

Among members of the Kālāma clan specially mentioned by name are Bharandu-Kālāma, who was once a co-disciple of the Buddha (as Bodhisattva), and Āḷāra-Kālāma, a renowned religious teacher, who is mentioned frequently in the Mahāparinibbāṇa Suttanta and in other Buddhist texts, ancient and modern. One caravan merchant named Pukkusa, a young Mallian, was a disciple of Āḷāra-Kālāma. Pukkusa laid much emphasis on the spiritual attainments of Kālāma. He said that his preceptor’s ecstatic trance was so very deep and profound that a long train of heavily laden carts passed by him without his perceiving them. The Buddhist texts represent the Kālāmas as worshippers of the Buddha Gautama, who was a disciple of Āḷāra-Kālāma, before his enlightenment. The Buddha preached a famous sermon when on a visit to Kesaputta.

Little is known of the Bulis, apart from the fact that they claimed and obtained one-eighth share of the Buddha’s relics and

---

1 Act III, pp. 134-6, 141-3, etc.
2 Vamsaithāppahāsini (Mahāvamsa Tīkā), P.T.S., 189.
4 Dīgha Nikāya, II, pp. 130-1.
6 Aṅguttara Nikāya, I, 277 f.
7 Aṅguttara Nikāya, I, 188 f.
raised a stūpa over them in their city of Allakappa. Their territory was probably near Vethadipa, for the king of Allakappa is mentioned as being in intimate relationship with the king of Vethadipa.

The Koliyas were one of the republican clans in the time of the Buddha, and owned two chief settlements—one at Rāmagāma and the other at Devadāha. The commentaries contain accounts of the origin of the Koliyas. For instance, the Sumanāgalavilāsini states that the eldest of the five daughters of Okkāka contracted leprosy (kuttharoga). Her four brothers, being afraid of infection, took her to a forest and there confined her in an underground chamber. Rāma, king of Benares, contracted the same complaint at this time, entered the forest, and cured himself by eating wild fruits and leaves. Hearing the voice of a woman one night, he discovered the princess in her underground chamber. He cured her by means of the fruits and leaves which had cured him, and then married her. He built a town in the forest, removing a big Kola tree in order to do so. Inasmuch as the town was built on the site of the Kola tree, it came to be called Kolanagara, and the king's descendants were known as Koliyas.

We find a variant of the story in the Mahāvastu, which tells us that the daughter of a certain Śākya noble was attacked with leprosy. The physicians failed to cure her; sores appeared all over her body, and the people began to hate her. She was taken by her brothers in a palanquin to a spot close to the Himalayas. They dug out a subterranean room, and she was left there with plenty of food and water. They blocked up the entrance to the cave with planks, and put a large heap of dust in front of it, and then returned to Kapilavastu. After living in the stuffy room for some time, she resumed her former beauty, for the heat had cured her of leprosy. Now, not far from the cave lived a royal sage named Kola. While wandering about in the vicinity of his hermitage, Kola came to the cave where the Śākya girl lived, and saw a tiger scratching up the heap of dust with its feet. His curiosity was aroused; the sage drove away the tiger, removed the planks, and opened the door of the cave, revealing the Śākya girl. Seeing her exquisite beauty, the sage became very much attached to her, and took her along to his hermitage. Sixteen pairs of twin sons were born to the couple. When these sons were grown up, they were sent to Kapilavastu by their mother, who told them

---

1 Dīgha Nikāya, II, p. 167.  
2 Dhammapada Comm., I, 161.  
5 A variant of Rāma; Kola also is stated to have been a king of Benares.
that they would there he provided for by their uncles, who were Śākyas. She trained them in the manners of the Śākyas, and they were then allowed to set out. They saluted their parents and went to Kapilavastu. On arriving, the sons of the sage, surrounded by a vast crowd, went to the assembly hall of the Śākyas, where five hundred Śākyas were assembled and transacting business. They approached the assembly in the way their mother had taught them. The Śākya assembly was astounded to see the Śākya manners in them, and asked them whence they came. They answered as they had been instructed, ‘We are sons of Kola, the royal sage, who has his hermitage somewhere at the foot of the Himālayas. Our mother is the daughter of a certain Śākya.’ Hearing this, the Śākyas were pleased to learn that the youths were born of the royal sage, and not of some one of inferior rank. Recognising them as Śākyas, they said, ‘Let them he given Śākya girls and appointments.’ They were given Śākya brides, cultivable lands, and villages. As the princes were sons of the sage Kola, they were known as Koliyas.

It is stated in the Introduction to the Kunāla Jātaka ¹ that the Koliyas used to dwell in the Kola tree. Hence they came to be called ‘Koliyas’ or dwellers in Kola (jujube) trees. When the Śākyas wished to abuse the Koliyas, they said that the latter had once ‘lived like brute beasts in a hollow Kola tree’. The territories of the Śākyas and Koliyas were adjacent, being separated by the river Rohini. A bitter quarrel once arose between the two tribes regarding the right to the waters of the river which irrigated the land on both sides. Incensed by insulting remarks as to their respective origins, the two tribes got themselves ready for battle, and sallied forth at eventide. Now at this time, so the story goes, the Buddha came to the spot from Sāvatthi, and sat cross-legged in the air between the two hosts. The Śākyas recognised him and at once threw down their arms with the words, ‘Let the Koliyas slay us or roast us alive.’ The Koliyas, on seeing the Buddha, acted in the same way. The Lord instructed them, quelled the feud and brought about a reunion. In gratitude, each tribe dedicated some of its young men to the membership of the Order, and during the Buddha’s stay in the neighbourhood, he lived alternately in Kapilavastu and in Koliyanagara. ²

¹ Jātaka, Fausböll, V, p. 413.
² For details of the quarrel and its results, see Jātaka, V, 412ff.; Dhammapada Comm., III, 254ff.; Sumanāgalavilāsini, II, 672ff. A variant of the river-motif runs as follows: ‘When the female slaves of the Śākyas and Koliyas came to the river to fetch water, and throwing the coils of cloth that they carried on their heads upon the ground, were seated and pleasantly conversing, a certain woman
The *Mahāvastu* tells us that there was a Koliya prince who aspired to rival the Buddha in the art of arrow-shooting, but he, together with others, was defeated.\(^1\)

In the *Udāna* we read of Suppavāsā, daughter of the king of the Koliyas ("Koliyadhītā"), who was helped by the Buddha when she was suffering, and who, after a healthy son had been born to her, entertained the Buddha and Sāriputta at her house.\(^2\)

It is stated in the *Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta* that the inhabitants of Rāmagāma belonged to the serpent race.\(^3\) According to Cunningham,⁴ Rāmagāma (Rāmagrāma) is identical with Deokāli; some scholars hold that the Koliyas of Rāmagāma originally came from the same ethnic group as the Koliyas of Devadāha. There are no historical data for ascertaining the political relations of the Koliyas of Rāmagāma and the Śākyas.

Several other townships of the Koliyas, visited by the Buddha or by his disciples, are mentioned in literature; e.g. Uttarā, the residence of the headman Pāṭaliyā⁵; Sajjanela, residence of Suppavāsā⁶; Sāpūga, where Ānanda once stayed⁷; Kakkarapatta, where Dīghaṅjānu lived⁸; and Halddavasana, residence of the ascetics Puppa Koliyaputta and Seniya.⁹

The Bhaggas (or Skt. Bhargas) were a republican tribe of Northern India in the Buddha's time (sixth century B.C.). They are mentioned not only in Buddhist works, but also in Sanskrit works of the Brāhmaṇa and Epic periods. The earliest mention of the Bhargas is made in the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa* (VIII, 28) where reference is made to a Bhargāyana prince named Kairiśi Sutvan. They are also referred to by Pāṇini in his *Aṣṭādhyāyī* (IV, i, 178), where they are associated with the Yaudheyas ("na prācya Bhargāḍi Yaudheyādibhyah"). In the *Bhīsmaparvan* of the *Mahābhārata*, mention is made of the Bhargas along with other tribes, e.g. the Andhras, Kīratas, Kośalas, Gandhāras, Sauvīras, Sindhus, etc. In both the *Mahābhārata* proper¹⁰ and the *Harivamsa*,¹¹ the

took another's cloth, thinking that it was her own; and when owing to this a quarrel arose, each claiming the coil of cloth as hers, gradually the people of the two cities, the serfs and the labourers, the attendants, herdsmen, councillors and vīceroys, all of them sallied forth ready for battle.'

---

11. *Vatsabhāmiśca Kaunteyo vijigye haśavān balāt*
   *Bhargāṇāmadhipatiśva Niśadādhipatiṁ tathā.—Mbh.*, II, 30, 10, 11.
12. 29, 73.
Bhargas are associated with the Vatsas, as well as with the Niśādas (II, 30, 10-11). The Harivansha tradition describes the Bharga and the Vatsa as the two sons of Pratardana. Attention may also be drawn here to the mention of a people called 'Bhargavas' in the Purāṇas, e.g. in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa (IV, 43). The Bhargavas are also mentioned in the Bhīmaṇāpavān (IX, 358) where the Bhargas also find mention (cf. Pargiter, Mārki. P., pp. 310 note and 327-8, note). It is likely that the Bhaggas, Bhargas and Bhargavas are one and the same people.

The epic tradition of the close association of the Bhargas with the Vatsas is corroborated by the Buddhist tradition as recorded in the Jātaka. The Dhonasakha Jālaka (No. 353) states that Prince Bodhi, son of Udayana, king of the Vatsas, had his dwelling-place on the Sumsumāra Hill, where he built a palace called Kokanada. It seems that in Udayana's time (i.e. the sixth century B.C.), the Bhagga State was under the suzerainty of the Vatsa king.

The Bhagga of the Sumsumāra Hill are casually referred to in some suttas of the Majjhima and Sānyutta Nikāyas. There is no doubt that the Sumsumāra Hill, their capital, was used as a fort. It was situated in a deer park at Bhesakalavāna. In the lifetime of the Buddha, Prince Bodhi, son of Udena (Udayana), ruled over the Bhaggas, apparently as his father's Viceroy. He became a follower of the Buddha. When the Buddha was amongst the Bhaggas, the householder Nakulapitā came to him and asked for instruction, afterwards becoming one of the devotees of the Master at Bhesakalavāna. The Bhagga country lay between Vesālī and Sāvatthī. In the Apadāna, the Bhaggas are mentioned with the Kāritisas.

The social customs, religious beliefs, laws and administrative systems of these minor clans were in all likelihood the same as, or similar to, those of the more important tribes dealt with in other chapters.

3 Sānyutta Nikāya, Pt. III, pp. 1-5.
4 Malalasekera, Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names, s.v. Bhaggā. The Cambridge History of India (I, 175) says that the Bhaggas were members of the Vajjian confederacy.
5 II, 359. Other references to the clan are: Aṅguttara Nikāya, II, 61; IV, 85, etc.; Vinaya Piṭaka, II, 127; IV, 115, 108; V, 145; Theragatha ān. 1, 70. See also B. C. Law, Countries and Peoples of India (Epic and Pauranic sources), A.B.O.R.I., Vol. XVII, Pt. III, April, 1936.
CHAPTER LVIII

THE LICCHAVIS

Name and Origin

The Licchavis were a great and powerful people of Eastern India in the sixth century B.C. Their peculiar form of government, their free institutions, their manners and customs, their religious views and practices afford us glimpses of India of the transition period, when the ancient Vedic culture was developing in new directions, and undergoing a transformation under the influence of the speculative activity out of which emerged the two great religions of Jainism and Buddhism. Fortunately for us, Buddhist literature, and to a lesser extent the Jaina sacred books, have preserved for us facts and comments, which, though fragmentary, are yet sufficient to give us a living picture of this interesting people. From the account of their political institutions that can be gleaned from the Pāli Buddhist Canon, we obtain an insight into the democratic ideas of statecraft and government that prevailed among the majority of the Aryan clans that peopled Northern India before the imperialistic policy grew and developed.

In Indian literature we find the name of this people in slightly varying forms—Licchavi, Licchivi, Lecchavi, Lecchai and so on. Throughout the Pāli Canon, the name occurs in the form 'Licchavi'. In some of the Buddhist Sanskrit texts, e.g. the Divyāvadāna,¹ the name is found in this form, but in others, e.g. the Mahāvastu, the usual form is Lecchavi.² In the Chinese translations of the Buddhist sacred books, the name occurs in both forms, Licchavi and Lecchavi,³ as is to be expected, since these translations are based on the Buddhist Sanskrit texts. The Mahāvastu form Lecchavi answers very well to the Prakrit form Lecchai, which we find in another set of works claiming to be contemporaneous in origin with the Buddhist Canon, namely, the Jaina sacred literature which, according to some scholars, began to be composed perhaps by the direct disciples of Mahāvira in the first century after his death, or at the latest in the next century, by the time

of Candragupta Maurya, when the first Council of the Jains was held at Pataliputra.\(^1\)

In the Sūtrakṛta, one of the earliest works of the Jaina sacred literature, we meet with the name Lecchaś, and the same form occurs in the Kalpasūtra attributed to Bhadrabāhu, who is considered to have been a contemporary of Candragupta (c. 297 B.C., according to Rapson, Ancient India, p. 182). The Jain commentators equate the Prakrit Lecchaś with Sanskrit Lecchaki.\(^2\) In the form Lecchaki, however, the name never occurs in Sanskrit literature, in which the earliest mention of the tribe, so far as we have been able to ascertain, is in Kautilya’s Arthaśāstra, where they are called Licchivis. Here we read that the corporations of Licchivi, Vṛji, Malla, Madra, Kukura, Kuru, Pañcāla, and others were ‘rājaśabdopajīvināḥ’, i.e. enjoyed the status of rājas or kings.\(^3\) We next find the Licchavis mentioned in the Māhāvīṃśa Dharmaśāstra (X, 22). Here there are some variae lectiones; the anonymous Kashmirian comment on the text reads Lichavi which approximates very closely to the Buddhistic form. Medhatithi and Govindaraja, the two earliest commentators, read Licchivi, and this reading tallies exactly with the name as given by Kautilya; this form, therefore, represents the earliest spelling of the word in the Brahmanic Sanskrit literature. Kullūka Bhaṭṭa, the Bengali commentator, however, reads Nicchivi, and Rāghavānanda, another

---

4 See Kautilya’s Arthaśāstra, translated by R. Śāma Śāstrī, p. 455. The Sanskrit text has: ‘Licchivika-Vṛjikā-Malla-Madra-Kukura-Kuru-Pañcāla-dayo rājaśabdopajīvināḥ.’ The ‘ka’ at the end of Licchīvī, etc., is adjectival. It will be noted that Kautilya distinguishes the Licchivis from the Vṛjis. Regarding this H. Panday (‘Notes on the Vṛjī country and the Mallas of Pāvā’, J.B.O.R.S., Vol. VI, pt. II, June 1920, pp. 259 et seq.) says that it appears from the Pāli Suttas that the names Vajji and Licchavi are interchangeable to some extent. The accounts of Chinese pilgrims, however, point to a different conclusion. Fū-Hien calls the country of which Vaiśālī was the capital, ‘the kingdom of Vaiśālī’, and the people of the country, ‘Licchavis’. He does not mention Vṛji or Vajji. Hsiian Tsang describes Vaiśālī and Vṛjī as two distinct countries, and Watters is inclined to doubt the accuracy of his description of the Vṛjī country. Ray Chandhuri reconciles the evidence of the Pāli literature with that of Kautilya and Hsiian Tsang, saying: ‘Vajji was not only the name of the confederacy but also of one of the constituent clans. But the Vajjis like the Licchavis are sometimes associated with the city of Vesalī which was not only the capital of the Licchavi clan, but also the metropolis of the entire confederacy.’—(Political History of Ancient India, 4th Ed., p. 101.)
commentator, follows him in this as in other matters; and the ordinary printed editions of the *Manusamhitā* have generally adopted this reading.\(^1\) Both Jolly and Bühler have accepted the form Licchi, but Jolly cites two MSS. and five printed editions with the form 'Nicchivi'. Kullūka, who probably wrote in the fifteenth century, i.e. about 600 years later than Medhātithi, and about 300 years later than Govindarāja, was probably misled by the similarity of the letters 'N' and 'L' as they were written in Bengali in the fifteenth century, and as they are still written even in modern Bengali manuscripts.\(^2\)

The Sanskrit inscriptions of the early Gupta emperors favour the form 'Licchavi'. In the Allahabad Stone Pillar Inscription of Samudragupta, that monarch is described as 'Licchavānāhitra', 'the son of the daughter of the Licchavis',\(^3\) so we have here the same form as in the Pāli Buddhist works. The same form occurs in many other inscriptions of the Guptas, for example, in the Mathurā Stone Inscription of Candragupta II,\(^4\) the Bilsād Stone Pillar Inscription of Kumāra Gupta of the year 96\(^5\) and the Bihar Stone Pillar Inscription of Skandagupta.\(^6\) On the other hand, the variant Licchivi occurs in the Bhitari Stone Pillar Inscription of Skandagupta\(^7\) and the Gayā Copperplate Inscription of Samudragupta\(^8\) (which is considered to be spurious). Some coins of Candragupta I bear the name 'Licchavi'. Moreover, in the inscriptions of the Nepal kings, who claim to be descended from the family of the Licchavis, the expression used is always Licchavikula-keīu, 'the banner (or glory) of the Licchavi family'.\(^9\) We have seen that in the Chinese translations which are based on Sanskrit Buddhist texts, the form is Licchavi or Lecchavi; Fa-Hien speaks of them as Licchavis,\(^10\) while in Hsüan Tsang (Beal's *Records of the Western World*) the form is Li-ch'e p'o, which would correspond to the form Licchavi.\(^11\) The Tibetans, who began to have

---


\(^2\) R. D. Banerjee, *The Origin of the Bengali Script*, Cal. Univ., 1919, p. 82, pp. 108-9. It is clear, however, that the form Nicchivi is a very old reading, as it occurs in the Sinhalese *Aṭṭhakathā*, which forms the basis of Buddhaghosa's story.


\(^4\) Ibid., p. 27.  
\(^5\) Ibid., p. 43.  
\(^6\) Ibid., p. 50.

\(^7\) Ibid., p. 53.  
\(^8\) Ibid., p. 256.


\(^10\) Legge, *Fa-Hien*, pp. 71, 76.

the Buddhist books translated into their own language from the eighth century A.D., also have the form Licchavi.1

There is clear evidence in the Buddhist literature to show that the Licchavis belonged to the Aryan ruling caste—the Kṣatriya. In the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta the Buddha, the Licchavis claimed a share of the remnants of his body. They sent a messenger to the Mallas of Kuśinara, where he had died, saying: ‘The Exalted One was a Kṣatriya and so are we. We are worthy to receive a portion of the relics of the Exalted One.’ 2 Here we see that the claim of the Licchavis was based on the fact that they were Kṣatriyas or people of the same caste as the Buddha.

Moreover, we are told that a Licchavi named Mahāli says, ‘I am a Khattiya (Kṣatriya), so is the Buddha’ 3; while in the introduction to the Sīkāla Jātaka we read of a Licchavi girl, ‘the daughter of a Kṣatriya and high-born’. 4 Dr. Richard Fick in his work, The Social Organisation in North-East India in Buddha’s Time, is rather sceptical as to whether the word Kṣatriya as used in the Pāli texts has exactly the same connotation as in the ancient Brahmanical literature; but Professor Oldenberg observes 5 that there is no ground for this scepticism.

That the Licchavis were Kṣatriyas appears also from the Jaina sacred literature. Just as the Licchavis of Vaiśālī honoured the Buddha at his death by erecting a noble monument (stūpa) over their share of the remnants of his body, so they had, before this, done honour to the memory of Mahāvīra, the founder of Jainism. The Kalpasūtra narrates: ‘In that night in which the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra died... the eighteen confederate kings of Kāśi and Kośala, the nine Mallakis and nine Licchavis, on the day of new moon, instituted an illumination on the Poshadha, which was a fasting day....’ 6 The Jaina works further tell us, as Professor Jacobi points out, that these nine Licchavis were tributary to Cetaka, king of Vaiśālī and maternal uncle of Mahāvīra, 7 who was

1 Tibetan Dulva, quoted by Rockhill in his Life of the Buddha (pp. 97 et seq.); Tārānātha’s Geschichte des Buddhismus in Indien, translated into German by Anton Schiefner, pp. 9, 41, 146.
7 Jacobi, op. cit., note 1, p. 266.
a Jñātri Kṣatriya of the Kāśyapa gotra, as we read in the Kalpasūtra. There are reasons to believe that Mahāvīra was a native of a suburb of Vaiśāli. That the Licchavis were looked upon as persons of high pedigree appears from a passage in another Jaina work, the Sātrakṛtyāṅga, where we read of the ‘renowned gotra’ (family) of the Licchavis. The Licchavis were Kṣatriyas of the Vaśistha gotra, and were addressed as ‘Vaśisthas’ by the Buddha (Mahāvastu-Avadāna, ed. Senart, Vol. I, p. 283, and elsewhere) and by Maudgalayana, one of the pillars of the Buddhist Church (Rockhill, Life of the Buddha, pp. 97ff.). Further, the Jaina sacred works state that the Kṣatriyāṇī Trīṣālā, mother of Mahāvīra, and sister of Cēṭaka, one of the kings of Vaiśāli, belonged to the Vaśiṣṭha gotra.

In the Nepal Varṇāvali, the Licchavis are allotted to the Sūryavamsa or solar race of the Kṣatriyas. This is quite in agreement with the fact elicited from the Buddhist records that they were Vaśiṣṭhas by gotra, for we know from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa that the gotra or pravara (family) of a Kṣatriya is the same as that of his purohita or family priest. Sir R. G. Bhandarkar also points out that the gotra of a Brāhmaṇa ‘could be assumed for sacrificial purposes by a Kṣatriya, for, according to Āśvalāyana (Sr. S., XII, 15), the gotra and the ancestors of the Kṣatriyas invoked are those of their priests or chaplains, and the only Rṣi ancestors that all the Kṣatriyas have, are Mānava, Aila and Paurūravasa. The names of these do not distinguish one Kṣatriya family from another, and to answer the purposes of such a distinction, the gotra and ancestors of the priest are assumed’. The Vaśiṣṭha gotra was, therefore, the gotra of their family priest, and we know that the Vaśiṣṭhas were the family priests of the kings of the solar race, especially of the Iksvākus. In this connection it is interesting to note Prof. Jacobi’s observation: ‘According to the Jainas, the Licchavis and Mallakis were the chiefs of Kāśi and Kośala. They seem to have succeeded the Aikṣvākas who ruled there in the times

---

1 Kalpasūtra, pp. x-xii.
4 Indian Antiquary, Vol. XXXVII, p. 79.
5 Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, Ch. 34, Kānda 7, verse 25.
7 The kinship of Licchavis and Mallas is confirmed by the Mahāparinibbāna Suttana (Buddhist Suttas, S.B.E., Vol. XI, pp. 121-2), and the Sahasrito Sutta of the Dīgha Nikāya (Dialogues of the Buddha, Pt. III, p. 202), where the Mallas are likewise addressed as ‘Vāseṭṭhas’ (=Vaśiṣṭhas).
of the Rāmāyāna.' The Rāmāyāna tells us that the city of Vaiśāli was founded by Viśāla, a son of Ikṣvāku and the heavenly nymph Alamvuṣa, while the Viṣṇupurāṇa substitutes Trnaahindu, a later member of the Ikṣvāku family, as the father of the eponymous hero who founded the city. This shows that the ruling family of Vaiśāli was traditionally believed to have been descended from the Ikṣvākus.

The Licchavis were also associated with the Śākyas. We read in the Karma-Śatāka that Prabodha, king of the Vṛjīs, gave away his two daughters, Māyā and Mahāmāyā, as brides to Śuddhodana, son of Simhahanu, and father of the Buddha. Rockhill in his Life of the Buddha (derived from Tibetan works) speaks of a tradition, according to which the Śākyas and the Licchavis were branches of the same people.

We now come to the mythical account of the origin of the Licchavis, which can be gathered from Buddhaghosa's Paramatthajotikā on the Khuddapāṭha. It came to pass that the chief queen of the king of Benares was with child. When her time came, she was delivered, not of a child, but of a lump of flesh, 'of the colour of lac and of bandhu and jīvaka flowers'. Fearing the displeasure of the king if he should hear of this, the other queens put the lump of flesh into a casket marked with the royal seal and placed it on the flowing waters of the Ganges. However, a certain god, wishing to provide for its safety, wrote with a piece of cinnabar on a slip of gold the words 'The child of the chief queen of the King of Benares', tied it to the casket, and replaced it in the river. The casket was discovered by an ascetic, and taken by him to his hermitage, where he cared for the lump of flesh. After the lapse of some time, the lump broke up into two pieces of flesh, which gradually assumed shape, till finally one of them became a boy resplendent like gold, and the other a girl. Whatever entered the stomach of these two infants looked as if put into a vessel of precious transparent stone (manī), so that they seemed to have no skin (nicchavi). Others said: 'The two were attached to each other by their skin (linā-chavl) as if they had been sewn together'; so that these infants came to be designated 'Licchavis'. The ascetic, having to nurse these two children, had to enter the village in the early morning for alms and to return when the day was far advanced. Accordingly the neighbouring cowherds, seeing

2 Rāmāyāna, Bombay edition, Bāha Kāṇḍa, Chap. 47, verses 11-12.
his difficulty, offered to look after the children for him. The ascetic gladly agreed, and handed over the two children with these words: 'The children are possessed of great virtue and goodness, bring them up with great care and when they are grown up, marry them to each other; please the king and getting a piece of land, measure out a city, and instal the prince there.' But the children, when grown big, used to beat and kick the children of the cowherds. Then the parents of these other children would say, 'These children harass the others and trouble them, they are not to be kept, they must be abandoned (Vajjītabhā). ' Thenceforward that country measuring 300 yojanas is called Vajji. Then the cowherds securing the king's permission, obtained that country, and measuring out a town there, they anointed the boy king. After giving the girl in marriage to the boy, who was then sixteen years of age, the old king made it a rule that no bride was to be brought in from outside, nor any girl from within the settlement to be given away outside. Sixteen pairs of twins were born to the couple (a boy and a girl each time), and as these children were growing up, and there was no room in the city for their gardens, pleasure groves, residential houses and attendants, three walls were thrown up round the city at a distance of a quarter of a yojana from each other; as the city was thus again and again made larger (Visālikatā), it came to be called Vesālī. This is the history of Vesālī.

The Pūjāvaliya, a Ceylonese Buddhist work, gives the same account with slight variations. These stories are, of course, entirely mythical and must have grown up in recent times, there being no evidence in the sacred canon itself to corroborate any part of them.

The two derivations of the name Licchavi which are suggested by Buddhaghosa are entirely fanciful. Licchavi is the name of a race or tribe. The people must have acquired that name long before they came to our notice in the pages of the Buddhist or Jaina literature, or in the Arthaśāstra. Buddhaghosa's derivations must have been invented much later, when the Licchavis had acquired renown and power, and it was thought necessary to find some meaning for the word, which defies easy analysis. It should be observed that the two derivations suggested by Buddhaghosa are almost identical with those given in Chinese Buddhist works, indicating a common source.

It is clear that at the time the Buddha and Mahāvīra lived and preached, the Licchavis were recognised as Kṣatriyas with

1 Paramatthajotikā on the Khuddakapāṭha, ed. H. Smith, P.T.S., pp. 158-60.
whom the highest-born princes of eastern India considered it an honour to enter into matrimonial alliance. The powerful king Ajātaśatru was always designated 'Vedehiputto', the family name of his mother in the Pāli Buddhist Tripiṭaka. Even two centuries later, in the time of Candragupta Maurya, the Licchavis were of equal rank and position with the great Kṣatriya peoples of Northern India, viz. the Madras in the north-west, the Kuru-Paṇcālas in the central region, and the Mallas and others in the east—the tribes who were organised as corporations of warriors and lived upon their position as rājās, that is as owners of land deriving an income from their tenants.

At the time when the present code of Manu was composed, we find that the Licchavis were still looked upon as Kṣatriyas, though of the Vrātya variety.1 Regarding the Vrātyas, Manu says: 'Those (sons) whom the twice-born have by wives of equal caste, but who, not fulfilling their sacred duties, are excluded from the Śāvitrī, one must designate by the appellation Vrātyas.'2 Here 'not fulfilling their sacred duties' stands for 'avratāh', which means 'not being initiated at the proper time', on the authority of what Manu himself states in an earlier chapter, where he fixes the upper limits of the age before which the initiation of the twice-born castes must take place. After those periods, men of the three upper castes who had not received the sacrament become Vrātyas (outcastes) excluded from the Śāvitrī (initiation) and despised by the Aryans. Here Manu is in agreement with the earlier lawgivers, Gautama, Āpastamba, Vasistha and Baudhāyana.3 There is no question, then, that the Licchavis were pure Kṣatriyas by origin but were not very careful in obeying the regulations about initiation and perhaps similar other matters.4

From what we know of the religious history of the Licchavis as a people, it is natural to expect that they would depart from the strict observance of the Brahmanic regulations. We have seen that Mahāvīra, the founder of Jainism, was of their very kin, and we also know that he had many followers among the residents of Vaśāli, even among the highest officers. Then again, between the sixth century B.C. and 200 B.C., the earliest estimated date

---

1 Manu, X, 22; Bühler, Laws of Manu, p. 406.
2 Manu, X, 20; Bühler, Laws of Manu, pp. 405-6.
3 See Bühler, Laws of Manu, pp. 405-6, note 20; Gautama, XXI, 11; Āpa., I, 1, etc.; Vaś., XI, 74-9; Baudh., I, 16, 16.
4 For further information regarding the Vrātyas, see J. W. Hauer, Der Vrātya: Untersuchungen über die nichtbrahmanische Religion Aftindiens; and Haraprasad Sastri's Annual Address, J.A.S.B., 1921, No. 2 (Vol. XVII, New Series).
of the Manusamhita,¹ the Licchavis had won the good graces of the Buddha as well as of the followers of the religion he preached, as we shall see later. During this long interval, when the two great 'heretic' faiths flourished in their country, it is but natural to expect that the Licchavis were not over-particular about initiation and similar other ceremonies and practices that the regulations of the orthodox Brahmans required. Hence we can understand how Manu, the great Brahmin law-giver, came to refer to the Licchavis as Vratyas. To claim the authority of this passage of Manu in support of a theory of non-Aryan origin of the Licchavis is quite unwarranted.

The above discussion, we hope, will also explain what the lexicographers and the author of the Vaijayanti, following Manu, declare regarding the origin of the Licchavis, viz. that they were sons of a Kṣatriya Vṛatya and a Kṣatriyā.²

Before leaving the question of origin, we must refer to the two theories about the Tibetan and Persian affinities of the Licchavis, originated by the late Drs. V. A. Smith and Satis Ch. Vidyāhhūṣana respectively. Dr. Smith’s conclusion about the Tibetan affinity rests on the agreement that is observed between the Tibetans and the Licchavis in the custom of exposure of the dead and in judicial procedure. We shall discuss these two points separately.

The prevalence among the Licchavis of the practice of exposing the dead to be devoured by wild animals is vouched for by a passage in Beal’s Romantic Legend of Sākya Buddha,³ derived from Chinese sources. There we have a description of a visit paid by the Bodhisattva (future Buddha) to a cemetery at Vaiśālī, where the Rṣis are stated to have told him: ‘In that place the corpses of men are exposed to be devoured by the birds; and there also they collect and pile up the white bones of dead persons...; they burn corpses there also, and preserve the bones in heaps. They hang dead bodies also from the trees; there are others hurled there, such as have been slain or put to death by their relatives, dreading that they should come to life again; whilst others are left there upon the ground that they may return, if possible, to their former bodies.’ Dr. Smith argues that this passage ‘proves a belief that the ancient inhabitants of Vaiśālī disposed of their dead sometimes by exposure, sometimes by cremation, and sometimes by burial. The tradition is supported by the discoveries made at prehistoric cemeteries in

¹ According to Bühler, the Manusamhita was compiled at some time between 200 B.C. and 200 A.D. (Bühler, Manu, Introduction, p. cxvii).
² Monier Williams, Sanskrit-English Dictionary, 1899, p. 902; Vaijayanti, ed. Gustav Oppert, p. 76.
³ pp. 159-60.
other parts of India, which disclose very various methods of disposing of the dead.' He then concludes from the similarity between these customs of the disposal of the dead, and those of Tibet, that the Licchavis had Tibetan affinities. But we need not go to Tibet for these customs, inasmuch as they were prevalent among the Vedic Aryans from whom the Licchavis were descended. We read in the well-known funeral hymn of the Atharvaveda:\footnote{\textit{Indian Antiquary}, Vol. XXXII, 1903, p. 234.} 'They that are buried, and they that are scattered (vāp) away, they that are burned and they that are set up (uddhitā)—all those Fathers, O Agni, hring thou to eat the oblation.'\footnote{\textit{Atharva Samhitā}, trsl. W. D. Whitney, revised and ed. C. R. Lanman, Harvard Or. Series, Vol. VIII, p. 840.} Whitney, whose translation of the verse we have quoted here, observes on the expression \textit{Uddhitāḥ}, 'it evidently refers to exposure on something elevated, such as is practised by many people'.\footnote{\textit{Ibid.}, p. 847.} Whitney also refers to an analogous passage in \textit{Apastamba} (I, 87) which contains a further reference to the customs of burial and exposure on a raised platform.\footnote{With regard to this passage see also Zimmer, \textit{Altindisches Leben}, p. 402; and Macdonell and Keith, \textit{Vedic Index}, Vol. I, p. 8.} The Vedic literature shows that cremation was one of the methods of the disposal of the dead. Methods other than cremation were in vogue, it seems, in particular localities and among particular classes or peoples; and the custom of exposure of the dead was most probably brought into India by the Vedic Aryans, as we find the same custom among the closely allied Iranians. To seek for the origin of this ancient Aryan custom in Tibet is absolutely unwarranted. The other argument of Dr. Smith, that the ancient judicial procedure at Vaiśali as given in the \textit{Atthakathā} is substantially identical with the modern procedure at Lhasā as observed by the Bengali traveller in Tibet, the late Rai Bahadur Sarat Chunder Das, C.I.E., need not detain us very long. This procedure the Tibetans may well have imbibed along with Buddhism from the province of Tirhut, which was nearest to their frontiers, and which was inhabited by the descendants of the Licchavis of old.

Satis Chandra Vidyābhūsana held that the Licchavis were of Persian origin. His strongest argument is the verbal coincidence between Nisibis in the Persian Empire, and the word Nicchivi which occurs in \textit{Manu}. He continues: 'It appears to me very probable that while about 515 B.C., Darius, king of Persia, sent an expedition to India, or rather caused the Indus to be explored
from the land of the Pakhtu (Afghans) to its mouth, some of his Persian subjects in Nisibis (off Herat) immigrated to India, and having found the Punjab over-populated by the orthodox Brāhmaṇas, came down as far as Magadha (Bihar) which was at that time largely inhabited by Vṛāyas or outcaste people. This is absurd on the face of it. The Licchavis were already a flourishing people, long established in the Videha country, and had built up a splendid capital at Vaiśāli at the time of the Buddha’s death; and whether we take the date of this event to be 487 B.C., as the late V. A. Smith thought, or 544 B.C., the traditional date maintained by the Ceylonese Buddhist monks, it is absurd to identify the Licchavis with the followers or subjects of Darius who were exploring the Indus about 515 B.C.

It remains for us to refer to another theory about the foreign origin of the Licchavis, started by Beal, viz. that they were ‘Yue-chi’. It hardly requires to be refuted, as the Yue-chi came to India about the beginning of the Christian era, and the Licchavis were a highly civilised and prosperous people in the fifth and sixth centuries B.C. when the Ephthalites or White Huns had not started from their original home in the east.

Vaiśāli, the Capital of the Licchavis

Vaiśāli, ‘the large city’ par excellence, is renowned in Indian history as the capital of the Licchavi rājās and the headquarters of the powerful Vajjian confederacy. This great city is intimately associated with the early history of both Jainism and Buddhism.

Vaiśāli claims the founder of Jainism as its citizen. The Sūtrakṛtānga, a Jaina canonical work, says of Mahāvīra, the last Tirthaṅkara of the Jains: ‘Thus spoke the Arahat Jñāṭrputra, the revered, famous native of Vaiśāli, who possessed the highest knowledge and the highest faith.’ Mahāvīra is spoken of as Vesālie or Vaiśālika, i.e. a native of Vaiśāli. Moreover, Abhayadeva in his commentary on the Bhagavati (2, 1, 12, 2) explains Vaiśālika by Mahāvīra and speaks of Viśāla as Mahāvīrajanani or ‘the mother of Mahāvīra’. Besides, from a comparison of the

---

1 Indian Antiquary, Vol. XXXVII, 1908, p. 79.
2 The Life of Hiven-Tsiang by Beal, Intro, p. xxii.
3 Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, p. 40.
4 Jacobi, Jaina Sūtras, S.B.E., Pt. II, p. 261 (Sūtrakṛtānga, 1, 2, 3, 22).
5 Ibid., Pt. II, Lecture VI, 17, p. 27 (Uttarādhyayanasūtra).
7 Weber, Indische Studien, Band XVI, p. 263: ‘Auch Abhayadeva zu Bhag. 2, 1, 12, 2 erklärt Viçālā durch Mahāvīra, und zwar als Metronymicum (!); Viçālā Mahāvīrajanani.’
Buddhist and Jaina scriptures, it appears that Kuṇḍagrāma, the birthplace of Mahāvīra, was a suburb of Vaiśāli. As we have already seen, Mahāvīra’s mother Triśālā was a sister of Ceṭaka, one of the rājas of Vaiśāli. The Jaina Kalpasūtra speaks of the connection of Mahāvīra with the Videha country and its capital Vaiśāli. During his later ascetic life Mahāvīra did not neglect the city of his birth, and we are told that out of the 42 rainy seasons of this period of his life, he passed no less than 12 at Vaiśāli.

The connection of the Buddha with Vaiśāli is no less close. Many of his immortal discourses were delivered here either at the mango-grove of Aḥmapāli, on the outskirts of the city, or at Kūṭāgāraśālā in the Mahāvana, the great forest stretching out up to the Himalayas. The Buddha was charmed with the conduct of the Vajjis or Licchavis residing within the town, and looked upon them with kindness and approbation. The seven points of excellence, with which he characterised the Licchavis in answer to the queries put to him by the ministers sent by King Ajātaśatru of Magadha, are very well known.

One hundred years after the Buddha’s Nirvāṇa, Vaiśāli again drew to itself the care and attention of the Buddhist Church,—hut this time not on account of the many good qualities of character and powers of organisation of its citizens, but because of the secular tenets held by the Vaiśāli monks (Vajjiputtaka bhikkhus), who were not carrying out the Master’s precepts conscientiously. The second general council of the Buddhist Church, known as the Sattasatikā or the Convention of the 700, took place at Vaiśāli in order to suppress the heresies of these pleasure-seeking monks.

We have already referred to the fanciful accounts of Buddhaghosa, the Rāmāyaṇa and the Viṣṇupurāṇa regarding the origin of Vaiśāli. The Rāmāyaṇa further tells us that when Rāma and his brother Lākṣmana, guided by the sage Viśvāmitra, crossed the river Ganges on their way to Mithilā, they had a view of the city of Vaiśāli. It does not tell us that it was exactly on the bank of the river, but says that ‘while seated on the northern shore they saw the town.’ Then, the story goes on, the travellers went to the city of Vaiśāla which was an excellent town, ‘charming and

---

2 Ibid., Vol. I, p. 256, Kalpa Sūtra, paragraphs 110, 111.
3 Jacobi, Kalpasūtra, paragraph 122.
4 Dīgha Nikāya, II, 73f.; Aṅguttara Nikāya, IV, 15f.
6 Rāmāyaṇa (Bombay edition), Chap. 45, verse 9.
heavenly, in fact a veritable svarga'. Viśvāmitra here narrates a long mythological story to show the importance of the locality. He goes on to say that the Ikṣvāku prince then ruling over the country was named Sumati, and adds that, by favour of Ikṣvāku, the father of the eponymous founder of the city and ancestor of the ruling dynasty, all the kings of Vaiśālī (sarve Vaiśālikā nṛpāh) were long lived, high souled, possessed of strength and power and highly virtuous.

From all these mythical stories, it is apparent that the name of the city had something to do with the word visāla or 'extensive', and from what we read of the description of the ruins that Hsüan Tsang saw in the seventh century A.D., there can be no doubt of its wide extent. The Chinese traveller relates, 'The foundations of the old city Vaiśālī were sixty or seventy li in circuit, and the "palace city" (i.e. the walled part of the city) was four and five li in circuit.' This would mean an area of about twenty miles in circumference for the outer town; and the "palace city" perhaps represents the earliest of the three cities which, according to Buddhaghosa, were built to accommodate the Licchavis as they rapidly increased in numbers; but its area would not in that case agree with the statement that each of the three walls was at a distance of a gāvula (gavyuti) or a quarter yojana, that is roughly a league from the other.

Buddhaghosa's description is also supported by the Atthakathā to the Ekapanna Jātaka, where we are told, 'At the time of the Buddha, the city of Vesāli was encompassed by three walls at a distance of a gāvula from one another, and at three places there were gates with watch-towers and buildings.' The three walls are also referred to in the Atthakathā to the Lomahamsa Jātaka.

The Tibetan Dulva (iii, f. 8o) gives the following description: 'There were three districts in Vaiśālī. In the first district were seven thousand houses with golden towers, in the middle district were fourteen thousand houses with silver towers, and in the last district were twenty-one thousand houses with copper towers; in these lived the upper, the middle and the lower classes according to their positions.'

---

1 Rāmdāyana (Bombay edition), Chap. 45, verses 10 and 11.
2 Ibid., Chap. 47, verse 18. Whether nṛpāh can here be taken to mean the oligarchy of rājās referred to elsewhere is uncertain.
4 Jātaka (Fausboll), Vol. I, p. 504. 'Vesālinagaram gāvula gautantare viha pākārehi pariṣṭhitam tassu thānesu gopuraśālokaśayutām.'
6 Rockhill, Life of the Buddha, p. 62.
Hoernle in his English translation of the Jaina work, Uvāsagadasāo, advances the suggestion that the three districts referred to in the Dulva and in the Aṭṭakathā, 'may very well have been Vesāli proper, Kuṇḍapura and Vāniyagāma occupying respectively the south-eastern, north-eastern and western portions of the area of the total city. Beyond Kuṇḍapura, in a further north-easterly direction lay the suburb (or 'station', sannivesa) of Kollāga which appears to have been principally inhabited by the Kuśatryas of the Nāya (or Jñātra) clan, to which Mahāvīra himself belonged; for it is described as the Nāya-kula'.

He further observes that the phrases used in the Ayārāṅga-sūtra like 'Uttara-Khattiya-Kuṇḍapura-sannivesa or dahiṇa-māhana-Kuṇḍapura-sannivesa', 'do not mean the northern Kuśatrya (resp. Southern Brahmanical) part of the place Kuṇḍapura, but the Northern Kuśatrya, etc., suburb of Kuṇḍapura, i.e. that suburb (sannivesa) of the city of Kuṇḍapura, which lay towards the north and was inhabited by the (Nāya clan of) Kuśatryas; it was distinguished from the southern suburb of the same city (Kuṇḍapura or Vesāli) which was inhabited by the Brahmans. This interpretation is confirmed by the parallel phrases in Kap. §22 (et passim), Khattiya-Kuṇḍagāme Nayare and Mahana-Kuṇḍagāme Nayare, which are rightly translated as the Kuśatrya (resp. the Brahmanical) part of the town Kuṇḍagāma'.

He also points out that 'the phrase ucca-nīya majjhimaṁ kulāṁ, "upper, lower and middle classes", applied to the town of Vāniyagāma in sections 77, 78 (of the Uvāsagadasāo) curiously agrees with the description of Vesāli given in the Dulva'.

The Buddha must have paid many visits to the Licchavi capital, and reports of at least two besides that already referred to are preserved in Buddhist books. The earliest of his visits is described at length in the Mahāvastu. We are told there, how the people of Vaiśāli were troubled by a frightful pestilence which was laying their country waste, and how all their efforts to stay the plague proved fruitless. In their distress they sent for various well-known holy men, but these failed to afford them any relief. As a last resort the people of Vaiśāli sent a deputation headed by Tomara, a Licchavi chief, to Rājagrha to bring the Buddha to their city. King Bimbisāra himself secured the Buddha’s consent to help the Licchavis, and insisted on accompanying him to the boundaries of his territory.

---

2 Ibid., Vol. II, p. 5.
To impress the Licchavis with an idea of his power and wealth, the king of Magadha had the road from Rājagṛha to the Ganges, which formed the boundary between the two dominions, levelled, cleaned, decorated, and sprinkled with flowers; while the smoke of rich incense perfumed its whole length. He himself followed the Buddha, with his whole court and numerous retinue. The Licchavis, both the Abhyantara-Vaiśālakas, those living within the walls of the city, and the Bāhira-Vaiśālakas, the people living in the suburbs and surrounding, came in all their splendour and magnificence, in dazzling garments of all colours. Even the Buddha was impressed by their appearance, and compared them to the Tavatimsa gods. The Licchavis decorated the road from the Ganges to Vaiśāli with a magnificence that far outdid the preparations made by the Magadhan king, and they provided for the comfort of the Buddha and the congregation of monks on a still more lavish scale. As soon as the Buddha crossed over to the northern side of the river and stepped on Licchavi soil, all malign influences that had hung over the country vanished, and the sick and the suffering were restored to health. The Buddha did not wish to live in the city or its suburbs, but he accepted the invitation\(^1\) of Bhagavati Gosrīgī to live in the Mahāvana, the great forest extending from the city far away to the north.

The Licchavis built the Kuṭāgārasālā monastery for the Buddha in the forest, and offered it to him and to the Buddhist congregation; and the Buddha permitted the bhikkhus to reside there. One day the Licchavis on coming to the Mahāvana learnt that the Buddha had repaired to the Cāpāla-Caitya to spend the day; thereupon they presented it to him and to the congregation of monks. Similarly, finding the Buddha spending the day at the Saptāmra-Caitya, Bahuputra-Caitya, Gautama-Caitya, Kapinahya-Caitya and Markatāhrada-tīra-Caitya respectively, the Licchavis made a gift of all these places of worship to him and to the Buddhist Church. Even the courtesan Amrāpāli made a gift of her extensive mango-grove to the congregation; and similarly Bālikā made over Bālikāchavi,\(^2\) which is evidently the same as the Bālikārāma of the Pāli Buddhist books.\(^3\) On this visit to their city, the Buddha delivered many discourses to the people of Vaiśāli, and established the Buddhist faith on a strong foundation at the capital of the Licchavis.

We read in the Vinaya (Mahāvagga and Cullavagga) and other Pāli texts of the Buddha’s visits to the Kuṭāgārasālā and other

---

\(^2\) Ibid., Vol. I, p. 300.  
\(^3\) Vinaya Texts, S.B.E., Pt. III, p. 408.
retreats. On one such occasion the Buddha taught his monks many matters connected with the sort of houses they were to build and dwell in; and he also ordered the Samgha to excommunicate Vaddha, a Licchavi, who had brought a false charge against one of the brotherhood; but afterwards relented on Vaddha's making due reparations.¹

In accounts in the Buddhist books, whether Pāli or Sanskrit, Vaisālī is represented as a rich and prosperous town.² For example, in the Lalitavistara we are told that some of the gods of the Tuṣita heaven, in advancing the claims of Vaisālī for the honour of being the Buddha's birthplace, said, 'This great city of Vaisālī is prosperous and proud, happy and rich with abundant food, charming and delightful, crowded with many and various peoples, adorned with buildings of every description, with storeyed mansions, buildings with towers, and palaces, with noble gateways and charming with beds of flowers in her numerous gardens and groves. This city, resembling the city of the gods, is indeed fit for the birth of the Bodhisattva.'³

We next come to the accounts of the city left by the Chinese travellers. Fa-Hien, who visited Vaisālī at the beginning of the fifth century A.D., i.e. about a thousand years after the Buddha's time, says,⁴ 'North of the city is a large forest, having in it the double-galleried vihāra where Buddha dwelt, and the tope over half the body of Ananda.' The double-galleried vihāra is evidently the Kūṭa-gārasalā in the Mahāvāna or 'great forest', which stretched right up to the Himalayas as Buddhaghosa explains in his Sumanāgalavilāsini to the Mahālī Sutta in the Dīgha Nikāya.⁵ With regard to the Kūṭa-gārasalā Buddhaghosa says: 'In that forest (i.e. Mahāvāna) was established a saṅghārāma (monastery). A pāsāda (storeyed building) was built on pillars and putting a pinnacle above, it was made into a kūṭa-gārasalā resembling a chariot of the gods (devavimāna). From it, the whole saṅghārāma is known as Kūṭa-gārasalā.'⁶ This agrees with Fa-Hien's description of the double-galleried vihāra. The upper storey was evidently built

---

⁴ Legge, Fa-Hien, p. 72.
upon a large number of pillars instead of walls, and on the top there was a *kūṭa* or peak, so that there were two galleries, one below and the other above, and from the upper storey rose a pinnacle, as we see in the *vimānas* or *rathas* referred to by Buddhaghosa. Hsüan Tsang, who visited the city more than 200 years after Fa-Hien, found this great vihāra in ruins. He adds, "To the east of the tope of the Jātaka narrative was a wonder-working tope on the old foundations of the "two-storey Preaching Hall", ¹ in which Ju-lai delivered the P'u-men-t'o-lo-ni and other sūtras. Close to the remains of the Preaching Hall was the tope which contained the half-body relics of Ānanda." ² The story of the *parinirvāṇa* of Ānanda and the division of the remnants of the body has been told by Fa-Hien, and the same account is also given in the Tibetan works.³

Hsüan Tsang's account of the country of which Vaisāli was the capital agrees pretty well with the tradition of its prosperity preserved in the Buddhist books. The Vaisāli country is described by the pilgrim as being above five thousand li in circuit, a very fertile region abounding in mangoes, plantains and other fruits. The people were honest, fond of good works, lovers of learning, and both orthodox and heterodox in faith.⁴

In the Tibetan works, a similar account is given of the prosperity and opulence of Vaisāli, which is invariably described in the *Dulva* as a kind of earthly paradise, with its handsome buildings, its parks and gardens, singing birds and continual festivities.⁵ The Romantic Legend of Sākya Buddha,⁶ translated by Beal from Chinese sources, gives an account similar to that in the *Lalita-vistara*.

The identification of Vaisāli, the capital of the Licchavis, has been much discussed by scholars. General Cunningham identified the present village of Basārh in the Muzafferpur district in Tirhut as marking the spot where Vaisāli stood in ancient days,⁷ and M. Vivien de Saint Martin agreed with him. Dr. W. Hoey sought, though on very insufficient evidence, to establish the identity of Vaisāli with a place called Cherānd, situated on the northern hank of the Ganges about 7 miles south-east from Chāprā.⁸ This identification was proved to be untenable by V. A. Smith,⁹ who succeeded

---

¹ Evidently the Kutāgāra Hall.
³ Legge, *Fa-Hien*, pp. 75-77.
⁶ P. 28.
⁹ V. A. Smith, *J.R.A.S.*, 1902, p. 267, n. 3.
in confirming Cunningham's identification. The identity of Vaiśālī and Basārā was proved still more decisively by the archaeological explorations carried out on the site in 1903-4 by T. Bloch. Bloch excavated a mound called Rājā Viṣāl kā garh. Three distinct strata were found, the uppermost belonging to the period of Mahomedan occupation of the place, the second, at a depth of about five feet from the surface, related to the epoch of the Imperial Guptas, and the third, at a still greater depth, belonging to an ancient period of which no definite date could be obtained. The finds in the second stratum, however, were of great value, especially a hoard of 700 clay seals evidently used as attachment to letters or other literary documents.

The names of certain Gupta kings, queens and princes on some of these seals, coupled with palæographic evidence, clearly demonstrate that they belonged to the fourth and fifth centuries A.D. Some of the impressions show that the name Tirabhukti (the original form of Tirhut) was applied to the province even in these early times, and some show the name of the town itself, Vaiśālī. These things go to prove the identity of the site with Vaiśālī, and there seems to be no ground to question this conclusion any longer. But it must be noted that the results so far obtained by excavation are very meagre.

Manners and Customs

We have already seen that the Licchavis were included in the great Vajjian confederacy. But sometimes Vajji (Skt. Viṣi) and Licchavi were used indiscriminately as synonyms. At the time the Buddha lived, 'the Vajjis were divided into several clans such as the Licchavis, the Vaidehis, the Tirabhukti and so on, and the exact number of those clans would appear to have been eight, as criminals were arraigned before the Āṭṭhakulakā or eight clans, which would appear to have been a jury composed of one member from each of the separate divisions of the tribe'.

All these Vajjis lived in great amity and concord, and this unity coupled with their martial instincts and the efficiency of their martial institutions made them great and powerful amongst the nations of North-Eastern India. Their sympathy for one another was exemplary. If one Licchavi fell ill, the other Licchavis came to see him. The whole clan would join in any auspicious

---

2 Ibid., p. 74.
3 Ibid., p. 110.
4 Ibid., p. 110.
5 Cunningham, Ancient Geography of India, p. 447.
ceremony performed in the house of one of their number; if any
foreigner of rank and power paid a visit to the Licchavi capital,
they would all go out in a body to receive him and do him honour.

The young Licchavis were handsome in appearance and fond
of brilliant colours in their dress and equipages. We have already
seen how their splendour impressed the Buddha when he first met
them. We have a detailed account of the attire of the Licchavi
nobles in the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta, which describes how the
Licchavi nobles went out for the last time to meet the Buddha.
Apparently the Licchavis suited the colour of their clothes and
ornaments to the tint of their complexions, and dressed themselves in
dark blue (nila), yellow (piṭa), red (lohiya), or white (odīla) accordingly.
Exactly the same description of the colours favoured by the
Licchavis is given in the Aṅguttara Nikāya, which shows that they
wore these colours not only on festive occasions but in their ordinary
daily life also. Once while the Buddha was staying at the Kūṭā-
gāraśāla in the Mahāvana, five hundred of the Licchavis were
seated around him. Some of them were nila or blue all over in
clothes and ornaments, and similarly others were yellow, red or
white. We may compare these descriptions with the more detailed
account in the Mahāvāstu of the colours favoured by the Licchavis:
'There are Licchavis with blue horses, blue chariots, blue reins and
whips, blue sticks, blue clothes, blue ornaments, blue turbans,
blue umbrellas and with blue swords, blue jewels, blue footwears
and blue everything befitting their youth.' In the same terms
the Mahāvāstu speaks of the Licchavis decked all in yellow (piṭa)
and in light red, the colour of the Bengal mādār (maṇjīṣṭha), in
red (lohiya), in white (śveta), in green (harīta), and some in varie-
gated colours (vyāyukta).

Perhaps the Licchavis were divided into separate septs as
Senart suggested, distinguished by the colour worn by each; otherwise it is difficult to explain why the same colours should be
preferred for the trappings of the horses and decorations of their
carriages, as well as the articles of dress adorning their own persons.
There was moreover a profusion of gold and jewels in everything
in their equipage—carriages drawn by horses, gold-bedecked
elephants, palanquins of gold set with all kinds of precious stones.

1 Sumanāgalavāsini (P.T.S.), II, pp. 517-8.
4 Aṅguttara Nikāya, P.T.S., Pt. III, p. 239.
6 We have here followed the interpretation, suggested by Senart, of Vyāyukta
(Le Mahāvāstu, note, p. 574); this meaning, however, is very doubtful.
All this bespeaks a prosperous people, and it might be expected that they would be given to luxury and indolence. But this was not their character at the time when the Buddha lived and preached among them. The Samyutta Nikāya preserves this saying, which is attributed to the Buddha: ‘Look ye Bhikkhus here, how these Licchavis live sleeping with logs of wood as pillows, strenuous and diligent (appamatā), zealous and active (ūtāpino) in archery. Ajatasattu Vedehiputto, the Magadhan king, can find no defect in them, nor can he discover any cause of action (against them). Should the Licchavis, O Bhikkhus, in the time to come, be very delicate, tender and soft in their arms and legs, should they sleep in ease and comfort on cushions of the finest cotton until the sun is up in the heavens, then the Magadhan king, Ajatasattu Vedehiputto, will find defects and will discover cause of action.’ ¹ This testimony of the Buddha goes to show that the Licchavis were hardy and active, ardent and strenuous in their military training.

The Licchavis used to kill animals on the 8th, 14th and 15th day of the lunar months and eat their flesh.²

They were fond of many pastimes such as elephant training and hunting. Among the Psalms of the Brethren (Theragāthā), we find one composed by Vajjiputtaka, the son of a Licchavirāja at Vaiśāli, who, in his early life, was engaged in training elephants.³

The Aṅguttara Nikāya narrates how a large number of Licchavi youths, armed with bows, ready with strings, set and surrounded by a pack of hounds, were roving about in the Mahāvana, but finding the Buddha seated at the foot of a tree in the forest, threw away their bows and arrows and sending away the pack of hounds sat by the Great Teacher, subdued by his presence. A Licchavi of advanced years, named Mahānāma, who came to pay his respects to the Buddha, expressed his great wonder at the sight of the Licchavi youths, full of life and vivacity, notorious for their insolent and wanton conduct in the city, thus sitting silent and demure, in an attitude of reverence before the Great Teacher. ‘The Licchavi youths, O Lord!’ he goes on, ‘are rude and rough and whatever presents are sent to the families, sugarcane or plums, cakes, sweetmeats or preparations of sugar, these they plunder and eat up, throw dust at the ladies of respectable families and girls of good families; such young men are now all silent and demure, are doing obeisance with joined palms to yourself, O Lord.’ ⁴

¹ Samyutta Nikāya (P.T.S.), Pt. II, pp. 267-8.
² Divyavadāna (Cowell and Neil), p. r36.
³ Psalms of the Brethren, Mrs. Rhys Davids, p. 106; Theragāthā, V, 119.
⁴ Aṅguttara Nikāya (P.T.S.), Pt. III, p. 76.
'In the Buddha's time, the young Licchavis of the City', says Watters, 'were a free, wild, set, very handsome and full of life, and Buddha compared them to the gods in Indra's heaven. They dressed well, were good archers, and drove fast carriages, but they were wanton, insolent and utterly irreligious.'¹ This is an exaggeration and is probably based on the Chinese translations of such passages as the one in the Lalitavistara, where some of the Tusița gods point out the defects in the character of the Vaiśālians when their city was recommended by others among them as a suitable place of birth for the Bodhisattva.² Whatever might have been the opinions of these 'sons of heaven' before the birth of the Buddha, they must later have changed their opinions about the people of Vaiśāli, who showed such remarkable veneration towards the Buddha and received such marked favour from him. We may, however, assume that the Licchavis were rather independent in character and would not easily accept a subordinate position to any one, whether in politics, religion, or ordinary daily life.

Then again the statement that the Licchavis did not respect their elders or were irreligious, is in direct contradiction to what the Buddha said about their regard for elders to Vassakāra, the Magadhan minister.³

The Licchavi youths went to distant countries for their education. We read of a Licchavi named Mahāli who went to Taxila to learn šilpa or arts. It is said that he in his turn trained as many as 500 Licchavis who also, when educated, took up the same task and in this way education spread far and wide among the Licchavis.⁴

Nor were the fine arts neglected. Artisans such as tailors, goldsmiths and jewellers must have been much in demand in the city of Vaiśāli to furnish the gay robes of the 'seven thousand seven hundred and seven' rājās or nobles. The art of architecture also was much developed in Vaiśāli; the magnificent palaces of the Licchavis are spoken of in the Lalitavistara.⁵ They were equally enthusiastic in the building of temples, shrines, and monasteries for the Bhikkhus; and we are told that the Bhikkhus themselves superintended the construction of these buildings for the Order. The Licchavis of Vaiśāli built many caityas or shrines inside and outside their great city, and we have already seen with what great

---

³ Dialogues of the Buddha, Pt. II, p. 80.
⁴ Fausböll, Dhammapada (old ed.), p. 211.
⁵ Chap. 3, p. 23 (Bibl. Indica Series).
liberality they gave the best among them to the Buddha and the Buddhist Church. That these caityas were beautiful and fine buildings, where people might wish to dwell indefinitely, was the expressed opinion of the Buddha, as we see from a passage in the Dīgha Nīkāya.  

About the marriage rites of the Licchavis, it is said in the Tibetan books that there were rules restricting the marriage of all girls born in Vaiśāli to that city alone. They state, 'The people of Vaiśāli had made a law that a daughter born in the first district could marry only in the first district, not in the second or third; that one born in the middle district could marry only in the first and second; but that one born in the last district could marry in any of the three; moreover, that no marriage was to be contracted outside Vaiśāli.'  

Certain passages in the Bhikkhuni Vibhaṅga Saṅghādīdesa indicate that a Licchavi could ask the Licchavī-gāna or corporation of Licchavis to select a suitable bride for him, or to try a case of adultery. The punishment for a woman who broke her marriage vow was very severe; the husband could even kill her with impunity. But an adulterous woman could save herself from punishment by entering the congregation of nuns. The Licchavis appear to have had a high idea of female chastity; violation of chastity was a serious offence amongst them. The Buddha says that 'no women or girls belonging to their clans are detained among them by force or abduction'. The Petavatthu Aṭṭhakathā gives the story of a Licchavi rāja named Ambasakkhara who was enamoured of a married woman, whose husband he engaged as an officer under him; but he was foiled in his attempts to gain her love.  

The Licchavis observed various festivals, of which the Sabba-rattivāro or Sabbaratticāro was the most important. At this festival, songs were sung, and drums and other musical instruments were used. When a festival took place at Vaiśāli, all the people used to enjoy it, and there were dancing, singing and recitations.  

---

2 Rockhill, Life of the Buddha, p. 62.  
4 Ibid., p. 225.  
8 Theragāthā Commentary, v. 62; Psalms of the Brethren, p. 63.
Views and Practices

All our information about the views and practices of the Licchavis is derived from Buddhist books, and to a smaller extent from Jaina works. From these we learn that the Licchavis, though vigorous, martial, and highly prosperous, were at the same time of a strongly religious bent of mind. Both Jainism and Buddhism found many followers among them. Even before the advent of the two new forms of religion, the Licchavis, or to call them by their wider designation, the Vajjis, appear to have been imbued with a strong religious spirit. The Vajjis appear to have had numerous shrines in their town as well as in the country. Even after Jainism and Buddhism had obtained a strong hold on the Licchavis of Vaisāli, the great body of the people of the Vajji country as well as of the capital remained staunch followers of their ancient faith, the principal feature of which was Cātīya worship, although they had due respect for the Jaina or Buddhist sages who wandered over their country preaching the message delivered by their respective teachers. The Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta tells us what the Buddha told Vassakāra, the prime minister (mahāmātra) of Magadha, when the latter was sent by Ajātaśatru to learn from the Buddha what he would predict with regard to the king’s daring plan of exterminating the Vajjis. The Buddha said: ‘So long as the Vajjians honour and esteem and revere and respect and support the Vajjian shrines in town or country, and allow not the proper offerings and rites, as formerly given and performed, to fall into desuetude, so long as the rightful protection, defence and support shall be fully provided for the Arahants among them... so long may the Vajjians be expected not to decline but to prosper.’

This was said by the Buddha on the eve of his last departure for Vaisāli. Buddhaghosa in his commentary, the Sumaṅgalavilāsini, also informs us that the Licchavis observed their old religious rites.

We must here bear in mind the fact that Buddhism at the early stage of which we are speaking was a form of faith for ascetics only, not a religious creed for all people. The Buddhists at this period formed only one of the numerous ascetic sects of Northern India; thus there was nothing unusual in the fact that many of the

1 The word in the text is 'Cātīya'. T. W. Rhys Davids’ translation seems to be too exclusive for, as Kern points out, the name Cātīya was applied not only to shrines, but also to sacred trees, memorial stones, holy spots, images, religious inscriptions (Manual of Indian Buddhism, p. 91. See also B. C. Law, Geography of Early Buddhism, pp. 79-80).


3 Sumaṅgalavilāsini (P.T.S.), II, pp. 517-8.
Licchavis who were householders and had not accepted the life of Bhikkhus should remain firm followers of their former faith.

From the meagre mention of the Caityas of the Licchavis in the Buddhist books, it is not easy to determine what the principal objects of their worship were; but there is nothing to show that the religious beliefs of the Licchavis were in any way different from the form of faith which obtained in other parts of Northern India. The Vedic religion was still in full vigour in N.E. India, as the references to Vedic sacrifices in the Buddhist books show. We should bear in mind that the country of the Vajjis was the sacred land of Videha, where the great Samrāt Janaka had exercised his sway, and where Yājñavalkya preached the White Yajurveda.

The Caityas mentioned in the Mahāvastu are the Cāpāla, Saptāmraka, Bahuputra, Gautama, Kapinahya, and Markatahradatīra. In the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta, we find the following names of Caityas as mentioned by the Buddha: Gotamaka (= Gautama), Sattambaka (= Saptāmraka), Bahuputtaka (= Bahuputra or Bahuputracca), Sārandada, and Cāpāla. The Pāṭika Suttanta seems to indicate that Vaiśāli was bounded by four shrines: Udena (Udayana) on the east, Gotamaka on the south, Sattambha on the west, and Bahuputta on the north.¹

A passage in the Divyavadāna also gives a list of the Caityas in almost the same words as the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta; there also the Buddha is represented as speaking of the beauties of the Caityas called Cāpāla, Saptāmraka, Bahuputraka and Gautama-nyagrodha.²

Bahuputraka is evidently the same as the Bahuputracca of the other texts. Buddhaghosa in his commentary on the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta explains cetiyāni in the text as Yakkha-cetiyāni, and regarding the Sāranda-caitya where the Buddha preached, he says: 'This was a Vibhāra erected on the site of a former shrine of the Yakkha (tree deity) Sāranda.'³ Hence it is reasonable to assume that the Yakkhas were worshipped in some of the Caityas. The Buddhist books show further that the Vedic gods, Indra and Prajāpati or Brahma,⁴ were popular deities in the regions where the Buddha preached; while Kauṭilya's Arthasastra⁵ speaks of many gods popularly worshipped, besides the Vedic divinities. Some scholars are of opinion that the Caityas were 'shrines of pre-Buddhistic

---

² Divyavadāna, p. 201.
³ Dialogues of the Buddha, Pt. II, p. 80, notes 2 and 3.
⁴ For Brahma, see S.N., I22 seq.; Saṁy., VI, 1, 1-3, 10, etc.; M.P.S., VI, 15, etc.
⁵ Ed. R. Shāma Shāstrī, 2nd Ed., p. 244.
worship' and that 'they were probably trees and harrows.'

Some of the Caityas, as their names suggest, might have been named after the trees which marked the spots, but it would be going too far to imagine merely from the name that these shrines consisted of trees and nothing else.

As we have seen, Mahāvīra, the 24th Tīrthāṅkara of the Jains, was a citizen of Vaiśālī. Even before his advent, the faith of which he was the last exponent seems to have been prevalent in Vaiśālī and the surrounding country, in some earlier form. It appears from the Jaina accounts that the religion as fixed and established by Pārśvanātha, the 23rd Tīrthāṅkara, was followed by some at least of the Kṣatriya peoples of N.E. India, especially amongst the residents of Vaiśālī. We read in the Āyārāṅga-sūtra that Mahāvīra's parents were 'worshippers of Pārśva and followers of the Śramaṇas'.

Similar accounts are given in other Jaina works of the prevalence in the country of a faith which was afterwards developed by Mahāvīra. Śramaṇas or wandering ascetics had been in existence ever since the time of the earlier Upaniṣads, and evidently the Śramaṇas that were followed by the parents of Mahāvīra belonged to one of the numerous sects or classes of Indian ascetics. After Mahāvīra's time, the number of his followers among the Licchavis appears to have been large, even including some men of the highest position in Vaiśālī, as is seen from the Buddhist books. In the Mahāvagga we read that Siha, a general-in-chief of the Licchavis, was a disciple of Nīgantha Nāṭaputta (= Mahāvīra). When the Buddha visited Vaiśālī, Siha wished to see him, having heard reports of his greatness; but Mahāvīra dissuaded him, pointing out the defects in the doctrines preached by the Buddha. Siha's enthusiasm for the Buddha abated for the time, but was again roused by the discussions of the other Licchavis, so that he finally did pay a visit to the Buddha, who gave him a long discourse on the Buddhist doctrine. Siha was converted to the Buddhist faith. One day he invited the Buddha and the Bhikkhus to take their meal at his house, and procured meat at the market to feed them. But the Jains spread a false report that Siha had killed an ox and made a meal for the 'Samaṇa Gotama', and that the Samaṇa Gotama was knowingly eating the meat of an animal killed for this very

1 Prof. and Mrs. Rhys Davids, Dialogues of the Buddha, Pt. II, p. 110, f. n. 2. See also R. P. Chanda's Mediaeval Sculpture in Eastern India, Cal. Univ. Journal (Arts), Vol. III.


purpose, and was therefore responsible for the killing of the animal.\(^1\) This false report circulated by them only made Sīha firmer in his zeal for his new faith, but the story shows that the number of the Niganthas at Vaiśāli was sufficiently large to defy the influence of such an important man as Sīha, and this is also confirmed by the story of Saccaka, a Nigantha, who had the hardihood to challenge the Buddha himself to a discussion on philosophical tenets before an assemblage of five hundred Licchavis.

We read in the Majjhima Nikāya\(^2\) that the Niganthaputta Saccaka told the Licchavis of his intention to defeat the ‘Samana Gotama’ in argument, and induced 500 of them to go with him to the Mahāvana to listen to the discussion. He approached the place where the Bhikkhus were walking up and down and told them, ‘We are anxious to see Gotama, the Blessed One’. The Buddha was seated to spend the day in meditation at the foot of a tree in the Mahāvana. Saccaka with a large number of Licchavis went up to him; then arguments relating to the samghas and *ganas*, and some knotty points of Buddhist psychology and metaphysics were started between Saccaka and the Buddha. Saccaka, being defeated, invited the Buddha to dinner. The Licchavis were informed of this, and asked to bring whatever they liked to the dinner, which would be held on the following day. At the break of day, the Licchavis brought five hundred dishes for the Buddha. The Niganthaputta and the Licchavis became greatly devoted to the Buddha.

The Buddha paid at least three visits, but probably many more, to Vaiśāli; and the Pāli works have recorded many occasions similar to those mentioned above, on which the Licchavis sought his aid for the solution of numerous problems of religion and dogma.

Once when the Buddha was staying in the Kūtāgāraśalā in the Mahāvana, a Licchavi named Bhaddiya paid a visit to him and asked him whether it was true that he employed magic spells to attract converts. Thereupon the Buddha explained his doctrine of ‘kusala and akusala-dhamma’ saying that his teaching did indeed rest on fact. Bhaddiya, delighted with the exposition, forthwith declared himself a follower of the Buddha.\(^3\)

On another occasion we find that when the Buddha was at Vaiśāli, two Licchavis, named Sālho and Añhaya, approached him, and asked his opinion as to the relative merits of ‘purity of conduct’ (sīla) and ‘the practice of self-mortification’ (*tapa*).\(^4\)

---

Another time a Licchavi minister (mahāmātra) named Nandaka approached the place where the Buddha was, and the Buddha explained to him the four Dhammas. On another occasion when the Buddha was at Vaiśāli, there were 500 Licchavis assembled at the Sārandada-cetiya. They had a discussion about the five kinds of 'rare gems' (elephant, horse, jewel, woman, and householder), and asked the Buddha's opinion, whereupon he solved the problem in an unexpected way.

The Aṅguttara Nikāya tells of a large number of distinguished Licchavis who went to see the Buddha when he was at Vaiśāli; and also narrates how on another occasion, when the Buddha was at Vaiśāli, he was worshipped by 500 Licchavis arrayed in various coloured garments, ornaments and trappings.

A certain Aṇjana-Vaniya was born at Vaiśāli in the family of a rāja. During his adolescence, the three-fold panic of drought, sickness and non-human foes afflicted the Vajjian territory. Afterwards, the Buddha put a stop to the panic and addressed a great gathering. Hearing his discourse, the prince attained faith, left the world, and eventually became an Arahat. Another son of a rāja who was converted by the Buddha was Vajjiputta, 'the son of the Vajjis'.

In the Saṁyutta Nikāya we read of Mahāli, a Licchavi, who went to the Buddha and told him that Purāṇa Kassapa was of opinion that beings suffered or were purified without cause. The Buddha refuted this theory. The Aṅguttara Nikāya also speaks of a Licchavi named Mahāli, at whose request the Buddha expounded the causes of merit and demerit.

The Buddha exercised a remarkable influence even over the fiercest of the Licchavis. For instance, it was said of a certain Licchavi prince that he was so very fierce, cruel, passionate and vindictive that none dared to utter more than two or three words in his presence. At last his parents resolved to bring him to the Buddha for correction. Accordingly he was brought before the Buddha, who painted a convincing picture of the results of cruelty.

3 Ibid., Vol. V, p. 133.
5 Ibid., V, 113 and comm.; ibid., p. 106.
6 Pt. III, pp. 68-70.
8 For other discussions between theLicchavis and the Buddha or his chief disciples, see Aṅguttara Nikāya (P.T.S.), I, pp. 220-22; II, pp. 190-94, 200-02; Saṁyutta Nikāya (P.T.S.), Vol. IV, pp. 261-2; Vol. V, pp. 163-5.
and wickedness. After this exhortation, the prince's heart miraculously became filled with love and kindness.1

Among the Licchavi women who were converted by the Buddha, we read of Sīhā, Jentī, Vāsetṭhī, and Ambapālī.

Sīhā, a niece of the Licchavi general Siha, was born at Vaiśāli at the time of Gotama Buddha. When she attained years of discretion, one day she heard the Master preaching. She became a believer, obtained the consent of her parents to enter the Order, and eventually became an Arahant.2

The case of Jentī or Jentā was similar. She was born in a princely family of the Licchavis at Vaiśāli, and won Arahatship after hearing the Dhamma preached by the Buddha.3 Another Licchavi woman, Vāsiṭṭhī, was born in a clansman's family at Vaiśāli. Her parents gave her in marriage to a clansman's son of equal position. She had a son. When the child was able to run about, he died. Overwhelmed with grief, Vāsiṭṭhī came to Mithilā, and there she saw the Buddha. At the sight of the Buddha she regained her normal mind; and he taught her the outlines of the Dhamma, whereupon she soon attained Arahatship.4

We have read of the courtesan Āmrapālī, who gave a vihāra to the Buddha. For further details of her life, see Therīgāthā, V, 252ff. (Psalms of the Sisters, pp. 120-1, 125).

**Government and Administration of Justice**

The Licchavis formed a republic in the sense that there was no hereditary monarch, the power of the State being vested in the assembly of citizens. It does not appear to have been a completely democratic republic, but an oligarchy, citizenship being confined to members of the confederate clans. There is ample evidence to show that in ancient times this form of government, as described in the Buddhist books, was much more in vogue than we are led to imagine from later literature.

The Licchavis formed what was called a samgha or gana, that is, an organised corporation. One of the Buddhist canonical books, the Majjhima Nikāya,6 speaks of the Vajjis and the Mallas as forming samghas and ganas, i.e. clans governed by an organised corporation and not by an individual sovereign. The Mahāvastu says that when plague raged in Vaiśāli, a Licchavi named Tomara

2 Therīgāthā, V, 77ff.; Psalms of the Sisters, pp. 53-4.
3 Ibid., V, 21 and 22; Psalms of the Sisters, pp. 23-4.
4 Ibid., V, 133ff.; ibid., pp. 79-80.
was elected by the gana to appeal to the Buddha and bring him to the city.

Kautślya states that the Licchavis and various other tribes were 'rāja-sabda-upajjivināh'. This apparently means that among these peoples each citizen had the right to call himself a rāja, 'king', i.e. a dignitary who did not owe allegiance or pay revenue to any one else. Each citizen not merely looked upon himself as a rāja, but considered that his title should be recognised not only by his fellow clansmen but also by the other peoples of India. This is corroborated by the description of the Licchavis given in the Lalitavistāra, which says that at Vaiśāli there was no respect for age, nor for position, whether high or middle or low, each one thinking that he was a rāja. Kautślya's account shows that this designation of each individual clansman was not confined to the Licchavis, but was shared by them with many other warrior peoples of Northern India. Sāvaraswāmī in his commentary on the Pūrvamāṃsa Sūtra, Book II, says that the word 'rāja' is a synonym for Kṣatriya, and states that even in his time the word was used by the Andhras to designate a Kṣatriya. On his authority, it can be said that the word 'rāja' in early times designated a member of the Kṣatriya caste, and subsequently acquired the specialised meaning of 'king'.

In practice the rank of rāja must have been restricted to a comparatively small section of the community, because we learn from the Ekapanna Jātaka that besides the rājas, there were the uparājas, senāpatis, etc. What the real number of de facto rājas was, we do not know. The Mahāvastu speaks of the twice 84,000 Licchavi rājas residing within the city of Vaiśāli. The Pāli commentaries, e.g. the preambles to the Cullakālinga Jātaka and the Ekapanna Jātaka speak of seven thousand seven hundred and seven rājas of Vaiśāli. The Kalpasūtra speaks of only nine (Jaina Sūtras, Pt. I, S.B.E., Vol. XXII, p. 266).

Kautślya observes that all these samghas by virtue of their being united in such corporations, were unconquerable by others. He further observes that for a king, a corporation was the best and most helpful of all allies, because of the power derived from their union which made them invincible. When Ajātaśatru sent his prime minister (mahāmātra) to ascertain the views of the Buddha

---

1 See Arthaśāstra, trsl. R. Shāma Shāstri, p. 455.
5 Ibid., Vol. I, p. 504.
6 Arthaśāstra (2nd Ed.), p. 378.
with regard to his proposed extermination of the Vṛjīs, the Buddha said to Ananda, ‘So long, Ananda, as the Vajjians hold these full and frequent public assemblies; so long may they be expected not to decline but to prosper’.¹

The public hall where the Licchavis used to hold their meetings was called the Santhāgāra, and there they discussed both religion and politics. We have seen in the story of the conversion of Śīha that the Licchavis met at the Santhāgāra to discuss the teaching of the Buddha. The procedure that was followed in these assemblies may be gathered, as D. R. Bhandarkar² has pointed out, from an account of the procedure followed at a ceremony of ordination in the samgha of the Buddhist Bhikkus. There can be no doubt that in organising the Buddhist samgha, the Buddha took as his model the political samghas of N.E. India, especially that of the Licchavis whose corporation, as we have seen, he esteemed very highly. Fortunately for us, the rules of procedure followed in the Buddhist community or samgha have been preserved in the description of the upasampadā or ordination ceremony in the Pātimokkha section of the Vinaya Piṭaka, and from this description we can form an idea of the procedure followed in the political samgha of the Licchavis. First of all, an officer called the Asanapaniṇāpaka (regulator of seats) was elected, whose function seems to have been to seat the members of the congregation in order of seniority.³ As in the Buddhist congregation, so among the Licchavis, the elders of the clans were highly respected, as we see from the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta.⁴

The form of moving a Resolution in the council thus assembled and seated may be gathered from the full description of procedure in the Buddhist samgha, for which see Rhys Davids and Oldenberg, Vinaya Texts, Pt. I, pp. 169-70.

As might be expected in such an assembly, there were often violent disputes and quarrels with regard to controversial topics. In such cases, the disputes were settled by the votes of the majority and this voting was by ballot; voting tickets or saḷākās were served out to the voters, and an officer of approved honesty and impartiality was elected to collect these tickets or voting papers.⁵ The appointment of this officer, who was called the Saḷākā-gāhāpaka, was also made by the whole assembly.

¹ Buddhist Suttas, S.B.E., Vol. XI, p. 3.
² Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 181.
⁵ Cullavagga, S.B.E., Vol. XX; Vinaya Texts, Pt. III, p. 25.
There was also a provision for taking the votes of absent members. The Mahāvagga\(^1\) mentions an example of a declaration of the consent of an absent member (of the congregation of monks) to an official Act. Such a declaration was called Chanda.

A quorum was required, and difficulty was often experienced in securing the right number, so that the Buddha exhorted the Bhikkhus to help to complete the quorum.\(^2\) There are other detailed rules in the Vinaya Pitaka for the regulation of the assembly. This elaboration of the procedure, as well as the use of technical terms for each detail, shows that the organisation of these popular assemblies had already been highly developed among the political samghas like that of the Licchavis before the Buddha adopted them for the regulation of his religious samgha or congregation.\(^3\)

The Tibetan works mention a Nayaka who was the chief magistrate of the Licchavis and 'was elected by the people or rather by the ruling clans of Licchavis'.\(^4\) We do not know exactly what his functions were; perhaps he was an executive officer for carrying out the decisions of the assembly.

There does not appear to have been any outstanding figure among the Licchavis, comparable to Śuddhodana among the Sākyas. The preamble to the Ekapanna Jātaka\(^5\) relates that of the Rājas who lived in Vaiśali permanently exercising the rights of sovereignty, there were seven thousand, seven hundred and seven, and there were quite as many Uparājās (subordinate officials), Senāpatis (generals), and Bhāndāgārikas (treasurers). A passage in the preamble to the Cullakālinga Jātaka\(^6\) also mentions seven thousand, seven hundred and seven Licchavi rājās, who lived at Vaiśali. The number seven thousand, seven hundred and seven cannot be the number of all the Licchavis living in the town of Vaiśali; in fact we are told in the Mahāvastu that the Licchavis, who went out of Vaiśali to meet the Buddha on his first visit to that city, numbered as many as twice eighty-four thousand, which was not an incredible number for such an extensive city as Vaiśali. But 7,707 is evidently an artificially concocted number, seven being used from the idea that it had some magic potency. It is significant

---


\(^{2}\) Ibid., pp. 307-9.

\(^{3}\) For the democratic organisation of the Licchavis, see D. R. Bhandarkar, Carmichael Lectures, 1918, pp. 179-84.

\(^{4}\) Rockhill, Life of the Buddha, p. 62.

\(^{5}\) Fausboll, Jātaka, Vol. I, p. 504: 'Niccahālam rajjam kāretvā vasantānanam yeva rājanam sattasaḥānasāni satta ca rājano honi, tattakah yeva upārājano, tattakah senapatino, tattakah bhāndāgārikā.'

\(^{6}\) Ibid., Vol. III, p. 1.
that none of the canonical texts themselves gives this number, which occurs only in a later commentary, the Nidānakathā of the Jātakas.

Bhandarkar says that an Upārājā or Viceroy, a Senāpati or general, and a Bhāndāghārika or treasurer formed the private staff of every Licchavi Rāja. He adds that each Rāja had personal property of his own which was managed by himself with the help of these three officers. This seems to be likely, because the existence of a Bhāndāghārika attached to each Rāja necessarily implies that each Rāja had his own separate Bhanddgāra or treasury.

There must have been officers who recorded the decisions of the Council. A passage in the Mahāgovinda Suttanta of the Dīgha Nikāya seems to justify this conclusion. In describing a meeting of the thirty-three gods in the Tavatimsa heaven, it is said that after the deliberations were over, four great kings recorded the conclusions reached, and on this passage the translators observe, ‘This sounds very much as if the Four Great Kings were looked upon as Recorders of what had been said. They kept the minutes of the meeting. If so (the gods being made in the image of men), there must have been such Recorders at the meetings in the Mote-Halls of the clans.’

A passage in the preamble to the Bhaddasāla Jātaka mentions a tank, the water of which was used at the ceremony of abhiseka or coronation of the kulas or families of the gana rājās of Vaiśali. This may refer to the ceremony performed when a Licchavi rājā was elected to a seat in the assembly of the State, or it may denote that the ceremony of coronation was performed when a young Licchavi kumāra (prince) succeeded to the title and position of his father.

The Aṭṭhakathā on the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta gives an account of the judicial procedure among the Licchavis. When a person who had committed an offence appeared before the Vajjian rājās, they surrendered him to the Viniccaya-Mahāmattas, i.e. officers whose business it was to make enquiries and examine the accused with a view to ascertaining whether he was innocent or guilty. If they found the man innocent, they released him; but if they considered him guilty, they made him over to the Vohārikas, i.e. persons learned in law and custom. These could discharge

---

1 Dialogues of the Buddha, Pt. II, p. 263.
3 Sumangalavilāsini, II, 519 (P.T.S.).
him if they found him innocent; if they held him guilty, they transferred him to certain officers called Suttadāras, that is, officials who kept up the sūtra (sutta) or thread of (ancient) law and custom. They in their turn made further investigation, and if satisfied that the accused was innocent, they discharged him. If, however, they considered him guilty, he was made over to the Atīthakulakā 1 (lit. 'the eight castes or tribes') which was evidently a judicial institution composed of judges representing the eight kūlas or tribes of the confederacy.

The Atīthakulakā, if satisfied of the guilt of the accused, made him over to the Senāpati or commander of the army, who delivered him over to the Uḍarāja or sub-king, and the latter in his turn handed him over to the Rājā. The Rājā released the accused if he was innocent; if he was found guilty, the Rājā referred to the Pavenipothaka, that is, the pustaka or hook recording the law and precedents, and prescribing the punishment for each particular offence. The Rājā, 2 having measured the culprit’s offence by means of that standard, used to inflict a proper sentence. 3

Political History

It is from the Buddhist literature that we first realise the importance of the Licchavis. In the Brāhmaṇa literature, though there is repeated mention of Videha, which in the Buddha’s time joined with the Licchavis and formed a confederation, there is no mention of the Licchavis. It is remarkable that while the Mallas, their immediate neighbours, are mentioned in the Mahābhārata, the Licchavis are not found among the peoples that were encountered by the Pāṇḍava brothers in their peregrinations, or on their mission of conquest. In the sixth century B.C., however, we find them in the Jaina and Buddhist books as a powerful people in the enjoyment of great prosperity and of a high social status among the ruling races of Eastern India, and, as we have seen, they had already evolved a system of government and polity bearing no small

---

1 The Hon. G. Turnour says that no satisfactory explanation can be obtained as to the nature of the office held by these functionaries. It is inferred to be a judicial institution composed of judges from all the eight castes.

2 It seems that the ‘Rājā’ who was the highest authority in the administration of criminal justice was different from the ordinary rājas who constituted the popular assembly. He was perhaps the senior amongst the rājās, or was one elected from time to time to administer criminal justice.

3 G. Turnour, An Examination of the Pāli Buddhistical Annals, J.A.S.B., December, 1838, pp. 993-4, f.n.
resemblance to some of the democracies of the western world. It must have taken a long time to develop such institutions. But we must not imagine that the system was a creation of the Licchavis; for it seems that the samgha form of government was the normal form in ancient India even among the peoples that had a king at their head. The earliest Indian tradition of a king is that of a person elected by the people and ruling for the good of the people. The procedure of conducting the deliberations of an assembly must have been developing from the earliest Vedic times, as the samiti and the parishad were well-known institutions in theṚgveda. The Licchavis must have modelled their procedure on that which was already in vogue among the Indian Aryans, allowing a century for the evolution of the particular form of government of the Licchavis from the already existing system. Their emergence from obscurity may fairly be placed at the beginning of the seventh century B.C. It is true that we do not find the Licchavis among the Vedic peoples, but in the fourth century B.C. (the time of the Arthaśāstra) they are mentioned along with the Kuru-Paṇcālas and the Madras, i.e. with some of the powerful races of the Brahmānic period.

We know nothing of the history of the Licchavis during the period of their early growth and development. The earliest political fact of any importance that we know of is that a Licchavi girl was given in marriage to Śeniya or Śrenika Bimbisāra, king of Magadha. This Licchavi lady, according to the Nirayāvali Sūtra, one of the early Jaina works, was Cellarā, the daughter of Cetaka, one of the Rājas of Vaiśāli, whose sister Ksatriyānī Triśalā was the mother of Mahāvira. In a Tibetan Life of the Buddha, her name is given as Śrībhadrā, and in some places she is named Maddā. She is, however, usually called Vaidehi in the Buddhist books, and her son Ajāṭasatru is frequently designated ‘Vedehiputto’, or the son of the Videhan princess.

1 It may be argued that the Licchavi constitution was not a democracy, since citizenship was confined to the Licchavi clan, but in reply it may be pointed out that even in the great democracy of Athens, every resident was not a citizen. The Metics and the Slaves, for instance, were excluded from citizenship.
2 See, e.g., the story of Bena and Pṛthu, Mahābhārata, Śantiparvan, Vaṅgavasi Ed., Chap. 60, verse 94.
4 Ibid., p. xiii, note 3.
The *Divyāvadāna* in one passage speaks of Ajātaśatru as Vaidehiputra, and elsewhere it states that King Bimbisāra reigned at Rājagṛha with his chief queen Vaidehi, and Ajātaśatru, his son. The Tibetan *Dulva* gives the name of Vāsavi to Ajātaśatru’s mother, and narrates a story regarding Ajātaśatru’s origin which cannot he traced in the Pāli Canon.

D. R. Bhandarkar holds that ‘this matrimonial alliance was a result of the peace concluded after the war between Bimbisāra and the Licchavis’, and that ‘Bimbisāra thus appears to have seized Magadha after expelling the Vajjis beyond the Ganges’. Bhandarkar’s theory is based on Rhys Davids’ supposition that the expression *Vesālīm Māgadham purāṇa* in verse 1013 of the *Suttanipāta* (P.T.S.) refers to one and the same city, taking Māgadham purāṇa in apposition to Vesālī. But the commentator has taken Māgadham to be a synonym of Rājagha (= Rājagṛha). Mention of the Pāśāṇa-cetiya in the same verse also goes to show that Māgadham purāṇa was not Vaisālī. In several places we find mention of the caityas or cetiyas round about Vaisālī, but nowhere do we come across a Pāśāṇa-cetiya. From verse 1014 of the *Suttanipāta* it appears that this cetiya was situated on a mountain peak. It is quite possible, therefore, that it was one of the cetiyas round about Rājagṛha, and most probably it was the Gṛdhra-kūṭa (Pāli Gijjhakūṭa) monastery. There seems to have been some basis, however, for concluding that there was a war between Bimbisāra and the Licchavis, as such a war is referred to incidentally in the Tibetan *Dulva*, in a passage which traces the birth of Aḥhaya (‘fearless’), another son of Bimbisāra, also by the Licchavi woman. This story, which makes Aḥhaya or Aḥhayakumāra, as the Jaina books have it, a son of Ambapāli (Āmrāpāli), the courtesan of Vaisālī, is not confirmed by the Pāli books, where her son by Bimbisāra is called, Vimala-koṇḍañña, who became a Bhikkhu.

The Licchavis appear to have been on friendly terms with King Pasenadi (Prasenajit) of Kośala, who speaks of them as his

---

2 Ibid., p. 545.
4 Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 74.
5 Ibid., p. 73.
7 *Suttanipāta* Commentary, p. 584: ‘Māgadham puranī Magadhapuranī Ṛajagahan-ī adhippāyo’.
8 Rockhill, *Life of the Buddha*, p. 64.
9 *Psalms of the Sisters*, pp. 120-1; *Psalms of the Brethren*, p. 65.
friends. The relation of the Licchavis with their neighbours, the Mallas, also seems to have been friendly in general, as is evidenced by the Mallas standing by the Licchavis against their common foe, Ajātašatru. The Jaina books also speak of nine Malla chiefs and nine Licchavi chiefs showing reverence to Mahāvīra at the time of his passing. There were, however, occasional hostilities between the two tribes, as is shown by the story of Bandhula, a Mallian prince, who was victorious over the Licchavi chiefs.

We must now speak of the relations of the Licchavis with Ajātašatru, the son and successor of Bimbisāra. The Magadhan king must have felt that the confederacy formed the greatest bar to the realisation of his idea of Magadhan expansion; and we find him taking the dreadful resolve to root out and destroy the Vajjians.

According to one account, the Vajjians attacked Ajātašatru many times. This enraged him, and in order to baffle their attempts he had a fort constructed at Pāṭaligāma, and finally annihilated them. It is probable that Ajātašatru was partly influenced by his fear of his foster-brother Abhaya, who had Licchavi blood in him. At this time, too, the Licchavis were gaining strength day by day, and no doubt becoming increasingly arrogant. In the Sumanāgalavilāsini account we read that there was a port near the Ganges extending over a yojana, half of which belonged to Ajātašatru and half to the Licchavis. There was a mountain not far from it, and at the foot of this mountain was a mine of precious substance (Mahogghabhandana). Once Ajātašatru was late in arriving there, and the Licchavis took away all the treasure; and this happened again the following year. Having sustained a heavy loss, Ajātašatru decided on vengeance. He realised, however, that the Licchavis were numerically stronger; so he conceived the idea of destroying their unity by sowing seeds of dissension among them. He sent his prime minister Vassakāra to the Buddha, who predicted that in future the Licchavis would be delicate and pleasure-loving, but that at present they could not be overcome save by propitiating them with tributes, or dissolving their internal unity. When Vassakāra reported this to Ajātašatru, the king did not agree to propitiate the Vajjians with tributes, so he decided to break up their union, and arranged to bring a trumped-up charge against Vassakāra, whereupon the latter, feigning anger at his disgrace, would go to the Vajjins and offer to betray Ajātašatru.

2 Jātaka, Vol. IV, p. 149 (Bhadḍasala Jātaka).
4 Ibid., p. 18.
5 (P.T.S.) II, p. 516.
to them. This plan was duly carried out, and the Vajjis offered Vassakāra the same post as he had held in Magadha, of ‘Judicial Prime Minister’. Vassakāra accepted this post, and very soon acquired a reputation for his able administration of justice. After some time he started sowing dissension among the Licchavis, making them suspicious of each other and of their chiefs. In this way he succeeded in the course of three years in bringing about such disunion among the rulers that none of them would tread the same road together. He then sent a mission to Ajātaśatru, telling him that the time to strike had arrived. The king forthwith assembled his forces and set out. The Vajjians, on receiving intimation thereof, sounded the tocsin calling the citizens to action; but no one responded to the call, and Ajātaśatru entered the city and routed the inhabitants. Thus the Magadhan kingdom was very much extended during his reign.

Of the subsequent history of the Licchavis we know very little. But it is certain that they were not completely exterminated by Ajātaśatru. He seems to have succeeded in making the Licchavis acknowledge his suzerainty and pay him revenue, but they must have been independent in the matter of internal management, and maintained their democratic institutions, for Kautilya speaks of them two centuries later as living under a samgha form of government, and advises King Candragupta Maurya to seek the help of these samghas which, on account of their unity and concord, were almost unconquerable.

It may safely be presumed that the Licchavis acknowledged the suzerainty of Candragupta’s grandson Aśoka. After this we next meet them (as Licchavis) in Manu’s Code, some time between 200 B.C. and 200 A.D., and then we do not hear of them again until the fourth century A.D., when their name appears in the records of the Imperial Guptas.

At the beginning of the fourth century A.D., Candragupta I, a son-in-law of the Licchavi family and son of Chātottakaca Gupta, established a new kingdom. A gold coin was introduced under the name of Candragupta I by his son, the emperor Samudragupta, who succeeded in establishing his suzerainty over a great part of India. On the obverse of the coin were incised the figures of Candragupta and his queen Kumāradevi. The former is offering an object (which on some coins appears clearly as a ring) to his queen. The words ‘Candragupta’ and ‘Kumāradevi’, or ‘Śri Kumāradevi Śriḥ’, are inscribed in the Brāhma

1 Dīgha Nikāya Comm. (Sumanāgalavilāsini), II, 524 (P.T.S.).
2 R. D. Banerjea, Prācīna Mudrā, p. 121.
character of the fourth century A.D., and on the reverse was engraved the figure of Laksmi, the goddess of Fortune, seated on a lion couchant, with the legend ‘Licchavayah’, ‘the Licchavis’. With this is to be combined the significant fact that Samudragupta in his Allahabad Inscription takes pride in describing himself as ‘Licchavidanuitra’, ‘the son of a daughter of the Licchavis’. This combined evidence justifies the conclusion that in the fourth century A.D., when the Guptas rose to power, the Licchavis must have possessed considerable political power in N.E. India. It is quite probable that Candragupta’s dominions received considerable expansion by the addition of the country which he obtained through his Licchavi wife Kumâradevi, perhaps by succession.

Fleet, in editing the inscriptions in which the Gupta-Licchavi connection is mentioned, observes: ‘Proof of friendly relations between the early Guptas and the Licchavis, at an early time, is given by the marriage of Candra Gupt I with Kumâra Devi, the daughter of Licchavi or of a Licchavi king. And that the Licchavis were then at least of equal rank and power with the early Guptas, is shewn by the pride in this alliance manifested by the latter.’ Fleet even goes so far as to declare: ‘In all probability the so-called Gupta era is a Licchavi era, dating either from a time when the republican or tribal constitution of the Licchavis was abolished in favour of a monarchy; or from the commencement of the reign of Jayadeva I, as the founder of a royal house in a branch of the tribe that had settled in Nepal. The fact that this royal house that was planted by the Licchavis in Nepal about the period 330 to 355 A.D. by Jayadeva I was all along Brahmanical, proves that the Licchavis had not entirely dissociated themselves from the Brahmanic faith.’

Allan presumes that it was to keep up the memory of his father, Candragupta, and his mother, Kumâradevi, that the coin bearing their names and that of the Licchavis was issued by Samudragupta. It is not improbable that the inscription ‘Licchavayah’ which occurs on Candragupta’s gold coins together with the name of his queen Kumâradevi may signify that she belonged to a royal family of the Licchavis previously reigning at Pātaliputra (modern Patna), which seems to have been the original capital of the Gupta empire. A similar opinion is held by V. A. Smith, who says that Candragupta, a local râja at or near Pātaliputra, married Kumâradevi, a princess.

2 Ibid., p. 136.
3 Ibid., p. 135.
4 Allan, Gupta Coins, pp. 8-11.
5 Rapson, Indian Coins, pp. 24, 25.
TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

belonging to the Licchavi clan, in or about the year 308. In ancient times, the Licchavis of Vaiśāli had been the rivals of the kings of Pātaliputra, but Candragupta was now elevated through his Licchavi connection from the rank of a local chief.

The Nepal inscriptions point out that there were two distinct houses, one of which, known as the Thākuri family, is mentioned in the Vamsāvalī, but is not recorded in the inscriptions; and the other was the Licchavi or the Suryavamśi family which issued its charters from the house or palace called Mānagṛha and uniformly used an era with the Gupta epoch.²

¹ V. A. Smith, Early History of India (4th Ed.), p. 295.
CHAPTER LIX

THE UTKALAS AND UDRAS

The Utkalas

Some Purāṇas seem to imply that one of the ten sons of Manu was Ila-Sudvumna, a Kimpurusha 1 who in his turn had three sons, Utkala, Vinatāśva 2 and Gaya who enjoyed respectively the territories of Utkala, an undefined western country and Gaya. 3 These three territories have sometimes been collectively designated in the Purāṇas as Saudyumnas. 4 The Saudyumnas thus seem to have occupied the hilly tracts from Gaya to Orissa.

Epic tradition 5 connects the Utkalas with the Udras, Mekalas, Kaliṅgas and Andhras. The Drona-parvan of the Mahābhārata would have us believe that Karna conquered the Utkalas along with the Mekalas, Paundras, Kaliṅgas, Andhras, Niṣadas, Trigarttas and Vāhlikas. In the Rāmāyaṇa the Utkala country is associated with the Mekala and Daśārṇa countries. In sending his army of monkeys to the different countries in quest of Sītā, Sugriva asked Suṣeṇa to send his retinue among other countries of the south to Mekala, Utkala and Daśārṇa (Canto XLIII).

From the Epic tradition as contained in the Mahābhārata cited above, it is evident that even as early as the period when the tradition was recorded, Utkala was distinguished from Odra or Udra and the distinction seems to have been maintained throughout in ancient Indian literature and inscriptions. It is equally evident that it was distinguished from Kaliṅga as well, though a verse in the Vanaparvan of the Mahābhārata 6 seems to suggest that Utkala at one time formed a part of Kaliṅga. The Raghuvamśa of Kālidāsa, 7 however, represents Utkala as an independent kingdom. The Brahma-parāṇa 8 also suggests that Utkala and Kaliṅga were separate kingdoms. 9 According to the Raghuvamśa, the eastern boundary of

---

1 For a critical and synthetic study of Purāṇic legends in this connection, see Pargiter, A.I.H.T., pp. 253-4.
2 Or simply Vinata in most Purāṇas, or Haritāśva according to Mutsyaparūṇa and Padmapurāṇa.
3 The word ute or uteśa is used in the holy scriptures. Hence, it is called Utkala and Utkalas.
4 E.g., Vāyu-purāṇa, pp. 99, 266.
5 Mbh., Bhīṣma-parvan, Chap. IX, 348; Drona-parvan, Chap. IV, 122.
6 Vanaparvan, Chap. 114.
7 IV, v. 38.
8 47, 7.
Utkala seems to have extended to the river Kapiśā (probably identical with either the modern Suvarnarekhā, according to Lassen, or with the Kāśāi in Midnapur, according to Pargiter) and to the realm of the Mekalas on the west, with whom they are constantly associated, and who were inhabitants presumably of the Mekala hills. In the Āpādana of the Khuddaka Nikāya of the Sutta-piṭaka, a book of the Pāli Canon, Okkalā or Ukkalā or Utkalas were a tribe mentioned along with the Mekalas. Southward must have extended the realm of the Kaliṅgas. From this, Pargiter deduced that Utkala must have comprised the southern portion of modern Cbotanagpur. He further suggests that the reading Suḥmottarāh, a people of the eastern countries, of the Matsyapurāṇa, should be amended to Suḥmotkalāh to mean the ‘Suḥmas and the Utkalas’, in which case the Utkalas become the immediately contiguous southern neighbours of the Suḥmas who occupied roughly the modern districts of Bankura, Midnapore, Purulia and Manbhum. The Märkandeya Purāṇa, however, locates the Utkalas as inhabiting the Vindhyā mountains, along with the Karūshas, Keralas (according to Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas, the reading here should be Mekalas and not Keralas which is evidently incorrect), the Uttamaranas and the Daśārnas. Roughly speaking, the Utkalas were indeed a Vindhyan people inasmuch as the Cbotanagpur hills are just an extension of the Vindhyā ranges.

Coming to more definite historical times, we hardly find mention of the Utkalas as a people, though in later inscriptions and literature there are numerous references to Utkaladesa or Utkalaviṣaya, the country presumably of the Utkala people. Thus a twelfth century epigraph of Gāhḍavālā Govindachandra refers to a Buddhist scholar Śākyarakṣita, who was a resident of the Utkaladeśa. Another inscription, also of the twelfth century (Bhuvaneswar Stone Inscription of Narasimha I) refers to the building of a Viṣṇu temple by Candrikā, sister of Narasimha, at Ekāmra or modern Bhuvaneswar, in the Utkalaviṣaya. It is obvious from this inscription that Utkalaviṣaya at this period at least comprised the Puri and Bhubaneswar regions as well. Earlier, in the Bhagalpur grant of Narayaṇapāla, a certain king of the Utkalas (Utkalānāmadhitasa) took fright and fled from his capital at the approach of Prince Jayapāla of the Pāla dynasty. The Bādal Pillar inscription of the time of Guḍavamiśra credits King Devapāla with having eradicated the race of the Utkalas along with the pride of the Huṇas and the conceit of the rulers of Drāvīḍa and Gurjara. The Rāmacaritam of Sandhyākara Nandi in giving a list of foreign countries invaded by

1 Pt. II, p. 359. 2 Märkandeya P., p. 327 f.n. 3 Chap. CXIII, 44-
his hero Rāmapāla distinguishes Utkala from Kaliṅga in the eleventh century. A Sonpur grant of Mahāśīvagupta Yayāti, of about the same date, also distinguishes Utkaladeśa from Kaliṅga and Kōngoda.

The Buddhist literature contains some interesting information about Utkalas or Okkalas. Two merchants, named Tapussa and Bhalika, were on their way from Ukkala to see the Buddha who was at the foot of the Rājāyatana tree near Uruvelā. They were asked by their relative to offer food to the Blessed One who at first refused to accept it, but he afterwards accepted it and ate it up. The two merchants became his disciples. They were wealthy merchants who also visited Majjhimadeśa from Ukkala with five hundred carts. Two inhabitants of Ukkala, named Vassa and Bhānīṇa, did not believe in causation action on reality (ahetuvādā, akiriyavādā, and nattikavādā).

The Udras

The earliest mention of the Udras or Odras or Audras as a people is, perhaps, found in the following śloka of the Māṇavadharma-śāstra where the Odras are classed as outside the Brahmanical pale (i.e. Mleechas) along with the Pauṇḍrakas, Drāvidas, Kambojas, Yavanas, Śakas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Činas, Kirātas, Daradas and Khaṣas.

Sanakaistu kriyālopādimā kṣatriyajātayah
Vṛṣalatvam gataḥ loke brāhmaṇapārśanena cha
Pauṇḍrakāśchaudra Drāvida Kamboja Yavanāḥ Śakāḥ
Pāradaḥ Pahlavaśchaināḥ Kirāṭā Daradāḥ Khaṣāḥ.

The Aṇḍāna, a work of the Pāli Canon, mentions Oḍḍakā who were the same as Oḍrā or Uḍrā. Pliny in his Natural History mentions the Oretes as a people of India in whose country stood Mount Melēus which in another passage he locates amongst the Menedes and Suari. Cunningham identifies the last two peoples as the Mundas and Suars, from which he is led to conclude that the Oretes must be the people of Orissa. But it must be remembered that even then we cannot definitely equate the Greek Oretes with the Sanskrit Oḍrā or Uḍrā or Andradeśa.

Epic tradition connects the Udras along with the Paurāṇa, Utkalas, Mekalas, Kaliṅgas and Andhras. According to the

1 Cf. Mahāvaṣu, III, p. 303, where Ukkalā is mentioned as situated in Uttarāpatha.
3 Jātaka, Fausboll, I, p. 80.
4 Aṅguttara Nikāya, II, p. 3; Cf. Samyutta Nikāya, III, p. 73; Majjhima Nikāya, III, 78, and Kathāvāththu, I, p. 141.
5 Pt. II, p. 358.
6 Vanaṇḍapuran, I, 1988; Bhīṣmaṇḍapuran, IX, 365; Dronaṇḍapuran, IV, 122.
Brahmapurāṇa (28, 29, 42) which is admittedly very late, the country of the Odras extended northwards to Vrajamaṇḍala (Jāipur), and consisted of three kṣetras called Purushottama or Śrīkshetra, Savītu or Arkakshetra, and Birajākshetra through which flew the river Vaitaranī. But it is somewhat strange that nowhere in early inscriptions do we find any mention of the people and their country. The first elaborate account of the people and their country is found in the itinerary of Hsiian Tsang. From Karnasuvarna the pilgrim travelled south-west for about 722 li and came to the Wu-t'u or U-cha country.

'The country was above 7,000 li in circuit, and its capital above 20 li. The people were of violent ways, tall and of dark complexion, in speech and manners different from the people of "Mid-India". They were indefatigable students and many of them were Buddhists. There were above 100 Buddhist monasteries, and a myriad brethren, all Mahāyānists. Of deva temples there were fifty, and the various sects lived pell-mell. Near the shore of the ocean in the south-east of this country was the city Che-li-ta-lo (= 'Charitrapura = Puri?'), above 20 li in circuit which was a thoroughfare and resting-place for sea-going traders and strangers from distant lands.'

About a century later the country of the Oḍras became involved in chaos which has been described as mātsyanyāya in contemporary records. The celebrated Tibetan historian Tārānāth in his History of Buddhism records that Oḍīviśa, Vaṅga and five other countries of the east plunged themselves in a chaotic political condition from which they were rescued by the election of King Gopāla on the throne. Oḍīviśa of Tārānāth is certainly a corruption or adaptation of Odra-visāya. Oḍīviśa is further mentioned by Tārānāth in connection with the reign of Devapāla who is credited by him as having 'brought into submission the kingdom of Varendra in the east and afterwards the province of Oḍīviśa'.

The Tirumalai Rock Inscription of the thirteenth year of King Rājendra Cola credits the king as having seized by his great warlike army the Oḍḍa-visāya in the course of his northern expedition. This Oḍḍa-visāya is certainly identical with Odra-visāya. The Cola king, Rāja-rāja, is also said to have conquered the Oḍḍa country. Doubtless, during this period, Oḍḍa-visāya came to mean the whole of the present Orissa country.

2 'There was no longer any member of it (the royal family of the Candras) a king; in Oḍīviśa, in Vaṅga, and the other five provinces to the east, each Kṣatriya, Brāhmaṇa, and merchant, constituted himself king of his surroundings, but there was no king ruling the country.'—Tārānāth, Ind. Ant., IV, 1875, pp. 365-6.
CHAPTER LX

THE AVANTIS

In Vedic times, the Avantis do not emerge into importance as a ruling Kṣatriya tribe of ancient India. Their name is not found in the Vedic literature; but in the Mahābhārata they are found to be one of the most powerful of the Kṣatriya clans. Their dual monarchs, Vinda and Anuvinda, each led an aksauhinī of troops to Duryodhana’s army, and thus the Avantis made up one-fifth of the entire Kurī host (V, 19, 24). The two monarchs are designated ‘mahāratha’ (‘great warrior’), the highest title given to an epic warrior (VII, 5, 99), and are spoken of as wielding powerful bows. The two Avanti princes figure very prominently in the battle, and many are the glorious and heroic deeds with which they are credited. They rendered useful service to the Kanrava cause by their individual prowess and generalship as well as by the large army consisting of forces of every description which they led to battle. They fought bravely in the field until they were slain,—by Arjuna, according to one account (VII, 99, 3691), and by Bhīma, according to another (XI, 22, 617). We read of the mighty hosts of the Avantis—Sainyam Āvantyanāṁ—in the Karna-parvan and elsewhere (VII, 113, 4408; VIII, 8, 235).

The Matsya-purāṇa (Chap. 43) traces the origin of the Avantis to the Haihaya dynasty of which Kṛttaviryārjuna was the most glorious ruler, and adds that Avanti was the name borne by one of the sons of this monarch. The Līṅgapurāṇa states that out of the hundred sons of Kṛttaviryārjuna, five, namely Śūra, Śūrasena, Drśṭa, Kṛṣṇa and Yuyudhvaja, ruled Avanti and acquired great renown. The Viṣṇu-Dharmottara Mahāpurāṇa (Chap. IX) and the Padmapurāṇa (Śarga Khaṇḍa, Chap. III) speak of Avanti as one of the mahājanapadas or chief provinces of ancient India. The Skandapurāṇa has a whole section, the Āvantyakhanda, dealing with the sacred sites and places of pilgrimage in the country of the Avantis. It is stated (Chap. 43) that the god Mahādeva, after he

1 'Āvantiya ca mahāpālaun mahāvalasametyau prthagaksuhiṁbhyāṁ tāvabhiyātāu suyodhanyatā.

2 'Vindaunuindāvavantyau rājaputrau mahārathaun.' See also Mbh., V, 166, 5753, Cal. Ed.; Bhīṣmaparvan, VI, 99, 4504; VI, 114, 5293, 5399.

3 VH, 83, 3650; VI, 94, 4195.

4 Mbh., VI, 16, 622; II, 17, 673, etc.; VI, 59, 2584; VI, 87, 3557; VI, 83, 3650–60; VI, 86, 3823; VI, 102, 4666; VI, 113, 5249; VII, 14, 542; 25, 1083; 33, 1410.
had destroyed the demon Tripura, visited Avantipura, which came to be known as Ujjayini in honour of his victory. This Purāṇa in the section of Ayodhyā-māhātmya (Chap. I) relates that saints of Ujjayini, the Avanti capital, came to Kurukṣetra with their disciples to attend the sacrifice of Rāma.

The Purāṇas also speak of intermarriages between the royal family of the Avantis and the ruling dynasty of the Yadus. Thus the Viṣṇupurāṇa (IV, 12) and Agnipurāṇa (Chap. 275) state that a Yadu princess called Rājyādhidevi was married to the king of Avanti. She was one of the five sisters of the Yadu monarch, Vasudeva, son of Śūra. The Viṣṇupurāṇa adds (IV, 14) that Rājyādhidevi bore two sons, Vinda and Upavinda, who are most probably to be identified with the Avanti princes, Vinda and Anuvinda of Epic fame.

The grammarian Pāṇini refers to Avanti in one of his sūtras (IV, 1, 176).

With regard to the location of Avanti, the sage Dhaumya (Vanaparvan, Mbh.), in enumerating the places of pilgrimage in W. India, refers to the country of the Avantis, and speaks of the sacred river Narmadā as being situated therein. At the beginning of the Virāṭaparvan, Arjuna mentions Avanti along with other kingdoms in W. India, namely, Surāstra and Kunti (IV, 1, 12). The geographical connection between the Avantis and the Kuntis is also shown in the description of 'Bhāratavarsa' in the Bhīṣmaparvan (VI, 9, 350). A path leading to the city of Avanti is referred to in the Nalopākhyāna of the Vanaparvan (III, 61, 2317). Mrs. Rhys Davids notes that Avanti lay north of the Vindhya mountains north-west of Bombay. It was one of the four chief monarchies in India when Buddhism arose, and was later absorbed into the Mauryan empire.

Rhys Davids observes: 'The country (Avanti), much of which is rich land, had been colonized or conquered by Aryan tribes who came down the Indus valley and turned west from the Gulf of Kutch. It was called Avanti at least as late as the second century A.D. (see Rudradāman's Inscription at Junāgadh) but from the seventh or eighth century onwards, it was called Mālava' (Buddhist India, p. 28).

Ujjayini, which was situated on the Siprā, a tributary of the Carmansvatī (Chamhal), is the modern Ujjain in Gwalior, Central India. It was the capital of Avanti or Western Mālava, and the residence of the Viceroy of the western provinces both under the Maurya and the Gupta empires.

1 Mbh., Vanaparvan, III, 89, 8354: Avantisu Pratīcyām vai.
2 Psalms of the Brethren, p. 107, note i.
3 Rapson, Ancient India, p. 173, s.v. Ujjayint.
In the *Dīpavamśa*, we read that Ujjeni (Ujjayini) was built by Accutagami. Watters points out that the Avanti capital Ujayana mentioned by Hsüan Tsang is generally supposed to be the well-known Ujain or Ujjen (Ujjain). In some of the canonical scriptures, Ujain is located to the west of Kanoj, which lies between Ujain and Benares.

The Chinese pilgrim Hsüan Tsang thus describes Ujjayini, which name he gives to the whole country surrounding the capital—'Ujjaini is about 6,000 li in circuit; the capital is some 30 li round. The produce and manners of the people are like those of the country of Surāṣṭra. The population is dense and the establishments wealthy. There are several tens of convents, but they are mostly in ruins; some three or five are preserved. There are some 300 priests; they study the doctrines both of the Great and the Little Vehicle. There are several tens of Deva temples, occupied by sectaries of various kinds. The king belongs to the Brahman caste. He is well-versed in heretical books, and believes not in the true law. Not far from the city is a stūpa; this is the place where Aśoka-rājā made the hell (of punishment).'

Owing to its position, Avanti became a great commercial centre. Three trade-routes met here; from the western coast with its sea-ports, Śūrparaka (Sopāra) and Bhṛgukaccha (Broach); from the Deccan; and from Śrāvastī in Kośala (Oudh). It was also a great centre of science and literature. Ujjayini was one of the seven sacred cities of the Hindus, and astronomers reckoned their first meridian of longitude from there. The dramas of Kalidāsa were performed on the occasion of the Spring Festival before the viceregal court of Ujjayini, c. 400 A.D.

An interesting notice of Ujjain is to be found in the *Periplus of the Erythraean Sea* (sec. 48) where we read: 'Eastward from Barygaza (=Bhrugakaccha) is a city called Ozene, formerly the capital where the king resided. From this place is brought down to Barygaza every commodity for local consumption or export to other parts of India, onyx-stones, porcelain, fine muslins, mallow-tinted cottons and the ordinary kinds in great quantities. It imports from the upper country through Proklais for transport to the coast, spikenard, kastos and bdellium.' The ancient city no longer exists, but its ruins can be traced at a distance of a mile from its modern successor.

---

1 Oldenberg, p. 57; Text.
4 Rapson, *Ancient India*, p. 175; and see McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 154.
5 McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 155.
Avanti was one of the most flourishing kingdoms of ancient India, mentioned in the _Aṅguttara Nikāya_ as one of the sixteen ‘mahājanapadas’ of Jambudvīpa. From the first, Avanti became an important centre of the new doctrine which we now call Buddhism, and may have been the scene of elaboration of Pali, the sacred language of the Buddhists. Several of the most earnest adherents of the Dhamma were either born or resided there: Abhaya Kumāra, Isidasi, Isidatta, Dhammadāla, Sona Kuṭikaṇṇa, and especially Mahākaccāyana.

Many are the stories that are told of Mahākaccāyana. He was born at Ujjayini in the family of the chaplain of King Čandapājajota. He learnt the three Vedas, and, on his father’s death, succeeded him in the chaplainship. Subsequently, both Mahākaccāyana and the king his master were converted by the Buddha, and Mahākaccāyana devoted himself to furthering the Dhamma in his native province. One of his most celebrated converts was Sono Kuṭikanno (so called because he used to wear ear-jewellery worth a crore). Kuṭikanno, the son of a wealthy councillor of Avanti, became a land-owner, but asked Mahākaccāyana to ordain him, after hearing him preach. Isidatta was another of Mahākaccāyana’s converts. He was born at Velugama as the son of a guide to caravans.

Dhammadāla, a Brahman’s son of the country of Avanti, was also one of the early converts to the new faith. When he was returning from the university of Takṣaśīlā after completing his education, he met a therā, heard the Dhamma from him, left the world and acquired six-fold abhiññā.

When the first Great Council of the disciples of the Buddha was held after his _parinibbāna_, to compile his teachings, Vasa sent messengers to the bhikkhus of Avanti inviting them to attend and help to perform the task. This shows that at that time

---

1. _Aṅguttara Nikāya_, Vol. IV, pp. 252, 256, 261.
3. _Theragāthā Commentary_, 39.
5. _Theragāthā_, 120.
6. _Ibid._, 204.
7. _Vinaya Texts_, II, 32; _Theragāthā_, 369; _Udāna_, V, 6.
8. _Sangūyutta Nikāya_, III, p. 9; IV, 117; _Aṅguttara Nikāya_, I, p. 23; V, 46; _Mahāniddāna Nikāya_, III, 194, 223.
12. _Psalms of the Brethren_, p. 149.
(c. 480 B.C.) followers of the new faith in the western province of Avanti must have been numerous and influential.

King Bimbisāra of Magadha had a son, Abhaya, by a courtesan of Ujjayini named Padunavati. The great propounder of the Jaina faith, Mahāvīra, is said to have performed some of his penances in the country of Avanti, especially in Ujjayini. Here, too, the temple of Mahākāla—one of the twelve most famous Śaiva temples in India—was built. One of the sacred places of the Lingayat sect is situated at Ujjain. The Lingayat itinerant ascetics wander over India, frequenting especially the five similāsanas or Lingayat sees.

With regard to the political history of Avanti, we have already referred to King Canda Pajjota or Pradyota, who was a contemporary of the Buddha, and under whom the new faith became the state religion of Avanti. The Pradyotas were kings of Avanti (Western Malwa), and their capital was Ujjayini. There is a reference to King Canda Pajjota in the Chinese Buddhist legends collected by Beal. In Buddha’s time, the king of Madhurā (Mathurā) was styled Avantiputta, showing that on his mother’s side he was connected with the royal family of Ujjain.

The commentary on verses 21–3 of the Dhammapada gives a romantic story of the manner in which a matrimonial alliance was established between the royal families of Kauśambi and Avanti. One day, King Pajjota asked his courtiers whether there was any king more glorious than himself, and they told him that King Udēna of Kosambi surpassed him. Angered, King Pajjota determined to attack Udēna. He caused a wooden elephant to be made, and concealed sixty warriors in it. Knowing that Udēna had a great liking for fine elephants, he had him informed by spies that a magnificent elephant was to be found in the frontier forest. King Udēna came to the forest, and, in pursuit of the prize, became separated from his retinue and was taken prisoner. While a captive, he fell in love with Vāsuladattā, daughter of King Pajjota. One day, when Pajjota was away on a pleasure jaunt, Udēna put Vāsuladattā on an elephant and eloped with her. On his return, King Pajjota sent a force in pursuit, but the wily Udēna delayed

---

1 Therīgāthā Commentary, p. 39. For further references in Buddhist texts to Ujjain and Avanti, see, e.g., Therīgāthā Commentary, pp. 260-1, Vīrāvatsāram Commentary, pp. 137ff.
2 Mrs. S. Stevenson, The Heart of Jainism, p. 33.
5 The Romantic Legend of Śākya Buddha, S. Beal, p. 29.
6 Beal, in Hindustan, pp. 2-3.
7 Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 53.
his pursuers by scattering coins and gold-dust on the route, and
reached his own territory in safety. Udena and Vasuladatta
entered the city in triumph, and with due pomp and ceremony the
princess was anointed queen.¹

In the fourth century B.C., Ujjayini became subject to Magadha.
Later (early third century B.C.), Asoka was stationed at Ujjayini
as Viceroy of the Avanti country, prior to his accession.² We read³
that Asoka’s son, Mahinda, was born while Asoka was Viceroy in
Ujjayini, under his father Bindusara. Asoka’s grandson, Samprati,
ruled in Ujjain and figured in Jaina legends.⁴ Vikramaditya, the
celebrated king of Ujjain, who is usually identified with Candragupta
II (c. 375 A.D.) is said to have expelled the Scythians and thereafter
established his power over the greater part of India.

In later times some of the ruling families of Avanti made their
mark on Indian history. The Paramara dynasty of Malwa, anciently
known as Avanti, is especially memorable by reason of its association
with many eminent names in the history of later Sanskrit literature.
The dynasty was founded early in the ninth century by a chief
named Upendra or Kṣnarāja. Upendra appears to have come
from Candrāvatī and Achalgurh near Mount Abu, where his clan
had been settled for a long time. The seventh rājā, named Muñja,
was famous for his learning and eloquence, and was not only a patron
of poets but himself a poet of no small reputation. About 1018 A.D.,
Muñja’s nephew, the famous Bhoja, ascended the throne of Dhārā,
which was the capital of Malwa in those days, and reigned gloriously
for more than forty years.⁵ About 1060 A.D., this prince succumbed
to an attack by the confederate kings of Gujarat and Cedi; but his
dynasty lasted as a purely local power until the beginning of the
thirteenth century, when it was superseded by chiefs of the Tomara
clan, who were followed in their turn by Chauhan rājās, from whom
the crown passed to Muhammadan kings in 1401. The Emperor
Akbar suppressed the local dynasty in 1569, and incorporated Malwa
in the Mughal empire.⁶

There is generally one distinguishing mark of the coins current
in Ujjain; but on some of the rare coins the word ‘Ujeniya’ is incised
in Brahmī characters of the second century B.C. Generally on
one side is a man with a symbol of the Sun and on the other is seen
the sign of Ujjain. On some coins, a bull within a fence, or the
Bodhi-tree, or Sumeru hill, or the figure of the Goddess of Fortune,

¹ Rhys Davids, Buddhist India, pp. 4-7. The same story is related in another
form by Bhasa in his drama, Svapnavasavadattā; Dham, Com., Vol. I, pp. 191-2.
² V. A. Smith, Asoka, p. 235. ³ Copleston, Buddhism, p. 185.
⁴ Mrs. Stevenson, Heart of Jainism, p. 74.
is seen on one side. Some coins of Ujjain are quadrangular while others are round.¹ The class of round coins found at Ujjain display a special symbol, the ‘cross and balls’, known from its almost universal occurrence on the coins of ancient Malwa as the Ujjain symbol.² Square copper Mughal coins were struck at Ujjain up to the time of Shah Jahan I.³

---

¹ R. D. Banerjee, Prāśīna Muḍrā, p. 108.
² Brown, Coins of India, p. 20.
³ Ibid., p. 87.
CHAPTER LXI

THE SINDHU-SAUVIRAS

The Sauvīras seem to have been an ancient people. Their country is mentioned as early as Baudhāyana's Dharmasūtra. It was at that time considered an impure country, situated outside the limits of Aryandom proper; and Aryans who happened to go there were required to perform a sacrifice of purification on their return. In later literature, the Sauvīras are often connected with their neighbouring tribe, the Sindhus, and the inclusive name 'Sindhu-Sauvīra', at once determines that the two tribes which were later regarded as one and the same were settled on the Sindhu or Indus.

The Sauvīras and Sindhus seem to have played an important part in the Kurukṣetra war; they are described in the Bhiṣmaparvan as having joined the Kauravas, along with the Bhargas, Andhras, Kirātas, Kośalas and Gāndhras. Elsewhere, the Sauvīras are said to have supported Bliṣma in the war, together with the Śālvas, Matsyas, Ambaṣṭhas, Traigarttas, Kekayas and Kaitavas. In Bhiṣmaparvan (51, 14), the Sindhus and Sauvīras are mentioned together, and are associated with the Śivas, Vaśatis and Gāndhras. In a late passage of the Epic, mention is made of a Greek overlord (Yavanādhipa) of Sauvīra; he must have been one of those Indo-Bactrian princes who established themselves in the north and western portions of India between about 200 B.C. and 200 A.D. According to the Rāmāyaṇa (Bengal recension, Kiṣ. K., 41, 8–10) the Sindhu-Sauvīras were settled in the western division of India.

The Sindhus (or Saindhavas) and Sauvīras are usually conjoined in the Purāṇas, though they are mentioned separately in the Viṣṇupurāṇa. According to the Mārkandeya Purāṇa, they were located in the north (LVII, 36; LVIII, 39); but the Viṣṇupurāṇa places them in the extreme west along with the Hūnas, Śālvas, Sākalas, Madras (see Madra Chapter for their location, etc.; Wilson's Viṣṇu P., Hall's Ed. II, III, 133). Puranic tradition seems to point to the intimate relation of the Sauvīras with the Śivas, and therefore with their neighbouring Uṣīnāras as well. The Sauvīras were traditionally descended from Suvīra, one of the four sons of Śivi Auśīnara. Śivi and his sons are said to have founded the

---

1 Baud., I, i, 2.  
2 Bhīṣmaparvan, Chap. 18, 13-14.  
3 Adiśparvan, Chap. 139, 21-3.  
4 Book II, Chap. III.
kingdoms of the Śibis, Vṛṣadarbhas, Madras, Kekayas and Sauviras, thus occupying the whole of the Punjab except the north-western corner.\(^1\) According to the Agnipurāṇa (Chap. 200), the river Devikā, but, according to the Bhāgavatapurāṇa (verse 10), the river Ikṣumarī flowed through Sauvira.

Other Epic references to the Sauviras include the mention of a Sauvira king Śatruṇjaya, who received instruction from a priest named Bharadvāja (Mbh., XII, Chap. 140, 5249-50), and of a Sauvira princess who married Manasyu, the son of Pravīrā by a Saurasena princess, and grandson of Puru (Mbh., Ādi-parvan, Chap. 49, 3696-7). Sovīra or Sauvīra is also mentioned in early Buddhist literature. The Mahāgovinda Suttanta\(^2\) refers to Sovīra whose king was Bharata; while the Dimyānādāna in relating a story (pp. 544-86) accounting for the name of Bharukaccha (Broach), refers to Rudrāyaṇa, king of Roruka in Sauvīra. The Mahābhāṣya of Patañjali and the Vyākaraṇa of Kumādēsvara mention a city named Dattāmitrī in Sauvīra.\(^3\) In the Milinda-Pañho, Sovīra is described as a great sea-port (Trenckner Ed., p. 359); and it is not unlikely that the country is identical with the famous Sophir or Ophir of the Bible.\(^4\) Alberuni appears to identify Sauvīra with Multan and Jahrawar (India, Vol. I, pp. 300, 302); while, according to the Haimakośa (IV, 26), the Sauvīra country is identical with Kunālaka.

Towards the middle of the second century A.D., the land of the Sindhus and the Sauvīras seems to have been administered by the Kṣatrāpas rulers of W. India. The Junāgadhī Rock Inscription of Rātradāman (c. 150 A.D.) refers to the Mahākṣatrāpa's conquest of Sindhu-Sauvīra,\(^5\) along with E. and W. Ākara (= mod. Khandesh) and Avantī (Phrva-parākaravanti), Anupaniyṛ (probably the Māndhātā region), Ānartta, Surāṭra, Svabhara, Maru, Kaccha, Kukura, Aparānta and other countries. The Kṣatrāpas seem, however, to have wrested the country from the Kuśānas, probably from one of the successors of Kaṇiška. After the era of the Kṣatrāpas, the region probably passed over to the Guptas, and later to the Maitrakas of

---

\(^1\) Pargiter, A.I.H.T., pp. 109, 264; and Chap. on Yaudheyas.

\(^2\) Dīgha, II, pp. 235-6.

\(^3\) Ind. Ant., 1911, Foreign Elements in Hindu Population (Bhandarkar); Bomb. Gaz., I, ii, 11; Kramadēsvara, p. 96.

\(^4\) Cunningham, A.G.I., pp. 569-71.

\(^5\) P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 390. Sindhu is the inland portion lying to the west of the Indus (Watters, On Yuan Cheuang, II, 252-3 read with 256). Sauvīra includes the inland portion lying to the east of the Indus as far as Multan (Alberuni, I, 302: Ind. Ant., 7, 259). See also in this connection Appendix B of P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., dealing with the Chronological relation of Kaṇiška and Rātradāman I (pp. 522-7).
Valabhi. The country of the Sindhus, i.e. Sind, was the first kingdom to feel the impact of the conquering raids of the Arabs. An eighth century copperplate grant of the Gujarat Calukya Pulakesirāja\(^1\) refers to the Tajikas (i.e. Arabs), who are described as having defeated the Saindhavas and other tribes of W. India.

CHAPTER LXII

THE SURĀŚṬRAS

The Surāśtras as a tribe must have existed at least as early as the period represented by the Epics. The tribe, together with its country, is mentioned in more than one connection in Vālmīki's Rāmāyaṇa. The Kīśkindhyā Kāṇḍa locates the tribe in the west; for, in sending the retinue of monkeys in the western direction in quest of Sītā, Sugrīva asked Suṣena to send his unit to Surāśṭra (among other countries). There are a number of countries and peoples in this list, e.g. the Kalingas, Andhras, Cholas, Vidarbhas, etc. that cannot be located in the west; but the fact that the Surāśtras were included in the west division of India is upheld not only by a reference in the Mahābhārata, where they are associated with the countries of the Kuntis and Avantis, but also by the evidence of the Purāṇas. According to the Viṣṇupurāṇa, they are definitely located in the extreme west, and associated with the Sūras, Ābhīras, Arbudas and Mālavas, all of whom dwelt along the Pāripātra mountains. The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa includes them in W. India (Aparānta), while the Brahmaṇapurāṇa associates them with the Aparāntas, Śūdras, Ābhīras and Mālavas, and describes them as dwelling along the Pariyātra (= Paripātra) hills. This geographical location of the tribe is also supported by the evidence of the Kāvyamāṅgala of Rājaśekhara who includes the Surāśtra country in the Paścādyesa or west division along with Dasoraka, Travana, Bhriguacakha, Kacchiya, Anartta, Arbuda and other countries. At the time of the Mahābhārata, the Surāśtra country was ruled by the Yādavas.

The Surāśtra country is referred to in Baudhāyana's Dharmasūtra, where it is coupled with Daksināpatha (Deccan). The country came to be included in the Maurya empire as early as the reign of Candragupta; for the Junāgaḍh Rock Inscription of Rudradāman refers to Candragupta's Rāṣṭriya (= Viceroy) Puṣyagupta the Vaiśya, who constructed the Sudarśana lake. It was included in Aśoka's dominions, for the same inscription refers to Tushāsptha, a Persian contemporary and vassal of Aśoka, who carried out supplementary operations on the lake. This Tushāsptha

1 Ādi Kāṇḍa, Canto XII; Ayodhyā Kāṇḍa, Canto X; Kīśkindhyā Kāṇḍa, Canto XLI.
2 Virāṭaparvan, Chap. I, 12.
4 Chap. 57, 52.
5 Gaekwad's Oriental Series, pp. 93-4.
TRIBES IN ANCIENT INDIA

was Rājā of the Surāstra Samgha (community). That Surāṣṭra enjoyed the democratic form of government implied by the use of the word ‘Samgha’ is also testified to by Kaṇṭiliya1 (Arthaśāstra, p. 378), who refers to a number of Samghas, among which were included Kamboja and Surāṣṭra.

The records of Greek historians establish that after Aśoka and his successors, Surāṣṭra passed into the hands of the Bactrian Greeks. According to Strabo,2 the Bactrian conquests were achieved partly by Menander (middle of second century B.C.) and partly by Demetrios, son of Euthydemos (c. 190 B.C.). They gained possession not only of Patalene, but of the kingdom of Sāraostos and Sigerdis3 which constitutes the remainder of the coast. Patalene is to be identified with the Indus delta, while Sāraostos must certainly be identical with Surāṣṭra (Syrastrenē of Ptolemy).

Ptolemy4 refers to a country called Syrastrēnê, which must be identical with Surāṣṭra (= mod. Sora in Kathiawar) on the Gulf of Kānthi (= Gulf of Kaccha or Cutch). Syrastrēnê, which extended from the mouth of the Indus to the Gulf of Cutch, was one of the three divisions of Indo-Scythia in Ptolemy’s time,—the other two being Patalene and Abiria. Syrastrēnê is also mentioned in the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea as the sea-board of Aberia (= Abiria = Ābhira), which is to be identified with the region to the east of the Indus, above the insular portion formed by its bifurcation (McCrinlde, p. 140). Pliny, in his enumeration of the tribes of this part of India, mentions the Horatae,—evidently a corruption of Surāṣṭra or Sorath (Lib., VI, c. XX).

The Indo-Scythian or Śaka rule was interrupted by the Andhra dynasty, Viliyavākura II (Gautamiputra Sātakarnī, 113-138 A.D.). In the Junāgaḍh Rock Inscription, Rudradāman is stated to have extended his rule over East and West Avanti, Ānarta, Surāṣṭra, Anupa, Sindhu-Sauvira, Maru, Kaccha, Kukura, Aparānta, etc. Of these, Surāṣṭra, Kukura, Anupa and Aparānta, which formed parts of Gautamiputra Sātakarnī’s dominions, must have been conquered either from him or from one of his sons.

After the Scythian occupation, Surāṣṭra seems to have passed into the hands of the Guptas. It is not improbable that Surāṣṭra was one of the countries whose rulers hastened to buy peace by establishing diplomatic relations with Samudragupta (c. 326-375

1 Arthaśāstra, p. 378.
4 See McCrinlde’s Ptolemy, pp. 35-6, 136, 140.
A.D.). The Saka-Murundas alluded to in the Allahabad Pillar Inscription (C.I.I., Vol. III) were probably the Kṣatrapas of Indo-Scythia who came to do homage to the great conqueror. His successor Candragupta II (375-413 A.D.) also seems to have led a successful campaign against the Western Kṣatrapas of Surāśṭra. The fall of the Saka Satrapa is alluded to by Bana, and also proved by coins; while we find decisive evidence of the Gupta occupation of Surāśṭra in the Junāgadh Inscription of Skandagupta (c. 455-480 A.D.) which tells us that he (Skanda) 'deliberated for days and nights before making up his mind who could he trusted with the important task of guarding the lands of the Surāśṭras'. He finally appointed Parṇadatta as governor.

The rule of the Guptas in this territory does not seem to have long survived Skandagupta. Soon the Maitrakas of Valabhi asserted their independence, and established their supremacy over West Malwa, Baroda, Gujar, Kathiawar and the adjoining region. Accordingly, when Hsüan Tsang visited Su-la-ch’a or Suratha in the seventh century A.D., it was included in the kingdom of Valabhi. According to the pilgrim, Su-la-ch’a touched the river Mo-hi (= Mahi) on the west, and its capital lay at the foot of Mt. Yuh-shan-ta (= Prakrit Ujjanta, Skr. Urjayat of the Junāgadh Inscriptions of Rudradaman and Skandagupta), which is to be identified with the Girnar hill near Junāgadh.

When the Maitrakas of Valabhi became extinct about the middle of the eighth century A.D., the Surāśṭras seem to have suffered a reverse at the hands of the Tājkas who are generally identified with the Arabs. Already, during the early years of the eighth century, the Arabs had taken possession of Sindi, and it is certainly not unlikely that they attempted a conquest of the neighbouring Surastra country. In a Nausari Copperplate grant of the Gujarāt Cālukyas, Pulakesiraja (eighth century A.D.) is credited with having defeated the Tājkas who are therein reported to have destroyed the Saindhas, Kacchelas, Surāśtras, Cāvotakas, Gurjaras and Mauryas, before they were themselves defeated by the Cālukya king.

---

2 Ibid.
3 Ray, Maitrakas of Valabhi, I.H.Q., Sept., 1928.
CHAPTER LXIII

THE SUDRAS

The Sudras as a tribe (as distinct from the fourth caste) seem to have played some part in Ancient Indian History, and are several times mentioned in the Mahābhārata and Purāṇas, as also in the accounts of Greek geographers and historians.

The Sudras were a fairly important tribe of the north-west at the time when Alexander the Great invaded India (326 B.C.). They were among those who were vanquished by the Macedonian conqueror. Greek writers refer to them as Sodrai, in association with the Massanoi and Mousikaroi, all of whom occupied portions of modern Sind. The next datable reference to the tribe is contained in Patañjali’s Mahābhāṣya (1, 2, 3), where they are associated with the Abhiras. In the Mahābhārata also they are associated with the Abhiras, and are said to have occupied the region where the river Sarasvati vanishes into the desert, i.e. near Vinasana in Western Rajputana.

In the Harivamsa, we have ‘Madrābhīrāh’ (Madras and Abhiras) where we would expect to find ‘Śudrabhirāh’; here Madra may be a misreading for Śudra, for the Madras are hardly anywhere connected with the Abhiras.

According to the Mārkandeyya Purāṇa (57, 35), the Sudras were located in the Aparānta region or western country, and were associated with the Vālīkās, Vatadhanas, Abhiras, Pallavas, etc. The Brahmapurāṇa also places them in the west, and associates them with the Saurāṣtras, Abhiras, Arbudas, Mālavas, etc. The Viṣṇupurāṇa (II, 3) has Śurābhīrāh for what obviously should be Śudrabhirāh. In the Bhāgavata-purāṇa (XII, 1, 36) also we have:

’Saurāṣṭrāvāityabhirāsca Śudra Arbūda-mālavāh.’

1 Śalyabharanam, 3119.
2 Mahābh., IX, 37, 1: ‘Śudrabhirān prati āvesād yatra nāśī Saravatī.’
5 19, 17: ‘Tathāparāntyāh Saurāṣṭrāḥ Śudrabhirāsaḥthīrābudāḥ Māranā Mālavāscaiva Pāriyātraniyāsināh.’
CHAPTER LXIV

THE LĀṬAS

The name of the Lāṭas as a people must have been known as early as the beginning of the Christian era, if not earlier, and their country Lāṭa or Lāṭa-viṣaya was well known in Indian history till as late as the seventh and eighth centuries. It is curious, however, that neither the country nor its people is ever mentioned in any of the earlier Purāṇas, or even in the Epics.

The earliest definite mention of the country seems to have been made by Ptolemy. According to his description of India within the Ganges, Lārikā lay to the east of Indo-Skythia along the sea-coast.1 Lāṭadesa in its Prakrit form Lārdesa (the country of Lār) seems to have been a very early name for the territory of Gujrat and Northern Konkon,2 and McCrindle conjectured that Lārikā ‘may therefore be a formation from Lār with the Greek termination ike appended’.3 The name Lārdesa probably survived the Hindu period, ‘for the sea to the west of that coast was in the early Muhammadan time called the sea of Lār, and the language spoken on its shores was called by Mas’ūdi, Lārī’.4

In Ptolemy’s Lārikā lay the mouth of the river Mōphis, which is identical with the Mahī, a village named Pakidare which is difficult to identify, and the cape Maleo which ‘must have been a projection of the land somewhere between the mouth of the Mahī and that of the Narmāḍa, but nearer to the former if Ptolemy’s indication be correct’.5

The two great cities of Barygaza and Ozene were also within the political division of Lārikā. In Ptolemy’s Gulf of Barygaza lay Kamane, doubtless identical with Kamonone of the Periplus which places it to the south of the Narmāḍa estuary, while Ptolemy locates it to the north; Nausaripa, which is the same as modern Nausārī on the coast and Sanskrit Navasārīkā, and finally Poulipoula, which in Yule’s map is located at modern Sanjam on the coast south from Nausārī. Barygaza itself is the same as Sanskrit Bhṛguķṣetra or Bhṛgukaccha, Pāli Bharukaccha, modern Broach; while Ozene, of course, is Ujjayinī or Ujjain.

---

1 McCrindle, Ptolemy’s Ancient India, pp. 38, 152-3.
3 Ibid., p. 153; Marco Polo, II, p. 353 n.
4 Ibid., p. 153; Marco Polo, II, p. 353 n.
5 McCrindle’s Ptolemy, p. 38.
The Ceylonese chronicles (*Dipavamsa* and *Mahavamsa*) refer to the country of Lāja in connection with the first Aryan migration to Ceylon, led by Prince Vijaya. Attempts have been made to identify Lāja both with Lāṭa or Lāḍa in Gujrat, and Rāḍha in Bengal, and both countries claim the honour of the first Aryanization of Ceylon. Prince Vijaya is described in the chronicles as having been the great-grandson of a princess of Vanga; hence one school of scholars mainly depending on historical evidence proposes to equate Lāja with Rāḍha, while the other school finds Lāja to be philologically more closely akin to Lāṭa or Lāḍa. It is not impossible that the tradition of two different streams of immigration came to be knit together in the story of Vijaya, as Dr. Barnett thinks.¹

In the days of the early Imperial Guptas, the Lāṭa country came to be formed into an administrative province as Lāṭa-vaṣaya, along with Tripuri-vaṣaya, Arikīna-vaṣaya, Antarvedi-vaṣaya, Vaḷavī-vaṣaya, Gayā-vaṣaya, etc. These vaṣayas or pradeṣas seem to have been subordinate to the larger administrative division, called bhakī.

It is likely that the Lāṭa country was the same as the Lāṭēsvara country mentioned in one or two early Gurjara and Rāṣṭrakūṭa records. In the Baroda Copperplate inscription (verse 11) the capital of the kingdom of Lāṭēsvara is said to have been at Elapur. The inscription also gives the genealogy of the kings of Lāṭēsvara. K. M. Munshi, in his work 'Gujarāṭa and its literature', gives us some information about Lāṭa. He says: 'From about c. A.C. 150, the tract between Khaṃhīṭa (Cambay) and Narmāḍa acquired the name of Lāṭa which, thereafter, came to include the country south of the Narmāḍa up to the Dāmanagāṇḍa. Under the Chalukyas of Anahilavāḍa Pāṭana (A.C. 961), the name Lāṭa was gradually displaced by the name Gurjara Bhūmi ... The whole of Lāṭa up to Dāmanagāṇḍa became part of Gujarāṭa in c. A.C. 1400.'² Lāṭa, then, was evidently the equivalent of South Gujarāṭa. Lassen, however, identifies Lāṛike with Sanskrit Rāṣṭrika,³ in its Prakrit form Lāṭikī, which is easily equated with Lāṭa, though the equation of Rāṣṭrika and Lāṭikī is not convincing enough.

Lāṭa is mentioned twice in Vātsyāyana's *Kāmasūtra*.⁴ Vātsyāyana does not give any clue as to location of the country, but contents himself with describing the characteristics of the men and women respectively. Lāṭa is also referred to by the author of

---

² Ibid., pp. 2-3. See also ibid., p. 20 n., p. 36.
³ See chapter on Rāṣṭrikas. It may be that Rāṣṭrika formed the northern part of Gujarāṭa, and Lāṭa, the southern.
⁴ Ibid., pp. 103 and 126.
Kuvalayamālā (c. 779 A.D.). The inhabitants of Lāṭa are distinguished from those of Gurjara, the Lāṭa people appearing as pleasure-loving and humorous, and those of the north as sterner and of stronger build. Lāṭa appears to have possessed distinctive literary traits. A kind of style, favoured by the authors of Lāṭa, acquired the name of Lāṭī. Rājaśekhara represents the people of Lāṭa as preferring Prākrit to Sanskrit.
CHAPTER LXV

THE ŚŪRPĀRAKAS

The Śūrpāarakas were evidently the people of Śūrpāraka. The Mārkaṇḍeya list (LVII, 49) reads Śūryārakas which is evidently a mistake, but all the Purāṇas agree in placing them in the west where lived the celebrated sage Rāma Jāmadagnya (Mbh., Vana P., LXXXV, 8185). But the Mahābhārata also locates them in the south (Sabhā P., XXX, 1169; Vana P., LXXXVIII, 8337) because it bordered on the southern sea in the western region (Sānti P., XLIX, 1778-82). The region situated near Prabhāsa (Vana P., ČXVIII, 10221-7) included the country around the mouth of the Narmadā (Anusāsana P., XXV, 1736). It was the sage Rāma Jāmadagnya who is credited with having built the city of Śūrpāraka (Harivamśa, XCVI, 50).

Śūrpāraka is mentioned in one of the inscriptions of Śaka Usavadata and is undoubtedly the same as Suppāraka of Pāli literature where it is described as a great sea-coast emporium identified with Sopārā of early Greek geographers.
CHAPTER LXVI

THE AUDUMBARAS

The Audumbaras seem to have been a minor oligarchical or republican tribe. They are mentioned in the Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata (II, 1869), where they are located in the Madhyadeśa (midland district). The Harivaṃśa refers to certain ascetics, descendants of Viśvāmitra, as Audumbaras, but it is difficult to determine their exact relation with the tribe of the Sabhāparvan.

The Purāṇas¹ mention a people called the Udumbaras, along with the Kāpiṅgalas, Kuruvaḥyas and Gajāhvayas. The last-named people were connected with Hastināpura, the Kuru capital, and the Kuruvaḥyas must also have had some connection with the famous Kuru people. It is, therefore, reasonable to assume that the Udumbaras (presumably identical with the Audumbaras) occupied a district contiguous with, or not far from, the Kuru country. Both Lassen (Ind. Art. map) and Cunningham (Arch. Surv. Rep., XIV, 115 and 135) seem to locate the Udumbaras somewhere in Cutch.

The Harivaṃśa² mentions a river Udumbaravati in the south, while the Mañjuśrīmulakalpa³ refers to a city named Udumbarapura in the Magadhajanapada.

The Audumbaras are also known from coins which come chiefly from the Kangra District of the Punjab, and which belong to about the eighteenth century A.D.⁴

¹ See, e.g. Markandeya Purāṇa, LVIII, 9.
² CLXVIII, 9511.
³ Ganapati Śaṣṭri’s Ed., p. 633. ‘Māgadhāṃ janapadam prāpya pure Udumbarāhvaṭa’.
⁴ Smith, Cat. of Coins, pp. 160-1.
CHAPTER LXVII

THE KĀKAS, KHARAPARIKAS AND SANAKĀNIKAS

These three tribal peoples are referred to in the Allahabad Pillar Inscription of Samudragupta, along with the Mālavas, Ārjunāyanas, Yaudheyas, Madrakas, Ābhīras and Prārjunas. Recent researches have ascertained that the better-known among these tribes—i.e. the Mālavas, Yaudheyas, Madras and Ābhīras—inhabited the regions on the western, north-western and south-western fringe of Āryāvarta proper; and it is likely that the Kākas, Kharaparakas and Sanakānikas also occupied this region.

So far as is known, there is no other mention of the Sanakānikas, either in literature or in any other epigraphic record except the Udayagiri Cave Inscription of G.E. 82 which mentions a Maharāja of the Sanakānika tribe. Udayagiri is just two miles to the north-west of Bhilsa, ancient Vidisā.

The name Kharaparika does not occur elsewhere in inscriptions or literature; but Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar finds a probable identification of the tribe with Kharpura mentioned in the Bātīhāgarh Inscription of the Damoh District of the Central Provinces. The Mārkanḍeya Purāṇa (LVIII, 47) mentions a tribe called Khara-sagara-rāṣis along with the Gandharas and the Yaudheyas; and the Matsyapurāṇa (CXXI, 56) refers to a country named Kharapatha, watered by the river Nalini. It is difficult to say whether this people Khara-sagara-rāṣi, and country Kharapatha, had anything to do with the Kharaparakas.

The Kākas are mentioned in the Mahābhārata (VI, 9, 64) where they are associated with the Vidarbhas who were a well-known people occupying tracts of territory in what is now known as the Central Provinces. The territory of the Kākas is sometimes identified with Kākūpur near Bithur, while Smith suggests an identification with Kākanāda near Sāṇi.¹

---

¹ I.H.Q., I, p. 258; E.P., XII, p. 46, v. 5.
² A variant reading is 'Swarasāgaravarāśi'.
³ Var. reading Kancika.
⁴ Bombay Gazetteer.
CHAPTER LXVIII

THE MATSYAS

The Matsyas appear to have been one of the prominent Ksatriya tribes that made up the Vedic Aryan people in the earliest period of their residence in India. We read in a hymn of the Rgveda (VII, 18, 6) that the Matsyas were attacked by Turvaśa, a famous king, in order to extract from them the wealth which he required for the performance of a sacrifice. We observe that the Matsyas were regarded as a wealthy people, their riches most probably consisting of cows which were much in demand for the performance of lengthy and elaborate sacrifices. It is well known that in Epic times the Matsyas were very rich in this wealth of cows, for which the Trigarttas and the Kurus led predatory expeditions against them. In the Rigvedic passage referred to above, the word 'Matsya' in the text has been taken by some scholars to mean 'fish' (its original meaning). Sāyāna gives both meanings, and the authors of the Vedic Index (Vol. II, p. 121) also think both possible. From the context, however, Matsya clearly refers to the people. There is, moreover, no doubt that cattle made up the wealth here intended, for the verse following the one in question states clearly that Indra recovered the cows (gavyā) from the Trisū plunderers (just as Indra's son, Arjuna, recovered the cattle plundered by the Kurus as described in the Mahābhārata). Further, other tribes of Western India, e.g. the Druhyus and the Bhriguś, are mentioned in the verse (VII, 18, 7) side by side with the Matsyas. So it is evident that the latter is here also a tribal name.

The question arises whether the name Matsya has anything to do with totemism, as suggested by Prof. Macdonell in his Vedic Mythology. He says: 'There are possibly in the Rgveda some survivals of totemism, or the belief in the descent of the human race or of individual tribes or families from animals or plants', and he refers to the Matsyas as an illustration of his statement (Vedic Mythology, p. 153). But, as Prof. A. Berriedale Keith points out, 'mere animal names prove little as to totemism, which is not demonstrated for any Aryan stock'.¹ The myth about the birth of a king called Matsya from the womb of a fish along with Matsyagandhā Satyavatī, as related in the Mahābhārata (Adiparvan,

Chap. 63) cannot he proved to have any connection with the Matsya people. Nor is there anything in the account of the Matsyas to show that the fish was an object of worship among them, or was ever regarded with any special veneration. The fish incarnation of Viṣṇu has nothing specifically to do with the Matsya people. There is, in fact, no valid reason for thinking that such Indo-Aryan tribal names as Matsya (fish), Aja (goat), and Vatsa (calf) have anything to do with totemism.

Coming down to the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, we find that a Matsya king, Dhvasan Dvaitavana, is mentioned among the great monarchs of ancient times who acquired renown among the Vedic Aryan people owing to their performance of the horse sacrifice. We shall have occasion to mention this king again in connection with the lake to which he gave his name.

In the Kausītaki Upaniṣad, the Matsyas are mentioned along with other tribes, viz. the Uśīnaras, Kuru-Paṇcālas, and Kāśi-Videhas. In the Gopatka Brāhmaṇa, they are connected with the Śālvas, a Ksatriya tribe in their neighbourhood, and mentioned along with other well-known Ksatriya tribes of the Vedic period, such as the Kuru-Paṇcālas, Áṅga-Magadhas, Kāśi-Kośalas and Vaśa-Uśīnaras. The relation of the Matsyas with the Śālvas is also attested by the Mahābhārata. King Suśarmā of the Trigarttas, addressing Duryodhana, says: ‘We have been defeated more than once by the Matsyas and Śālvas (Matsya-Śālveyasaiḥ).’ Evidently the Śālvas were neighbours of the Matsyas and their allies in Vedic and Epic times. In the Padmapurāṇa (Chap. 3) and the Viṣṇudharmottara Mahāpurāṇa (Chap. 9), Matsya is mentioned as one of the Janapadas of Bharatavarṣa.

In later times, we find the Matsyas associated with the Ćedis and the Śūrasenas. Among the kings who brought about the ruin of their own tribes and families, the Mahābhārata (Vol. 74, 16) mentions a King Sahaja who was instrumental in causing the destruction of the Ćedi-Matsyas. In the Paurāṇic age the Matsyas are spoken of along with the Śūrasenas and the Cambridge History of India observes that the two peoples are constantly associated, and may possibly have been united under one king. In the Bhiṣma-parvan of the Mahābhārata, the Ćedi-Matsya-Karuṣas are grouped together in one passage, the Ćedi-Matsyas in another, and the Ćedi-

---

1 The Vāyu-purāṇa (Chap. 99) also refers to this King Matsya born of Uparicara Vasu and a fish.
4 Gopatka Brāhmaṇa, I, 2, 9; Bibliotheca Indica Series, ed. Dr. R. L. Mitra, p. 30.
6 Vol. 1, p. 316.
Matsya-Karuṣas in another. Elsewhere in the Mahābhārata, in the description of the Kurukṣetra battle, the Cedi-Paṇcāla-Karuṣa-Matsyas, Matsya-Paṇcāla-Čedis, Čedi-Karuṣa-Matsyas, and Cedi-Matsyas respectively are grouped together.

In the Manusamhitā we read: 'The plains of the Kurus, the (country of the) Matsyas, Paṇcālas and Śūrasenakas, these (form) indeed, the country of the Brahmarshis (Brahman sages) which ranks immediately after Brahmvarta. From a Brāhmaṇ born in that country let all men on earth learn their several usages.' From this passage it appears that the Matsyas were regarded by the Indians as belonging to the most orthodox followers of Brahmanism in ancient times. Manu also prescribes, when laying down rules for the marshalling of troops on the battle-field, that 'Men born in Kurukṣetra, Matsyas, Paṇcālas, and those born in Śūrasena, let him (i.e. the king or leader) cause to fight in the van of the battle, as well as (others who are) tall and light'. Apparently the Matsyas occupied a pre-eminent position both because of the purity of their conduct and customs, and through their bravery and prowess on the field of battle.

In the Kīṣkindhyā Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyana, we read that when Sugrīva sent his monkey host to search for Sītā, those under Ān̄gada made their enquiries throughout the countries of the Matsyas and the Kaliṅgas, two peoples situated 'at the two extremities of India'. When speaking about the country of the Śūrasenas and the Kurus and Bharatas who were the immediate neighbours of the Matsyas, Sugrīva does not refer to the Matsyas at all, although as we have seen, the Śūrasenas and Matsyas were constantly associated in the Paurāṇic age. This omission suggests that at the time of the Rāmāyana the Matsyas were not regarded as an important people: perhaps they had lost the importance which they had acquired in the Vedāge.

Among references to Matsya in the Buddhist literature, we may mention Āṅguttara Nikāya (I, p. 213; IV, pp. 252, 256, 260), where Matsya is named as one of the Mahājanapadas of India. There is a reference to the Matsyas or Macchas (together with the Kāśis and Śūrasenas) in the Janavasubha Sutta of the Dīgha Nikāya in connection with the account of the Buddha's stay in Nādikā. In the Vidhurapāṇḍita Jātaka we read that the Macchas witnessed the dice-play of the king of the Kurus with the Yakkha Punnāka.

---

1 See Bhāṣmaparvan, Chap. 9; Chap. 52, 9; Chap. 54, 8.
2 Mbh., Vaiḍūryapāda Edn., 59, 129.
3 Ibid., 118, 52-3.
4 Ibid., VIII, 30, 27, 29.
5 Ibid., VIII, 78, 25.
7 Ibid., VII, 193; S.B.E., Vol. XXV, p. 247.
8 Kīṣkindhyā Kāṇḍa, 43, 11.
10 Jātaka (Fausboll), Vol. VI, pp. 280 foll.
The Satapatha Brähmana contains a reference to a Matsya king, Dhvasan Dvaitavana, who appears to have given his name to a lake, Dvaitavana. In the Mahābhārata, we find mention of an extensive forest named Dvaitavana where the Pândavas passed a large portion of their exile. In the Virātaparvan (IV, 5, 4-5), we are told that the Pândavas went to the Matsya capital (Virāta) from lake Dvaitavana, leaving the Daśārṇas to the South and the Pańcālas to the North, passing through the country of the Yakrillomas and Sūrasenas, and entering the Matsya dominion from the forest. Elsewhere in the same Parvan (III, 24), a lake Dvaitavana is mentioned as existing in the Dvaitavana forest (which was supposed to be situated around the Sarasvati), and this lake appears to have been close to the Sarasvati (III, 177). Evidently both the lake and the forest were named after Dhvasan Dvaitavana, and were included in the Matsya dominions in early times. From the Mahābhārata account, it appears that the forest was outside the Matsya country, though not very far from it.

We have seen that according to Manu the Matsya country formed a part of the Brahmarṣi-desa, the country of the holy sages which, as Rapson points out, included the eastern half of the State of Patiala and of the Delhi division of the Punjab, the Alwar State and adjacent territory in Rajputana, the region which lies between the Ganges and the Jumna, and the Muttra District in the United Provinces. In this land of the Brahmarṣis, as Cunningham shows, 'In ancient times the whole of the country lying between the Arabali hills of Alwar and the river Jumna was divided between Matsya on the W. and Sūrasena on the E., with Daśārṇa on the S. and S.E. border. Matsya then included the whole of the present Alwar territory, with portions of Jaypur and Bharatpur. Vairāṭ and Māchārī were both in Matsya-desa... To the E. were the Pańcālas...'.

In later times the Matsya country appears to have been known also as Virāta or Vairāta. Hsüan Tsang speaks of it as Vairāta, and Cunningham points out on his authority that in the seventh century A.D. the kingdom of Vairāta was 3,000 li or 500 miles in circuit. It was famous for its sheep and oxen, but produced few fruits or flowers. This is still the case with Jaypur to the S. of Vairāta, which furnishes most of the sheep required for the cities of Delhi and Agra, and their English garrisons. Vairāta, therefore, may have included the greater part of the present State of Jaypur. Its precise boundaries cannot be determined; but they may be fixed approximately as extending on the north from Jhunjun to Kot Kāsim, 70 miles; on the west from Jhunjun to Ajmer, 120 miles;

---

1 Ancient India, pp. 50-1.
on the south from Ajmer to the junction of the Banas and Chambal, 150 miles; and on the east from the junction to Kot Kasim, 150 miles; or altogether 490 miles.  

The capital of the country is generally called Viraṭanagara in the Virataparvan and elsewhere in the Mahabhārata; but occasionally it is called Matsyanagara, and also sometimes Matsyasyanagara. Evidently it was this Viraṭanagara which afterwards became known as Vairata. This city was the royal seat of the Epic king Viraṭa, the friend of the Pândavas. The fourth book of the Mahabhārata refers to an attempt made by the Trigarttas to plunder the cows of Viraṭa. Viraṭa heard that the Trigarttas were taking away thousands of his kine. He thereupon collected his army; kings and princes put on their armour. Dreadful, infuriated elephants appeared like rain-bearing clouds, and were driven to battle by trained and skilled heroes. The leading heroes of Matsya, who followed their king, had 8,000 chariots, 1,000 elephants, and 60,000 horses. Nevertheless King Viraṭa was taken captive by the Trigarttas, but was rescued by Bhima, the second Pândava. The period of exile of the Pândava brothers concluded with a year's living incognito in the kingdom of Matsya. They then disclosed their identity, and a marriage between Abhimanyu, son of Arjuna, and Uttarā, daughter of King Viraṭa, was arranged and celebrated with great pomp.

So much for the traditional history of Viraṭa and his capital. The earliest historical mention of Viraṭ is that of the Chinese pilgrim Hsian Tsang, in 634 A.D. According to him, the capital was 14 or 15 li, or 2½ miles, in circuit, corresponding almost exactly with the size of the ancient mound on which the present town is built. The people were brave and bold and their king, who was of the race of Fei-she (either a Vaisya or a Bais Rajput), was famous for his courage and skill in war.

We next hear of Viraṭ during the reign of Mahmud of Ghazni, who invaded the country in A.D. 1009. The Matsya king submitted to Mahmud, but his country was again invaded in A.D. 1014, and Viraṭ taken and plundered by Amir Ali who found an ancient stone inscription at Nārāyan, which was said to record that the temple of Nārāyan had been built 40,000 years previously. As this inscription is also mentioned by the contemporary historian Otbi, we may accept the fact of the discovery of a stone record in characters so ancient that the Brahmins of that day were unable to read them.

1 Cunningham, Ancient Geography, pp. 344-5.  
2 Mbh., IV, 6, 35; IV, 13, 3.  
3 Ibid., IV, 13, 1.  
4 Ibid., IV, 14, 1.  
5 M. N. Dutt, Mahabhārata, Virataparvan, Chap. XXXI; also Chap. X, and Chap. XXII.  
6 Ibid., Chap. LXXII.  
7 Cunningham, Ancient Geography, p. 343.
Cunningham thought it highly probable that this was the famous inscription of Asoka that was afterwards discovered by Major Burt on the top of a hill at Vairāṭ.¹

The present town of Vairāṭ is situated in the midst of a circular valley surrounded by low bare bed hills, which have all along been famous for their copper mines. It is 105 miles to the south-west of Delhi, and 41 miles to the north of Jaypur. The soil is generally good, and the trees, especially the tamarinds, are very fine and abundant. Vairāṭ is situated on a mound of ruins, about one mile in length by half a mile in breadth, or upwards of 2½ miles in circuit, of which the present town does not occupy more than one-fourth. The old city Vairāṭanagara is said to have been quite deserted for several centuries until it was repeopled about 350 years ago, most probably during the reign of Akbar. The town was certainly in existence in Akbar’s time, as it is mentioned by Abul Fazl in the Ayin-i-Akbari as possessing very profitable copper mines.²

Another city of King Virāṭa’s kingdom was Upaplavya, whither, according to the Mahābhārata account, the Pāṇḍavas transferred themselves (from Virāṭa) on completion of their exile.³ This city of Upaplavya is also mentioned in other places. It was hither that Śaṅjaya, the messenger of the Kurus, was sent by Dhrtarāṣṭra (Mbh., V, 22, 1). Upaplavya does not appear to have been a capital of the Matsyas as asserted in the Cambridge History of India (p. 316), but only one of the towns in the Matsya country. The commentator on the Mahābhārata, Nilakaṇṭha, explains that Upaplavya was the name of ‘another (or some) city near Virāṭanagara’⁴; but its exact site is uncertain.

Dr. Ray Chaudhuri points out that Matsya is not mentioned by Kauṭilya as a state having the samgha form of government. Therefore the probability is that the monarchical constitution lasted throughout the period of Matsya’s independence. The kingdom was probably annexed at one time by the neighbouring kingdom of Cedi, and finally absorbed into the Magadhan empire.⁵

¹ Cunningham, Ancient Geography, pp. 343-4.
² Ibid., p. 342.
³ “Tulasārayodāse varse niyānte pañcapāñḍavāḥ Upaplavyam Virāṭasya samapdayanta sarvaśaḥ” (Mbh., IV, 72, 14).
⁴ Nilakaṇṭha on the Mbh., IV, 72, 14: ‘Upaplavyam Virāṭanagarasamipastha-nagarāṃtaram’.
CHAPTER LXIX

THE RAMATHAS

The Ramathas seem also to have been a northern people living not far from the Kulūtas. The Vāyu Purāṇa mentions a people named Ramaṭas (XLV, 117), while the Maṇḍya Purāṇa refers to a people named Rāmathas (CXXIII, 42), both no doubt meaning the one and the same people, the Ramaṭhas. The Kūrma Purāṇa (XLVII, 41) reads Rāmas instead and the Mārkaṇḍeya Mātharas (LVII, 37). The Brāhmaṇā Pitṛa places them in the western division of India along with the Paśčamaṇdas, while the Vāyu Purāṇa in the reference cited above locates them in northern division along with the Kulūtas.

The Brāhmaṇā Pitṛa contention that the Ramathas were a western people is upheld by the Mahābhārata (Sabhāparvan, XXXI, 1195; Vana-parvan, LI, 191; Śanti-parvan, LXV, 2430). The Bhīma Purāṇa mentions a people called Ramaṇas who also may be the same people as the Ramaṭhas (IX, 374).

In the same context of the introduction of the Bālabhārata or Pracandapāṇḍava of Rājaśekharā where we find Mahipāla of the Pratihāra dynasty is credited with having inflicted a defeat on the Kulūtas, we find also the Ramathas having shared the same fate at the hands of the Pratihāra king. This will be evident from the following passage:

‘Namita-Murul—a-maulih pākalo Mēkalānāṁ
raṇa-Kalita-Kaligaṁ keli-iṭ Kēral-ēndoh.
Ajani-jita-Kulītah Kuntalāṇām, kathărāḥ,
hātha-hrta-Ramaṭha Śrī Śrī Mahīpāladevaḥ
Tena ca Raghuvamśa-muktāmaṇīnāñ-
Āryāvarīmahārājādhirājena. Śrī-
Nîrbhayanarendra-nandunādhipītāṁ
Sabhāsādah sarvān... etc.’

(Nīrṇayāsāgar Press Ed., I, 7-8.)
CHAPTER LXX

THE PĀRADAS

The Pāradas, like the Barbaras and Daradas, seem to have been a barbarous hill tribe and are associated in the Puranic and Epic tradition with similar rude tribes of the North (e.g. Mbh., Sabhāparvan, L, 1852; LI, 1869; Dronaparvan, CXXI, 4819). In the Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata, they are associated with the Kulindas and Taṅgas (LI, 1858-9). They are mentioned in the Vāyupurāṇa (Chap. 88) as well as in the Harivamsa (I, 14). The Mārkandeya Purāṇa at one place (LVII, 37) locates them along with the Kālixas, the Harabhūṣikas, Mātharas (Ramathas), etc., while at another place (LVIII, 31), with the Śūdras, the Barbaras, the Kūndas, the Pāṇḍyas, the Pāraśavas, etc. In the Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata (LI, 1858-9), the Pāradas are said to have dwelt on the river Śaliḍā along with the Khasas and the Taṅgas. A collation of Epic and Puranic tradition referred to above shows that the tribe is found mentioned in a list of barbarous and rude tribes with the Śakas, Yavanas, Kambojas, Pahlavas, Khasas, Māhiṣikas, Colas, Keralas, etc. The Harivamsa states (XIII, 763-4; XIV, 775-83) that King Sagara degraded them and ordered them to have their hair-locks long and dishevelled; according to the same authority they were mlecchas and dasyus. They also find mention in Manusmṛti where it is said that they were originally Kṣatriyas, but were degraded owing to extinction of sacred rites, etc. (X, 43-4).

At least one reference in the Great Epic connects the people with the Abhiras (Sabhāparvan, L, 1832).

The Rock Edicts of Aśoka give a list of territories that were occupied by vassal tribes; among them figures a tribe named Palidas along with the Andhras, Bhojas and Raṭhikas. The Palidas have often been identified with the Pulindas, but Hultzsch does not accept this identification in view of the fact that the Kālsi and Girnar versions of the relevant portion of the Edicts have the variants Pālada and Pārīmda. H. C. Ray Chaudhuri thinks that these variants ‘remind us of the Pāradas’. If that be so, then the association of the Pāradas with the Andhras in Asokan inscriptions would suggest ‘that in the Maurya period they may have been in the Deccan. But the matter must be regarded as not definitely settled’. ¹

¹ P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 259.
According to ancient Indian historical tradition as contained in the Epics and the Purāṇas, the Pāradas were one of the allies along with others, namely, the Śakas, the Kambojas, the Vāvana and the Pahlavas, of the Haihaya-Tālajaṅghas that drove Bāhu, the eighth king in descent from Hariścandra, from his throne (Pargiter, *A.I.H.T.*, pp. 206, 268 and f.n.). Pargiter places all these tribes in the north-west.
CHAPTER LXXI

THE BHOJAS

The Bhojas were a very ancient tribe, who attained to considerable eminence as early as the period represented by the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa. The term Bhoja is mentioned even in the Rgveda (III, 53, 7) though many scholars do not consider it to be a tribal name there, and Śaṅkara also explains it otherwise. According to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa,1 the Bhojas were a southern people, a ruling tribe whose princes held the Satvats in subjection. The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa (XIII, 5, 4, 21) seems to imply that the Satvats were located near the Gaṅgā and Yamunā, which was the realm of the Bharatas,2 for the defeat by Bharata of the Satvats, and his taking away of the horse which they had prepared for an Ās̄vamedha sacrifice are here referred to. It is likely, therefore, that the Bhojas had spread over Central and Southern India in very early times.

According to the Purāṇas,3 the Bhojas and the Satvats were allied tribes, both belonging to the Yadu-vamsa which dwelt at Mathurā (the capital of the Śūrasenas, q.v.) on the banks of the Yamunā. The Viṣṇupurāṇa 4 alludes to a branch of the Satvats as Bhojas, and by the Epic period at least the Bhojas and Satvats were indistinguishable.

In the Mahābhārata, the Bhojas are declared to have been descended from Druhyu, the third son of Yayāti, the great ancestor of the Kuru-Pāṇḍavas. When King Yayāti proposed to have Druhyu's youth transferred to himself, and was unceremoniously refused, he cursed his son, saying that he would be a king only in name. 'You shall rule over a region where there will be no roads, no passages for either horses or horse-drawn excellent chariots, nor for elephants, asses, goats, bullocks, palanquins and other good vehicles, where the only means of locomotion will be rafts and floats. In such a place will you have to live, and with all your family you will get the designation of Bhoja,—and there will not be a Rājā amongst you.5 Druhyu's children were the Bhojas.6

---

1 VIII, 14: 'Daṁśasyāṁ diśi ye ke ca Satvatāṁ rājāno
Bhaunyāyaṁ te' bhissācyaṁ Bhojetyenānabhisiktaṁ-aśakṣaṁ.'
2 Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, XIII, 5, 4, 21.
3 Matsya-purāṇa, Chap. 43, p. 48; Chap. 44, pp. 46–8; Viṣṇupurāṇa, Chap. 94, p. 52; Chap. 95, p. 78; Chap. 96, pp. 1–2; Viṣṇupurāṇa, IV, 13, 1–6.
4 IV, 13, 1–61.
5 Mahābhārata, Adiparvan, Chap. 84, pp. 20–2; Vaṅgavāśī Ed.
6 Ibid., Chap. 85, verse 34.
Though the Bhojas are condemned in the above passage, yet there appear to have been very cordial relations between them and the Pañḍavas, the children of Puru, Yayāti’s favourite son, from whom the Kurus and Pañḍavas traced their descent. Thus we find that when Arjuna in the course of his expedition of pilgrimage went to Dwārakā, the Bhojas and their allied tribes, the Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas, hurried to have a look at the great Pañḍava hero as he marched along the road. Arjuna was welcomed and honoured by the young men of his own age among the Bhojas, Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas, and went to take up his residence in the house of Kṛṣṇa, who evidently belonged to these people. We then meet with an account of festivities celebrated by the Bhoja-Vṛṣṇi-Andhakas on the hill of Mahendrā. When the report of the abduction of Subhadra, Kṛṣṇa’s sister, was proclaimed at the assembly of the allied tribes, then the Bhojas along with the Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas took up arms to recover the princess from the clutches of her abductor. Again we read that Kṛṣṇa, accompanied by a host of Bhoja-Vṛṣṇi-Andhakas, paid a visit to Indraprastha when Arjuna returned there after his exile; and we are further told that Kṛṣṇa paid a formal visit to the Pañḍava king, attended by Vṛṣṇis, Andhakas and Bhojas.

It appears from many passages in the Mahābhārata that the Bhojas formed a confederacy for offensive and defensive purposes with the Vṛṣṇis, Andhakas, and also the Yādavas. They were evidently descended from the same main stock, and were therefore bound together by consanguinity as well as by mutual interest. Besides the references given above, we may mention Vaṇaparvan, Chap. 120, where the prominent warriors of the Vṛṣṇis, Bhojas and Andhakas are mentioned together; and Virāṭaparvan, Chap. 72 and Udyogaparvan, Chap. 7, where we are told that a large crowd of Vṛṣṇis, Andhakas and Bhojas followed Kṛṣṇa to Dwārakā. When Kṛṣṇa returned to Dwārakā after the Kurukṣetra war was over, the Bhojas, Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas received him with honour. In the Mausalaparvan, where the extermination of the relatives and followers of Kṛṣṇa by internecine quarrel is described, we have a mention of the Bhojas who along with the Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas took part in that mutually destructive combat.

In the Sabhāparvan, we find Kṛṣṇa telling Yudhiṣṭhira of the oppressive domination of Jarāsandha, king of Magadha. In this

1 Adi-parvan, Chap. 218, verses 18–21.
2 Ibid., Chap. 219, verses 2ff.
3 Ibid., Chap. 220, verses 12 and 32.
4 Ibid., Chap. 221, verses 33 and 38.
5 See also Udyogaparvan, Chap. 28.
6 Mahābhārata, Aśvamedhāparvan, Chap. 59.
connection he says that the Bhojas descended from Yayati had propagated and acquired a high position for themselves, but had been robbed of it by the confederacy under the suzerainty of Jarasandha.1 In a later verse (v. 25) of the same chapter, we are told that the eighteen families of the Bhojas that lived in the Udicya or northern country had, from fear of Jarasandha, been forced to take refuge far in the west. Krsna is also represented as saying that the aged Bhoja kings, being oppressed by Kaṇsa who was in alliance with Jarasandha, had sought refuge with him (Kṛṣṇa), in order to rescue their relatives; and it appears that the connection between the Vṛṣṇis and the Bhojas was cemented by the marriage of Ānuka’s daughter with Akrūra.2

We gather, then, that at this time the Bhojas had spread far and wide over India; they were found in the west, in the Madhya-deśa, and in the south, for King Bhīṣmaka, father of Rukmiṇī and father-in-law of Kṛṣṇa, is called a Bhoja. Thus Kṛṣṇa says, ‘That mighty king of the Bhojas, Bhīṣmaka... who governs a fourth part of the world, who has conquered by his learning the Pāṇḍyas and Kratha-kauśikas... has (also) become a servitor to the king of Magadha (Jarāsandha). We are his relatives... yet he does not at all regard us. He is always doing us ill. Without knowing his own strength and the dignity of the race to which he belongs, Bhīṣmaka has placed himself under Jarāsandha’s shelter, only seeing his blazing fame.’3

We have an indication of the position of this Bhoja king Bhīṣmaka in a later chapter of the Sabhā-parvan, where we are told that Sahadeva, the youngest of the Pāṇḍava brothers, when on his expedition of conquest, proceeded towards Bhojakaṭa, the capital of the Bhojas under Bhīṣmaka, after conquering Avanti, i.e. Malwa in Central India.4 Later in the same chapter5 we read that after subjugating the king of Surāśṭra or Kathiawar, Sahadeva sent ambassadors to Bhīṣmaka, the ruler of Bhoja-kāṭa, and also to his son Rukmin (who was probably associated with him in the government of the country); and we are told that Bhīṣmaka and his son respected the mandate of Sahadeva out of consideration for Kṛṣṇa.

The following story is told about the foundation of Bhojakaṭa. When Kṛṣṇa carried away Rukmin’s sister by force from her father’s capital, Kuṇḍinapura, Rukmin swore that he would not return home without defeating the abductor of his sister. As fate would have it, Rukmin was worsted in the fight that followed and true to his oath,

---

1 Sabhā-parvan, Chap. 14.
2 Ibid., Chap. 14, verses 32-3.
3 Ibid., Chap. 14, verses 21-4.
4 Ibid., Chap. 31, verses 10-11.
5 Ibid., Chap. 31, verses 62-4.
he never returned to Kuṇḍinapura, but built a new city of the Bhojas on the site of the battle-field, and called it Bhojakāṭa.¹

Bhojakāṭa is interpreted by Vincent Smith as 'Castle of the Bhojas'. He says that the name 'implies that the province was named after a castle formerly held by the Bhojas ...' ² It is alluded to in the Channak grant of the Vākāṭaka King Pravarasena II, which 'makes it clear that the Bhojakāṭa territory included the Ilichpur district in Berar or Vidarbha'.³ Bhojakāṭa has been identified with Bhat-kuli in the Amraoti district of Berar. It is not improbable that the Bhojas had some relation with Bhojanagara, the capital of king Uśīnara of the Uśīnara country ⁴ near the Kankhal region where the Ganges issues from the hills. In any case we may conclude that the Bhojas and the Vidarbhas were closely related. Kalidāsa also calls the king of Vidarbha a Bhoja (Rāghuvamśa, V, 39, 40).

It was said of the heroic Bhoja prince Rukmin that he was in the very front rank of the warriors of his time; the bow named Vijaya which he wielded was only equalled by the Gāndīva of Arjuna and the Saṅgadhanu of Kṛṣṇa. This prince is said to have been equally skilled with the bow and the sword and various other weapons, but to have been inordinately proud, and because of his boastfulness, his offer of aid was refused by both sides in turn before the Kurukṣetra War. On the eve of the war he came to the battle-field at the head of one complete Aksauhini of forces of every description.⁵

In the Sabhāparvan, we read that the whole confederacy of Anhakas, Yadavas and Bhojas abandoned Kamsa who was slain by Kṛṣṇa who had been appointed to do so (niyogā).⁶ It appears from this that Kṛṣṇa had at least the tacit approval of all the allied peoples who had been tyrannized over and ill-treated by Kamsa. Kamsa himself was a Bhoja, as we learn from what Kṛṣṇa said to the Kurus in their assembly on the eve of the battle.⁷

Another tribe with which the Bhojas are associated in the great Epic are the Kukuras who were evidently members of the Vṛṣṇi-cakra or confederacy of tribes ⁸; for we are told in the Udyogaparvan of the Bhoja king joining the Kuru forces together with the Bhojas, Andhakas and Kukuras.⁹ In another chapter of the Udyogaparvan

¹ Mahābhārata, Udyogaparvan, Chap. 157; see also ibid., Chap. 48, p. 74.
² Ind. Ant., 1923, 262-3.
³ Ray Chaudhuri, P.H.A.I., 4th Edn., p. 77.
⁴ Mahābhārata, I, 85, 3533.
⁵ Mbh., Udyogaparvan, Chap. 157.
⁷ Mbh., Udyogaparvan, Chap. 128, p. 37.
⁸ mansalaparvan, Chap. 1, 7.
⁹ Mbh., Udyogaparvan, Chap. 19.
also we find the Bhojas in company with the Andhakas, Vṛṣnis, Kukuras, Sriñjavas and Cedis.  Again, when all the people in this confederacy of tribes were engaged in a deadly conflict among themselves, we find the Kukuras fighting with and exterminating their allies and friends, the Bhojas and Andhakas. The Kukuras, Andhakas, and all the tribes in the Union rushed at each other like maniacs run amuck, and brought about the destruction of their closest friends.

We have already seen that the kings among the Sātvatas or Sātvats were called Bhojas: Bhoja was the designation of the royal family of the Sātvatas in the days of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and afterwards the name Bhoja must have been extended to the whole Sātvat tribe. In the Mahābhārata we find the names Bhoja and Sātvata used indiscriminately to designate the same individual, e.g., in the case of Kṛtavarmān, the Hārdikya or son of Hṛḍika. He was one of the greatest of the Bhojas, and was in the very front rank of the warriors of that warlike age. He led a complete Aksauhini or division of forces to the great Kurukṣetra war (on the Kuru side), and appears to have been the leader of the allied army of the Bhoja-Andhaka-Kukura-Vṛṣṇi confederacy, as we learn from the Udyogaparvan. Kṛtavarmān appears to have been the official commander of the allied forces even before they came to the field of battle. He seems to have belonged to the city of Mṛḍitkavati, as we may gather from the Dronaparvan. When the young son of Subhadrā was making terrible slaughter in the Kuru army, and the Kuru heroes could not match him fighting singly according to the laws of honourable warfare, six of the leaders, Kṛtavarmān amongst them, simultaneously made an onslaught against him. Abhimanyu aimed a number of arrows at Bhoja Mṛḍitkavati, that is, the Bhoja from Mṛḍitkavati, who must have been Kṛtavarmān.

In various passages of the Mahābhārata, Kṛtavarmān is called either a Bhoja or a Sātvata, the two terms being used interchangeably. From a passage of the Karnaparvan (Mahābhārata, VIII, 7, 8) Kṛtavarmān’s capital Mṛḍitkavati appears to have been

\[1\text{ Mbh., Udyogaparvan, V, 28.} \]
\[2\text{ Manushalaparvan, Chap. 5, verse 2.} \]
\[3\text{ Ibid., Chap. 3, pp. 40−3.} \]
\[4\text{ Rūṣmīn is mentioned as leader of the Bhojas.} \]
\[5\text{ Mbh., Udyogaparvan, Chap. 19, pp. 17−18, 25.} \]
\[6\text{ Ibid., Chap. 7.} \]
\[7\text{ Mbh., Dronaparvan, Chap. 46, p. 4.} \]
\[8\text{ Ibid., 47, 8.} \]
\[9\text{ For example, Kṛtavarmān is mentioned as a Bhoja at Mbh., Udyogaparvan, Chap. 57, p. 21; Chap. 165; Karnaparvan, Chap. 2, etc.; and as a Sātvata in Chap. 143 (Udyogaparvan); Bhiṣmaparvan, Chaps. 16, 51, 56, 81, 86, 95; Karnaparvan, Chap. 9, p. 80.} \]
situated in the Anarta country, for he is called a resident of Anarta. Towards the end of the battle, when Drona was killed, Kṛtavarman was elected leader by the remnant of the Bhojas, Kalingas and Vāhlikas. Kṛtavarman, the Bhoja, was one of the three heroes who attended Duryodhana when the latter took refuge in the Dvaipayana lake. We read of Kṛtavarman the Sātvata addressing the defeated Kuru monarch, and calling upon him to come out of his hiding place in the lake. Kṛtavarman took part in the slaying of the Pāṇcālas and the sons of Draupadi, and then he and two other heroes went to give the dying king Duryodhana this welcome news. Finally, he returned to his own country, and was later slain by Sātyaki in the mutually destructive encounter of the confederacy of tribes, his son then being placed on the throne of Mṛttikāvati by Kṛṣṇa.

It is stated in the Purāṇas that the Sātvats and the Bhojas were branches of the Yadu family who dwelt at Mathurā on the banks of the Yamunā; and the Mahābhārata tells us that Kṛṣṇa removed the Yādava headquarters from Mathurā to Dvārakā through fear of King Jarāsandha of Magadha. In the Viṣṇupurāṇa we read that Sātvata was born in the family of Krośṭha, son of Yādū. The descendants of Sātvata, son of Mahābhoga, were known as Bhojas. According to the Māṇḍya purāṇa, the Bhojas were pious, learned, truthful, valiant and charitable, and were performers of religious rites; but in another passage of this Purāṇa (34, 39) as well as in the Mahābhārata (I, 85, 3533), the Bhojas are relegated to the Mleccha caste. Pargiter thinks, however, that this tradition is ‘unintelligible compared with all other traditions, and is probably late, and certainly very doubtful’. As we learn from the Purāṇas, the Bhojas were related to the Haihayas who were a branch of the Yādavas. The Haihayas are said to have comprised five families, the Viṭihotras, Śāryātas, Bhojas, Avantis and Tūṇḍikeras. As we have seen, the Bhojas were closely related with the Vidarbhas; and they probably also held sway over Daṇḍaka, the region around Nasik. This is

1 Mahābhārata, VII, 193.
2 Ibid., IX, 29, 53-4.
3 Ibid., IX, 30, 9-13. See also ibid., X, 1; X, 4, 6, etc.
4 Ibid., X, 8; X, 9, 6.
5 Ibid., XI, 11; XI, 66.
6 Ibid., XVI, 3; XVI, 7.
7 Māṇḍya purāṇa, 43, 48; Chap. 44, pp. 46-8; Viṣṇupurāṇa, Chap. 94, p. 54; Chap. 95, p. 48; Chap. 96, pp. 1-2.
8 IV, 3.
9 Cf. Bhāgavatapurāṇa, Chap. 9, p. 24; Kārmapurāṇa, Chap. 24, sl. 40; Harivamśa, Chap. 37.
10 Chap. 44, sl. 69.
11 A.I.H.T., p. 260, f.n. 1.
12 Agnipurāṇa, Chap. 275, śloka 10; Viṣṇupurāṇa, Chap. 94, pp. 3-54; Māṇḍya-
purāṇa, Chap. 43, pp. 7-49, etc.
implied by a passage in Kautilya’s Arthasastra according to which a Bhoja named Dandakya, or king of Dandaka, tried to seduce a Brähmana girl, as a result of which he perished with his relations and his kingdom.

The Jaina sacred books speak of the Bhojas as Kṣatriyas and descendants from those whom Rṣabha acknowledged as persons deserving of honour. The Jaina Sūtras also tell us of a Bhoja princess, Rajimati who showed extraordinary religious zeal and strength of mind in overcoming all temptations.

In the Pāli Buddhist literature also we find references to Bhoja. In the Samyutta Nikāya there is a mention of a Rṣi named Rohitassa Bhojaputta, i.e. one belonging to the Bhoja family or tribe. One of the Jātaka stories tells that the Bodhisattva was born once as a Nāga king named Saṅkhapāla. He always used to give in charities and observe the religious precepts. On a certain sabbath day, while observing the precepts, he resolved to give away his own body in charity, and he became an iguana. Sixteen Bhojaputras saw this iguana, made it weak by beating it, and carrying it off when they were seen by a merchant of Mithilā who caused Saṅkhapāla to be released.

The Bhojas, along with the Andhras, Pulindas and Raṣṭrikas, were among the vassal tribes of Asoka. Scholars hold that the Bhojas and the Raṣṭrikas were evidently ancestors of the Mahābhojas and Maharathis of the Sātavāhana period.

The next important mention of the Bhojas in the historical period is made in the Hathigumpha Inscription of the Cheta king Khāravela (first century B.C.), which points out that Khāravela, the Mahārāja of Kaliṅga, defeated the Raṭhikas and Bhojakas in the fourth year of his reign and compelled them to do homage to him. The Raṭhikas and Bhojakas are evidently the Raṣṭrikas and Bhojas of Asoka’s Rock Edict.

The Khālīmpur grant of the Emperor Dharmapāladeva of Gauḍa (c. 800 A.D.) speaks of the king of Bhoja along with kings of Matsya, Kuru, Yadu and Yavana as having uttered benedictions at the coronation ceremony of the king of Kānyakubja. R. D. Banerjee holds that the king of Bhoja was defeated by Dharmapāla, and compelled to accept Cakrāyudha instead of Indrārāja as lord.

---

1 1919 Edn., p. 11.
6 Rock Edicts, V and XIII.
8 Gaudalekhamālā, p. 254.
of Kānyakubja. In Banerjee’s view, Bhoja is to be identified with part of present Rajputana.¹

The Arulala-Perumal Inscription and the Raṅganātha Inscription of Ravivarman refer to a Bhoja king of that name who belonged to the Yadu family of the Kerala country in S. India.² This king Ravivarman is declared in the inscription to have been wise, liberal and a protector of the good.

¹ Vēṅgāḷār Itihāsa, B.S. 1321, pp. 167-8.
² Epigraphia Indica, Vol. IV, Pt. IV, June 1896, p. 146.
CHAPTER LXXII

THE MEKALAS

The Mekalas were a small tribe inhabiting the tract of country comprising the modern Amarkantak (Amarakaṇṭaka) hills and the surrounding region. In ancient times, the Amarkantak range was known as Mekala, whence the name of the tribe is derived; and as the river Narmadā (mod. Narbadā) has its source in these hills, she was known as Mekalasutā¹ or Mekalakanyā;² i.e. ‘daughter of Mekala’, or Mekalā.³ The Mekala mountain (mod. Amarkantak) is a part of the Vindhyas; and in the Purāṇas, the Mekalas are referred to as a Vindhyan tribe. This is also supported by the Vāmanapurāṇa (Chap. 13)⁴ which locates the Mekalas along with the Kārusas, Bhojas, Daśārṇas, Niṣadhas and others, just below the Vindhyan range. The identification of the locality is confirmed by mythological allusions as well; for Mekala is said to have been a Rsi, the father of the river Narmadā,—a mythological interpretation of the well-known geographical fact. The mountain where the river rises is also known as Mekalādri (Haimakośa, IV, 149). According to the Bengal recension of the Rāmāyana, Mount Mekala is referred to as the source of the river Son (Kiṣkindhā Kāṇḍa, XI, 20).

According to the Epic tradition as contained in the Dronāparvan (IV, 8) of the Mahābhārata, Karna is said to have conquered the Mekalas along with the Utkalas, Paunḍras, Kaliṅgas, Andhras, Niṣadhas, Trigarttas and Vāhlikas. In the Rāmāyana also, the Mekala country is associated with the Utkala and Daśārṇa countries. The army of monkeys which was despatched in search of Sītā was asked to visit Mekala, Utkala, and Daśārṇa, among other countries of the south (Canto XLII).

The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa probably associates the Mekalas with the Ambaśṭhas (LVIII, 14): the reference is to Mekhalāmuṣṭa, which appears to be a corruption of Mekala and Ambaśṭha. If this is the case, it doubtless refers to the time when the Ambaśṭhas or a section of them had migrated from their original habitat in the Punjab to south-eastern India, near the Mekalā hill in the upper regions of the Narmadā.

There is another reference to Mekala in the Viṣṇupurāṇa (IV, Chap. 24, 17), where ten kings are said to have had Mekala as their land of birth.

¹ S. Konow, Karpārmanāḍār, p. 182.  
² Amarakośa, I, 2, 3, 32, etc.  
³ Abhidhānavatīmamālā, III, 52-  
⁴ Among the tribes mentioned in this list are the Košalas who were definitely not located anywhere near the Vindhyas, but in the N.E. Accordingly, this list is not to be taken as accurate.
CHAPTER LXXIII

THE DAŚĀRṆĀS

The Daśārṇās are mentioned in the Epics and Purāṇas, and also in Kālidāsa's Meghadūla. They appear to have had more than one settlement during the Epic period. The Mahābhārata seems to refer to two Daśārṇās, one in the west, which was conquered by Nakula (Sabhāparvan, Chap. 32), and another in the east (or south-east), which was subjugated by Bhīmasena (Sabhāparvan, Chap. 30). The Rāmāyana and the Purāṇas point to a Daśārṇa country grouped with those of the Mālavas, Kāruśas, Utkalas and Mekalas, who are all said to have lived in the Vindhyan tract. This Daśārṇa is probably the same as the one conquered by Bhīmasena.

The Daśārṇa country in the west seems to have been more important than the other localities in the east or south-east. According to the Meghadūla (verses 24-5), the capital of this Daśārṇa country was Vīḍīsā (mod. Bhilsa) on the Vetravati (= mod. Betwā). The Daśārṇās thus occupied a site on the Daśārṇa river (which can still be traced in the modern Dashān river that flows through Bundelkhand, rising in Bhopal and emptying into the Betwa). According to Wilson, a Daśārṇa river is said in the Purāṇas to rise in a mountain called Cītrakūṭa (= Kāmpītānath-gir in Bundelkhand). This is doubtless identical with the modern Dashān river. The Meghadūla further mentions a hill called Nīcaḥ as situated in the Daśārṇa country (loc. cit.).

As we have seen, the Purāṇas associate the Daśārṇās with the Vindhyan tribes,—Mālavas, Kāruśas, Mekalas, Utkalas, and Nīśadhas. In the Rāmāyana, also their country is connected with those of the Mekalas and Utkalas, whither Sugriva sends his monkey army in quest of Sītā (Kīṣṭindhyā K., loc. cit.). The Daśārṇa country of the Rāmāyana and the Purāṇas is thus different from the Daśārṇa of the Meghadūla; it is probably identical with Dosarene of the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea. According to Wilson, eastern or south-eastern Daśārṇa formed a part of the Chattisgarh

---

1 Rāmāyana; Kīṣṭindhyā K., 41, 8–10; Brahmāṇḍa P., Chap. 49; Vāyu P., Chap. 45; Matsya P., Chap. 14; Mārkandeyā P., Chap. 57; Vāmana P., Chap. 13; etc.—Vindhyā-prśha-nīvaśinah
2 Essays Analytical, etc., Vol. II, p. 336, f.n. 1
District in the Central Provinces, including the native State of Patna. The territory was probably situated on the river Dosaron which is mentioned by Ptolemy, and which has been identified with the river Brahmani that flows through modern Cuttack and empties itself into the Bay of Bengal. As Ptolemy did not write from personal knowledge, he could not probably give the indigenous name of the river, but named it after the people inhabiting the region. Thus 'the Dosaron is the river of the region inhabited by the Daśārṇa, a people mentioned in the Viṣṇupurāṇa as belonging to the southeast of Madhyadēśa'.

The Daśārṇa figure in the Mahābhārata as one of the tribes who fought for the Pāṇḍavas in the great Kurukṣetra war. The Daśārṇa king at that time was Kṣatradeva, a mighty hero, who fought valiantly on elephant-back. He attacked the enemy-generals and the king of Prāgjyotisā or Kāmarūpa. The warriors of the Daśārṇa kings were all mighty heroes and could fight best on elephants. According to Kautilya’s Arthaśāstra (Book II, Chap. II), the elephants of Anga and Kalinga belonged to the best of their species, while those of Karūsa, Daśārṇa and Aparānta ranked second, those of the Saurāṣtras and allied tribes (Saurāṣtrikāḥ pāncajanāḥ) being the worst.

We read elsewhere in the Mahābhārata of another Daśārṇa king, named Hiranyavarman who appears also as Hemavarman and Kāñcanavarman (both Hema and Kāñcana being synonyms of Hiranya, ‘gold’). Pargiter thinks that during the period of the Kurukṣetra war, Daśārṇa was a Yādava kingdom.

Erakaccha, a town in the Dasaṇṇa (= Daśārṇa) country, is referred to in Pāli literature. We read in the Petavatthu and Commentary of a certain merchant of Erakaccha, and of the miseries which he suffered through lack of faith in the Buddha. We are told that the Therī Isidāsi was once reborn at Erakaccha as a wealthy

---

1 J.A.S.B., 1905, pp. 7, 14.
2 McCrindle’s Ptolemy, Mazumder’s Ed., p. 71.
3 Karnaparvan, Chap. 22, 3; Bhīṣma-parvan, Chap. 95, 41, 43: Dronaparvan, Chap. 25, 35.
4 Bhīṣma-parvan, Chap. 95, 41, 43.
5 Dronaparvan, Chap. 25, 35.
6 Karnaparvan, Chap. 22, 3.
7 Mbh., V, 190, 7419; 193, 7493, 7506, 7511 and 7518.
8 A.I.H.T., p. 280.
9 Mbh., V, 190, 7417ff.; Harivamśa, Chap. 91, 4957.
10 Petavatthu, 20; Commentary, pp. 99-105.
11 Therīgāthā, 435; see also Buddhist India, p. 49.
craftsman, a worker in gold. Dasanna was apparently a centre of the art of sword-making.\(^1\) It is mentioned in the *Mahāvastu*\(^2\) as one of the sixteen *Mahājanapadas*. We also read in the *Mahāvastu* that the Buddha distributed knowledge among the Dasarnas who built a vihāra for him.\(^3\)

---

\(^1\) *Jātaka* (Fausböl), III, 338: ‘Dasanapahan tikhinadhāram asim’.

\(^2\) I, 34. (Senart’s edition).

\(^3\) Law: *A Study of the Mahāvastu*, p. 9.
CHAPTER LXXIV

THE PARIYĀTRAS

It is doubtful whether Pariyatras, or Pāripātras as they were also called, 1 can ethnologically be classed as a tribe or people, to be distinguished from the Vindhyas with whom they lived contiguously, or from other peoples who had their habitat in and around the same locality. The Purāṇas, however, always enumerate them as a distinct people, associated with the Pāripātra mountains, from which they evidently took their name.

As already noticed, there are two variant forms of the mountainous region inhabited by this people, as given in the Purāṇas: Pāriyātra and Pāripātra; Pāripātra seems to be the more usual reading, though Pariyatra occurs not infrequently. In the topographical list of the Purāṇas, the Pāriyātra or Pāripātra hills are mentioned as one of the seven hill ranges together forming the Kulācalas or Kulaparvatas, 'family mountains', i.e. mountain ranges or systems. These are the Mahendras, Malaya, Sahya, Śuktimat, Rksa, Vindhya and Pāripātra. 2 The Bhāgavata, Vāyu, Mārkandeya and Padma Purāṇas and the Bhāṣmaparvan of the Mahābhārata add a list of inferior mountains to these seven. 3 The seven principal hill ranges are similarly enumerated by all the Puranic authorities, and their situation is easily determined by the rivers which are listed as flowing from them.

Pāripātra in particular is always associated with the Vindhya. Vindhya, as is well known, is the general name of the chain of hills that stretches across Central India, dividing India into its well-defined and natural north and south divisions; but it is evident from the Puranic list and the situations of the hills mentioned in it that in the Purāṇas the name Vindhya is generally restricted to the eastern division of the long range of hills. According to the Vāyu- purāṇa, however, it is the part south of the river Narmadā, or the Sātputā range of hills. Pāripātra constitutes the northern and

1 Mārkandeya Purāna, 58, 8.
2 E.g., Viṃṣputra, Wilson's Ed., Bk. II, Chap. III, pp. 127-8; also Mārkandeya Purāna, 57, 10; Mahābhārata, VI, 9, 11.
3 Bhāgavata-purāṇa, V, 19, 16ff.; Mārkandeya P., LVII, 12ff.; Bhāṣmaparvan, 61. 317-378. 'As subordinate portions of them are thousands of mountains; some unheard of, though lofty, extensive and abrupt; and others, better known, though of lesser elevation, and inhabited by people of low stature.'
western portion of the Vindhyanas, and may be said to include the range of hills now known as the Aravalli.

The Viṣṇupurāṇa, for example, mentions Pāriyātra or Pāripātra as situated on the west, associated with the semi-mythical mount Meru. ‘Niśadha and Pāriyātra are the limitative mountains on the west (of Meru), stretching, like those on the east, between the Nila and Niśadha ranges.’

The list of the seven Kulācalas seems to have been known in some form or other to Ptolemy as early as the first half of the second century A.D.; for he also specifies seven ranges of hills, although his list does not correspond with the Puranic list, with the exception of the Ouindion, identical with the Vindhya, and the Ouxenton, identical with the Rksa (Vant). Wilson thought that Adeisathron might be identified with the Pāriyātra; but this has been found to be untenable, and modern research tends to connect the range with the Western Ghāts, or, more properly, ‘that section of the Western Ghāts which is immediately to the north of the Coimbatore gap, as it is there the Kāveri rises’.

According to Rājaśekhara, all seven Kulaparvatas were comprised within the Kumāri-dvīpa whose southernmost limit, according to the Skandapurāṇa was the Pāriyātra. In the period of the Brahmanical and Buddhist Śūtras too, Pāriyātra was the southernmost limit of contemporary Āryāvarta, while the eastern and western boundaries were formed by Kālakavana (probably near Allahabad) and Adarśana and Thīna (on the Sarasvatī) respectively.

The Purāṇas refer to a number of rivers issuing from the Pāriyātra, e.g. the Mahī, the Varnaśā or Parnāśā, the Śiprā, the Carmanvatī, the Sindhu and the Vetravatī. The Mahī is well known; Varnaśā or Parnāśā has been identified by Pargiter with the modern Banās, a tributary of the Carmanvatī (Chambal). Sindhu is Kālī Sindhu, a tributary of the Carmanvatī, and Vetravatī is modern Betwa. Śiprā is the famous river immortalised in Sanskrit classical poetry. The Viṣṇupurāṇa mentions yet another river issuing from the Paripātra mountains, namely, the Vedasmṛti (or Vedasmṛta according to the Mahābhārata).

---

2 Ptolemy’s Ancient India, by McCrindle, S. N. Majumdar’s Ed., pp. 75–81.
4 McCrindle, Ptolemy’s Ancient India, p. 80.
6 Dharmasūtra of Bodhāyana, I, 1, 25. ‘Pṛagadārśanāt pratyak Kālakavanād daśāyena Himavantam udak Pāriyāram etad Aryanvarīm’.
7 Wilson’s Ed., p. 130 (2. III).
8 Bhīṣmaparvan.
The *Vāyu-purāṇa* mentions the Kāruṇas and the Mālavas as dwelling along the Pāryātra mountains. The Nasik Praśasti of Gautamiputra Sātakarni seems to associate the Kukuras also with the Pāryātra. This is probably the earliest epigraphic mention of the mountains. A more elaborate mention is made in the Mandasor Inscription of Vasodharman and Viṣṇuvardhana, where a large tract of land is described as 'containing many countries, which lie between the Vindhya (mountains), from the slopes of the summits of which there flows the pale mass of the water of (the river) Revā, and the mountain Pāryātra, on which trees are bent down in (their) frolicsome leaps by the long-tailed monkeys (and which stretches) up to the ocean'.

1 Wilson's Ed., p. 133 (2, III). Mālukas and Mārūkas are variant readings for Kāruṇas. See also *Kūrma P.*, Pūrva Chap. 7, which seems to include the countries of Aparānta, Saurāstra, Śūdra, Malapa (Mālava), Mālaka and others within the Pāryātra area.
2 *Brhat-samhitā*, XIV, 4.
CHAPTER LXXV

MISCELLANEOUS TRIBES

PETENIKAS — GO-LÄNGULAS — SAILUŚAS — KUSUMAS — NÄMA-
VÄŚAKAS—ĀDHAKYAS—DANDAKAS—PAURIKAS—ATHARVAS AND
ARKALINGAS—MAULIKAS—MŪŚIKAS OR MÜŠAKAS—CULIKAS AND
SÜLIKAS — KAŅKANAS — TOSALAS — VAIDIŚAS—TUŚTIKĀRAS —
MÄHIŠAKAS OR MÄHIŚIKAS—KIKATAS—PRAVAŅGAS—RAṆGEYAS
—MÄNADAS—UGRAS—TÄNGANAS—MUDAKARAS—ANTARGIRYAS
—BAHIIRGIRAS — ANUPIAS — KUKURAS — SURYĀRAKAS — VṛKAS
—HÄRABHÜŚIKAS — MÄṬHARAS — JÄGUḌAS — BRAHMOTTARAS
—BHṚGUKACCHAS—MÄHEYAS—BHOJAS—APARÅNTAS—HAJHAYAS
—BHOGAVARDHANAS—SARAJAS—VIRAHOṬRAS—VINDHYAMÄLEYAS
—JÄNGALAS — BHADRAKARAS — KSHUDRAKAS
—PUṢKALAS—CİNAS—TUKHĀRAS—SÅRASVATAS—ĀŚVAKÜṬAS—
KULYAS — MALAKAS — BODHAS — DAŚAMĀLIKAS — HARŚAVAR-
DHANAS—KUSERUKAS—HÄMSAMĀRGAS—KUHAKAS—ŚATAPATHA
—CARMAKHANDIKAS—GABALAS—SATADRUJAS—URNAS—DARVAS
—BAHU-BHADRAS—TRAIPURAS—GAJĀHVAYAS—PÅRNA-ŚAVARAS
—ARBUDAS—KHASAS

The Peṭenikas of Aśokan inscriptions have been plausibly
identified with the Paṭhānikas or inhabitants of
Peṭenikas Paṭhān on the Godāvari1 in North-Western
Paṭhān is the present name of ancient Pratiṣṭhāna
which was a flourishing city during the rule of the Śatavāhana
kings. Pratiṣṭhāna, the modern Paṭhān on the north bank of
the Godāvari in the Aurangabad District of Hyderabad, is famous
in literature as the capital of King Śatakarni (Śatavāhana or
Salivāhana) and his son Śakti-kumāra who are generally identified
with the king Śatakarni and the prince Śakti-Śī of the Nānāgḥat
inscriptions.2 According to Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar the word
‘Pitinika’ of Aśokan inscriptions, as mentioned in Rock Edicts
V and XIII, should not be treated as a separate word and is
to be regarded as an adjective qualifying Rāṣṭrika (mentioned in
Edict V) and Bhoja (mentioned in Edict XIII) which are mentioned
along with it. In this connection Dr. Bhandarkar points to certain

2 Ibid., Vol. I, p. 531.
passages in the Aṅguliśa Nikāya¹ where the term Pettanika occurs in the sense of one who enjoys property given by father.² Other scholars, however, identify the Pitunikas with the Paithānakas or natives of Paithān and some go so far as to suggest that they are the ancestors of the Sātavāhana rulers of Paithān.³ Both the author of the Periplus and Ptolemy mention Paithān or Paithāna. Paithān is placed by the author of the Periplus at a distance of twenty days' journey to the south of Barugaza (identified generally with Bharukaccha or modern Broach), and is spoken of as the greatest city in Dakhinabades or Daksināpatha and Tagara (identified by some with Devagiri, by others with Junnar and by R. C. Bhandarkar with Dharur in Nizam's territory), ten days' east of Paithān.

No people of the name Go-Lāngulas are known. The Matsya- 
Go-Lāngulas

purāṇa reads Cólas and Kulyas (CXIII, 46) and the Vāyu Cauylas and Kulyas instead (XLV, 124). The Cólas (Cauylas) were a well-known people and were famous from very early times, being one of the four tribes of the far south. The Kulyas are not met with anywhere; but undoubtedly they are the same people as the Kolas mentioned more than once in the Mahābhārata.⁴ But the people cannot satisfactorily be identified.

The Vāyu (XLV, 125) and the Matsya (CXIII, 47) Purāṇas read Setukas instead; but none of the names can be identified. Pargiter's suggestion that they might mean the people who lived near the Setu of Rāma is ingenious and may not altogether be improbable, for they are mentioned in connection with the people of the far south.

The Kusumās are also known as Kumanas⁵ and Kupathas.⁶

Kusumās

Pargiter suggests an identification with the Kurubas or Kurumbas, who were the same as the Pahlavas, an important tribe of Southern India.

The Vāyu-purāṇa reads (XLV, 125) Vanavāsikas and the Bhīṣma- 
Nāma-Vāsakas

parvan list Vanavāsakās (IX, 366) which is the correct reading. Doubtless they refer to the people of the kingdom of Vanavāsi, a well-known region of the south in North Kanara in historical times, and not unknown to the author of the Harivamsa (XCV, 5213 and 5231–3). The Matsya-purāṇa reads Vāji-Vāsikas (CXIII, 47) which is apparently incorrect. It is ancient Vaijayantipura, also known as Jayantipura, capital of the

¹ III, 70 and 300.
² Ind. Ant., 1919, p. 80.
³ Cf. Woolner, Asoka, p. 113; J.R.A.S., 1923, 92.
⁴ Subhāsavarn, XXX, 1172; Ásvamedhaparvan, I, XXXIII, 2476-7.
⁵ Vāyu-purāṇa, XLV, 125.
⁶ Matsya-purāṇa, CXIII, 47.
Kadambas and the Vejayanti of epigraphic records. It is held to be the same as the Buzantion of the Periplus.

The Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas (XLV, 126 and CXIII, 48) read Ātavas which is no doubt the correct reading. Ādakyas Ātavī as a city of the Deccan is mentioned in the Mahābhārata.1 The Ātavas were certainly the same as the Ātavikas of the Allahabad Pillar Inscription of Samudragupta, who were perhaps aboriginal tribes dwelling in the jungle tracts of Central India.

The Dandakas are undoubtedly the people dwelling in the Dandaka forest celebrated in the Rāmāyana in connection with the story of Rāma’s exile. According to the description in the Rāmāyana, the forest seems to have covered almost the whole of Central India from the Bundelkhand region to the Godāvari,2 but the Mahābhārata seems to limit the Dandaka forest to the source of the Godāvari.3

For Paurikas the Vāyu-purāṇa reads Paunikas instead (XLV, 127) perhaps wrongly. According to the Harivamsa, Purikā was a city in the Māhismati kingdom (XCV, 5220–28). It is not improbable that Purikā was the city of the Paurikas.

These two names are evidently misreadings and it is difficult to find out what is the correct form. The Vāyu-purāṇa reads aśva pārśve talaṅgāsca while the Matsya gives Atharvāśca Kaliṅgāsca. All these readings are improbable. Talaṅgas are well known as a southern people who are mentioned in connection with the southern peoples in the Mārkandeya Purāṇa (Chap. 58, verse 28). They are identical with the Trikaliṅgas. Avantas and Kaliṅgas though otherwise well known are nowhere located in the Madhyadesa. The Mārkandeya Purāṇa speaks of the Avantas as a Vindhyan tribe (Chap. 57, verses 52 and 55). In the same Purāṇa, the Kaliṅgas are once spoken of as a northern tribe (ibid., verse 37) and then again as a southern tribe (ibid., v. 46). The reference to the Kaliṅgas as a northern tribe is undoubtedly wrong.

The Vāyu-purāṇa reads Maunikas (XLV, 127) instead. The Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata refers to a people named Mauleyas. The Maulikas were evidently the people of Mūlaka mentioned in the Pārāyaṇavagga of the Suttamātā.

1 Sabhāparvan, XXX, 1176.
3 Sabhāparvan, XXX, 1169; Vanaparvan, LXXXV, 8183-4.
The Mahābhārata¹ and the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa mention a people called the Mūśikas as dwelling in the south; the same people evidently were also called Mūsakas who are mentioned twice in the Mahābhārata.² The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa in another context refers to a people called Mrisikas³ as dwelling in the south-east and still another called Risikas⁴ in the south. The Mrisikas were apparently the same as the Mūśikas or the Mūsakas. The Riṣikas were also a well-known people; they are referred to as dwelling in the north in the Mahābhārata,⁵ in the Rāmāyana⁶ as well as in the Matsyapurāṇa.⁷ Another section of the same people seems to have their location in the south.⁸ It is difficult to say whether the Riṣikas were the same as the Mrisikas or the Mūśikas = Mūsakas.

Pargiter suggests⁹ that the Mūśikas = Mūsakas were probably settled on the banks of the river Musi on which stands modern Hyderabad. Dr. Ray Chaudhuri suggests ¹⁰ that it is not altogether improbable that the Mūsikas or Mūsika of the Śāṅkhâyana Śrauta Sūtra are the same people as the Mūśikas. It is also reasonable to suggest that the Mūśikas = Mūsakas were a southern offshoot of the Punjab tribe known to Alexander’s historians as the Mousikenos.¹¹ Patañjali mentions a people called Māusikāra ¹² which appears to have some connection with the Mūśikas. A Mūsikanagara is referred to in the Hathigumpha Inscription of King Khāravela of Kaliṅga who in the second year of his reign is said to have struck terror into the heart of the people of that place.¹³

The Čulikas and the Śūlikas are mentioned in Mārkaṇḍeya list ¹⁴ as two different peoples, but both in the north. For Čulikas, the Vāyupurāṇa reads Padikas ¹⁵ and the Matsyapurāṇa Sānilikas instead.¹⁶ The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa in another context ¹⁷ places the Čulikas in the Tortoise’s tail at the westernmost part of India. For Śūlikas, the Vāyupurāṇa reads Čulikas in the same context, and the Matsyapurāṇa says that they were a people through whose country flowed the river Čakṣu, one of the three large rivers which rising from the mid-Himalayan

¹ Bhīṣmaparvan, IX, 366.
² Ibid., IX, 366 and 371.
³ L.VIII, 16.
⁴ L.VIII, 27.
⁵ Sabhāparvan, XXVI, 1033–6.
⁶ Kārīkā, XX, 79, 87; Barua reads Āsvaka or Risika instead in his Old Brāhmī Inscriptions, p. 176; Thomas also finds no reference in the passage to any Musika city, J.R.A.S., 1922, 83.
⁷ CXX, 53.
⁸ Rāmāyana, Kiṣkindhāya Kāṇḍa, XL, 16; Harivamsa, CXIX, 6724–6.
⁹ Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, p. 366.
¹⁰ P.H.A.I., 4th Ed., p. 80.
¹² LVII, 40, 41.
¹³ XCV, 119.
¹⁴ LXVIII, 26.
¹⁵ LXV, 27.
¹⁶ CXIII, 43.
Pargiter suggests that Cakṣu may perhaps be meant for Vakṣu (= Vanakṣu) which is the Oxus, and says that in that case the Śūlikas would be a people on the Oxus in Turkestan. He also points to the resemblance of the name Śūlikas with that of the Śūlakaras mentioned in the same canto of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa.

But the Śūlikas are mentioned in the Harāhā Inscription of Iśānavarman Maukhari in a different context; there they are mentioned along with the Andhras and Gauḍas, all of whom appear to have been defeated by Iśānavarman. Dr. Ray Chaudhuri suggests that the Śūlikas should be identified with the Cālukyas who are mentioned in the Mahākūṭa Pillar Inscription as Calikya, names so near to Culika of the Purāṇas. The Śūlikas may further be identified with the Solaki and Solaṅki of the Gujjrat records. The Culikas and Śūlikas may thus be the same people.

The Śūlikas or the Saulikas are further mentioned in the Brhatsamhitā along with the Aparāntas, Vanavāsīs and the Vidarbhās. Elsewhere the Brhatsamhitā connects the same people with the Gandhāras and Vokkūras (occupying modern Wakhan). This suggests that a section of the people must have once been dwelling in the north or north-west, and another in the western or Aparānta region. The kingdom of Śūlik according to Tārānātha was located beyond Togara = Tegara = modern Terg in the Deccan.

The Kaṅkānas as a tribe are referred to in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa and the Harivamśa. According to the latter source, they were defeated and degraded by King Sagara. They must have been the people dwelling along the low strip of land between the Western Ghats and the sea called in historical times Kaṅkan or Koṅkan. Their mention along with the Bhṛguvakacchas in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa makes this identification more significant.

The Tosalas are referred to in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa along with the Karuṣas, Keralas, Utkalas, Daśārṇas, Kośalas, Avantis, etc., all of whom dwelt on the slopes of Vindhyā mountains. The Mātsyapurāṇa reads Stosalas (CXIII, 53) erroneously, for Tosalas is the correct reading meaning the people of Tosali or Tosala and the adjoining region. Tosali or Tosala was the name of a country as well as of a city. The city of Tosali was the seat of the provincial government of Kaliṅga in the
days of Asoka. The country or janapada of ‘Amita-Tosala’ is referred to in the Gaudavyaśa along with its city Tosala. In Pauranic literature, Tosala is always associated with Dakṣiṇa Kosala and distinguished from Kalinga. Tosala in medieval times seems to have been divided into two parts: Dakṣiṇa Tosala and Uttara Tosala. The city of Tosala seems to have been the same as Tosalei of Ptolemy.

The Vaidiśas are undoubtedly the people of Vidiśa, a famous city of early times, the capital of the Daśārṇa country, immortalised by Kalidāsa in his Meghadūtam. Vidiśa is probably the modern Besnagar, close to Bhilsa. It was situated on the river Vetravati, modern Betwa.

The name Tuṣṭikāras seems to be a misreading. The Vāyupurāṇa reads Tuṇḍikeras (XLV, 134) which is supported by the Mahābhārata and the Harivamśa (XXXIV, 1895). According to the Harivamśa they belonged to the Haihaya race (ibid.). The tribe seems to have left their trace in the little town of Tendukhera, a little to the north of the source of the Narmadā. Saunḍikeras, which is the reading of the Matsyapurāṇa, is incorrect.

The Māhiśakas or Māhiśikas are referred to in the Purāṇas as a people of the south. They are mentioned in the same context in the Sabhāparvan list of the Mahābhārata. Undoubtedly they are the same people as the Māhismakas of the Aśvamedha-parvan of the Mahābhārata, and were the inhabitants of the ancient region Māhismati mentioned also in the Mahābhārata. Māhismati seems to have been situated on the river Narmada between the Vindhya and the Rikṣa and can safely be identified with the modern Mandhāta region, where there was a river called Māhišikī mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa. According to one passage in the Harivamśa, the founder of Māhismati seems to have been Mucukunda, according to another Māhismat. According to the Purāṇas, the Māhismatī was founded by a prince of the Yadu lineage. Bhandarkar says that Avanti Dakṣināpatha had its capital at Māhismatī or Pāli Māhiśatī. The Purāṇas style the first dynasty of Māhismatī as Haihaya, whereas the Mahāgovinda

2 Ep. Ind., IX, 286; XV, 3.
3 Drona-parvan, XVII, 691; Karaṇaparvan, V, 138.
4 Pargiter, Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, p. 344, note.
5 Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, LVII, 46; Matsyapurāṇa, CXIII, 47.
6 IX, 366.
7 LXXXIII, 2475.
8 Sabhāparvan, XXX, 1125-63.
9 KiskindhaṆa Kāṇḍa, XLI, 16.
10 XV, 52788.
11 XXXIII, 1846-7.
12 Matsyapurāṇa, XI, 10-29; XLIV, 36; Vāyu, 94, 26; 95, 35.
13 Ibid., 43, 8-29; Vāyu, 94, 5-26.
Suttanta mentions Māhiṣsati as the capital of the Avantis, and refers to their king Vessabhu. But the Mahābhārata distinguishes between Avanti and Māhiṣmati.  

The Kīkātas or Kīkāta tribe are mentioned in the Rgveda (III, 53, 14) as being under the rule of a king named Pramaganda. Yāska in his Nirukta (VI, 32) says that Kīkāta was a non-Aryan country (anārya-nivāsa). The author of the Brhadārāṇyaka Purāṇa echoes this feeling of Yāska when he says that the Kīkāta country was pāpa-bhūmi or impure country (Kīkate ca nṝṭo-pyeṣa pāpabhūmaṇa na samśayaḥ, XXVI, 47). The Gaya District was probably included in the Kīkāta country as is evident from the following passage of the Brhadārāṇyaka Purāṇa (XXV, 20, 22):

‘Kīkate nāma deśa’ sti Kāka-karnākhyo nr̥paḥ
Prajānāṁ bitakṛmityam Brahmadyeśakaras tathaḥ
Tatra deśe Gayā nāma punyadeśo’sti viśrūṭah
Nadi ca Karṇadā nāma pitrnāṁ svargadāyiniḥ

Similar statements are also found in the Vāyu and the Bhāgavata Purāṇas as well as in the commentary of Śrīdhara. E.g.: ‘Kīkateṣu Gayā puṇyā puṇyam Rājaṅghram vanam Ėyāvanasyāśramam puṇyam nadi puṇyā puṇahpuṇah’ (Vāyu, 108, 73). ‘Buddho nāmnāi-janasutah Kīkateṣu bhaviṣyat’ (Bhāgavata, 1, 3, 24). ‘Kīkateṣu madhye Gayāpradeśe’ (Śrīdhara). Kīkāta thus was an impure country but later Brahmanical sources seem to have regarded some of its localities at least as holy, e.g. Gayā, Rājaṅghra and the hermitage of the sage Ėyāvana. Later authorities seem to hold the Kīkāta country identical with Magadha. Thus in Hemacandra’s Abhidhānacintāmanī we find: ‘Kīkata-Magadhāhavyāḥ’. According to Prof. A. B. Keith if the Kīkātas of the Rgveda were, as has been suggested, really located in Magadha, the dislike of the country goes back to the Rgveda itself. The causes most probably have been the imperfect Brahmanisation of the land and the pre-dominance of aboriginal blood, which later in history rendered Magadha the headquarters of Buddhism.

The Pravāṅgas probably stand for those people who dwelt just in front of the Vāṅgas (Pravāṅga). It is not unlikely that they may be the same people as the Āṅgas.

This is evidently a copyist’s mistake for Vāngeyas which is the reading of the Vāyupurāṇa (XLV, 122). The Matsyapuruṣa simply reads Vāṅgas. They are undoubtedly the people of ancient Vāṅga or Bengal.

1 Mahābhārata, II, 31, 10.  
The Vāyupurāṇa reads Maladas (XLV, 122). Pargiter assumes that here we have a reference to the people of modern Maldah in which are situated the old cities of Gauda and Pāṇḍuṣyā. The Maladas are also mentioned as an eastern people in the Mahābhārata.¹

The Ugras seem to have been a very old and once a well-known tribe. They are mentioned in the Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad (III, 8, 2) and also in the Uvāṣāgadāsā.² According to the Āṅguttara Nikāya, the Uggas or Ugras are associated with Vesali or Vaiśali.³ They are also connected with Hatthigāma according to the same Nikāya. The Dhammapada Commentary refers to a city called Ugra or Ugra. A passage in the Sūtrakṛtṛāṇga seems to suggest that the Ugras along with the Aikśvākas, Bhogas and Kauravas were associated with the Jñātṛs and Licchavis as subjects of the Vajji rulers and members of the Vajji clan.⁴

The Vāyupurāṇa reads Taṅganas (XLV, 120) and more than once in the Mahābhārata ⁵ we find reference to Taṅganas and Para-taṅganas. The Epic description shows that they were allied with the Kīrātās and Pulindas.⁶ From the description given in the Mahābhārata it appears that they were a rude tribe, for their main fighting weapon was stone.⁷

The name Mudakaras is found in the Mārkandeya Purāṇa.⁸ The Vāyupurāṇa gives Sujarakas and the Mālsya Madgurakas. None of these names is identifiable. One may, nevertheless, guess that here is a name which is a corrupt rendering of Mudgagiri or Modagiri, mentioned in literature and inscriptions, which is generally identified with the hills of Monghyr in Bihar. Monghyr was also known as Mudgala-puri, Mudgalāśrama and so on. The Mudgalas or the people of Monghyr are also referred to in the Mahābhārata.⁹

The Antargiryas must be those people dwelling in the hilly stretch of the Rajmahal ranges of the Santhal Parganas. They are mentioned in the Bhīṣma parvan list of the Mahābhārata.

The Bahirgiris as may also be said to have been associated with the hilly tracts of Bihar and from their mention along with the Antargiryas it seems that the people meant were

---

¹ Sabhāparvan, XXIX, 1081-2; Dronāparvan, VII, 183.
³ Cf. Uggo gahapati Vesāliko; Āṅguttara Nikāya, I, 26. ⁵ Sabhāparvan, II, 1859; Bhīṣma parvan, IX, 372.
⁶ Vanāparvan, CXL, 10863-5; Sabhāparvan, I, 1858-9.
⁷ Dronāparvan, CXXI, 4835-47.
⁸ Mārkandeya Purāṇa, 57, 42. ⁹ Dronāparvan, XI, 397.
dwellers on the outskirts of the hills of Bhagalpur and Monghyr regions.

The Anūpas are mentioned as a tribe in the Vāyupurāṇa (XIV, 134); the Matsyapurāṇa reads Anipa (CXIII, 54) while the Mārkandeya Purāṇa (LVII, 55) reads Annajas. Anūpa literally means any marshy tract or country lying not very far from the seas. In this sense the word 'sāgarānūpa' is used in several places in the Mahābhārata. Thus we find tracts known as Anūpa in Bengal in the far south on the western coast in or near about Kathiawar. From the Harivamsa we learn that the country of the Anūpa tribe lay near Surāṣṭra and Ānarta. The Harivamsa further informs us that it was to the south of Surāṣṭra (XCIV, 5142-80). In the Mahābhārata king Kārtavirya and Nala are styled 'lords of Anūpa'. It seems likely, therefore, that the Anūpas occupied the tract of country south of Surāṣṭra, around Mahismati on the Narmadā. Epigraphic evidence also lends support to such a view. The Nāsik Cave Inscription of Queen Gautami Balaśtri records that her son conquered Anūpa along with other countries, namely, Mahārāṣṭra, Mūlaka (country round Paithān), Suratha (Surāṣṭra or Kathiawar), Kukura (country near the Pāriyātra or the Western Vindhya), Aparānta (northern Konkan), Vidarbha (Berar) and Akarāvantī (eastern and western Malwa). Most of these tracts seem to have been reconquered from Gautamīputra by Śaka Mahākṣatrāpa Rudradāman whose Junagādh Rock Inscription states that his sway extended over Pūrṇa-āpar-ākar-āvantī (east and west Malwa), Anūpanīvṛtī or the Mahismati (Māndhātā?) region, Ānarta (tract round Dwārkā according to some; district round Vadānagara according to others), Surāṣṭra (district round Junagadh), Svabhra (the country on the banks of the Sābarmati), Maru (Marwar), Kaccha (Cutch), Sindhu-Sauvīra (the lower Indus valley), Kukura (part of Central India, probably near the Pāriyātra Mt. according to the Bhātisamhitā, XIV, 4), Aparānta (north Konkan), and Niṣāda (in the region of the Sarasvatī and the western Vindhya).

The Kukuras as a tribe find mention in the Bhāgavatapurāṇa. They seem to have occupied the Dwārakā region which is described as: 'Kukur-Andhaka-Vṛṣṇibhīha Jupāh'. The Vāyupurāṇa also seems to refer to the tribe when it represents Ugrasena, the king of the Yādasas as 'Kukurodhava' or 'originated from Kukura'. The Bhātisamhitā seems to locate the

1 Sābhāparvan, XXV, 1002; XXIX, 1101; XXXIII, 1268-9.
2 Udyogaparvan, XVIII, 578.
3 Ibid., III, 81.
4 Harivamsa, CXIII, 6360-9; CXIV, 6410-11.
5 Bhīṣmaaravsan, XCV, 4210.
7 Cf. Nisadārastrā, Mbk., III, 130-4 and Pāriyātacaraka, Mbk., XII, 135, 3-5.
tribe in western or central India (XIV, 4). According to the Nasik Cave Inscription of Queen Gautami Balasri, her son conquered the Kukuras, Surathas, Mulakas, Aparantas, Anupas, Vidarhhas and others. From the Junagadh Rock Inscription of Mahaksatrapa Rudradaman we learn that most of these peoples along with the Kukuras were again conquered by him. These provinces were in all probability wrested from the hands of the contemporary Satavahana ruler of Deccan. According to Sir R. G. Bhandarkar, the Satakarni lord of Dakshinapatha from whom Rudradaman conquered these provinces was Gautamiputra Satakarni. According to Rapson the Satavahana ruler of Deccan, whom Rudradaman defeated, was Pulumayi.

The name Suryarakas is a misreading for Sūrparakas. The Sūrparaka country was known from very early times, and is celebrated in the Mahābhārata in connection with the legend of Rāma Jámadagnya. There it is located in the western region, but some passages seem to locate it in the south as well. This does not mean that there were two Sūrparakas. The reason for this anomaly seems to be clear, for the country was near the southern sea in the western region. According to the same Epic, it was situated on the sea near Prabhāsa, that is, modern Somnath in Kathiawar. The city of Sūrparaka, identical with the modern town of Sopāra near Bassin, is said to have been founded by Rāma Jāmadagnya.

In the Mahābhārata we find reference to the Vṛkas. The Matsyapurāṇa reads Andhakas instead. The Andhakas are intimately associated with the Yādavas and are often referred to in the Mahābhārata but they are known to have been located in Western India or Aparanta. A more correct or better reading seems to be Vṛṣṇikas.

The variant readings are Hārapūrikas and Hāramurtikas. None of these names is identifiable. Pargiter suggests Hāra-hūnakas who are mentioned in the Mahābhārata as a people outside India on the west.

This reading is evidently wrong. The Matsyapurāṇa (CXIII, 43) reads Rāmāthas instead. The Mahābhārata makes mention of them and locates them in the

---

1 Early History of the Dekkan, 23. 2 Vanapravarn, I, XXXV, 8185. 3 Sabhāparvan, XXX, 1169; Vanapravarn, I, XXXVIII, 8337. 4 Vanapravarn, CXVIII, 10221–27. 5 Harivamsa, CXVI, 5300. 6 Bhīṣmaparvan, I, 2106. 7 Udyoga parvan, LXXXV, 304; Harivamsa, XXXV, 1907–8; Ibid., XXXIX, 2041. 8 Vāyu, XIV, 116. 9 Matsya, CXIII, 41. 10 Sabhāparvan, XXXI, 1794; I, 1844; Vanapravarn, I, 1991.

---
The name of the people is also given as Ramātas or Ramāthas in the *Vāyu-purāṇa* (XLV, 117) and also in the *Mahābhārata*. There is, however, no clue to their identification.

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads Jugudās, the Matsya Jāṅgalas. In another place the *Matsya-purāṇa* mentions the Jagudās as a people through whose country the Indus flows (CXX, 46-48). But this indication is too vague to admit of any definite identification. The *Mahābhārata* also mentions the Jāṅgalas.

Pargiter suggests the reading Suhmottkalas which is neither intended nor necessary, for evidently a better suggestion is that of the *Matsya* which reads Suhmottaras meaning the people who dwell north of the Suhma country.

In the Kūrmaniveśa section of the *Mārkaṇḍeyā Purāṇa* the Bhṛgukacchas are located in the south. Evidently this is the correct Sanskrit form of the name which we find in a corrupt form, Bhiru-kacchas, in another section of the same *Mārkaṇḍeyā Purāṇa*, whereas the *Matsya-purāṇa* reads Bharukacchas (CXTIII, 50), who are the same people, namely, the Bhṛgukacchas of Sanskrit literature. Bhṛgukaccha, Bharukaccha, Bhīrakaccha are all identical with the modern Broach or Bharuch which is the Barygaza of early Greek geographers. All these names survive in the modern Broach, on the mouth of the Narmada. In early Buddhist literature as well as in the early centuries of the Christian era, the town was reputed to be an important seat of sea-going trade and commerce.

Along with the Bhṛgukacchas, the *Vāyu* (XLV, 131) and the *Matsya Purāṇas* (CXTIII, 51) mention a people called the Kacchikas. These were undoubtedly the people of what is now known as Kutch or Cutch.

The Māheyas must have been the people dwelling on the banks of the Māhi. They are the same as the Māhikas of the Bhīṣma-parvan list of the *Mahābhārata* (IX, 354).

The *Vāyu* (XLV, 132) and *Matsya Purāṇas* (CXTIII, 52) read Bhojas which is undoubtedly a more probable reading. The Bhojas were a Yādava tribe who dwelt in north-eastern Gujrat.

The *Vāyu-purāṇa* reads Aparitas and Matsya Purandharas instead; both are evidently erroneous. The Bhīṣma-parvan list of the *Mahābhārata* agrees with that of the

---

1 *Sabhā-parvan*, XXXI, 1195; *Vanaparvan*, LI, 1991; *Śānti-parvan*, LXV, 2430.
4 *Maṛkaṇḍeyā Purāṇa*, p. 327, note.  
5 *LVIII*, 22.  
6 *LVII*, 51.
Märkandeya Purāṇa. Mention is often made of this tribe in the Mahābhārata as Aparānta or Aparāntas. Generally the term is applied to all the tribes living in the western region of India. But the Märkandeya and Bhīṣma-parvan list must also be taken to signify a particular tribe. According to the astronomical list of the Märkandeya (Chap. 58) the tribe seems to have been located north of the Śindhu-Sauvira country. The word Aparānta in the narrowest sense or connotation of the term, that is, the kingdom of Aparānta is identified with northern Konkan with its capital at Śūrparaka (modern Sopara). It lay to the west of Mahāraṣṭra. It is mentioned in the inscriptions of Aśoka where we find that his empire included all the Aparāntas (Śūrparaka, Nāsik, etc., according to the Märkandeya Purāṇa (57, 49-52)). The author of the Periplus mentions King Māmbarus (identified by some with Nahapana) whose capital was Minnagara in Ariake. According to D. R. Bhandarkar Minnagara is Mandasor and Ariake is Aparāntika. Ushavadā's inscriptions show that Nahapāna's political influence extended from Poona and Śūrparaka (N. Konkan) to Mandasor and Puskarā (Ajmir). From the Nāsik record of Queen Gautami Balaśri we learn that her son extended his sway over Aparānta as well as over other western countries. Later on Aparānta was reconquered by the Śaka Satrap Rudradāman of Western India, as we find from his Junāgaḍh Rock Inscription of the year 72, that is, 150 A.D.

The Purāṇas style the first dynasty of Mahīsmati as Haihayas. This family is referred to in Kautilya's Arthasastra (p. 11). The Haihayas are said to have overthrown the Nāgas whose habitat was probably somewhere in the Narmadā region (cf. Nagpur). Five branches of the Haihayas are mentioned in the Mātisyāpurāṇa, namely, Vīthirotas, Bhojas, Avantis, Kundikeras or Tundikeras and the Tālajaṅghas (43, 48-9). In the fourth century B.C. Avanti formed an integral part of the Magadhān empire. Thus Mahāpādma Nanda, the first Nanda king, is described in the Vāyu, Mātisyā and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas as 'ekarat', or sole and undisputed monarch of the earth and 'sarva Kaśtrāṇathā', that is, the destroyer of all ksatriya families who ruled over the different parts of India along with the Sāiśmāgas, viz. the Ikṣvākus, Kurus, Pańcālas, Kaśis, Maithilas, Vīthirotas, Haihayas, Kalīngas, Aśmakas, Sūrasenas and so on. It appears, therefore, that the Haihayas were one of the ruling Kṣatriya dynasties of ancient India. In the Mahābhārata (XIII, 30) Pratardana, king of Kaśi, is said

---

1 Bhīṣma-parvan, IX, 355; Vanaparvan, CCXVII, 7885-6; Sāntiparvan, XLIX, 1780-82.
2 Mātisyā, 43, 8-29; Vāyu, 94, 5-26.
to have crushed the power of Vītahavyas or Haihayas. According to E. J. Rapson, the Haihayas, Āsmakas and Vitihotras, like the Sūrasenas, belonged to the great family of the descendants of Yadu who occupied the countries of the river Chambal in the north and the river Narbada in the south, though it is difficult to identify with precision the kingdoms indicated by these different names. Haihayas is often used as a synonym of Yādava to denote the whole group of peoples and the Vitihotras are said to be a branch of the Haihayas. The Vitihotras and the Āsmakas are closely associated in literature with the Avantis of Western Ṭālwā, whose capital was Ujjain (Ujjayinī) on the river Siprā, a tributary of the Chambal (Charmanvati). In the Puranic list of ruling dynasties the rulers of Ujjain are not mentioned. The obvious explanation for this, as Rapson points out, is that they are probably styled Haihayas in the Purānas.

The tribe cannot satisfactorily be identified. Bhogavardhanas

Bhogavardhana occurs in the Barhut Inscriptions. The Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas read Mālavas which is no doubt the correct reading. The Mālavas had settlements in different parts of India. The tribe referred to here may probably mean that branch of the Mālavas which settled in and around that portion of Malwa which borders on the Vindhyas.

The Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas read Vitihotras, which seems to be the correct reading. They were descended from king Vitihotra and were a branch of the Haihaya race. A variant of their name is given in the Dronaparvan of the Mahābhārata. The name Virahotra or Varahotra is met with in the Sānci Inscriptions of the second century B.C.

The Mātsyapurāṇa erroneously reads Vindhyapuṣikas (CXIII, 48), but the Vāyu reads Vindhyamūlikas (XLV, 126). No particular people of the name are known, but the name may mean the ‘people who live at the foot of the Vindhyas’.

Pargiter rightly suggests that the Jaṅgalas are the same as the people of Kurujaṅgalas. Kuru-jaṅgala, that is, the waste land of the Kuru, was the eastern part of their territory and appears to have comprised the tract between the Ganges and North Paṅcāla. The Jaṅgalas are mentioned with the

2 Ibid., p. 316.
3 Vide Barua and Sinha, Barhut Inscriptions, p. 15.
4 XLV, 132 and CXIII, 52, respectively.
5 XLV, 134; CXIII, 54.
6 Harivamśa, XXXIV, 1895.
7 L.XX, 2436.
8 Rāmāyana, Ayodhya Kānda, LXXII; Mahābhārata, Subhāṣarvan, XIX, pp. 793-4.
Kurus and contiguous tribes. So Pargiter's assumption seems to be correct, for we do not hear of any other people of this name mentioned in ancient literature or inscription.

It is very difficult to locate the Bhadrakaras or determine their identity. They are no doubt the same people as the Bhadrakāras\(^1\) and the Bhadras\(^2\) of the Mahābhārata.

It is not unlikely that their habitat was near about the Kurus, the Matsyas and the Śūrasenas. It is not improbable that the Uttamabhadras known in historical times as a republican tribe were a section of the Epic and Pauranic Bhadrakas or Bhadras.

The Sudracaæ or Oxydrakai of the Punjab are generally held to be the same as Kshudrakas. They were settled between the Hydraotes (Rāvi) and the Hyphasis (Beas) during the age of Alexander as we learn from classical historians. According to Ray Chaudhuri\(^3\), they were probably settled in the territory included within the present Montgomery District of the Punjab. They were one of the most numerous and warlike of all the Indian tribes in the Punjab. Arrian in one passage refers to the 'leading men of their cities and their provincial governors', besides other eminent men. Megasthenes,\(^4\) as quoted by Strabo, records that the Persians got mercenary troops from India, namely, the Hydarae, i.e., the Oxydrakai or Kshudrakas in the Punjab. The Malloi (Mālavas) and the Oxydrakai formed a grand alliance against the army of Alexander whom they opposed tooth and nail at first but finding it an impossible task they are said to have tendered their submission to the Macedonian conqueror by sending a thousand of their troops as hostages. They are alleged to have said that love of independence alone prompted them to oppose the invader.\(^5\) In the Mahābhārata\(^6\) we find mention of the Kshudrakas.

The Puṣkalas probably were the people from whom the name Puṣkalavati or Puṣkarāvati,\(^7\) the old capital of Gandhāra, derived its name. The Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas read Prasthalas. The Prasthalas were evidently people of Prasthala,\(^8\) closely connected with Trigarta and therefore located probably in the Punjab. Puṣkarāvati or Puṣkalavati (Pākīt Pukkalaotī, whence the Peukelaotis of Arrian) is represented by the

---

1. Sabhāparvan, XIII, 590.
2. Vanaparvan, CCLIII, 15256.
8. Ṣāh., Vīraṇaṇaparvan, XXX, 971; Bhīmaṇaparvan, LXXV, 3296; Dranaparvan, XVII, 691.
modern Prang and Chârsadda, 17 miles north-east of Peshawar on the Swat river.¹

Peukelaotis represents Sanskrit Puškarāvatī which is mentioned in the Bodhisattvavādāna Kalpalatā (32nd, p. 40). Puškalāvatī formed the western part of the old kingdom of Gandhāra. It lay on the road from Kabul to the Indus when Alexander invaded India. Arrian tells us that the Kabul falls into the Indus in the land called Peukelaotis. The people of the surrounding region are referred to sometimes as the ‘Astakenoi’ by classical historians. The reigning king at the time of Alexander’s invasion was Astes (Hasti or Ashtaka?) who was defeated and killed by Hephaestion, a general of Alexander. During the days of Aśoka, Puškarāvatī was the capital of Trans-Vindhyan Gandhāra. At a later age Indo-Greek kings of the house of Eukratides ruled for some time over Takṣaśila, Puškarāvatī, Kāpiśa and Bactria.² Bhandarkar³ draws our attention to an interesting coin on which the term nagara-devatā occurs, indicating that it is a civic coin bearing the image or the symbol of the tutelary or presiding deity of the city. On the obverse is a goddess with the Kharoṣṭhi legend [Pa]Khalavadā-devada, which has been taken to mean the tutelary divinity of Puškalāvatī. Puškalāvatī was a Hindu city and yet we find that the goddess on this coin wears Greek dress and a mural crown which is the emblem of a Greek civic deity. Bhandarkar holds that we cannot regard it as a Greek deity because a Hindu divinity may appear in a Greek or Hellenic garh on Indo-Bactrian coins.

In Mārkandeya Purāṇa⁴ the Cinas are mentioned. In the Mahābhārata we find them taking part in the Bharata war as allies of the Kurus along with the king of Prājyotisa and the Kirātas of North-Eastern India. But the reference here is probably to those Chinese people who had settled somewhere from the north-west to the east along the Indian side of the Himalayas. Thus in one place in the Mahābhārata⁵ they are associated with the Kāmhojas which shows that they were settled in the north-west, while in another⁶ they are mentioned among the soldiers who followed Bhagadatta, king of Prājyotisa, i.e. roughly modern Assam. Other references in the Mahābhārata⁷ seem to indicate that they were settled not very far from the sources of the Ganges. They appear as a well-known and highly respectable

³ Carmichael Lectures, 1921, p. 34.
⁴ Chap. 57, 39.
⁵ Bhishmaparvan, IX, p. 373.
⁶ Udyogaparvan, XVIII, pp. 584-5.
⁷ Vanaparvan, CLXXVII, 12350; Śāntiparvan, CCCXXVII, 12226-9.
people. Their country was famous for a particular breed of horses. The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa mentions the Cinas. A people called the Apara-Cinas (Western Cinas) is mentioned in the Rāmāyana.

The Pāli Buddhist literature refers to the kingdom of the Cinas which is situated far from the Andhakas, Mundaśkas, Kolakas, etc. and to the China garment. According to the Milinda-Paṇha, Cina was as old as Ujjeni, Bharukaccha, Kośala, Magadh, Sāketa, Surațtha, etc. The same text further points out that a king of China who when he wanted to charm the great ocean performed an act of truth at an interval of four months and then he entered into the great ocean on his chariot drawn by lions (sīharathena). In front of his chariot the mighty waves rolled back and flowed once more over the spot as soon as he left it (p. 121). The Mahāvastu refers to the assembly of the Cinas who were bound by its decision.

The Tukhāras are mentioned in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa (LVII, 39) along with the Kāmbojas, Daradas, Barbaras and Cinas, all of whom are described as ‘races of men outside’ (vāhyato naraḥ). The Vāyu-purāṇa (XIV, 118) reads Tuṣāras instead, meaning of course the same people. They are mentioned in the Mahābhārata both as Tukhāras as well as Tuṣāras. The Tukhāras are also mentioned in the Rāmāyana. From the Vanaparvan of the Mahābhārata the Tukhāras seem to have been an outside northern race bordering on the Himalayas. The Harivaṃśa groups them along with the Śakas, Pahlavas, Daradas and others who are all branded as Mlecchas and Dasyus. Strabo (XI, 515) says: ‘The best known of the nomad tribes are those who drove the Greeks out of Bactria,—the Asii, the Pasiani, the Tochari, and the Sacaranli, who came from the country on the other side of the Jaxartes, over against the Scae and Śogdiani, which country was also in occupation of the Scae.’ Lassen identifies the Tukhāras with this Tochari tribe and locates them on the north of the Hindu Kush. The geographer Ptolemy mentions the Tokeroi, who are doubtless identical with the Tukhāras as an important element of the Bactrian population. The Periplos of the Erythraean Sea seems to point to the same people when it speaks of ‘the warlike nations of the Bactrians’. The Tukhāras continued as a tribe till

the ninth and tenth centuries of the Christian era when they seem to have played an important part in the history of Kashmir.

The *Vāyupurāṇa* reads Sahasas and Sāśvatas instead (XLV, 130); but these names are not identifiable. The Sārasvatas are of course the people dwelling along the Sarasvati, the river that flows into the sea past Prabhāsa, i.e. modern Somnath.\(^1\)

The Āsvakūṭas, as it is given in the *Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa* (p. 57, 32), is obviously a misreading, for the *Vāyupurāṇa* reads Kīsaṇas, Kīsaṭas or Kīsadyas instead (XLV, 110), while the *Matsya* (CXIII, 35) reads Kīrātas. We have, however, no other evidence to show that the Kīrātas were in the Madhýadeśa. Epic and Pauranic tradition places them in the eastern region.

Particulars of the tribe called Kulyas are not known. It may be possible that they were the same people as the Kulutas, a republican community, who are mentioned in inscriptions of about the first century A.D. The Kulutas dwelt in the Punjab with such tribes as the Mālavas, Vaudheyas, Ārjunāyanas, Udumbaras, Kunindas and others.

The *Vāyupurāṇa* reads Magadhas and the *Matsya* reads Mūkas. Both are evidently misreadings, for the Magadhas are mentioned as an eastern people in the *Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa* (Chap. 57, verse 44). Pargiter\(^2\) suggests that the reading should be Malajas. The Malajas are mentioned in the *Mahābhārata*\(^3\) and in the *Rāmāyaṇa*.\(^4\) The course of the journey taken by Viśvāmitra and Rāma, as described in the *Rāmāyaṇa*, seems to show that they were neighbours of the Kārūṣas and occupied the district of Shahabad, west of the Sone.\(^5\)

The Bodhas are mentioned in the *Mahābhārata*\(^6\) and perhaps also in the *Rāmāyaṇa*\(^7\) as Bodhis. These people were probably located somewhere in the eastern districts of the Punjab.

The reading Bāhyas of the *Matsya-purāṇa* seems to be wrong, for this name is not found elsewhere unless we take them as identical with the Bāhikas.

The *Vāyupurāṇa* reads Daśamāṇikas (XLV, 117) while the *Matsya* reads Daśanāmākas (CXIII, 42). The *Bhīṣmaparvan* list, however, agrees with the

---

3. *Bhīṣmaparvan*, IX, 357.
Märkandeya Purāṇa in giving the above reading. We cannot, how-
never, identify or locate the people.

The Märkandeya Purāṇa gives a list of peoples (Vāhyatonarāh) who evidently dwelt on the borders of India. Among these mention is made of the Kāmbojas, Daradas, Barbaras, Harṣavardhanas, Cūnas and Tukhāras. Instead of Harṣavardhanas, the Vāyu-purāṇa reads Priya-laukkikas. But there is no clue whatsoever to the identification of these names.

The Vāyu-purāṇa reads Kāserukas and Matsuṣya Daserakas in giving the above reading. We cannot, however, identify or locate the people. The Märkandeya Purāṇa gives a list of peoples (Vāhyatonarāh) who evidently dwelt on the borders of India. Among these mention is made of the Kāmbojas, Daradas, Barbaras, Harṣavardhanas, Cūnas and Tukhāras. Instead of Harṣavardhanas, the Vāyu-purāṇa reads Priya-laukkikas. But there is no clue whatsoever to the identification of these names.

The Vāyu-purāṇa reads Kāserukas and Matsuṣya Daserakas instead. But none of them can be identified satisfactorily. Daserakas are, however, mentioned in the Mahābhārata as taking part in the Kurukṣetra war.

The Hamsamārgas are mentioned in the Märkandeya Purāṇa as also in the Bhīṣma-parvan list of the Mahābhārata. According to the Matsya-purāṇa, the river Paosni flowed through the countries inhabited by Tamaras and Hamsamārgas. The description of the Matsya-purāṇa seems to locate the two tribes in the region east of Tibet.

The Vāyu-purāṇa reads Ahukas or Āhukas instead. They may be the same as the Kurus of the Matsya-purāṇa who are said to have dwelt on the Indus (CXX, 46-8).

The name Satapatha is unintelligible and obviously erroneous. Pataccara is indeed a better reading, for a people of this name is found in the Mahābhārata.

The Matsya-purāṇa reads Ātta-khandikas or Cātta-khandikas and the Bhīṣma-parvan list of the Mahābhārata Carmakhandikas (IX, 355) Carmamandalas instead. These names are not identifiable. Pargiter's suggestion of its identification with Samarkand is interesting.

For Gabalas, the Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas read Yavanas, which undoubtedly is the correct reading (for details see Yonas or Yavanas).

The Satadrūjas are the people who dwelt along the river Sutlej. The Vāyu-purāṇa reads Śakas and Hradas (XLV, 116), the Matsya reads Śakas and Druvyas instead. The Śakas were a well-known people who left their traces on Indian history. They were at first a northern or north-western people but later on they extended their dominions to the south, east and west. They are known to have established royal families as far east as Mathurā (Muttra) and as far south and west as Ujjain and Surāstrā.

1 Bhīṣma-parvan, I, 2080; CXVIII, 5483; Drona-parvan, XI, 397; XX, 798.
2 Sābhā-parvan, XIII, 590-91; XXX, 1108; Virataparvan, I, II-2.
(Kathiawar). The Hradas cannot be identified. The Druhyas were undoubtedly an ancient people being mentioned as Druhyus in the \textit{Rgveda} along with the Anus.

For the Urnas, the \textit{Vāyu-purāṇa} reads Purāṇas. None of these names can, however, be identified with any amount of precision unless we find in the Urnas a people inhabiting the Urnadesa which Lassen places on the Sutlej near Garhwal (\textit{Ind. Alt. Map}).

The \textit{Mahābhārata} associates the Darvas with the Trigarttas, the Daradas and other northern tribes to the north of the Punjab.\(^1\)

The name Bahu-bhadra is differently given as Bāhū-bādhas\(^2\) and Bālabhahdars\(^3\) in the \textit{Mahābhārata}. The \textit{Matsya-purāṇa} reads Kaṇṭakaras while the \textit{Vāyu-purāṇa} reads Raddha Katakas.\(^4\)

The Traipuras are the people of Tripuri or Tripura which was both a city and a country. The city of Tripuri was the capital of the Cedi kingdom. It was a well-known city that derived its name from three cities or \textit{tri-pura} once in possession of the asuras.\(^5\) In the time of the Guptas, Tripuri-visaya was formed into a province under a Viceroy. It roughly corresponded to the modern Jubbulpur region which was the ancient Cedi country.

The Gajāhvayas, according to the \textit{Kurmanivēśa} section of the \textit{Mārkandeya Purāṇa}, are located in the 'middle of the tortoise', along with the Udumbaras, etc.

Pargiter very ingenuously guessed that the Gajāhvayas were none other than the people of Hastināpura, the capital of the Kuru.s. By a play on the meaning of the word 'hastin', 'elephant', the city was also called Hastināpura, Gajapura, Gajāhvaya, Gajasāhvaya, Nagapura, Nāgāhva, Nāgasāhvaya, etc.

The \textit{Parna-savaras}, located in the right foot of the tortoise, in the \textit{Kurmanivēśa} section of the \textit{Mārkandeya Purāṇa},\(^10\) were undoubtedly a tribe of the Savaras. Presumably this particular section of the Savaras used leaves of trees as their wearing apparel. A girdle of leaves serves as clothing of many aboriginal peoples of today and we have representations of such individuals in ancient Indian sculptures and paintings. The \textit{Parna-}

---

\(^1\) Pargiter, \textit{Mārkandeya Purāṇa}, p. 324 notes.  
\(^2\) \textit{Bhāṣmaparvan}, IX, 362.  
\(^3\) \textit{Kamaṇḍarvan}, VI, 153.  
\(^5\) \textit{Saubhāparvan}, XXX, 1164; \textit{Vānaparvan}, CLIII, 15246; \textit{Kamaṇḍarvan}, XXXIII and XXXIV.  
\(^6\) \textit{Uḍaya-parvan}, p. clxxvi, 6071.  
\(^7\) \textit{Adi-parvan}, p. cxiii, 4441 and 4460.  
\(^8\) \textit{Ibid.}, 4461-2.  
\(^9\) \textit{Ibid.}, p. cxxxii, 5146.  
\(^10\) LVIII, 19.
śavaras are incidentally mentioned in the early Bengali Caryāpadas and evidently these were the people from whom was derived the conception of the goddess Parṇa-śavari in Vajrayāna-Buddhism.

The Arbudas must have been the people dwelling on and around the Arbuda mountain which is generally identified with modern Mt. Abu which is the southern end of the Aravalli hills.

The Khasas are described in one place of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa (LVII, 56) as ‘parvatāsrayinah’ or dwelling along the mountains, and in another place as located in the middle of the tortoise along with the Śalvas, Nipas, Šakas, Śūrasenas, etc. (LVIII, 6). Epic tradition as contained in the Mahābhārata brands them as a rude half-civilised tribe along with the Šakas, Dāradas, etc. (Sabhāparvan, LI, 1859), while the Harivamśa records the reason why they were considered as such. It says that the people were once defeated and degraded by King Sāgara (XIV, 784) and were hence regarded as Mlecchas (XCV, 6440-1). Manu also says that they were originally Kṣatriyas, but were later on degraded by the lapse of sacred rites and the absence of Brāhmaṇas in their midst (X, 43-4). The Sabhāparvan of the Mahābhārata places the people near the river Sailoda between the Meru and Mandāra mountains (LI, 1858-9). If the river Sailoda is the same as Šailodaka of the Matsyapurāṇa (CXX, 19-23), then the Khasas seem to have originally settled somewhere in Tibet or further north-west. Much later, in historical times, the Khasas are mentioned with some other tribes in the inscriptions of the Pālas and Senas of Bengal in such a way as to suggest that they enlisted themselves as mercenary troops in the army of the kings of those dynasties.
Andhrabhrtyas, 157, 165
Andhradesa, 165
Andhrapatha, 164, 166
Andhrarakas, 164
Andhras, 81, 157, 164, 165, 166
Anenā dynasty, 105
Antiochus the Great, 80
Antiochus Theos, 155
Anupiya, 26
Anvapanivrit, 389
Arbitthapura, 83
Arjuna, 5, 6, 12, 25, 26, 27, 49, 58, 70, 73, 75, 80, 95, 96, 109, 136, 138, 145, 337
Arkakshetra, 336
Arkalūgas, 158, 383
Arkatos, 188
Arrian, 14, 40, 61, 62, 82, 97, 395
Arthaśāstra, 4, 37, 57, 92, 96, 106
Artisana, 314
Arun, 283
Aruna, 159
Arudī, 140
Aryan, 78, 82
Asadisadana, 128
Asaka, 185
Asamaśjas, 122, 123
Aṣaṅga, 13
Aṣela, 189
Aṣhṭaka, 395
Aṣi, 102
Aṣi, 396
Aṣika, 185
Aṣiknī, 30, 97
Aṣita, 249
Aṣitaṇjana, 43
Aṣoka, 7, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 35, 55, 58, 103, 110, 137, 140, 155, 156, 160, 256, et passim
Aṣokavadana, 287
Aṣmaka, 180, 181, 182, 183
Aṣmākas, 165, 180, 184
Aṣsaka, 159, 167, 180, 181, 183, 184
Aṣsakas, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184
Aṣskanoi, 180, 181
Aṣsakas, 159, 167, 180, 181, 183, 184
Aṣvamedha sacrifice, see Sacrifice
Aṣvapati, 54, 58, 77
Aṣvasena, 105
Asvins, 46
Atali, 254
Atharvas, 158, 383
Athena, 155
Athens, 155, 156
Aristobothra, 83
Aristobothra, 83
INDEX

Atithi, 100
Atris, 131, 152
Aśṭhakūlakā, 311, 326
Attok, 9
Audradeśa, 335
Andras, 333
Andumbaras, 90, 355
Augustus Caesar, 191
Aupamanyava, 54
Aupamānyava, 98
Auras, 86
Aurva, Rṣi, 122
Avadānakalpalatā, 256
Avantas, 158, 383
Avanti, 41, 60, 100, 134, 136, 137, 138, 140, 185, 337
Avantiputto, 41
Avantis, 63, 337, 387
Avantivarman, 74
Ayodhya, 38, 44, 119, 124, 125, 138, 146, 157, 237
Ābhira country, 80
Ābhiras, 63, 76, 79, 80, 81, 89, 95, 151, 159, 350
Ādhakaṇya, 383
Āḍikot, 34
Āḍi-Rājā, 34
Āḍityagotra, 248
Āḍityasena, 157
Āhir, 79
Āhirs, 79, 81
Āhūkas, 398
Ākara-Avanti, 185
Ākaraśvapati, 185, 389
Ākamandā, 56
Ākāma-Kālāma, 289
Ālanka Saunati, 105
Āmbaśṭhya, 96
Āmrapāli, 308, 321
Ānanda, 106, 116, 130, 132, 143, 148, 149, 309, 310
Ānartta, 389
Āpava Kṣatriyas, 96
Āndhra country, 159
Andhras, 165
Āpastamba, 11, 301
Āpayā, 18, 21
Āpiṣali, 60
Āptyas, 19
Āranyaka, Aitareya, 31
Āranyaka, Sāṅkhya-yāna, 31, 195
Āraṭṭas, 71
Āryacakka-vattis, 170, 191
Ārjunāyaṇas, 44, 63, 75, 76, 90, 91, 95, 397
Āryārakṣita, 106
Āryāvarta, 63
Āsana-paṇīṇāpaka, 323
Āṭika, 28
Āśvalāyana Kauṇsalya, 118
Ātabyas, 81
Ātavi, 383
Ātavikas, 383
Ātavyas, 383
Ātreya, 152
Ātreyas, 151
Ātta-khaṇḍikas, 398
Āyar, 189
Āyudha-jīva-saṅgha, 75
Āyurveda, 104
Bactria, 155, 396
Bactrian King, 17
Bactrians, 187, 396
Badarika monastery, 148
Badarikārāma, 147
Bahirgiras, 388
Bahn-Bhadra, 399
Baithan, 184
Baktria, 10
Baktriana, 282
Baktiri, 71
Bala, 106
Baladatta, 136
Baladeva, 106
Balavarman, 286
Balhika Prātipiya, 20, 70
Bali, 158
Balhk, 70, 71
Bandhula, 263, 262
Banerjee, A. C., 62
Banerjee, R. D., 7, 8, 16, 17
Bangaladesa, 263
Barāṇa, 102
Barbara, sea of, 92
Barbaras, 91, 92, 153
Cave country, 10
Cedi, 32, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 65, 89, 105
Cedi dynasty, 49, 52, 53
Cediraja, 51
Cedis, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 87, 88, 89
Cellana, 327
Central Asia, 45
Cetera, 187
Cerobothra, 194
Ceta dynasty, 49, 52, 53
Cetasi, 51
Cetaka, 327
Cetara, 51
Ceti, 47
Cetiya, Pasana, 328
Chamba, 74
Chambal, 338, 379, 393
Chanda, R., 7, 44, 98
Chandan, 150
Chandra, 45, 70
Chandraghâ, 82, 83
Châpadevi, 141
Charitrâpura, 336
Chatta, 108, 133
Chankundi mound, 115
Che-li-ta-lo, 336
Chenab, 55, 58, 60, 68, 82
Chen-shu-na, 240
Chera, 193
Cherand, 310
Chéras, 186, 193
Chicacole, 159
Chola country, 82
Chola ruling family, 85
Chryse, 89
Cinas, 99, 395
Cirâdatatta, 279
Citrângada, 24
Citta-Hatthisiriputta, 115
Cleisobora, 40
Cola, 187
Cola dynasty, 187
Colas, 186, 187, 188, 189
Copper plate—
Amulla, 280
Asratpur, 268
Belava, 276, 281
Damodarpur, 279
Edilpur, 280
Madhainagar, 272, 280
Naihati, 276
Pâharpur, 279
Râmpal, 281
Sanjan, 272
Sunderban, 280
Tarpanadighi, 280
Cucukas, 174
Culanipiyâ, 106
Culika, 385
Culikas, 152, 384
Cunda, 260, 261
Cundațhâla, -115
Cunningham, 10, 14, 15, 17, 34, 37, 49, 42, 51, 55, 66, 74, 76, 77, 88, 90, 91, 93, 102, 115, 136
Curtius, 60, 61, 97, 160
Cyâvana, 387
Cyrus, 16
Dabba, 260
Dabbasena, 127
Daddarapura, 47
Dadhivâhana, 138
Dahala Mandala, 50
Dakhinabades, 382
Damaghoâ, 48, 87
Damaghoâasuta, 47
Damaghoââtmaja, 47
Damayanti, 100
Damila, 168, 169, 188
Damilas, 168, 169, 170
Damilica, 188, 194
Damis, 14
Dandaka forest, 383
Dândakappaka, 132
Dândakas, 81, 174, 383
Dândapâni, 137
Dandin, 197
Dantakura, 159
Dantapura, 159, 182
Dantapuranagara, 159
Dantavakra, 87
Daradas, 86, 152
Dardae, 86
Dardanoi, 86
Dardistan, 86
Dardo, 86
Daradrai, 86
Darsaka, 204, 205
Darvaa, 68
Darvas, 399
Daśakumârâcaritam, 84
Daśamâlikas, 397
Daśamânikas, 397
Daśanâmakas, 397
Daśaratha, 77, 117, 124, 210
INDEX

Anenäh, 105
Bārabadratha, 47
Candra, 269
Cola, 187
Gaharwar, 37
Haihaya, 51
Kalacuri, 51, 53, 162
Kānya, 197
Kīrāta, 283
Maurya, 197, 289
Nanda, 205
Pāla, 162, 266
Pṛadyota, 196
Senā, 162, 267
Śāhiya, 17
Śiśunāga, 199
Śolar, 246
Śunga, 197
Dyutimān, 49

Edict—
Kalinga I, 15
Kauśāmbī Schism Pillar, 137
Minor Rock, 175
Rock XIII, 7, 155
Eggeling, Julius, 235
Ekāmra, 334
Bhāra, 188
Eliot, Sir Charles, 3, 10, 37, 41, 45
Episthalites, 304
Era—
Gupta, 331
Kalacuri, 52
Krta, 63, 64
Licchavi, 331
Vikrama, 63
Braskapatta, 115
Eran Epigraph, 213
Eukratides, 187, 295
Eusofzai, 9
Euthydemos, 16, 17

Pā Hien, 10, 13, 40, 84, 131, 143, et passim.
Fatgarh, 34
Fausböll, 17, 28, 29, et passim
Festival, Elephant, 113
Fick, 17, 99, 297
Fleet, 211, 331
Po-li-shi, 240
Foucher, A., 3, 17
Führer, 50

Gabalas, 153, 398
Gahādavāla Govinda Chandra, 334
Gaharwar dynasty, 37
Gajāhvayas, 355, 399
Gajapura, 399
Gajasāhvaya, 399
Gandāk, 117
Gandharai, 10, 15
Gandarīoī, 10
Gandhāra, 9 ff., 26, 54, 59, 70, 86
Gandhāra Art, 17
Gandhāra, King, 15
Gandhāran horses, 17
Gandhāras, 3, 7, 9, 12, 13, 24, 92
Gandhāris, 9, 11
Gangaikōnda-Cōlapuram, 186
Gangaridas, 160, 162
Gangaridas-Calingae, 162
Gangarīdai, 93, 160
Gangaridaes, 160
Ganges, 160
Ganges, 20, 92, 93, 104, 113, 160
Ganges-Jumna Doab, 1
Gāh, Rājā Viśāl kā, 311
Gauḍ, 388
Gauta, 7, 52
Gaudas, 270 ff.
Gautāmā, 153
Gautamī Bala śri, 389, 392
Gautamiputra, 389
Gayaccha the Less, 148
Gavampati, 115
Gāyā-Karṇa, 162
Gāndhārī, 24
Gaṅgeyadeva, 52, 53
Geğer, 156
Gerini, Col., 187
Ghaṭotkacha Gupta, 211
Ghażni, 17
Ghosa ṯa, 139, 146, 147, 149, 150
Ghositārāma, 147, 148, 149
Ghotamukha, 115
Gījhitakōtā, 215
Gīloka, 169
Gīrinagara, 156
Giriprastha, 100
Girīvraja, 47, 77, 196
Gīnyā, 169
Gīmara, 156
Gīryak, 77
Goddāvarī, 164, 167, 184, 383
Go-Lāngulas, 382
Goldstücker, 96
Indapattana, 29
Indo-Aryan Culture, 19
Indo-Aryan Society, 39
Indo-Skythia, 351
Indo-Skythian Sus, 14
Indra, 19, 21, 46, 69
Indradatta, 23
Indraprastha, 23, 25, 28, 137, 237
Indraraja, 59
Indies, five, 59
Indumati, 197
Indus, 9, 10, 14, 16, 17, 68, 70, 82, 86, 92
Inscription—
Atilole, 162
Ajan, 176
Allahabad Iron Pillar, 81
Allahabad Pillar, 55, 63, 70, 76, 94, 95, 383
Allahabad Stone Pillar, 296
Apshad, 271
Arulala-Perumal, 373
Asokan, 155, 392
at Pabhosa, 140
Bhadral Pillar, 334
Banskhera, 64
Barhut, 144, 393
Bheraghāt, of Alaha Devi, 162
Bhitari Stone Pillar, 296
Bhuvaneswar Stone, 334
Bihar Stone Pillar, 296
Bijayagadh, 63, 76
Bilsad Stone Pillar, 296
Brāhma, 38, 146
Central Indian, of the sixth century
A.D., 94
Deo-Baranark, 274
Deopara, 273
Guruda Pillar, 272
Gayā copper plate, 296
Gunda, 80
Gwalior, 272
Harahā, of the Maukhar king, 165
Hāthigumpha, 178
Hāthigumpha Cave, 161
Jaunpur of Iśvararvarman, 165
Jodhpur, 272
Jūnagadh Rock, 63, 76, 80, 99, 156, 392
Kanheri, 71
Mahākūṭa Pillar, 385

Mandasor, 63
Mathurā nāga Statuette, 44
Mathurā stone, 206
Meharauli Iron Pillar, 70
Modern local, found at Masār, 88
Muttra (Mathurā), 44
Mysore, 176
Nagpur Stone, 273
Nānāghāt, 381
Nāsik Cave, 63, 157, 389
Nepalese, 162
Nilgund, 272
of the Kalacuri or Harihaya dynasty
of Cedi, 51
of Yaśapāla, 145
old Persian, 9
on the gateway on the fort of Kara, 141
Pīṭhāpuram, 273
Rānganātha, 373
Sagartal, 65
Sānti, 393
Sāṁnāth, 273
Shorkot, 83
Silimpur, 274
Sirur, 272
Susumna Rock, 70
Tewar Stone, 65
Tirumalai Rock, 336
Udayagiri Cave, 356
Uṣavadāta’s, 354

Ionians, 153
Iran, 71
Irāvati, 83
Irāvatim, 71
Iśānvarman, 165
Ishukkāra, 23
Iṣidatta, 340
Iṣipatana Migadāva, 114, 115
Iṣvara, 35
Iṣvaradatta, 80
Iṣvaradeva, 252
Iṣvarasena, 80
Iṣuyāra, 23
Ivory workers’ Bazar, 112

Jacobi, 207
Jagayyapeta stūpa, 78
Jala, 103
Jalalabad, 10
Jalalpur, 77
Jālandhara, 74, 90, 91
Jāliya, 149
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jambudipa</td>
<td>23, 36, 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James Fergusson</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janaka</td>
<td>20, 31, 236</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janakapura</td>
<td>237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janamejaya</td>
<td>28, 119</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janamati Atyarati</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jarasanda</td>
<td>24, 42, 47, 48, 196, 199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaratkuru</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jartikula</td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jätaka—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asitarupa</td>
<td>109</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhojājāniya</td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhuridatta</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahāchutta</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceyiya</td>
<td>32, 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaddanta</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campeyya</td>
<td>4, 201</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutiya-palayi</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gandhāra</td>
<td>13, 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gandatindu</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaṅgamāla</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ghata</td>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayaddisa</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāliṅga-Bodhi</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumbhakāra</td>
<td>11, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kunāla</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kurudhamma</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kusa</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahānaradakassapa</td>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahāsīlava</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahāummagga</td>
<td>84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māra</td>
<td>113</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nimi</td>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palāyi</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satapatta</td>
<td>111</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sivi</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tipalathamigam</td>
<td>148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ummadanti</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vedabha</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessantara</td>
<td>17, 51, 83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jatuarar</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jātukarni</td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaxartes</td>
<td>396</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayaddisa</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayaghosa</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayantipura</td>
<td>382</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayapāla</td>
<td>334</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayāpida</td>
<td>271, 272</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayasimhadeva</td>
<td>65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jayasval</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jentā</td>
<td>321</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jenti</td>
<td>321</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jetavana</td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jettuttara</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jetuttaranagara</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeyyapura</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jhēlm</td>
<td>55, 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jījāsā</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jīva</td>
<td>109, 110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jñātrkak</td>
<td>243</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jñeyamallakas</td>
<td>285</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johiya Rajputs</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johiyabar</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johiyas</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johnson</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jolly</td>
<td>296</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ju-lai</td>
<td>310</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumna</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jurnar</td>
<td>382</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jyāmagha</td>
<td>49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Page Range</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kabul</td>
<td>9, 10, 44, 93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaccayana</td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kacdham-gana</td>
<td>67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kadambas</td>
<td>166, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaikeyas</td>
<td>49, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaikeyi</td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalmur hills</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kārītās</td>
<td>151</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaksivant</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kakutsthla</td>
<td>121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kālābu</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalacuri dynasty</td>
<td>53, 162</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalacuri era</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kālakana</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāliṅga</td>
<td>28, 51, 57, 159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāliṅga-Gangaridae</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāliṅganagara</td>
<td>158, 159, 161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāliṅgas</td>
<td>5, 81, 90, 158, 174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāliṅga-visāya</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalmāsāpāda</td>
<td>24, 123, 180, 182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ka-long-ka</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalyānapura</td>
<td>53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamane</td>
<td>351</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamaniyabhojas</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamauli grant</td>
<td>286</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamboja horses</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kambojadeśa</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kambnjiya</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kammāsadamama</td>
<td>22, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kammāsadhama</td>
<td>22, 23, 29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kampil</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kampil</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamsa</td>
<td>42, 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanakavati</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanakhala</td>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Kanauj, 29, 52, 141
Kandahar, 9
Kangoda, 161
Kangra, 74, 90
Kanhatrevata, 131
Kaniska, 10, 14, 41
Kanetti, 193
Kanta, 187, 188
Kapila, 32, 246, 247
Kapihavayapura, 248
Kapilavastu, 246
Kapisesa, 152
Karandaka, 159
Karanda, 159
Kardameya, 71
Karikal, 189
Karmanasa, 88
Karmanas, 133
Kathasaritaga, 69
Katthavahanagara, 113
Kaurava, 5, 20, 27, 40, 60, 86
Kausalya, 119
Kausalya, 119
Kausambi-mandala, 141, 144
Kausika, 49
Kausurubinda, Predi, or Prori, 144, 149
Kauitila, 4, 29, 37, 57, 322
Kâkas, 76, 95, 356
Kâkavanâ Tissa, 169
Kâla-ka-serai, 15
Kâlakavana, 379
Kâlâmistan, 287, 287
Kâlañjara, 50, 51
Kâlaharapura, 51
Kâlasena, 125
Kâli Sindhu, 379
Kâlidâsa, 4, 156
Kâlimadî, 93
Kâlimât river, 93, 146
Kâliya, naga, 44
Kâlurâk, 140
Kâmarûpa, 285
Kâmarûpa, 162, 282
Kâmarûpas, 99
Kâmboja, 3 fl., 70
Kâmbojas, 1 fl., 13, 77, 92
Kâmpala, 33
Kâmpilya, 32, 33, 34
Kâmsuvan, 64
Kâncnapura, 159
Kâuch, 186
Kâuchipura, 171, 188, 191, 194
Kânyakubja, 35, 52, 55
Kâpingalas, 355
Kâpiâ, 13, 14, 17, 334
Kârdama, 71
Kârdamaka Kings, 71
Kârdamaka Vamsa, 71
Kârkoa Sankaravarman, 74
Kârtavirya, 369
Kârtaviryârjuna, 337
Kâsa, 105
Kâsara, 105
Kâsi, 4, 49, 88, 89, 102 ff.
Kâsi-candana, 112
Kâsi cloths, 112
Kâsiga, 109
Kâsika, 60, 67
Kâsmagara, 102
Kâsapa, 102
Kâsâs, 23, 50, 88, 102 ff., 158
Kâsi-valepanda, 112
Kâsmir, 15, 21
Kâsya, 103, 105
Kâsya, 298
Kâtyâyana, 18, 60, 71
Kâveri, 84, 186, 187, 189, 379
Kâveripatana, 171, 188, 191
Kâvirupakanam, 188, 188
Kâvyâ Mimâmsâ, 70, 77
Keilhorn, 85
Keith, 18, 98, 102
Kekaya, 78, 84, 118
Kekayas, 66, 68, 77, 78, 84, 89
Kenyina, 93
Ken river, 88
Kerala, 93, 193
Keralas, 81, 89, 90, 186, 193
Kulaśekhara, 170
Kulatās, 90
Kumikas, 65
Kulindas, 90, 91, 92
Kulindrine, 91
Kulit, 90
Kullaka, Bhāṭṭa, 295
Kulu, 90
Kūlimūs, 90, 91
Kumāradēvi, 330
Kumāragupta, 64
Kumāragupta III, 165
Kumārapakṣa, 932, 933
Kumaradevi, 330
Kumaragupta, 64
Kumaragupta III, 105
Kumarakāśapa, 132, 133
Kundadana, 254
Kūnīda-dhana, 128, 131
Kūmidāpura, 307
Kūnindas, 90, 91
Kuntala, 166, 176, 177
Kuntalas, 90, 91, 158, 176
Kunti, 57
Kuntila, 176
Kūrā, 93
Kuru, 6, 11, 22, 24, 28, 32, 47, 56, 57, 68, 89, 103, 105
Kuru Army, 12, 27, 34
Kurudhamma, 28
Kurudipa, 21
Kurukṣetra, 4, 5, 6, 12, 18, 19, 20, 21, 24, 26, 27, 34
Kurukṣetra War, 35, 40, 49, 57, 58, 60, 65, 68, 77, 78, 84, 89, 96, 100, 105
Kuru-Pañcāla, 19, 20
Kuru-Pañcāla land, 20, 23
Kuru-Pañcālas, 20, 30, 31
Kuru people, 21
Kurumbar, 189
Kūrūrāṭṭham, 22, 23
Kurūs, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 29, 30, 31, 33, 35, 68, 96
Kurūṭas, 90
Kuruvāyhas, 355
Kuruśravaṇa, 18
Kuśa, 56, 100, 124, 125, 144
Kuśāmba, 130, 144
Kuśasthali, 124
Kuśāvati, 56
Kuśerukas, 151, 152
Kuśāṇas, 17
Kuśināra, 133
Kusṭhalapura, 212
Kusumapura, 205
Kuṭāgārasāla, 308, 309
Kuvalayāśva, 121
Lakkanamantam, 114
Lakṣmāna, 36, 124, 237, 305
Lakṣmānasena, 162
Lakṣmikarna, 162
Lallavistara, 40, 43, 112, 113, 322
Lalliyā, 17
Lambagāsa, 152
Lambatai, 86, 93
Lampāk, 86
Lampākas, 93, 151, 152
Lanka, 168, 171, 179
Lassen, 97, 100, 152, 399
Laufer, B., 11
Lauhitya, 286
Lava, 124
Lavana, 42
Law, B. C., 2, 103, 106, 114, 115
Lāda, 352
Lāla, 352
Lāludāyi, 131
Lār, sea of, 351
Lārī, 351
Lārika, 175
Lārike, 175, 351
Lāta, 175, 177, 351
Lāta-desa, 60, 175, 351
Lāta-visaya, 351, 352
Lātas, 357, 352, 353
Lātēsvāra, 352
Lātika, 352
Lecchai, 294, 295
Lecchaki, 295
Lecchavi, 294, 296
Lefmann, 43, 113
Legge, 13, 14, 15, 41
Lhāsā, 303
Licchavayāh, 331
Licchavi, 119, 294, 297, 300
Licchavis, 125, 204 ff., 388
Licchavigaṇa, 315
Licchavikula-ketu, 296
Licchivi, 204
Lichavi, 295
Li-ch’e-p’o, 296
Lomaśa, 10
Lona-sobhikā, 45
Long, 282
Lotus palace, 147
Lumbini Garden, 248
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lumbinigrāma, 248

Maccha-Sūrasena, 135
Macchas, 39
Macchikāsanda, 114
Macco-Calingae, 162
McCrinle, 3, 14, 15, 34, 35, 60, 61, 91, 92, 93, 97
Madden, 25, 98, 102
Maccotonias, 82
Maddayanti, 180, 182
Madda, 327
lladgurakas, 388
Madhaiyagrama, 162
Mahābharata, 2, 4, 5, 6, 11, 12, 21, 24, 32, 34, 35, 39, 40, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 53, 57, 58, 60, 62, 66, 69, 74, 76, 77, 79, 80, 83, 84, 86, 87, 90, 91, 92, 95, 96, 100, 104, 105
Mahābhārata, 3, 22, 26, 40, 50, 54, 60, 106, et passim
Mahākaccāyana, 22, 41, 116, 140, 148, 340
Mahākāla, 341
Mahākama, 43
Mahākosāla, 22, 109, 126, 129, 202
Mahākotthita, 115, 116
Mahākṣatrapa, 80
Mahāmandhātā, 23
Mahāmārga, 119
Mahāmātra, 316, 320
Mahāmāyā, 249
Mahāmoggallāna, 116
MahāmucaLa, 239
Mahānāma, 313
Mahānandin, 196, 205
Mahāpadma Nanda, 160, 392
Mahāpajāpati Gotamī, 130, 131, 253
Mahāpatāpa, 238
Mahārakkhita, 7, 156
Mahārāṣṭra, 81, 159, 389, 392
Mahārathis, 178
Mahāśīgarā, 43
Mahāśāmmata, 239, 246
Mahāśāṅghika system, 167
Mahāsenagupta, 64
Mahāśīlakaṇṭaṇa, 204
Mahāśīflava, 108
Mahāśīvagupta Yayāti, 335
Mahāsthan, 44, 278, 279
Mahāsuvaṇṇa, 130
Mahātīttha, 169
Mahāvīra, 15, 106, 125, 150, 243, 244, 318
Mahāyānism, 13
Mahendra, 56, 378
Mahendri, 51
Maht river, 64, 65, 379
Mahidhara, 98
Mahinda, 342
Mahipāla, 8, 90, 279, 363
Mahipāladeva, 52
Mahirakula, 59
Mahisāsakas, 13
Mahismān, 105
Mahiyangana, 168, 169
Mahmud, Sultan, 17
Mahmud of Ghazni, 361
Matthews, 392
Maitrakas, 64, 65, 345
Majumdar, R. C., 55
Majumdar, S. N., 83, 92, 97, 102
Majupa, 62
Makala Koīf, 198
Makara, 198
Mekala country, 100
Mekala hill, 97, 374
Mekala Kalingas, 162
Mekalāḍī, 374
Mekalāṃbaṣṭha, 97
Mekalas, 90, 97, 101, 333, 374
Mekalāṃmusta, 97, 374
Menander, 44, 58
Mendakasettbi, 129
Menū Mt., 91, 379
Migadaya, 115
Mibirakula, 58
Milinda, 44, 58, 71
Milindapañha, 41, 55, 56, 265
Minnagar, 92
Minnagara, 392
Mithi, 238
Mithilā, 52, 119, 237 ff., 321
Mitra, 37
Mitradasa, 103
Mitraśāha Saudāsa, 123
Mitrāṭithi, 18
Mitravarman, 36
Mittasena, 169
Mleccha country, 12
Mleccha tribes, 93
Modagiri, 388
Modo-Galingae, 173
Modubae, 173
Moggallāna, 129
Moggaliputta Tissa, 41
Moha river, 64
Mo-hi-lo-kiu-lo, 59
Mōhin, 188
Mokala, 99
Mo-ki-to, 198
Mo-la-po, 64, 65
Molinae, 89
Mollinī, 102
Moneses, 335
Mōphas, 351
Moredes, 93
Morīya, 206, 287, 288
Morīyanagarā, 256
Morīyar, 188
Morounda, 93
Moroundai, 93
Mote-Hall, 455
Monsikarol, 350
Mousikenos, 384
Mrgavati, 138
Mrisikas, 384
Mrōḷikāvati, 66
Mucala, 239
Mūchipsa, 384
Mūcīpas, 173
Muchirī, 193
Mucukunda, 386
Mudakaras, 388
Mudgalāśrama, 388
Mudgagiri, 388
Mudgala, 32
Mudrārākṣasa, 206
Muir, 98, 99
Mūjavants, 10
Muka-Kalingas, 163
Mūkas, 397
Mukhalingam, 160, 161, 163
Mukhya Kalinga, 160
Mukula, 32
Mūlaka, 123, 167, 184, 185, 383, 389
Mūlakas, 184 ff.
Mūnda, 197, 198, 205
Mūndakas, 167, 396
Mūndās, 93
Mūnika, 196
Muralas, 90
Mūrā, 53
Murī, 284
Murunda, 93
Murunda-Svāminī, 94
Murundai, 93
Murundas, 93
Mūsakas, 384
Mūshika, 173, 193
Musī, river, 173, 384
Musikanagara, 384
Mūsikas, 384
Mūtibas, 164, 173
Muttra, 45
Mūvīpa, 384
Mūvīpas, 173
Muziris, 193
Nagarvinda, 129
Nagnajit, 11
Nahapāna, 63, 302
Nahuṣa, 21, 24
Nahuṣa family, 105
Naimisiya sacrifice, 31
Nairnikas, 179
Naisikas, 165, 179
Nakula, 73, 96
Nala, 100, 389
Nalakaśaṇa, 132
Nanda, 131, 249
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>231</td>
<td>Nigartha Nātaputta, 231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254</td>
<td>Nigrodhārāma, 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nikāya—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anguttara, 22, 29, 36, 41, 50, 52, 68, 103, 109, 114, 115</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digha, 22, 52, 103, 110, 114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majjhima, 22, 29, 41, 114, 115</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samyutta, 29, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>379</td>
<td>Nila range, 379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Nilīya, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>362</td>
<td>Nilkantha, 362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159</td>
<td>Nimi, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Nineveh, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Nipa, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247</td>
<td>Nīpura, 247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137</td>
<td>Nīrāmitra, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Nirukta, 1, 20, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>Nirvākta, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Nisada, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Nisāda, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>Nisādas, 98, 99, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>379</td>
<td>Nisadha range, 379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Nisadhas, 97, 100, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Nisibis, 303, 304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td>Nitisā, 206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Ngga, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>Nysa, 154, 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>Nysaeans, 154, 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232</td>
<td>Odantapuri, 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336</td>
<td>Odā country, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336</td>
<td>Odā-viṣaya, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336</td>
<td>Odiviṣa, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335</td>
<td>Odra, 161, 162, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335</td>
<td>Oḍrā, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335</td>
<td>Oḍras, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336</td>
<td>Odra-viṣaya, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Ohind, 15, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246</td>
<td>Okkāka, 56, 110, 246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335</td>
<td>Okkalas, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>297</td>
<td>Oldenberg, 43, 69, 135, 297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>321</td>
<td>Oligarchy, 321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>Oliyar, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>247</td>
<td>Opura, 247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335</td>
<td>Oretes, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335</td>
<td>Orissa, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>Orosius, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232</td>
<td>Otantapuri, 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>379</td>
<td>Ouintion, 379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>379</td>
<td>Ouxenton, 379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>385</td>
<td>Oxus river, 282, 385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>394</td>
<td>Oxudrakai, 60, 61, 62, 394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>351</td>
<td>Ozene, 175, 351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index Item</td>
<td>Pages/References</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pataliputra</td>
<td>140, 160, 188, 205, 287, 295, 331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patharghatā</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāvā</td>
<td>257 fl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāvārīka</td>
<td>146, 147, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāwāpuri</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāyāsi</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peithon</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennār river</td>
<td>172, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perdikas</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perimuda</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periplus</td>
<td>63, 71, 79, 80, 92, et passim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periyār river</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persia</td>
<td>38, 45, 71, 303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peru-nar-Kili</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peshawar</td>
<td>9, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petyatthu Commentary</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petenikas</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pettanika</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peukalei</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penkelaotis</td>
<td>14, 15, 394, 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pidikas</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pīllakhaṛghūḥa</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilayamāra</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pī-lo-tu-lo</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pindola Bāhadvāja</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ping-ki-lo</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pippalivana</td>
<td>206, 288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piprāvā</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piśṭapura</td>
<td>161, 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pithiṣapa</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pithiya</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pīṭinikas</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pliny</td>
<td>14, 15, 160, et passim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plutarch</td>
<td>61, 160, 206, et passim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pokhrana</td>
<td>265, 266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pokkharāsādi</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pokkharāsāti</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polamuru plates</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Po-sha-pu-lo</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posada</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poshadha</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Po-shih-po</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potali</td>
<td>159, 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potana</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratihārda</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pouliopoulou</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prabhākara</td>
<td>Ruśi, 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prabhākaravardhana</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prabhāsa</td>
<td>354, 390, 397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pracetā</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pradyota</td>
<td>137, 138, 196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prajāpati</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pragatsīrācāra</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratikṣhāna</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratyagraha</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pratyekabuddha</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pravāhana</td>
<td>Jaivalī, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pravangas</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pravīyayas</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pravīra</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prayāga</td>
<td>20, 142, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prācya Pātikālas</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prāgyotisa</td>
<td>282, 284, 285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prāgyotisāpura</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prāgyotisās</td>
<td>284 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prāgyotisēśa</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prālamba</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Praśībodhi</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prāvyeyas</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priyadarśikā</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priyātukikas</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proklais</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōti Kausurubindī</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prithivisenā</td>
<td>1, 177, 267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prthu</td>
<td>195, 327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prthvicaṇḍa</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ptolemy</td>
<td>15, 34, 40, 71, 75, 79, 80, 86, 91, 93, 97, et passim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pubbavideha</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puccalaoti</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pukkuśas</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pukkuṣāti</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulahatthā</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulakesin</td>
<td>11, 162, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulika</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulindakas</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulindas</td>
<td>152, 159, 165, 174 ff., 388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulkusa</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pukkusas</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punamakha</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punavaṭhana</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purṇa</td>
<td>158, 264, 267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purṇaṛs</td>
<td>158, 277 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purṇavardhana</td>
<td>263, 267, 277 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purṇavardhanabhukti</td>
<td>263, 269, 279 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pūn-na-fa-tan-ma</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punnaka Yakkha</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puphavati</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pūraṇa Kassapa</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahadeva</td>
<td>27, 40, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahaja</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahajati</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahācanika</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahasrānika</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saheth-Maheth</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahaya</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śailodā river</td>
<td>91, 364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śailālaya</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sailusas</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saindhavas</td>
<td>67, 344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sainikas</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint-Martin, M. Vivien de</td>
<td>91, 93, 310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaisunāgas</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saivya</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sajjanela</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaka</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaka-Muruṇḍas</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sakas</td>
<td>3, 4, 5, 6, 77, 84, 92, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śakkara</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śakuni</td>
<td>11, 12, 25, 27, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śakuntalā</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salākā-gahāpaka</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śalya</td>
<td>5, 47, 57, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samaɪkara</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samarkhand</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samataṭa</td>
<td>3, 263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sambarana</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sambastai</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sambhītā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bṛhat</td>
<td>55, 74, 75, 85, 92, 95, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Čārīgī</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāṭhaka</td>
<td>30, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maitrāyani</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taittirīya</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vājasaneyi</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varāha</td>
<td>91, 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vajurveda</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samhitās, Vedic</td>
<td>30, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sammatiya school</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sammatiyanas</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampati</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samudragupta</td>
<td>58, 60, 62, 63, 70, 76, 81, 94, 147, 296, 383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samvarana</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanakānīkas</td>
<td>95, 356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sandaka</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sandhīkārana Nandi</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saṅjaya</td>
<td>32, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sankaravarman</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saṅkassa</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saṅthāgāra</td>
<td>254, 323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarabha</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saradatta</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarāikālā</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarajas</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarasvatī</td>
<td>18, 19, 21, 71, 79, 99, 124, 151, 235, 350, 397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śarkarākṣa</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śarmiṣṭhā</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarvānukrāmanī</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saryāti</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saṅāṅka</td>
<td>270, 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śatadhanu</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śatadrīja</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śatāpaṭha</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śateraka</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satipatṛhāna</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satpura range</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śatrājita</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śatrughna</td>
<td>42, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śatrūṣṭijaya</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sattabhu</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satvats</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satyavān</td>
<td>6, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satyavati</td>
<td>46, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Satyavrata</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saunbhaganagara</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saundymnas</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saundarananda Kāvyā</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saundikeras</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṁgāyani</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saunīkottra</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅraṣṭra</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śauvīras</td>
<td>66, 67, 84, 151, 153, 344ff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śavadhanas</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śavaras</td>
<td>93, 159, 172, 399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śavati</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saṭḍhina</td>
<td>43, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saṭṭhisas</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅgala</td>
<td>55, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅgaradeva</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅgirikā</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅkala</td>
<td>54, 55, 58, 59, 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅketa</td>
<td>117, 125, 129, 132, 133, 146, 246, 247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅkotavana</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅkya-pariṣad</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅkaraṣṭita</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅkyas</td>
<td>110, 128, 245 ff</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Sālivāhana, 381
Sālho, 319
Sālvajanapada, 67
Sālavapura, 66
Sālvas, 31, 39, 66, 67, 73
Sālvāvaya, 67
Sāmagāna, 249
Sāmaśrāmi, Satyavrata, 1
Sāmbo, 1
Sāntanu, 20, 24, 47
Sāpuga, 202
Sārnāth, 115, 144
Sāriputta, 115, 130, 131, 146, 192
Sārvasen, 106
Sāsanavārṇa, 7, 13, 21
Sāvātasa, 397
Sātakuru, Gautamiputra, 117
Sātavāhana, 80, 81, 109, 157, 165
Sātyaki, 6
Sāvatthi, 109, 117, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133
Sāvitrī, 58, 301
Sāvana, 30
Sāven, 68, 75, 78, 83, 84
Sāvita, 200
Sāvita, 109, 117, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133
Sāvita Mā, 301
Sāyana, 30
Schwanbeck, 207
Schroeder, Von, 98
Script, Brāhmi, 44
Seyam, 3
Seleucos, 155
Seleukos, 206
Sēmbiyān, 187
Senā dynasty, 162, 267
Sena dynasty, 260
Sēsana, 280
Sēnṭiya, 200
Serpent worship, 44
Setavāya, 132
Setūkas, 382
Seyavīya, 78
Shah-Dheri, 15
Shāhīya dynasty, 17
Shah Jahan I, 343
Shāma-Shāstri, 29, 37
She-kido, 55
She-shi-ch'eng, 14
Shor, 83
Shrine, see Caitya
Sialkot, 71
Siaura, 83
Sibai, 82
Sibipura, 83
Sibis, 68, 75, 82, 83, 84, 315
Siboi, 68, 82
Siddhārtha, 244, 248, 250 ff.
Siglo, Persian, 156
Sīha, 321
Sīhā, 321
Sīhapura, 47
Sīkhandī, 36
Sīlabhadra, 232
Sīlavat, 202
Sīlavatī, 250
Sīmphapura, 159
Sīrā, 13
Sindhu, 10, 13, 24, 26, 30, 35, 86, 157
Sīndhu-Pulindaka, 175
Sīndhu-Sauvīra, 344, 382, 389
Sīndhu-Sauvīras, 80, 99, 153, 344 ff.
Sindlius, 174, 344
Sīngapuram, 159
Śīpā, 379
Śīpraka, 197
Śīrāmysya, 7
Śīrimeghavanna, 159
Śīrāyāni, 74
Śīsmāge, 140, 200
Śīsmāgas, 199
Śīsmā, 47, 48, 50
Śīsā, 39, 53, 100, 119
Śīvadatta, 81
Śīvapura, 68, 75, 78, 83, 84, 86
Śīvas, 82, 83, 84
Śīvaskandavarman, 164, 166
Śīvi, 51, 78, 84, 85
Śīvi Anuśāna, 68, 75, 84
Śīvi country, 85
Śīvidās, 151
Śīvis, 62, 68, 78, 83, 84, 85, 96
Śi-yu-kî, 140, 145
Skyrites, 282
Smith, V. A., 2, 7 ff., 15, 17, 29, 34, 41, 45, 52, 55, 59, 66, 62, 93, 95, 96 passim
Sōdāsa, Mahākṣatrapa, 44
Sodrai, 79, 350
Sogdiana, 282
Sogdian, 396
Sogdoi, 79
Solaik, 385
Solar dynasty, 136, 247
Soma Cult, 11
Someśvaradeva, 53
Sommath, 390, 397
Son river, 88
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Šona Šatrāsāha, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šonadāṇḍa, 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šoneṣṭaṇa, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šopātā, 354, 392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šoras, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šorensen, 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šotthivatinagāra, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Špooner, D. B., 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrawaṇa, 121, 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šribhadra, 327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrī Harṣa, 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrideva, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šridhara, 387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrīghanta lake, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrīkṣetra, 336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrimati Mahānādi river, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrīgaverapura, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrījayas, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrotāsi river, 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrutadevi, 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrutaśravā, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šrutaya, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Štēin, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šten Konow, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Števenson, Mrs. Sinclair, 15, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Štosalas, 385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Štrabos, 10, 14, 86, 155, 207, 394, 396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šuri, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šurtles, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šubāhnu, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šubhābhūmi, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šubbagiri, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šucirata, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šudākṣina, 5, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šudarśanā, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šudāśa, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šudāssana, 102, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šuddbodana, 125, 248 ff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šudeṣṇā, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šūdras, 4, 6, 79, 350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šudraca, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šugrīva, 6, 39, 54, 104, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šuṭhas, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šuhonotkala, 391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šuhomottaras, 288, 391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šujjaraṇa, 388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šujjatā, 183, 246, 247</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Suketu, 49 |
| Šukti, 49, 50 |
| Šuktimat, 378 |
| Šuktimatī, 47, 50 |
| Šulakaras, 152, 385 |
| Šūlikas, 384, 385 |
| Šumanā, 131 |
| Šumanāgalavilāsinī, 4, 110, et passim |
| Šumantra, 104 |
| Šumumāragita, 147 |
| Šumumāragid, 141 |
| Šumumāra Hill, 293 |
| Šunaka, 196 |
| Šuṅga dynasty, 38 |
| Šuṅga-mitra family, 141 |
| Šuṅgas, 141 |
| Šuṅhāṣeṇa, 122 |
| Šuṇīḍha, 204 |
| Šupāraṇa, 354 |
| Šupavāsā, 292 |
| Šūpiya, 112 |
| Šūrādeva, 106 |
| Šūrās, 63 |
| Šūrāsena, 40, 42, 50, 140 |
| Šūrāsenas, 39, 40, 42, 43, 66, 135 |
| Šūrāstra, 80, 94, 99, 347 ff., 389, 398 |
| Šūrāstras, 63, 79, 80, 159, 347 ff. |
| Šūratā, 389 |
| Šūrāparāṇa, 354, 392 |
| Šūrāparakas, 354, 390 |
| Šurucī, 238 |
| Šurundhana, 102, 103 |
| Šuryārakas, 354, 390 |
| Šṭasyavamśi family, 332 |
| Šuṣarman, 73 |
| Šuṣarman, 197 |
| Šuṣmā, 160 |
| Šuṣobhana, 49 |
| Šuṣumāna Hill, 266 |
| Šūtra— |
| Baudhāyana Śūtra, 82, 103 |
| Bhagavatī, 50, 60 |
| Gautama-Dharma, 96 |
| Hasti, 113 |
| Kātyāyana Śūtra, 98 |
| Liṭṭayana Śūtra, 98 |
| Saṅkhyāyana Śūtra, 103, 135 |
| Uttarādhyayana, 4, 23, 36 |
| Suttanipāta Commentary, 17, 110 |
| Šuvāḥiu, 43, 105 |
| Šuvāla, 11, 24 |
INDEX

Suvarṇabhūmi, 131
Suvarṇaarekha, 334
Suvarṇas, 68, 78, 84
Suvarṇa, 68, 96
Svabhra, 389
Svapnavaśavadattā, 138, 197
Svarjit-Nāgajīta, II
Svayambhara, 48, 57, 197
Svedakeśa Āruṇeya, 31
Swat hill, 10
Swat river, 86, 395
Syandikā, 119
Sydracae, 60
Syrakusoi, 61
Syrastrene, 80, 348
Syria, 80, 155
Tagara, 382
Takkhaśila, 15
Takṣaka, 27, 28
Takṣasila, 9, 13, 14, 15, 16, 112, 124
Talaing, 163
Tamāras, 398
Tamasā, 119
Tamils, 168
Tamulk, 263
Taṅganas, 364, 388
Tapati, 24
Tapussa, 335
Taxila, 13, 14, 15, 16, 28, 29, 45, 113, 114, 133, 314
Tālajanghas, 122, 392
Tāmalinda, 7
Tāmrālīpta, 263
Tāmrarpanmi, 190
Tārānāth, 14
Tendukhera, 386
Te-na-ka-che-ka, 166
Tēzpur Plates, 286
Thākuri family, 332
Theragāthā, 22
Therigāthā Commentary, 22, 116
Thomas, F. W., 96
Thullakoṭṭhika, 22
Thullatisse, 130
Thūna, 379
Tibet, 3, 398
Tilaṅgas, 383
Tilokasundari, 160
Tirabhukti, 311
Tītaiyar, 187
Tirihut, 311
Tīru-karūr, 193

Tīru-Valiikkalam, 193
Tissa, 160, 169
Tissa, 253
Tissatheha, 148
Tīvala, 140
Tochari, 396
Tod, 50
Togara, 385
Tokeori, 396
Tokhari, 93
Tomara, 307, 321
Toranavatthu, 133
Tosala, 385, 386
Tosaici, 386
Toși, river, 17
Traikūṭaka era, 52, 80
Trāsadasayava, 18
Trasadasyu, 18, 122
Trigarta, 394
Trigartaka Mulk, 74
Trigarttas, 62, 66, 73, 74, 75, 86, 96, 399
Tri-Kalinga, 51, 162, 163
Trīkāndaseśa, 145
Trilocanapāla, 17
Tripura, 399
Tripuri, 50, 399
Tripuri-visaya, 399
Trīśalā, 244
Trnabindu, 299
Trogus, 155
Trīśāṅku, 122
Trīṣu-Bharatas, 18
Tukkāras, 396, 398
Tandikeras, 386, 392
Tiruskṣas, 99
Tuṣāras, 396
Tushāspha, 156
Tuṣita heaven, 40, 143, 245, 309
Tūṣṭikāras, 386
U-cha, 336
Ucchedavādī, 143
Udaya, 110
Udaya Bhadda, 103
Udayana, 137, 138, 139, 140, 144, 148, 149, 150
Uddālaka Āruni, 54, 144
Udāyī Bhadda, 204, 205
Udēna, 115, 135, 136
Uḍra, 333, 335
Udrā, 335
Udumbarapura, 355
INDEX

Vasubandhu, 13, 132
Vasumitra, 157
Vasudeva, 25, 26, 48
Vatika, 125
Vatsa, 40, 50, 103, 109, 137, 138, 140, 147, 143 ff., 149
Vatsapâta, 145
Vattagâma, 169
Vatuka, 169
Vâhikas, 71, 72
Vâhikas, 70, 77, 79, 151
Vâji-Vâsis, 382
Vâlhi, 71
Vâlhi, 70, 71
Vâlîka, 123
Vanagarh, 7
Vârânasi, 102
Vârtâśâstropâjâvin, 4
Vârttikas, 71
Vâsabhâkhâtiyâ, 251, 252 ff.
Vâsabhâgâma, 114
Vâsavadattâ, 138, 141
Vâsisthâ Sâtyahavya, 21
Vâsuladattâ, 138, 139, 141
Vâsudeva, 41, 43, 44, 86, 87, 105, 158
Vâtadhâna-dvijas, 151
Vâtadhânas, 79, 151
Vâtsyâyana, 64
Veda—
Athrâva, 19, 102, et passim
Rg, 30, 32, 39, 68, 82, 84, et passim
Sâma, 19, 20, 54, et passim
Vedabbha, 51
Vedagarbhapuru, 88
Vedasmrta, 379
Vedasmi, 379
Vedaśruti, 119
Vehalla, 202
Vejayantî, 383
Veḷâr, 186
Veḷusamano, 109
Venâgâpura, 120
Venkatâgiri, 186
Venuvâna, 225
Vessabhû, 387
Vessantara, 51
Vethadipâ, 200
Vetravati, 386
Vibhâsâstrâ, 131
Vicitravirya, 24, 25, 105
Vidarbha, 49, 100, 123, 174, 389
Videghâ Mâthâva, 235
Videha, 17, 20, 26, 31, 84, 131, 138, 235

Vâsabkhâtiyâ, 251, 252 ff.
Vâsabhagâma, 114
Vâsavadattâ, 138, 141
Vâsithâ Sâtyahavya, 21
Vâsuladattâ, 138, 139, 141
Vâsudeva, 41, 43, 44, 86, 87, 105, 158
Vâtadhâna-dvijas, 151
Vâtadhânas, 79, 151
Vâtsyâyana, 64
Veda—
Athrâva, 19, 102, et passim
Rg, 30, 32, 39, 68, 82, 84, et passim
Sâma, 19, 20, 54, et passim
Vedabbha, 51
Vedagarbhapuru, 88
Vedasmrta, 379
Vedasmi, 379
Vedaśruti, 119
Vehalla, 202
Vejayantî, 383
Veḷâr, 186
Veḷusamano, 109
Venâgâpura, 120
Venkatâgiri, 186
Venuvâna, 225
Vessabhû, 387
Vessantara, 51
Vethadipâ, 200
Vetravati, 386
Vibhâsâstrâ, 131
Vicitravirya, 24, 25, 105
Vidarbha, 49, 100, 123, 174, 389
Videghâ Mâthâva, 235
Videha, 17, 20, 26, 31, 84, 131, 138, 235

Videha Mâthâva, 235
Videhadattâ, 239
Videhas, 117, 245 ff.
Vidhûrapandita, 29
Vidîsâ, 140, 141, 386
Vidjugabha, 249, 256, 288
Vihalla, 202
Vijaya, 170
Vijayabhaû I, 160
Vijayapura, 7
Vijayasena, 162
Vijitanagara, 169
Vijitapura, 169
Vikrama era, 63
Vikramâditya, 131
Vikramaśilâ, 232, 233
Vikuśi, 120, 121
Vimala-Kopañiha, 202, 328
Vimânavaṭhî Commentary, 41
Vimativinodâni (Vinaya Commentary), 168
Vînasâna, 350
Vinata, 104
Vinatâśva, 333
Vinda, 337
Vindhya-Mauleyas, 393
Vindhyamâlikas, 393
Vindhya-pusikas, 393
Vindhyas, 174
Vipâsa, 72, 91
Vipracitti, 199
Vîra, 131
Virabhotras, 393
Virâta, 25, 66, 87, 105
Virâtanagara, 39
Visâkhâ, 36, 130
Visâkhadatta, 289
Visâkhavarmân, 161
Vîśâla, 237
Visayha, 113
Visnudharmottara Mahâpûraṇa, 50
Visnukundin, 162, 165
Visgûvardhana, 380
Vissasena, 110
Visvadeva, 141
Visvâmitra, 237, 355, 397
Vitahavyas, 104, 393
Vitarutha, 49
Vithottroas, 392, 393
Vivakṣu, 130
Vogel, J. Ph., 17
Vohârikas, 325
Vrajamandala, 336
INDEX

Vṛātya, 195
Vṛddhasarman, 87
Vṛhadisu, 32
Vṛṣabha, 196
Vṛṣabhapura, 196
Vṛṣadarbhas, 68, 78, 84
Vṛṣṇiṣas, 390
Vṛṣīs, 27, 42
Vṛṣāghrasena, 81

War of the ten kings, 82
Warangal, 51
Watters, 41, 59, 90, 102
Weber, 31, 33, 60, 65, 98, 235
Whitehead, 16
Wilford, Col., 96
Whitney, 303
Wilson, 10, 14, 18, 30, 79, 86, 100
Wu-fu, 336

Xandrammes, 160

Yadu, 11, 39, 105
Yadus, 35, 39
Yajñaśri Sātākarni, 81
Yajurveda, White, 19
Yama, 246
Yamī, 246
Yamunā, 91, 146
Yesa, 148
Yasadaṭta, 13

Yaśodhara, 251
Yaundheyas, 68, 75, 76, 95
Yaundheyas, 55, 63, 68, 73, 75, 76, 78, 90, 91, 95, 96, 397
Yaundheyavāra, 76
Yaunās, 92, 153
Yavana, 54, 153, 154, 155
Yavanānī, 154
Yavanās, 3, 4, 6, 7, 35, 84, 86, 153, 155, 156, 157, 170, 398
Yavīnāra, 32
Yayāti, 11, 12, 21, 24, 47, 103
Yādava, 47, 48, 89
Yādava tribe, 391
Yādavas, 25, 80, 87, 390
Yājñavalkya, 54, 124, 236
Yāśaka, 1, 2, 20, 98
Yogācāra, 13
Yona, 55
Yonas, 153, 154, 155, 156
Yuan Chwang, 90
Yudhiṣṭhira, 2, 6, 25, 27, 29, 42, 48, 57, 73, 75, 76, 95, 96, 105, 119, 120, 136
Yue-chi, 304
Yugandhara, 67
Yule, 175
Yuvanāśva, 121

Zeus, 154
Zimmer, 1, 21, 30, 33, 54, 68
ERRATA

Page 10 Read Laraghan instead of Laghmān
" 93 " " " " " "
" 160 " Gangaridai instead of Gangridai
" 213 " Paramabhaṭṭāraka instead of Paramabhaṭṭakāra
" 270 " of instead of or
" 348 " kingdoms instead of kingdom
" " " constitute " " constitutes
" 349 " Satrapy " Satrapa
" 359 " Pahlavas " Pallavas
" 382 " Pallavas " Pahlavas

Read the before the titles of Chapters XLIII—XLV.